



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

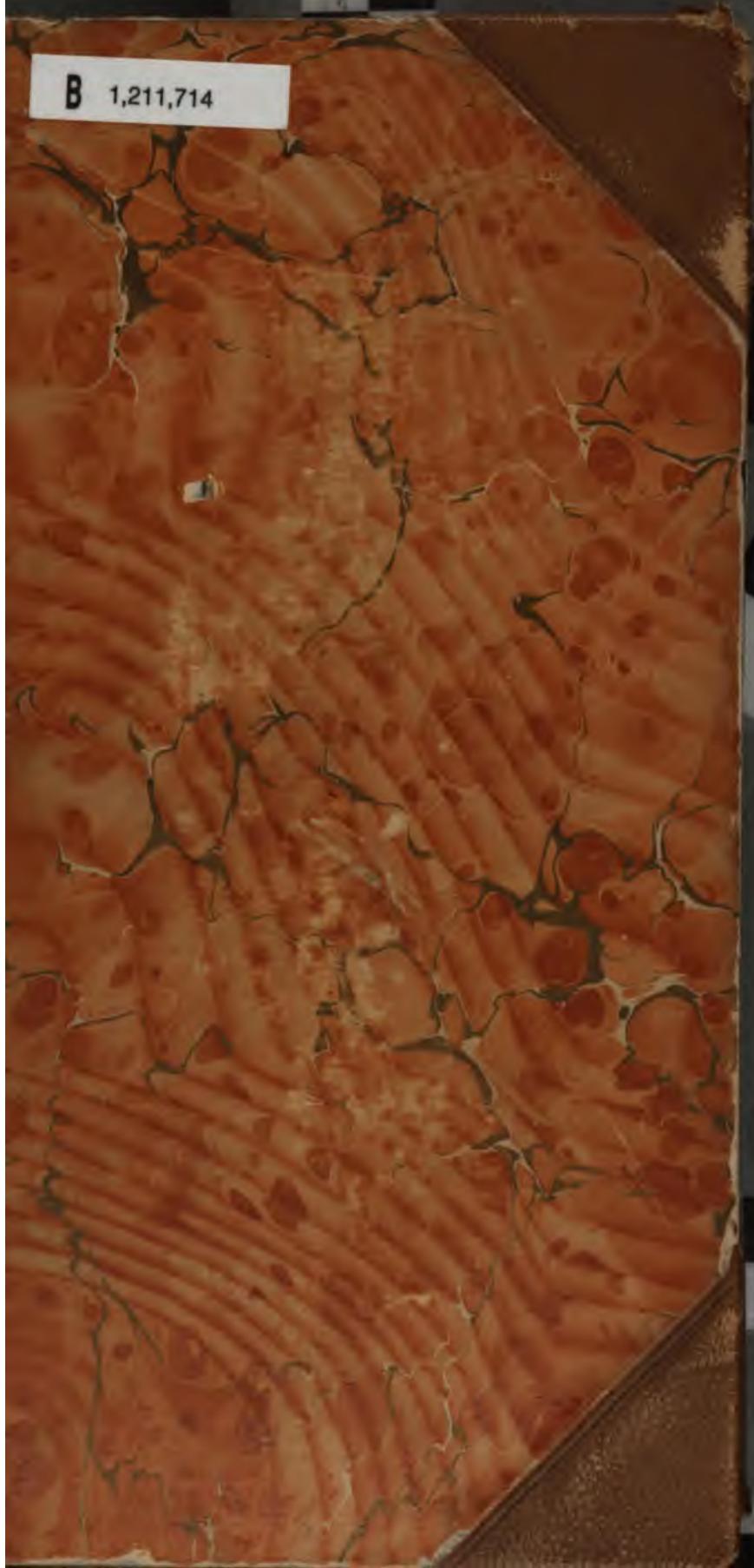
We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

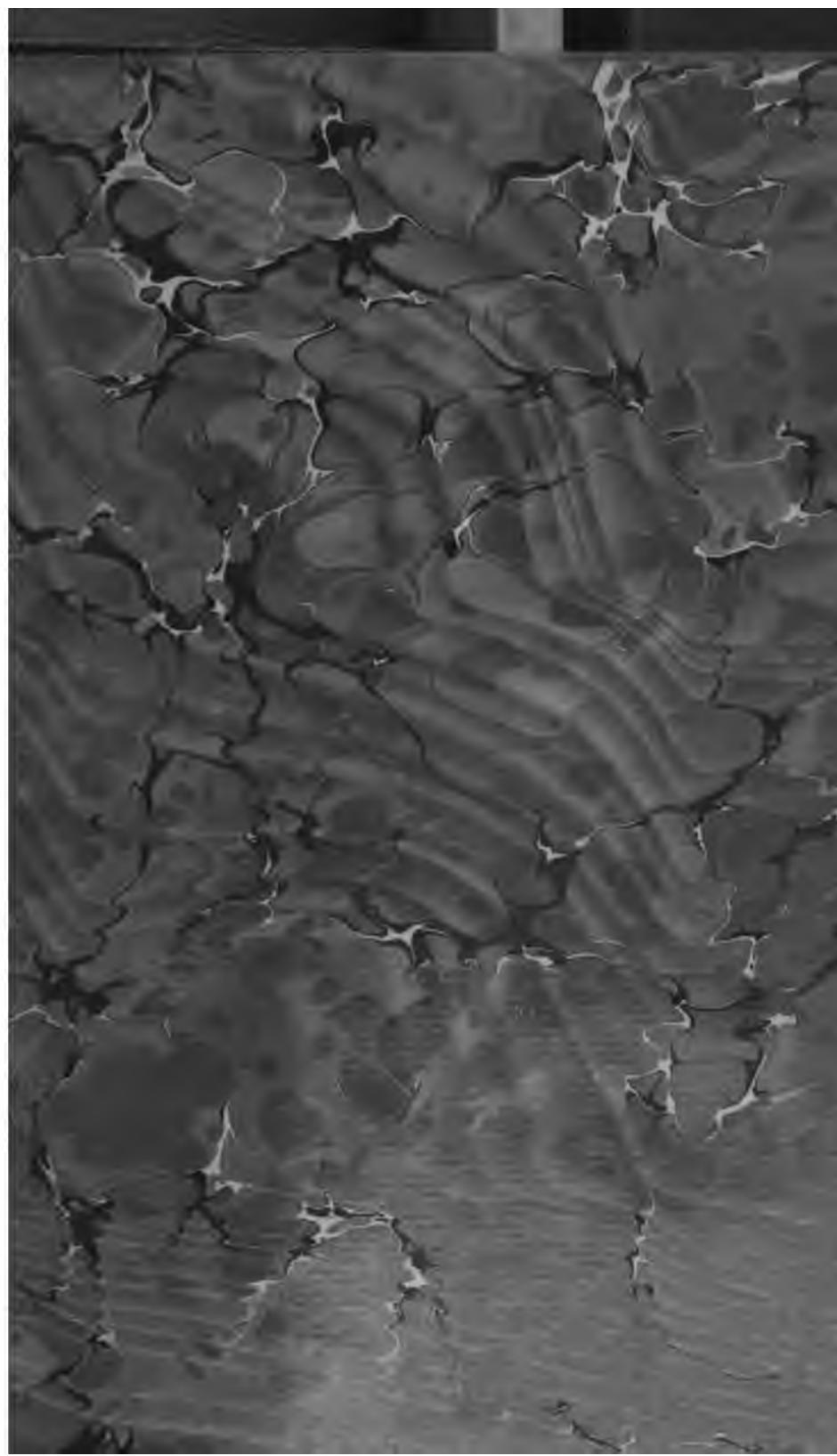
About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

B 1,211,714









~.420.6

343

v.19

19.

THE

HISTORIE OF SCOTLAND

118262

WRYTEN FIRST IN LATIN BY THE MOST REUEREND AND WORTHY

JHONE LESLIE

BISHOP OF ROSSE

AND TRANSLATED IN SCOTTISH BY

FATHER JAMES DALRYMPLE

RELIGIOUS IN THE SCOTTIS CLOISTER OF REGENSBURG,
THE 3EAR OF GOD, 1596

The feare of the Lord is the beginning of all Wisdome

FINIS CORONAT OPUS

EDITED BY THE

REV. FATHER E. G. CODY, O.S.B.

VOL. I

ATTENTION PATRON:

This volume is too fragile for any future repair.
Please handle with great care.

19.

THE
HISTORIE OF SCOTLAND

1132.27

WRYTTEN FIRST IN LATIN BY THE MOST REUEREND AND WORTHY

JHONE LESLIE

BISHOP OF ROSSE

AND TRANSLATED IN SCOTTISH BY

FATHER JAMES DALRYMPLE

RELIGIOUS IN THE SCOTTIS CLOISTER OF REGENSBURG,
THE 3EAR OF GOD, 1596

The feare of the Lord is the beginning of all Wisdome

FINIS CORONAT OPUS

EDITED BY THE

REV. FATHER E. G. CODY, O.S.B.

VOL. I.

Printed for the Society by

WILLIAM BLACKWOOD AND SONS
EDINBURGH AND LONDON
MDCCCLXXXVIII

All Rights reserved

The handwriting of the title-page is different from, and probably a little later than that of, the rest of the MS. The same date, however, is given in Dalrymple's own hand in another part of the text. (See facsimile.)

Oct 28 1851

In fatio translatio, at Regensburg,
in the scolis Chaffiv of Byrland
of one religious brother.
Thos. Dalrymple.

—
—
—
—
—

FACSIMILE OF F. DALRYMPLE'S WRITING.

NOTE.—*Byrland* = Baierland—*i.e.*, Bavaria.

CONTENTS OF THE FIRST VOLUME.

INTRODUCTION.

	PAGE
I. The Manuscript,	xi
II. Father James Dalrymple,	xi
III. Bishop Leslie,	xv
IV. Account of Bishop Leslie's Historical Writings,	xvii
V. Editions of the 'History of Scotland,'	xxii
VI. Method of Editing,	xxv

HISTORIE.

The Descriptione of the Regiones and Iles of Scotalnde,	1
Of the Name, Situatione, and Partes, of the Ile of Britannie,	2
Of the Aire, Lenth of the Day: and Fertilite of the Ground, in Britannie,	5
The Boundes of Scotalnde and Divisione, with the Descriptione,	9
The South Countreyis of the Realme,	10
The Prouinces of the Northe Parte of the Realme,	37

OF THE ILES OF SCOTLAND,

And first of the West Isles called Hebrides or Eubonie,	54
Of the Iles of Orknay,	63

OF THE BEGINNING, THE MANERIS, THE ACTES, AND DEIDIS DONE OF THE SCOTIS MEN.

THE FIRST BUIK.

Of the Ancient Antiquite and Alde Ofspring of the Scottis Natione. And how thay came frome Ægipte and came to Spane,	70
How first the Scottis cam to Irland,	75
Of Simon Brechus the First King of Scottis in Irland or Hibernia, . .	76
How the Scottis first cam in Albion,	80

Of the Natiounis, Kindomes, and Languages quhilkes now, or sen the beginning, haue flurished in Scotland,	82
How the Peychtis first in Albion descendet,	86
Of the Scottis Maneris,	89
The Ald Scottis Maneris and Present lykwyse, cheiflie of thame quha occupies the Mountanis called Hebrides,	89
Thair Maneris quha inhabites the Borderis of Scotland foranent Ingland,	97
The Maneris of the reste of the Peple of the Lande heir follow,	103
How many Ordouris of the Realme and Commounre Weil,	105
The Ecclesiastical Estate,	106
Of the Estait of the Nobilitie,	111
The Ordour and Estait of the Commounre People,	115
The Lawes of Scotland,	118
Of the Magistratis,	124
How Fergus First King of Scottis cam in Albion,	128

THE SECUNDE BUKE.

OF THE NOBLE ACTES OF SCOTLANDE.

I. Fergus I., . . .	131	XIII. Euen II., . . .	147
II. Ferithar, . . .	133	XV. Eder, . . .	147
III. Main, . . .	135	XVI. Euen III., . . .	151
III. Dornadil, . . .	136	XVII. Metellan, . . .	153
V. Nothat, . . .	137	XVIII. Caractak, . . .	154
VI. Reuther, . . .	137	XIX. Corbred, . . .	157
VII. Reutha King, . . .	139	XX. Dardanie, . . .	160
VIII. Thereus, . . .	141	XXI. Galdie, . . .	162
IX. Josina, . . .	141	XXII. Lugtak, . . .	168
X. Finnian, . . .	142	XXIII. Mogallie, . . .	168
XI. Durstus, . . .	143	XXIV. Conar, . . .	171
XII. Euen I., . . .	145	XXV. Ethodie, . . .	172
XIII. Gill, . . .	146	XXVI. Satrahel, . . .	175

THE THRID BUKE.

XXVII. Donald I., . . .	176	XXXIV. Crathlintie, . . .	185
XXVIII. Ethodie II., . . .	179	XXXV. Fincormacie, . . .	189
XXIX. Athirco, . . .	180	XXXVI. Romack, . . .	191
XXX. Natholok, . . .	181	XXXVII. Angusian, . . .	192
XXXI. Findok, . . .	182	XXXVIII. Fetelmak, . . .	192
XXXII. Donald II., . . .	183	XXXIX. Eugenie I., . . .	194
XXXIII. Donald III., . . .	184		

CONTENTS.

ix

THE 4 BUKE.

XL. Fergus II.,	201	LIII. Donalde or Doneu-	
XLI. Eugenie II.,	207	alde [III],	240
XLII. Dongardie,	211	LIIII. Ferquhard II.,	243
XLIII. Constantine I.,	213	LV. Malduin,	246
XLIV. Congal,	214	LVI. Eugenie V.,	247
XLV. Conran,	218	LVII. Eugenie VI.,	248
XLVI. Eugenie III.,	222	LVIII. Ambirkelethie,	250
XLVII. Conual,	225	LIX. Eugenie VII.,	251
XLVIII. Kinsatill,	229	LX. Mordakie,	252
XLIX. Aidan,	230	LXI. Ethfin,	255
L. Kennethie I.,	234	LXII. Eugenie VIII.,	256
LI. Eugenie IIII.,	235	LXIII. Ferguss III.,	258
LII. Fferquhard I.,	237	LXIIII. Soluathie,	259

THE FYFTE BUKE.

LXV. Achaius,	261	LXXVI. Malcolme I.,	284
LXVI. Conual,	270	LXXVII. Jnduff,	285
LXVII. Dongal,	271	LXXVIII. Duff,	286
LXVIII. Alpin,	272	LXXIX. Culenie,	289
LXIX. Kennethie II.,	273	LXXX. Kennethie III.,	291
LXX. Donald V.,	275	LXXXI. Constantin IIII.,	297
LXXI. Constantin II.,	278	LXXXII. Grim,	299
LXXII. Ethws,	279	LXXXIII. Malcolme II.,	300
LXXIII. Gregorie,	280	LXXXIIII. Duncan I.,	304
LXXIIII. Donald VI.,	282	LXXXV. Machabie,	306
LXXV. Constantin III.,	283		

THE 6 BUIK.

LXXXVI. Malcolme III. Can-		xcI. Dauid I.,	326
Moir,	309	xcII. Malcolme IIII.,	329
LXXXVII. Donalde VII[I],	318	xcIII. Wilhelme,	332
LXXXVIII. Duncan I[I],	320	xcIV. Alexander II.,	336
LXXXIX. Edgar,	321	xcV. Alexander III.,	339
xc. Alexander I.,	323	xcVI. Jhone Baillie,	341

NOTES TO AUTHOR'S INTRODUCTION,	353
NOTES TO BOOK I,	371
NOTES TO BOOK II,	387
NOTES TO BOOK III,	390
NOTES TO BOOK IV,	393
NOTES TO BOOK V,	395
NOTES TO BOOK VI,	399

INTRODUCTION.

I.

THE MANUSCRIPT.

THE MS. translation of Bishop Leslie's History of Scotland, from which the present publication is printed, is the property of St Benedict's Abbey, Fort Augustus. It was brought thither by the Rev. Anselm Robertson, the last surviving member of the Scotch Benedictine Abbey of St James's, Ratisbon, suppressed in the year 1860, of which Fort Augustus is, in a certain sense, the representative. The volume is in good preservation, and contains about a thousand pages of thick, coarse paper, nine inches by six in size, bound in boards which are covered with the remains of a parchment MS. psalter of a much older date. It is written throughout in the same handwriting, though with less neatness towards the end ; and as the characteristics of this latter part are repeated in the title and introduction, it may be inferred that the date there given, 1596, is the year of the completion of the book.

II.

FATHER JAMES DALRYMPLE.

The author of the translation, and doubtless the scribe also, was Father James Dalrymple, a monk of St James's,

a

Ratisbon, where he wrote the work, as he himself tells us (see facsimile of his signature). At the end of the volume he says: "Finding heir sum waist leiues, J thocht best for sum recreatione to the reidar, til June to and eik quhat heir followis;" and he proceeds to fill twenty-six pages with the unfinished account of a theological disputation, held against all comers, in the "Bishop's Hall, Ratisbon, on the 30th January 1588," by the then Prior of St James's, Father James White. Whether Father Dalrymple was present at this disputation does not transpire; but the event must have happened under the direction of Father Ninian Winzet, the great opponent of Knox, who was Abbot of Ratisbon from 1577 to 1592. Father Dalrymple records the death of the latter celebrity in words which are an addition to the work of Leslie; and he probably wrote the translation, certainly the latter half of it, under Winzet's successor, the above-mentioned Father White, who ruled the venerable abbey for the long period of forty-seven years.

This is already rather more than all that is certainly known about the present translator of Leslie. The library of St Benedict's, among other sadly scarce relics of Ratisbon, contains a register, compiled under Abbot Fleming (1672-1720), of the monks and students of the abbey; but it commences with the year 1597, and therefore could not contain the entry of Dalrymple's reception. Nor does his name otherwise occur. The records of Ratisbon were more than once destroyed by fire; very few are now known to exist; and all attempts made by the present editor to further identify Father Dalrymple have hitherto proved fruitless. One hint may be gathered from the absence of his name in the register of professions — namely, that

possibly he did not make his profession at Ratisbon, but was already a professed monk before leaving Scotland.

The 'Register of the Privy Council of Scotland' (vol. ii. p. 254), under date 16th July 1573, mentions a James Dalrymple who had been appointed the year before to a canonry of the chapel-royal at Stirling, "callit the parsonage and vicarage of Alloway," and who is there declared to have been unduly so appointed, on the ground that the king had already granted the living to William Drummond, son to Sir Robert Drummond of Carnock. This may possibly be our Father Dalrymple seeking an appointment at home before joining Father Winzet at Ratisbon.

To pass to mere conjecture, his name may lead us to suppose that he was a native of Ayrshire or its neighbourhood. We may also look upon it as likely that he left his native country under the influence of Ninian Winzet, who, when appointed Abbot of Ratisbon by Pope Gregory XIII., found the abbey almost deserted, mainly in consequence of a destructive fire in 1546, but who showed great energy in bringing over religious from Scotland to fill the empty house. "Confestim plures viros religiosos Scoticæ nationis arcivit," says Brockie in his MS. account of Ratisbon (archives of Blairs College). Some of these were members of the lately suppressed Benedictine monasteries.

We may further assume that Winzet suggested the translation of Leslie's history. This would appear likely from consideration of the facts that Leslie was a personal friend of Winzet; that the latter had obtained his nomination through the Bishop's influence at Rome; and that the style and motive of the history were such as would appeal strongly to a man of the abbot's character and experiences, and make him anxious to see the work in the mother-

tongue of his fellow-countrymen. But whether he supervised or even saw the translation, may be doubted. Winzet was a good Latin scholar; he had taught grammar at Linlithgow for ten years; and, while we are told by Brockie that he did much to encourage studies at Ratisbon, and even taught some subjects himself, he could hardly have passed over the occasional glaring mistranslations of Dalrymple, mistranslations which would argue their author to have been a tyro, one who had to use grammar and dictionary, and who often found Leslie's flowing periods and classical idioms too much for his attainments.

The last remark might suggest the further supposition that our author, at the date of his work, was young either in age or in scholastic acquirements, or both. In this relation it may be noticed that on his title-page he calls himself "ane religious brother"; and the latter word suggests that he was not yet a priest. It was, and is still, a monastic custom to give the title of *father* to monks who are priests; and of *brother* to such as have not received ordination. On the other hand, however, this title may be only an expression of humility on the part of the writer, such as was and is still customary; and, moreover, there are to be found in the translation traces of a somewhat prolonged stay in Bavaria, and of an habitual and confirmed use of the German tongue. A few such traces, principally inversions of sentences, and the softening of initial hard consonants, will be found pointed out in the Notes.

Father Dalrymple's knowledge of Scottish, and his power over the language, are, however, quite up to the level of his day; and in this matter, at all events, we may be permitted to see the influence of the author of 'The Buke of Four Scoir Thre Questions,' who boasted that he had not

“forȝhet our auld plane Scottis, quhilk gour mother lerit gou” (Winzet’s ‘Tractatis,’ addressed to Knox). His vocabulary is copious, often rendered more so by his habit of giving all the possible equivalents of a Latin word, the meaning of which he could not satisfactorily express by one Scottish form. In judging the style, it must be remembered that the work is a translation—that is to say, a style of composition that is crucial to the most practised writer of any language, and one that tempts the less perfect master to strain to the utmost the capabilities, both in style and meaning, of his perhaps less ductile mother-speech. Father Dalrymple’s style is necessarily affected by contact with the Latin, which in those, and even in later days, was looked upon as a perfect language, the type of excellence, all departure from which was branded as “barbarous.” On the other hand, translation tends to bring out all the powers of a language; and this, together with the fact that the present work is in prose form, will combine to give a special interest to this specimen of “Scottish text.”

III.

BISHOP LESLIE.

Bishop Leslie is too well-known a figure in Scottish history to require minute delineation here. It will suffice to recall the main facts of his life. He was born on the 27th September 1526,¹ of the Cults branch of the Leslie family, descended from the Barons of Balquhain. He was educated at the University of Aberdeen, and after a series of minor

¹ Irving says 1527, but the epitaph at Brussels says: “Excessit prid. kalend. Junii A.D. MDXCVI. Aetatis sue 70.

promotions, about which there is some little difference of opinion among his biographers, he finally took his degree as Doctor of Laws at Paris in 1553; was made professor of Canon Law in the University of Aberdeen; took holy orders in 1558, and, with the parsonage of Oyne and a seat in the cathedral-chapter, he settled down as Official of his native diocese.

In 1560 he was one of two named by the Lords of Congregation to discuss points of faith at Edinburgh against Knox and Willox.

In 1561 he brought Queen Mary home from France. This was the beginning of a connection that was to make him famous in the history of his time.

In 1565, on the death of Henry Sinclair, he was appointed to the diocese of Ross. This was effected, apparently, through the recommendation of the Queen, who had already made him a member of the Privy Council, and obtained him other preferments.

In 1566 his name appears as co-editor of the 'Actis and Constitutionis of the Realme of Scotland,' the work of a commission appointed at his suggestion to revise and publish the laws of the kingdom of Scotland.

In the year following, Mary was imprisoned in the Castle of Lochleven; but in 1568, after her escape and the defeat at Langside which followed it, Leslie joined the Queen at Bolton Castle. From this time he became Mary's commissioner and confidential agent, as well as ambassador to the Queen of England. He was imprisoned by Elizabeth in 1572 for his share in the attempt to bring about the marriage of Mary with the Duke of Norfolk. Towards the end of 1573 he was liberated, but banished the country, whereupon he retired to the Netherlands, and after a year's

residence there, he proceeded, at Mary's request, to visit the Courts of France, Spain, and Germany, and solicit assistance in her behalf. In 1575 he reached Rome, where he remained nearly four years, until he was appointed Nuncio to the Emperor Maximilian, then living at Prague. He finally passed through Lorraine to France, and was appointed by Cardinal de Bourbon, the Archbishop of Rouen, Vicar-General of that diocese. The news of the execution of Queen Mary (1587) reached him at Brussels, and had such an effect upon him, that he retired altogether from public life, and spent his last nine years in a monastery of Augustinian canons near that city, where he died May 31, 1596, in the seventieth year of his age.

IV.

ACCOUNT OF BISHOP LESLIE'S HISTORICAL WRITINGS.

All Bishop Leslie's writings were in object—when not, also, in subject—political, and his politics were summed up in the maintenance of the cause of Queen Mary and the Catholic religion in Scotland. This is true, also, of the 'History of Scotland,' which, as he tells us in his dedication, he wrote for the Scottish people—"quo majorum suorum, cum in ceteris virtutibus, tum in avita religione maxime, vestigiis insistant"—to induce them to keep to the ways of their fathers in all good things, and especially in their ancestral religion. It was first written in the Scottish dialect, as a history of Scotland from the death of King James I. (1436) to the year 1561, when Queen Mary assumed the reins of government; and was composed, as the title de-

clares, "During the time of his remaning as ambassadour for the Quene his soverane in Jngland, 1570." In his preface to this first work, he says: "I, being reteirit fra the court of Jngland, quhair I was resident for a gryit space of the tother yere, in 1568, at your Majesties command, in treating of your wechtie effaires with the Quenes hienes of Jngland and her consell, and tharefter remaning at Burton apon Trent, awaiting only on your majesties service, . . . I thocht verray necessarie to spare sum parte of my time in reidinge of historeis. . . . And sua I employed ernistly my labouris in reiding the historeis written by Polidorus Vergilius, Beda, Sir John Fressard Knight, Fabian, Edward Halle, Lanquett and Copperis Cronicles, with the summary wrytten lately by John Stowe: In the quhilkis I consider mony and sundry thingis sett forth by their aucthouris; of the deedis and proceedingis betuix Scotland and England, far contrar to our annales, registeris, and trew proceedingis collectit in Scotland. And albeit the trew histories of our country be largely, truely, and eloquently treated and wreattin be that cuning and eloquente historiographe Hector Boecius, yit he wreittis only to the deathe of Kyng James the first, quhilke was in the yere of our lorde god 1436 yeires, sen the quhilk time nevir ane hes preassed to gif furthe any thing in wreitt."

As he was again employed at the Court of Elizabeth during the summer of 1569, he was obliged to let the work rest "til farder oportunyte"; which opportunity came in February 1570, when he was "sequestrate in the Bischope of Londons house in the cite of London," and seems to have there revised and finished it. It was not, however, published; for though he sends it to the Queen, he says he "intends not to put the same to light, quhill it be more

diligently overseene and corrected." In fact, the history, as it then stood, was first published in the year 1830, by the Bannatyne Club, who printed it from a MS. in the possession of the Earl of Leven and Melville, a descendant of Sir Andrew Melville of Garvoe, Master of the Household to Queen Mary. It is the earliest known copy, presumably a transcript of the identical MS. presented by the author to his royal mistress, and judged to be the work of an English scribe,—a fact easily accounted for, when it is remembered that at that date the Queen and her faithful friends, among whom was Sir Andrew Melville, were living in England. ✓

During the following seven years, and most probably during the last four of the seven, when his stay in Rome would have given him the necessary leisure, Bishop Leslie rewrote this history in the Latin tongue, with some corrections and enlargements, and added to it seven other books of the history of Scotland anterior to the death of King James I. The general title of the whole volume runs thus: 'Of the origin, manners, and history of the Scots. Ten books. Of which seven treat more summarily of the memorable deeds of the ancient Scots, and the remaining three, more in detail, of the later kings down to our time, whose history was not before written. To which is added a new and accurate description of the districts and islands of Scotland, with a true topographical table of the same.¹ By John Lesley, Bishop of Ross.' The title of the second part is as follows: 'The last three books of the deeds of the Scots. Containing a more detailed history, previously wanting, of the more recent kings, from A.D. 1436 to the year 1562. By John Lesley, Scotsman, Bishop of Ross.'

¹ This map does not appear in the reprint of 1675.

The whole is dedicated to Pope Gregory XIII., in a long epistle prefixed to the first part, in which the author remarks : “ When I realised that the same benefit which I received from these studies (of Scottish history) might be enjoyed by my fellow-countrymen, I set myself to arrange, or rather rewrite, the history of the Scots, which I had roughly put together when in prison, and brought with me to Italy as my plank of safety from shipwreck.”

He also addresses an epistle to Cardinal Cajetan, who was then Cardinal Protector of the kingdom of Scotland ; and in it he alludes to the work as “ This production of mine, which is not so much Scottish as Roman ; for although conceived before, it has grown to its birth in these last months at Rome.”

This is followed by a very lengthy and rhetorical address to the nobility and people of Scotland, in which, among many other things, he declares the sources whence he drew his materials : “ I often exhorted our august Queen Mary to a diligent study of the history of her ancestors, and in furtherance of this desire, when acting as her ambassador in England, I presented her with the manuscript copy of an unprinted history of the 120 years from James II. to our own times, a period never before described. But when the fact reached the ears of others, many persons, both in our own and foreign countries, pressed me not only to publish this in the Latin language, but also to add a compendium of the previous history already written, correctly, though inelegantly, by John Major, and elegantly enough, by Hector Boece, but, as many complained, with too much diffuseness and prolixity. I proceeded, therefore, to compress and epitomise this portion ; while to the former, which in its Scottish dress could interest Scotsmen only, I have, with

some trouble, given the power to speak to all through the medium of Latin. In writing this work, I have not only confronted previous histories with the annals kept in our public archives, and with the oldest codices religiously preserved at Paisley, Scone, and our other monasteries, but I have also consulted Tacitus, Suetonius, Ammianus, Marcellinus, Eutropius, Herodianus, and other writers of neighbouring nations."

It is worthy of notice that these dedicatory epistles are accompanied by an address to the author in Latin verse, written by Ninian Winzet, Abbot of Ratisbon; and also by an epigram, similarly in Latin verse, the production of "Alexander Seton, a Scot."

The second portion of the volume is preceded by a dedication to Queen Mary, and another epigram by Alexander Seton. The Bishop again alludes to the work written in Scottish, and presented to her Majesty "when ambassador some seven years ago," and says that what he had previously written in the vulgar tongue he now publishes in Latin, for the benefit of all. It is curious that while this address is dated Christmas Eve, 1577, the previous dedications, at the beginning of the volume, bear date 1st of January 1578. The whole was published in one volume, though with two distinct titles, at Rome, in the year 1578. ✓

The history ends with the year 1562, and the author gives us good reasons why he broke suddenly off there in his published narrative. But he has left a record of another ten years, in what appears to have been intended as a continuation, to be published at a later date. In the archives of the Vatican, lately thrown open to students by the enlightened wisdom of the present reigning pontiff, there has been found a Latin MS. of Bishop Leslie, containing a

narrative of events from 1562 to 1571. It is unfinished, even the last sentence being incomplete; but its first sentence carries on the narrative of the last paragraph of the published work in so apt a manner, that if the two were joined together no one could notice any discrepancy. It was published by Father Forbes Leith, in his 'Narratives of Scotch Catholics,' 1885.

V.

EDITIONS OF THE 'HISTORY OF SCOTLAND.'

Copies of the original publication at Rome still exist, though very rare. That which is now before me, and which is commonly referred to as 'Leslie's History' is a facsimile reprint, made in the year 1675. The title-page still retains the date—"Romæ, in *Ædibus* populi Romani, 1578"; but beneath is added, "Nunc denuo recus. Anno Domini 1675." From this it would be gathered that the reprint was made in Rome; and indeed it could hardly otherwise have come to pass that the woodcuts of the original edition are also reproduced. It is stated, however, by Mr Irving, in his 'Lives of Scotch Writers' (A.D. 1839), that "this latter edition is said to have been printed in London, and contains a dedication to the Earl of Rothes, subscribed by a George Lesley" (p. 145). I cannot find this dedication; but it may have been either inserted in handwriting, or printed in London and added to some copies. The reference is, notwithstanding, valuable as giving a clue to the history of the republication of the Bishop's work. The Earl of Rothes here mentioned was John, sixth Earl, who succeeded to the earldom at eleven

years of age, in 1641, was afterwards created Duke of Rothes by Charles II. in 1680, and died on the 27th July of the following year. He had taken up the cause of Charles I. against the Parliament ; was colonel of a regiment of horse levied for the King's service in Fifeshire ; was taken prisoner at the battle of Worcester (1651) and confined in the Tower, and afterwards in the Castle of Edinburgh. On the Restoration (1660) he joined Charles II. in London, and was rewarded for his faithful services by a liberal pension and several posts of honour, among which was that of Captain of the newly established Royal Life-Guards, and General of the Forces in Scotland.

The George Leslie mentioned in connection with this personage cannot, of course, be certainly identified ; but at the date with which we are here concerned there was living a Jesuit priest of that name, who was great-grandson to our author, Bishop Leslie of Ross. The latter did not take orders till he was thirty-one years of age (1558), and may have been previously married ; but at all events the 'Records of the Family of Leslie' (vol. iii. p. 343) state that Andrew, fifth laird of New Leslie, married Janet Leslie, daughter of John Leslie, Bishop of Ross, and by her had a son John, sixth laird of New Leslie, whom we find receiving, as heir, the property contained in the Bishop's will, and appointing, as his procurator for the purpose, Gavin Leslie, his uncle, a canon in the cathedral church of Rouen, where, as we have seen, the Bishop held the post of Vicar-General. This John Leslie had five children—the above-mentioned George Leslie, one daughter who married, and three others who became nuns. Now this George Leslie lived until the year 1687, and had spent his last thirty years as Provincial of the Society of Jesus,

and Superior of the Missions in Scotland, chiefly at Balquhain, the ancestral home of his branch of the Leslie family. Here he would have known William Leslie, thirteenth baron of that ilk, a famous royalist, and personally a friend of the Earl of Rothes, also a royalist and a Leslie ; and he would thus have been a very likely person to issue a reprint of the writings of his great ancestor, and to dedicate it to one who, in addition to being a personal friend, and the acknowledged head of the name and family of the writer, was also one of the foremost men in Scotland, and of equal influence at the court of a reigning monarch, whose tolerance and even personal leanings towards the Catholic faith had raised the greatest hopes of those interested in its restoration in this country.

As a Jesuit provincial, Father Leslie would be in constant communication with Rome, so that there would be no difficulty in the fact of the reprint being made in that city ; but beyond this, the Rector of the Scots College in Rome at this date was a distant cousin of this same Father. This was Andrew Leslie of Rudderie, also a Jesuit. He had been imprisoned for the faith at Aberdeen in 1647, and removed to Edinburgh, but liberated the following year under condition of quitting the kingdom, with the penalty of death if he returned. A nephew of his, Father Walter Leslie, was also in Rome at this time, keeper of the archives of Propaganda ; he was a learned and zealous man, attached to the household of the celebrated Cardinal Barberini. To such men as these, Leslie's history must have been well known. Moreover, a motive for the reprint may be found in the renewed vigour in the work of the Mission to Scotland which appears about this time. This is evident not only from the increase of the number of priests, but

also in the interest shown at headquarters. In 1662, Father Winster, or Winchester, a pupil of Father Andrew Leslie, was made Prefect of the secular clergy in Scotland, with directions for a more active scheme of work ; and in 1677, Father Alexander Leslie, a brother of the William above mentioned, was sent on a special visit to report upon the state of the Mission. The republication of the Bishop's history would be quite in keeping with an attempt to rouse the question of the claims of the Catholic Church upon the people of Scotland.

VI.

METHOD OF EDITING.

The chief aim of the editor in preparing the work for press has been to reproduce, as exactly as possible, the actual text of Father Dalrymple. The slightest deviations are printed in italics, and, when they are anything more than the filling up of contractions, also enclosed in brackets. The only exception to this rule consists in a few very slight changes in the punctuation, in cases where it seemed necessary for the understanding of the author's meaning. Father Dalrymple's punctuation is peculiar ; in general it follows that of the Latin original, and therefore consists rather with the sense than the form of his translation ; but as it is his own, and is systematic, it has been preserved as part of the individuality of the work. The translation has been throughout compared with the original of Bishop Leslie, and passages that were found incorrectly or doubtfully translated have been reproduced at the foot of the page. The letter "L" in such footnotes refers to the Latin

text of the reprint of 1675. Other notes or critical remarks, not referring directly to the text as such, have been relegated to the end of the volume. In these Notes free use has been made of the historico-linguistic researches of Professor Skeat, and also of the invaluable labours of Mr Skene.

It may here be mentioned that Father Dalrymple translates only one of the dedications prefixed to the first part of the history. It is that addressed to "the nobility and people of Scotland." But as one or two pages are wanting in the MS., and as the translation is so involved as to require almost a complete new version from the Latin to make it intelligible, it has not been included in the present publication.

This first volume ends with the sixth book of the history; the next will contain the seventh, ending with the death of James I.; and the last three books, which correspond to the original history written in the Scottish dialect. In this latter part we shall have the opportunity of comparing Father Dalrymple's translation not only with the Latin original, but also with the Scottish draft of that original itself.

E. G. CODY, O.S.B.

THE ABBEY, FORT AUGUSTUS,
May 5, 1888.

HISTORIE OF SCOTLAND.

THE DESCRIPTIONE OF THE REGIOUNES AND ILES OF SCOTLANDE.

¹ QUHEN mony rasouns persuadet me, schortlie to twoche
al the lyues of the kings, quha hitherto haue rung in Scot-
land, Thaireftir the original beginning, Institutions, Lawis,
and ² preclair actes of the natione selfe compendiouslie
5 to ³ sett doun: the cause that mouet me cheifie was
this: that I, afore the eyne baith of our Nobilitie, and of
the lai people, in quhatsaeuir state or degrie, mycht sett
doun as in ane bredd or table, a certane ernist or hett
affectione of the catholik religione, and a vehement con-
10 stance in defendeng thairof; finalie mony vthiris worthie
and notable vertues, in quhilkes our Elderis, sumtyme
florisched, and war mekle renouned. I hoped, be this
moyan ⁴ sulde follow that quhen our cuntrey men began
15 to compair the vices, with quhilkes this day thair cuntrie
is infected, with the vertues, quhilkes in thair cuntrey
sumtyme excelled, the radier walde thay ryse frome
thair darke errouris in quhilkes thay ar incloset, and re-
turneng sinceirlie to the catholik concorde, now at last
mychte begin to follow the way of true vertue sa deip
20 ⁵ imprented with the futstepis of thair foirbears; quhilke
fructe, I hope our people abundantlie sal gather; gif
laying asyd al grudge or offence, hurt, harme, or ony

displeasure, diligentie yai (*thay*) reid the historie quhilke I write to the vtilitie and proffite of the *commone* weil, and gif in lyfe and maniris deuoitlie thay express it. Bot because mony things in our Historie wil appair obscur, excepte the descriptione of Scotland and the 5 Iles about, we sett afoir; before I begin the historie of the Inne cuntry, I wil first, *conforme* to the *exemple* of the aunciant writeris, descriue the quarteris and boundes of Scotland with the Iles, * as in the outmest bordouris, † quhilkes ar monie and plentiful in the ⁶ regiment of our 10 king. And seing that be al men Scotland is esteemed the ane halfe of Britannie, afoir I declare quhilkes ar proper to Scotland, I wil breuelie twoche quhilkes are *commone* to the hail Ile. This way the reidar sal nocht be offendit, nathir sal the writer be confoundet. 15

OF THE NAME, SITUATIONE, AND PARTES, OF THE ILE OF BRITA.VNIE.

Gif quha walde knawe the name of Britannie monie referris it vnto Brutus the sone of Silvius Posthumus King of the Latines, and oye of Aeneas, and him to be author baith of the name and natione of Britannie. The maist commoun speiking is this, that xl. *yeirs* eftir the 20 seige of Troy, quhill Brutus with grett sollicitude and kair was seikng a resting place ‡ with some troiane Iwalis and reliques, eftir sair trauell quhen mony dangeris he escaped had, at last he landet in Albion. Thair-efur the Ile he named Britannie, and his *cumpanie* brit-²⁵ anis. Bot quhat vthiris lait writeris speik of this name perchance mair curious than true, I, haldeng me content

* L. "extremis quasi insulis" — in more outlyne.

† L. the islands L.

‡ L. "cum aliquot Trojanorum reliquis" — with a few remaining Trojans.

with the opinione of ancient Antiquitie, regarde nocht. The maist ancient wryteris names Britannie Albion,⁸ but all controuersie. Bot quhither that was frome Albine first mother of the geyantis, or frome Albion son to Nep-
 5 tune, *quha rayneng, or frome Albanak sone to Brutus, or from alba the cheif citie, now called S. Androis, or finalie from Albis rupibus, that is, quhyte craigs, is ȝit vncertane. Bot I take it to be frome † quhyte ⁹craigs, as indeid I lykwyse beleiue, nocht the Romanis bot the
 10 Greiks first to haue the Alpes named, evin sa this Ile. For it is liklie that thay being sa noble Seymen, and sa expert in sayling, that our Iles thay apned vpe afore the Romanis. Bot that parte of the Ile quhilke haueng na inhabitour, esfirward was inhabited onlie be the Scotis
 15 and peichtes, is beleiued, and is verie liklie be Albanak, to haue bene named Albion. and for this cause. Thay wryte, that Brutus destrubited the hail Ile to his thrie sones, to wit, Locrinus, Cambrus, and Albanak ; appeiris weil, and is a rasone verie euident, that seing the tua
 20 partes quhilkes now ar vnder the Impire of Ingland, ar called ¹⁰Loegria and Cambria, from Locrinus and Cambrus the first tua sones, the thrid parte in lyke maner frome the thrid sone Albanak, the name Albion to haue receiued. Be this, lykwyse is probable onlie Scotland to
 25 be called Albion, because quha speik the Irische young, quhither amang vs or in Irland selfe, quhilke young is maist ancient, and with strange natiouns neuir corrupted ; evin this day thay call our Realme Albion, albeit thay ¹¹Albyn. speik it corruptelie : as the same peple plane ignorant of
 30 the Ingles young, oft names the Inglise men Saxon ^{Sasson.} frome thair offspring, as thay name thame Cambria

* L. “ibidem regnante”—Albion, who was king there.

† “Ego vero ab albis rupibus non quidem Romanos sed Graecos, ut Alpibus, ita huic insulae nomen dedisse primum crediderim”—I think that not the Romans but the Greeks first named this island as they did the Alps, from its white crags.

britanis from thair beginning, or Brennianis frome Brin-nach, or Duke Brenno. Finallie for the grett affinitie, alyance and brotherlie kyndnes betuene the Scots and Peichtis, the Romane writeris and al strangers gauie thame al ane name, sa war we all called Albans, as all the in-habitours of the Ile of Brittannie war named be the Romane writeris (*Britons*, L.); bot the lattir historiographors (*called us*, L.) Albians, and the Realme Albanie. This far of the name.

Of all Iles, gif ane called ¹¹ Taproban with sum vthiris be excepted, Brittannie is the best and fairest in al the * occian Sey, quhairof the maist parte lyes betuein ffrance and Irland: bot the vther parte frome Ireland Northerne lyes towarde Denmarke and Norway, quhilke sa is situat, as frome the hail warlde it war diuidet. The lenth extends frome a certane village in Ingland + besyd Corn-wale, named † Winchester, evin vnto the farthest parte of Cathnesse (quhilke sumtyme was called § ¹² Carnau) in Scotland seuin hundir ¹³ thousand pace lang, or thair about. Bot twa hundir thousand pace brade in the In cuntry, cheiflie in that parte, quhilke extends betuene ¶ Manerie, the farthest prouince of Cambri, and 3ar-mouth a seyporte of Norfolke. Vthirwyse in respecte of turnings and windings of the erte, in sum places it is langre, in sum places schorter, sa that quhair it may be Iustlie mesourit and mett in ilke place is nocht alyke æquall. The Ile almaist is thrie nuiket. The farthest

* L. "in oceano occidentali"—in the western ocean. It seems uncertain whether "occian" means *ocean* or *western*. "Mare oceanum," or ocean sea, is the Latin appellation of what we now call the Atlantic Ocean. See, e.g., Cæsar, Comm., lib. iii. c. 7.

† L. "apud Cornubios"—among the Cornubii—*i.e.*, in Cornwall.

‡ L. "Vinchstretus pagus." I have not been able to identify this place.

§ L. "Carnava."

¶ L. also has Maneria; it seems a misprint for Manezia = St David's.

The lenth of Brittannie.

The bredth of Brittannie.

parte, quhilke lyes toward france, hes about a * thousand and fyue hundir pace. The vthir syd lyeng toward Spane and the Occident, vii. hundir (*thousand*, L.) pace; the thrid foranent the coste of Germanie towarde the North 5 viii. hundir thousand pace. The circuit or *compas* The circuit. about, xx. hundir thousand pace as Cæsar maid mentione, bot the laitter historiographors affirmes it lesse. That syde quhilke lyes to ffrance hes twa nuikes, of quhilkes the ane lyes to Kent, the vther to the South.

OF THE AIRE, LENTH OF THE DAY: AND FERTILITIE
OF THE GROUND, IN BRITANNIE.

10 Sa grett clemencie and temperance of the wather is in The clem-
excie of the
wather. Britannie, that Cæsar said, he fand heit and calde lesse vehement in Scotlande than in france. The are nochtwithstanding sumthing thiker, and ¹⁴ mae cloudes: Bot the windis, quhilkes ar North, blawis oft verie vehement, 15 swifte, and with a horrible sound, quhairthrouch the cuntry is nocht lytle bot mekle hailsumer, and fewar seiknessis. Followis of this, that ¹⁵ by mony vthiris seiknessis in the south, that sair seiknes, named the sueit of Britannie, *cam* nevir till ws, nochtthelesse, con- 20 tinual caldes, albeit slawe: mony weitis, deip snawis. The day sa lang that it is thocht to haue (*in cornwall*, L.) xvii. houris; In Edinburghhe xviii.: bot in the Iles of orknay xix. The beimes of the Sone, al Scotland through, the hail nyght ar sein, the space of twa 25 monethis, and that cheiflie in Orknay, Cathnesse, and Rosse, in sik brichtnes, that esilie thay may sie to reid and wryte. Contrare in winter, as the vse is ¹⁶ ouer all, the lenth is payed with the schortnes.

Sa ¹⁷ plentiful is the ground, that mekle esier *ȝe* sall The birth-
fulnes of the
ground.

* L. “*millia passuum quingena*”—five hundred thousand paces.

expone quhat it no^t beiris, than quhat it beiris. for the ground selfe to the awne inhabitouris furnisses abundantlie all things, quhilkes ar necessar or proffitable to the commone vse of the peple, excepte spice and Vine, and sum fructes (quhilkes being brochte in, the Ile in 5 thame abundes) and ȝit walde mair abundantlie, and mony mae things walde minister sufficientlie, gif mair labour and industrie war maid. In all kynde of stufte, and cattell it abundes: Nochtwithstandeng amang the mountainis, and hiche cuntreyis, ¹⁸ ates is mekle mair 10 prosperous than quheit. Of ates, in Britannie, by the opinione of mony, is maid verie gude brede, nocht tasteles, bot with grett labour, quhilke al the north parte of Ingland, and the gretter parte of Scotland vses, and ar susteyned vpon commounlie. Beare mairouer it 15 bringis, not only ane kynd, quhairof commoune drinke is maid to the hail Ile, quhilke we cal ale, and is a drinke maist halsum. In Ingland it is bettir quhair it is 20 browne with hope; in Scotland butt hope. and this drinke is oft browne, and cheiflie in the moneth of 20 Marche, and than best; of quhilke sorte, no^t only is keipet for ane ȝeir, or twa ȝeirs, bot evin for fyue ȝeirs, or sum tymes vii. ȝeirs. that throuch the opinioun of strange natiouns, it is thochte baith be the colore and be the taste to be Malmsey.

25

The north parte of the Ile, as lykwyse the mid parte and that parte called Cambrie, hes in sum places mony 21 garssie hillis, with grene bankes, Busses and brayes, bot little fertile * and verie bare garse, quhilke onlie beiris the clauer; quhilke nochtwithstandeng ouer all no^t far 30 vnylike may be funde: quhilkes are verie conuenient to

* L. "tenuissimum gramen atque Cytisum herbam tantum ferentes: nusquam tamen non tales, qui vel jumenta, pecora, ovium et caprarum greges, aut maximos saltem cervos felicissime alant"—bearing only very thin grass and the herb Cytisus (a sort of clover): yet are they nowhere unequal to the feeding either of beasts of burden, or herds, or flocks of sheep or goats, or at least the deer.

The stufte.

of ate brede
called
¹⁹houer
brede in
Ingland.

of ale.

feid horse or ²² nout, or flockis of scheip or gait or ²³ than grett harte and hyne. The grettest parte of the Ile hes sa plentiful feildes that nane mair plentiful, plesande medowis, verie pastoral, and garssie ²⁴ Lesoueis in sum 5 places conuenient to kye and horse, in vtheris agane to scheip. It beiris maist fyne woll, quhairthrouch ²⁵ framet natiouns in the arte of claith making and mony pretious things of woll are mekle helpet. heir agane sall ȝe se braid planes, thair wattirrie dales: heir a dry knowe, or 10 a thin Forrest, thair a thick wodd, all meruellouse delectable to the eye, throuch the varietie baith of thair situatione, and of the thing selfe that thair growis. The woddes selfes noct *onlie* proffitable to the vtilite of timber, and to that vse, but lykwyse for the gret multitude of Dae and Rae in thame, cheiflie in that parte 15 inhabited be Ingland, are verie jocund and jellie, and gif we my^t speik it, in a maner ²⁶ peirles in pleisour: Throuch thir woddis the gretter parte of the nobilitie hes thair maist recreatione in hunting with the ^{hunting.}

20 ²⁷ sluthe-hundes. for that, this recreatione hes our cuntry men ather in the feildes to hunte the hair and the fox, or in the sandes and water brayes the Brok, or in the mountainis the Wolfe, or the Wilkatt. bot the harte, the Dae and the Rae principallie w^t sluthehundes ar 25 hunted and with vthiris swofte dogs called ²⁸ grawhundes. Bot of the plentie of fische thair quhen the sey *compassis* the hale Ile about, and quhen it hes mony sey portes, burnes and watiris, poles, ²⁹ stankes, and standeng Lochis of fresche water I neid not speik.

30 Nathir schawes furth Britannie all that it hes at the first face, nor lattis all sie at the first sicht, for mony hidd thesauris sche hes in her bowelis. In sum places is funde multiplie of Tinze and that of fyne tizne, ^{Mettell.} mekle to the vse of thair ³⁰ nyghtbours and nerrest 35 natiouns. Farther in sum places of Ingland and lykwyse of Scotland is deluet vpe na small quantitie of Leid.

The Welthi-
nes of fische
in Scotland.

In Ingland ar siluer ³¹myndes, in Scotland ar gold myndes: bot yrne ar funde in baith. It is said that sum tyme it xxviii. cities ³²had verie famous and of gret renoune baith in gret numbir of citizenis and riches: of quhilkes now sum we knawe alutterlie fallin doune, vther ⁵ sum wasted with weires, vthires agane we knawe to continue in thair alde bewtie and bettir: as sum vtheris quhilkes war obscure, bot now famous; ȝe ³³dorpes and ³⁴wynes to be now growne in fair townes; notwithstanding verie fewe fortified with walis and bulwarkis, as with ¹⁰ strange natiouns. for the Ingles meⁿ partelie confides in thair cost syd compassing thame round about with craiges lyke a wall: partlie thay confide in thair awne strenth. Bot the Scottis men quhais cost syd is far vthirwyse; conforme to the lawes of thair elderis, thay haue ³⁵leiret ¹⁵ nocht to defend thair townes w^t wallis, bot thair landes, and first of all the bordouris of thair cuntrie, with the force of thair bodie, and strenth of mynd, (*and, L.*) to expel the ennemie.

I wil nocht now expreme the rest: to wit the thrie ²⁰ fludes quhilkes principallie ar in Ingland, thay ar Themes; Humbir; and Seuerne: * In Scotland ar mae, as thir chieflie, of quhilke kynde beiris sail, Forth, Clyde, Tai, Dey, Don and Spay. Nathir now will I ²⁵ ³⁶twoche mony sure schipe raides, sey portes, and haiuinng places, of quhilkes mony are verie commodious, mony fortified and fensed with munitione. Nathir of vthir things will I make ony mentione, quhilkes ar mair commoun to the hail Ile, bot will explicat mair at lairge quhilkes to Scotland ar proper. ³⁰

The cheife
rivers in
Britannie.

* L. "Scotia, quæ latis hostiis magna æstuaria faciunt, plura,— sed propter vada et saxa, non longe a mari, ut illa, velifera"—Scotland has more (rivers) making large estuaries with broad mouths, but on account of shallows and rocks not navigable, as the former are, far from the sea.

THE BOUNDES OF SCOTLANDE AND DIVISIONE,
WITH THE DESCRIPTIONE.

Scotlande the vther parte of Britannie is hail w^tin the sey, excepte that parte quhair it lyes⁸⁷ to Ingland: quhair with twa fluides, to wit, Twede in the Easte, and Soluey in the west it is dividet as w^t thir twa marches.

5 Bot the mid *parte* *lyeing betuene that and Cheuott hillis, or the riuveris rinning through thir partes, hes marches. The hail regioune excepte the Iles orknay and † Irland in twa partes may be diuidet: of quhilkes the ane parte lyeng to the South is mekle birthfuller, through 10 fertilite of the ground, and nobilitie of blude thair, and mair populous, mair courtesie, gentle in behauiour, humanitie of lyfe, ciuilite of maneris:

The vthir quarter lyes to the North, quhilke be the river of Tay toward the Easte is seperat frome the south 15 parte. Bot albeit this north parte be horrible in respecte of the montane Grampius, and vtheris ruch, scharpe and hard hillis full of mosse, more and marrase. Nochtwithstanding in this north parte ar sum prouinces sa plentifull ‡ and of gretter Ingines, that through thair policie thay 20 ar athir to mony in the South compair, or than thay excel mony in the South. of quhilkes in thair awne places we will speik.

* L. “vel montes Cheviotas, vel rivulos aliquot inde fluentes habet terminos”—has the Cheviot hills or streams flowing therefrom as marches—*i.e.*, boundaries.

† L. “Hebrides.”

‡ L. “quæ sua feracitate et præclaris hominum ingeniiis ac politia plurimas earum quæ meridiem spectant, vel æquant vel exuperant”—which in their fruitfulness, and the skill and refinement of the inhabitants, equal or excel many provinces in the south.

THE SOUTH COUNTRYIS OF THE REALME.

Merse.

The first prouince of the formest *parte* is the ³⁸ Merse quhilke marches with Laudian, and quhair the riuers Tuede entiris in the gret sey, att the wattir of Forth. This cuntry is plentifull of corne, as that cuntry quhilke is thair nychbouris, Tifedale, frome the Riuers ⁵ called ³⁹ *Tifus* that rinnis intill Tuede, sa named. Baith thir cuntryes aboundes baith in mony and baulde men of Weir. for because of the frequent weiris betuene Scotis and Ingles the inhabitours of thay pairtes, quha ar not diuydet frome the Inglesmen be ^{*sum} ¹⁰ kynd of way, be a wattir or a hill, [†] and thay ar mair expert in ordiring a battell than vtheris. Thir Mersmen in our age, against the suddan entring of the enimie, to lat sie quhan danger is, thay kendle bleises in tour heidis, or heicher places, as the maner thair is; ¹⁵ mentione is maid that in the space of xxiiii. hours ten thousand horsmen war gathired thair. Thir haue bot few wodis, and verie litle ⁴⁰ elding to thair fyre, in quhilkes al our cuntry does abund, excepte that parte, quhairthrouch *cumis* that thay [‡] Reid for wod vse, ²⁰ cheiflie the Mersmen, to thair fyre. In thame ar mony noblemen and almaist all, bot cheiflie the mersmen, thay ⁴¹ manure Justice and thay studie ⁴² to politike effaires: Surlie verie vnylike ar thay to all the rest of the bordirmen round about, quha nathir in peace or ²⁵ weire can be ⁴³ stainchet from takeng the pray. Merse has ane fyne and ane strenthie toun quhais name is

* L. "nullo omnino aut flumine aut monte non pervio ab Anglis distinguuntur"—which are not separated from the English by any river or impassable mountain.

† "and thay" not in L.

‡ L. "Stipulis"—that they, especially the Mersmen, use *straw* (or reeds) for firing.

Berrik * quhilke oft hes bene in the Inglesmeis handis, and now is, and oft hes bene in the Scottis menis handes in lyk maner. The merse cheiflie hes thir tounes, Dunce, out of quhilke cam that celebrat 5 doctour called ⁴⁴subtilis: than † Dunglass, a fair collegiat kirke, and weil decoret: than Langtoune, than Hume, Fastcastell, and finallie verie mony strang castellis in thay partes.

Berrik a strenthie toun.

In Tifedale the cheif toun is named Jedburghe, and 10 than Kelsoch. In thir twa prouinces war four notable and riche monasteries; to wit, Melrosse, Jedburghe, Kelsow, and Kowdinghame, quhilkes war mounkes all. Twa in lyke maner of haly nunis, hauenzg twa houses of pietie appoynted for thame, thay ar to say, Caldstreme 15 and Eccles. I heir speciallie make mentione of the Monasteries because thair *ȝeirlie* [‡]rentis for na iniuire that *ȝit* in the Realme has bene done, is nocht *ȝit* violat, how mekil sa evir thair places afor thir *xxx.* *ȝeirs* the furies of thir ⁴⁵wod men through the hail Realme haue 20 castne doun.

Jedburghe, Kelsow.

Beþonde Tifedale, gif rycht be the bordiris of the lande *ȝe* gang toward the coste, is thair Liddisdale, sa named frome the flude Lidder, quhair is baith ane strenthie and ancient castell, called the Eremitage. 25 Thaireftir is Eskdale named frome the flude Eske that rinis through thay feildes and hes the name thairfra. This lykewyse rinis intill Tuede.

Liddisdale.

Neist this lyes Eusdale sa named frome the riuers ⁴⁶Euos quhilke rinnis in the river of Anna^ȝ and thair 30 endis. Farther at the coste of the Irishe Sey, quhilke Anandale.

Eskdale.

* L. adds — “ olim ordoluciae nomen erat,” — anciently called ordolucia.

† L. “ Collegiata ecclesia, eaque perpulchra, decoratum ” — adorned with a collegiate church, and that a very beautiful one.

‡ L. “ nusquam apud nos illorum annui redditus ullo regni jure sint hactenus violata ” — because hitherto their yearly revenues have not been violated by any law of the kingdom.

vthiris names ⁴⁷ Vergiuium is Anandale, sa named frome the riuer of Anan forsaid, quhair lykwyse is a toune of the same name. Our cuntrey *mer* vses valayes to cal ⁴⁸dales: sum agane quha names thame noct dales, names thame portiounis, quhairfor al the south cuntreyes by 5 Merse and Laudiane haue this worde dale affixte to thair portione sa named frome the nerrest riuer or burne. Bot in the West and beþonde the Water of Forth northwardre, tha[*y*] name al thair cuntreyes athir with proper names, or frome the worde ⁴⁹ strath (quhilke signifies a vallay) 10 conioynet to the nerrest riuer. Ganging about the coste of Anandale, * quhilke the hiland seyes flowis till, northward, will occur Nidisdale sa named frome the water of Nid. This *cuztrey* at the bordour is narow, bot in the midcuztrey it is sumthing baith braider and wyder. 15

Nidisdale.

The toune
of Dunfrese.

Galloway.

Candida
casa.

heir is a toune nathir base nor of simple digrie, to name Dunfrese, famous in fyne claiþ. The inhabitouris, as we said afor, because in hett weiris thay ȝok ofte with the Inglismen, thay ar ay in radines, and al ar hors men.

20

Neist this lyes ⁵⁰ Galloway, in deid a large prouince, and diuidet into twa partes, of quhilkes the ane quhilke, frome the water of Crie lyes toward Nidisdale, is named Galloway inferiour; bot the vther, superiour is called. Baith abundes in fertilitie of the ground, and nobill 25 pastorall. farther it is nobilitate in fyne wole and ⁵¹ quhyt, sa is it cheiflie in aumbling horse. It hes thir tounes Kircoubrie, Wigtoune, and the ⁵² quhyt Case, al the thrie gude seyportes, and verie necessar for the commodious receiueng of schipis. The quhyte Case 30 being a Bischopes sait, was lykwyse afor the hæresie began, decored with a famous and fair monasterie.

* L. adds—“seu ordoviciæ,” or *ordovicia*, and substitutes “hibernicum,” or Irish, for “hiland” seyes.

† L. “Galdia, nunc Gallovidia, quæ olim Brigantia dicta fuit” —Galdia, now Galloway, formerly called Brigantia.

Thair *was S. Ninian the ⁵³ oy, as we beleive, of S. ^{S. Ninian.} Martine, Doctour maist famous of the paychtes, the Scottis, and the Britanis, and the first institutor of this Bischesopes sait, was visited maist religiouse with the 5 peple of the hail Ile, quhair mony sygnes be God war ⁵⁴ schawne and wonndiris. Bot Wigtoun ⁵⁵ waris the vthir ² baith in citiēnis and riches. In Galloway ar horsmen, Barounes, and vthiris noble men² mony: bot the grettest parte of the cuntrey is dedicate to the Kirk; 10 for it hes by the Bischesopes sait, and a collegeiate kirke called Glencluden, it hes, I say, mony monasteries in quhilkes Glenluse, and the quhyte Case or S. Ninianis ar principall. I passe now by the new monasterie, or of ⁵⁶ swet hartes [†] sa named because it had sa lang continued in a happie state of sa haly religious men, [‡] sik as Drundrenne², Salsiden, our Ladyes Inche, quhais kirkes all and clostiris throuch the wisdome and authoritie of certane illustir and nobill men² standis [§]it ⁵⁷ haill. This cuntrey sindrie fresche water lochis ⁵⁸hes; that abundes in 15 mony kyndes of fische, cheiflie in thrie, ⁵⁹ Killine, Skait, and Makrell, farther twa gret ⁶⁰ bosums ar in the sey, quhilkes we commonlie call lochis [¶] of salte water; [¶] quhilkes ar diuidet frome the inhabitaris of the mule of Galloway be a gret mountane schuteng the selfe into the 20 Sey: The name of the ane of ⁶¹ thir lochis is named Lochriane, of xvi. myle lang: the ⁶² vther, Loch, about xx. myles lang: of bredth almaist bot baith alyke: They baith abunde in herring, ostiris, and in vtheris fisches,

Glenclude,
Glenluse,
our Ladyes
Inche.

fresch water
lochis.

* "was" omitted in L.

† L. "Suavicordium, ob probatissimos Cœnobiarachas diu jam felix"—Sweetheart, long blessed in its worthy superiors.

‡ L. "sicuti et"—as also. It belongs to "I passe now by."

§ "of salte water," not in L., which reads "quos et nos lacus vulgo dicimus," which also we commonly call *lochs*.

¶ L. "Promontorio ab incolis Galdiæ, Mulo, id est Angulo, appellato"—divided by a promontory, called by the inhabitants of Galloway, Mull, that is, corner.

The best
awbling
horses.

but maist rich in fisch that brede amang' stanes.
 63 Quhen our hail cuntrey throuch, bringis vpe ambling
 horse, than cheiflie Galloway, that all vtheris thay excell,
 I say,—thay vthiris excell be mony dayes Jornay, thay ar
 sa swift in body, albeit thay be small. bot nathir thay 5
 mekle gret horse quhilkes being harness, beiris armed
 men of weir, ar haldne sa nobil with our cuntrey men, or
 of sa gret pryce, as horse of midway stature, sa that thay
 be swifte and of a prettie forme ; quhilkes in the grettest
 battelis hes oft done ws na litle skaith.

10

Silurie,
Karrak,
Kyl,
Cuning-
hame.

64 Abone Galloway is Silurie sum tyme a weirlie peple as
 evin ȝit it is, quhome Tacitus writes was ay 65 cumirsum
 and rebellious to the Romanis selfes. Of it ar reckned
 thrie partes, Karrik, Kyle and Kuninghame. In thir
 thrie evin as in 66 vuir Clydisdale and in nethir Clidisdale 15
 that lyes nerrest thame ar gret 67 offspring and that of no-
 bilitie : Thair ar Knichtes, Barrounis and mony vthiris
 Nobilis, quhome we cal milordis. It is esteimet, that
 Carrik is named from a certane toune copious in citizenis
 and verie numerable called in Latine Carictonia : thair 20
 mony fair castellis throuch nature and arte fenced and
 prepared, mony thair clachans, bot mony mae * villages,
 as ouer all it is with ws. The ground almaist is alyke
 plentifulle in all thir places : the pastorall is 68 plesand, as
 asfor I spak, of quhilke we haue cheis nane fyner, and 25
 buttir in gret quantitie ; Bie 69 skepis lykwyse nocth few.
 thair is beir and aits meikle bettir and meikle mair
 copious, than with vthires natious ; quheit lesse : It
 walde nocthwithstanding grow in mony places abun-
 dantlie, gif the housbandmen could persuade it to be to 30
 thair proffite. The sey coste round about is full of fishe,
 and may be fished, as are all burnes, lochis & fludes.
 Woodis are thin : bot in vuirclydisdale and nethirlydis-
 dale, the woodis thiker ; monasteries fewar. Carik nocth-
 theless hes ane monasterie called 70 Croce Regal. Kyle, 35

* L. "villæ"—country houses ; seats.

bot rather Coile sa named from Coile king of the Britanis
thair slane ; hes the toune of Air, quhilke is called S.
Johnes toune, illustir and fair anuich baith in riches and
biging, and a plesand situatiorze, with a prettie sey porte
5 quhair strange natiouns oft arryues and thair landes, the
porte is sa commodious. The watir of Dune quhilke is
a cleir and ane riche riuver rinsis throuch this cuntry ;
rinnig in into the Sey, it endes nocht far frome the toune.
It hes ane monaster called Fale.

10 In Cuninghame is the toune of Irvine, quhilke in
peple, in riches, and commodiousnes of the Sey porte is
nocht mekle inferiour to Air, twa myle or thairabout
frome the toune is a monasterie magnifik aneuich, to
name Kilwinzine.

15 A litle frome this lyes Clydisdale, or as sum cal it
Cludisdale, quhilke thay cal the baronie of Renfrou
quhair is a toune of the same name. To this toune is
priuelege of ⁷¹ salmonte takeng granted be thair fairbearis
betuene the twa brayes of Clyde. The takeris gyue sik
20 labour to fisheng that thair oft may be sene hail lx. of
fisher botes occupiet in fisheng all baith the spring and
summer tyme. bot for al that the mater uses sa to suc-
ceed with thame, that sum of thame hes sik luk in fishing,
that thay take nocht sa mony salmon, as we sal say or it
25 be lang, vses to be takne be sum in riuveris in the north
partes. Frome this the space of twa myles is distant
Paslay quhilke is situat amang cnowis, grene woodis,
schawis, and forrest fair onⁿ the Riuver of * Carronn :
quhair is an ornate brig of astlare warke and weil de-
30 cored, be quhilke surlie is past ouer till a magnifik and a
riche monaster thair of the same name erected at the
toune syde, quhilke with a verie magnifike wal, al hail
w^t four square stane was walled round about aboue a
myle of gate, stiking and standeng out verie fair Images
35 and verie mony of thame. The pulchritude of quhilke

The mon-
aster of
Croce Regal.
The toune
of air.

The Mon-
aster of
Fale.

The toune
of Irvine.

Cludisdale
the nether.
The Baronie
of Renfrow
and the
toune.

* L. "Cart."

The mon-
aster of
Paslay.

The mon-
asteries in
Scotland
maist ornat.

Glasgwe ane
Archbis-
chopis sait.
ane acada-
mie.

ne gret
market.

Temple, bewtie of the ⁷²biking, and ecclesiastical veste-
ments, and decore of the * ⁷³zardes, may esilie contend
with mony kirkes, quhilkes this day ar halden maist
ornat in vthir cuntreyes: quhilke may trulie be spokne
of vthir monasteries with ws, butt ony exceptione, that 5
we neid no^t this to repeit agane: War nocht beutiful
and excellent monasteries, Aberbroth, Sanctandrois,
Dumfermilne, the haly rud house in Edinburghe, and
Melrose. Surlie Johne the last archiebischope of Sanct-
androis with ws, with gret expenses erected the tour of 10
the kirke of Paslay, that nane with ws bigit the lyke,
quhilke † afor had nocht fallin, It was sa sure foundet
nathir was jit perfyted.

Twa myles abone the toune of Renfrou is a gret and
ane large village vpon the watir of clyde named Goeuan ; 15
because it brewis gude ale commended throuch the hail
land. frome this beyond the watir of Clyd distant vthiris
twa myles is a noble toune to wit of Glasgwe quhair
is ane archibishopes sait. Surlie Glasgw is the maist re-
nowned market in all the west, honorable and celebreate : 20
Afor the hæresie began thair was ane Academie nocht
obscure nathir ⁷⁴infrequent or of ane smal numbir, in
respective baith of Philosophie and Grammer and politick
studie. † It is sa frequent, and of sik renoume ; that it
sendes to the Easte cuntreyes verie fatt kye, herring 25
lykwyse and salmonte, oxne-hydes, wole and skinis,
Buttir lykwyse that nane bettir, and cheise. Bot,
contrare, to the West (quhair is a peple verie numer-
able in respective of the commoditie of the sey cost),

* L. "hortorum"—gardens.

† L. "que antea parum firmo nixa fundamento, vix dum abso-
luta mole sua conciderat"—which, before, not having a suffi-
ciently firm foundation, when scarcely finished, had fallen by its
own weight.

‡ "It" refers to the word "market." The Latin text is quite
clear; but the translator has disturbed the order of the sentence, as
he often does.

by vthir merchandise, all kynd of corne to thame sendes.

Bot till Argyle, in the * hilande Iles, and lykwyse to the outmest Iles in Irland it sendes baith vine and ale 5 and sik † kynde of drink as thir natiouns haue pleasure off, to wit, maid of ale, of honie, anat seide, and sum vthires spices (this drink the commone peple commonlie callis Brogat). In this cuntrie thay lykwyse sell aqua vitæ, quhilke heir in place of wine thay commonlie vse. 10 It is a verie fair situatioun and plesand, abundant in ⁷⁵ gairdine herbis aple tries, and orchardis. Farther it hes a verie commodious seyporte, quhairin litle schipis ten myles frome the sey restis besyde the brig, quhilke brig haveng 8 bowis is ane gret delectatione to the lukeris 15 vpon it. The landes rounde about the space of 4 or 5 myles perteines to the Archibischope: of quhilkes the [‡]rentes hes nocht bene takne frome the heires thir thousand ^ȝearis and mair. Mairouer that in the same hæritage, Ilke hes rycheouslie from age to age succeidet 20 till vther, that worthilie thay may be called perpetual heires.

Vuir Clydisdale or Cludisdale (in quhais ⁷⁶ bordour Cludisdale. is Glasgwe foundet) as lykwyse nathir Cludisdale, amang fair forrests and schawis ⁷⁷ schene; with thiker woodes 25 sum are decored: heir I say is ane gold mynde in Craufurde mure, fund out in the tyme of King James the fourthe. Bot we mycht esilier cal it a § golde strand:

* L. "in Hebrides"—to the Hebrides and furthest parts of Ireland.

† L. "Mulsum quoddam"—a kind of mead.

‡ L. "Horum redditus ad mille et amplius annos adacti a colonis non sunt"—the revenues of these have not been put up to sale by the holders for a thousand years and more.

§ L. "Aurifluvium"—a gold *stream*, rather than a gold *mine*. "Siquidem non tam arte et labore illic aurum effoditur aut conflatur, quam sua sponte per agros fluit"—since the gold is not dug out or smelted, with skill and labour, but is merely found flowing through the fields.

if the golde rather ranⁿ nocht throuch the feildes, nor wrocht throuch arte war, or throuch trauell, arte, and labour war deluet out of the ground: for, I say, it rinis frome sandie furdes of burnes, or Riueris, that flowis from the topis of the knowis in Craufurdmure. Thair

5

The gold mynd in Craufurde mure.

Be quhat arte thay gather the golde.

the ⁷⁸ pure gather the sand, quhilke quhen thay haue sifted thay sell to him quha is maistir of warke, be waicht. Bot because thay daylie find nocht mair gold thair than thay do, the cause quhy is this, as said is, that the nerrest nychbour feildes ministeris nocht and gyues 10 the due and lawful mater vnto the fyre that the gold may be wrochte. Bot that quhilke * gold is called without ony labour thair is found. Cludisdale hes thir tounes,

The tounes Lanrik and Hammil-toune.

† Lanrik (sa named as thay will frome Arca Lanarum, as it war, ane woll arke). It lykewyse hes Hammiltoun, 15 finallie † Rugland: Nobill castelis it has, Bothval, Draf-fen, and Ham-miltoun. Sindrie vtheris notable houses mairouer thair may be seine.

ffrom Tintok top flowis thrie fludes (of quhilkes afor we maid mentione) Tuede, Annan, and Clyd, quhome 20 Tacitus calles in Latine Glota: thir thrie quhill in Diuerse places with a gret force thay entir in the sey, all that south parte of the Realme, thay make thrie nuiked.

Douglas-dale, Wal-copdale, Drisdale.

ffarther ar vthiris Landes sum, quhilkes frome the 25 Riueris that rinis throuch thame ar in a maner surnamed with dales, as Douglasdale, Walcopdale, & Drisdale, quhilkes for schortnes now I latt pas.

Tuedale nochtwithstanding because of the gude Wol in quhilke it abundes by all vthiris sulde nocht be slipit 30 ouer with silence. In this cuntrie ar fund, evin as with thair nychtbouris, that sum of thame are knawen to haue four or fyue hundir, vthiris agane aucht or nyne hundir,

* "Azurum"—probably *azzurite*, an ore of copper of a blue colour.

† L. "Lanaric."

‡ L. "Ruglen."

and sum tyme thay ar knawen to haue a thousand scheip : The scheip indeed ar litle, and hornes thay beir lyke rames ; bot the ⁷⁹ jewis twa, thrie or four, and the Ramis at sum tymes sax : Thay beir verie schorte tailis, ⁸⁰ als 5 schorte as the tail of ane hyne. In tendirnes of thair fleshe thay ar lyke the cattel that ar fed in the rest of the south cuntreyes of the Realme, bot farr excelis thame that feid in the pastoure of the nerrest cuntreyes. The cause is thocht to be this, that the knowis of thir cuntries 10 abundes in a certane schort and bare grase, quhairin scheip properlie delytes. It hes a noble toune, to name, Peblse, for that portione of the haly croce thair keipit religiouslie, anes lang syne verie celebrate through frequent and oft peregrinatione. Nocht far frome this is 15 a toune named Ekilis, and thair lykwyse ane ample and plesand pastoral called the forest in quhilke baith the gret and smal beistes of the Prince vses to feid : Quhair lykwyse is the goldmynd of Megetlande : quhairin ar meruellous gret hartes, and inumerable thair ar 20 found. Bot because of the hartis we haue made mentione, this we may eik to. Ouer all with ws in the hichest mountanis Gret hartis are sa frequent, that commounlie in a solemne hunting, the Prince cheiffie present him selfe, now fyue hundir, now viii. hundir, sum tyme 1000 at 25 ane tyme ar slayne : for than through the cry of men and the barking of litle dogs round about, the space, sum tyme of x., sum tymes of xx. myles and mair (*They are driven, L.*), within the narrow boundes of a certane valley, quhair the Lordes and noble men hes * appoyneted to remane and 30 (in)stutte thair abydeng. Out of that place the hundes being hunted, arrowis schott, jaiuelinis castne, and hounting cloubs : and with al kynde of armour thay sett vpon the hartis, no^t without gret danger baith of men and dogs : For the hartes of nature ar giuen to this, that gif thair 35 leidar fal amang the midis of his ennemis, or incur ony

The tounes
Peblse and
Ekilis.

Megetland.

Hartis, thair
multitude
nature and
hunting.

* L. " *Suas sedes statuunt* "—take up their positions

The diuer-
sicie of dogs
and their
nature.

present danger; thay al in ane troupe without feir followe, excepte thay die be the gate: Bot this is worthie of Rememberance, quhilke our selfes sawe, quhen we war present, of thir summe ar quhais fatt is funde ten inches thick, of quhilke sorte principallie ar in Argyle. Mair-
ouer because we heir haue maid mentione of the hunting, 5 sumthing in lyk maner we will say of the dogs. Of the hunting dogs are sindrie kyndes, and sindrie natures, of quhilkes the first kynde is gretter than ane tuelfmoneth alde calfe; and this sorte commonlie huntis the gretter 10 beistes, as *ȝe* sall sie, athir the harte or the wolfe. The secund kynde of hunting dog is sumthing lesse than is this, bot mair couragious than he and nobilar of kynde, a beist of a meruellous audacitie and swiftnes, that nocht onlie oft tymes vses to invade wylde beistes, 15 bot evin the *sam* men willinglie be the instinctioun of nature he vses to invade quhome he *perceiuet* to do ony skaith to his maistiris & Leidaris: Ennimies or traytouris vses mair to feir frome this kynde of dog oftymes, than frome the baldest *man* of weir. Another 20 kynde of hunting dog is to ⁸¹ sent, of quhilkes sum ar mekle mair than vthir sum, bot of nature ar lyke thir hairie dogs that ar sent to ws out of Almannie bot in body mekle les. Thir nocht onlie invades wylde beistes, bot lykwyse foules and sik kynde of beistes 25 as leieu alsweil be water as be land, in lyke maner and fisches lurking amang the stanes thay seik out with thair sent. Is jit another kynde of senting dogs far different frome the first, I speik nocht heir of this commone sorte that huntes the ⁸² Cuning and the Hair: This kynde is 30 verie rid, with black spotis amang, or contrare. In this kynde is sick wittines and crueltie, that the hie way butt ony errorr thay follow theiues, and quhen thay finde thame, quhither in houses or feildes, thay sett vpon thame, and with sik crueltie of nature, that thame onlie 35 thay ryue with thair teith, *ȝie* perchance albeit sitting

amang mony: ffor frome the first sent *quhilke* the dog perceiues, estir the cry of his Leidar, follow, *rinȝ*, or gang vthir men sa fast as thay will, it moues him nathing, he is nocht drawin back, bot still followis the fute of the 5 fier. only in passing a Riuers al is lost; because thair the sent perisses, to wit in the watir: * *quhilke quhen* the theefes vndirstandes, be mony turnes and bout-gangings thay dryue the pray, now on this syd now on that syd of the riuers: and bezonde the water, thay 10 ⁸³ finȝie a dwble passage, that in treding of the fute thay may be deceiued: The dog nochttheles, in the mein tyme, barkeng continualie, seases not afor he find the trad of the fliaris. Bot gif ony in tyme of peace, quhill a *per-sewar* is following ony thing he wantis, hindir this dog, 15 ⁸⁴ *ȝe* frome his innest, or maist secreit chamber he hes, he is accused, and giltie esteimet of this thift: Nathir only of nature hes this dog this ⁸⁴ *Inginge*, bot rathir of man, quha with gret labour brings him to this vse: quhairthrouch cumis to passe that quha amang thame do excell ar deir 20 boght and gyue a gret price.

This kynd nochtwithstandeng is thocht to differ nathing frome that kynde, quhilke huntes the hairis and vthiris wylde beistes. Is ȝit another kynde of slwthhundes, 25 ⁸⁵ laich of stature bot braid of body, because that invadeng the cunings vnder the earth, throuch violence out of thair Lairis and Dennis he dryues the foxis, the ⁸⁶ martrix, the ⁸⁷ brok and the wilkatt: This kynde gif at ony tyme he fynd the passage narrow, that he can nocht entir vndir the eard, he with his feit makes it large and 30 apnes it vpe, and that with sik trauail, that oft tymes he

The hunting
hundes in
the bordou-
ris of Ing-
land and
Scotland.

* L. “Quod cum sciunt prædones et abigæi, per multos gyros et mæandros, modo hanc, modo illam ripam prementes, prædam abigunt, et ultra ripas utrinque exitum simulant, eodem rursus redeuntes”—since thieves and cattle-lifters know this, they drive their booty through many turns and zigzags, now on one bank, now on the other, and make a feint of leaving the water on both sides, returning again to the same point.

is lost throuch his Diligence. Of the varietie of ⁸⁸ Messen dogs, w^t quhilkes gentle women vses to recreate thame selfes, althoch be mony and infinite, I will nocht heir make mentione.

Laudiane. Ane prouince named ⁸⁹ Laudiane on the South syd of Forth remaines gitt to speik off, and that indeid throuch the plentifulnes of the ground, decking and apparrelling of thair houses, and fairnes of thair biging, may weil be called cheif: sumtyme Pentland it was called, that is to say the land of the Peychts, evin as this day thae moutanis declairis sa named: Laudiane hes mony rueris that beir sail, nocht far from the sey, notwithstanding abunding in fische, nathir thair proffite of smale estimatione, throuch the benifite of the haiuning places thay haue. Bot the principal amang the tounes is halden (surlie) ¹⁰ **Pictland.** ¹⁵ Edinburgh: be reasone of the multitude of citizenis, abundance of marchandise, of the proper, principal, and special place quhair his soueranitie vses to make residens, of his Palice, and supreme Counsel, * lykwyse be rasone of the monumentis of alde wryteris, nocht in deid named ²⁰ aftir thair name, bot w^t the name of ⁹⁰ madne castel is Edinburgh named reyuen round about in the craig, sum tyme quhilke was nocht litle celebrate and solemne, round about I say except foranent the Toune is this castel ryven: The touris of Nobill men sax myles in ²⁵ circuite about this castel ar erected maist strenthie estir the maner of the cuntry les and mair abone ane hunder in number, quhilkes are decored with verie fair Lugengs. A myle distante from Edinburghhe is a fair haivin and now in lyke maner a rach toune, to wit, Leith, althoch in this ³⁰ **Leith a toune and ane hauning place.**

* L. "Ita veterum scriptorum monumentis, non ipso quidem nomine, sed castri puellarum, prærupta undique in rupe, nisi qua urbem respicit, illi imminentis, olim celebratissima"—also formerly very famous in ancient writers, not indeed under the same name, but under that of the maiden castle which hangs over it, on a rock precipitous on every side except that which looks towards the town.

our vnhappy age, nocht anes hes it felte the curst and
cruell furie of the weiris.

Is mairatouer Hadingtoune quhilke no^t lang afore
fortified be the Ingliſmen, bot afterward be ws; was
5 lang seiged be mony companies of frenchmenⁿ and
Germenis, no^t without a gret losse and miserie, and
a gret slaunchtir: of quhilke mater mair at large we
will speik in the awne place. Is mair ouer Dunbar,
quhilke evin vntil our dayes hes bene verie famous a
10 toune, with a castel maist strenthie: and than * Lin-
lythgwe, decored with the kings palice a beutifull
temple and a pleasanſt Loch ⁹¹ swomeng full of fyne
perchis, and vthiris notable fische. I pasſe ouer Mu-
ſilburgh, Dalkeith, the Queins porte or Ferrie, and
15 mony landwarde tounes ornat aneuch and elegant:
Mony collegiat kirkes ar in it: Of the Richer monasters
ar four, of menⁿ twa, Neubotle, the ane, and that quhilke
we said was vndir the title of the haly croce the vther;
and this we said was in Edinburgh: of Womēn lykwyse
20 twa, Hadingtoune and Northberwick. I speik now
nocht of that pure and cleine cloſtir perteining to the
sisteris of the † Scheines besyd Edinburgh: bot this,
that quhen of all suspicione, it was maist cleine, nocht-
withſtandeng was the first in the hail Realme eftir the
25 Chartirhous that be the aduersar was wraked and brocht
to nocht. Tua myles abone Edinburgh is a fontane,
to wit a perpetuall spring of watir: quhair gret drapis
of oyle perpetuallie sa spring vpe, atht nathir gif \exists
take mony sal thay appear the fewar, nather gif \exists
30 take nocht ane, sal thay seim the mae. Is said that
quhen it first sprang to have beine spilte out of S.
Catharines oyle, quhen thair the ⁹² pig quhairin it was,
negligentlie was brokne, quhen frome the Mounte Sinay

Hadding-
toune.

Lynlythgwe.

Mussilb: and
Dalkeith
ar monas-
teries in
Laudiane.

The cloſtir
in honour
of S. Catha-
rine of Sene.

A fountane
that spring-
eth oyle.

* L. "Linlythquonia."

† L. "Senensium sororum"—Sisters of St Catharine of Siena (?).

it was brocht to S. Margaret: Bot it is gude (as we vndirstand) to kure and to remeid diuers dolouris of the skin.

Gemis in Scotland.

In Laudien Land farther, and lykwyse in vthir provinces with ws ar funde Gemis, thir, to wit: the 5 *Turques, the †adamant, the Rubie, and the Margarite in gret number, bot the Turques, and the Rubie ar verie rare and few to be funde, bot the adamant ar in ‡ gretter number, than thay ar deir: bot the Margarite is baith § welthie and of a noble price. Thay indeid 10 schawe a schyneng brichtnes, notwithstanding mair obscur than thay quhilkes ar brocht in frome the Eist. In freshe water || buckies noct pleisand to the mouth, na lesse than in salt water buckies growis the Margarite.

15

The Water of fforth is ane arme of the Sea, and a place quhairwnto the sey flowis and ebbis, it rinis by Lawdien, and diuides the North frome Laudien, in quhilke is a gret and infinit multitude of Diuerse kynedes of fishe, quhair lykwyse ¶ excepte thir fishe, may be seine ane 20 foul, at vthir tymes thoch maist rair, ⁊it in this ane place maist frequent, for quhen in the Sey selfe ar mony ²³ Iles and Inches noct few, as the Mai, the **Basse, the ile of S. Colme, quhair is a monaster of the same name, noct obskure, †† Inchkeith and vthiris: this foul of whome 25 we speike, only bigis in the Basse, nathir in ony place with ws is funde excepte in Elissa or Elȝa a craig in the ¶sey foranent Galloway. ffarther sche is a Sey guse, as we use to speik, or that foul, rather, quhilke Plinius calles

* L. "Cyanenus"—a species of lapis-lazuli (?).

† L. "Anachites"—a name of the diamond.

‡ L. "Major est copia quam pretium"—the supply of diamonds is greater than the price.

§ Abundant. || L. "Concha,"—the pearl-oyster.

¶ L. "Præter," besides.

** L. adds, "Insula equorum"—the island of horses.

†† L. "Gervea," ‡‡ L. "In mari Vergivo."

Water of forth.
Iles, Mai,
Basse, S.
Colme.

Margarites.

ane *Picarine, commonlie now ane solande guse. In *Solande geis.*
 the Basse thay abund maist, in Elissa nocth sa mekle.
 This guse ȝeirlie in the spring tyme returnes to ws:
 quhairfra can na *mar* tell: bot † southwardlie. at her first
 5 flicht, quhen sche makes first residence sche flies twa
 dayes still and *continuallie* round about the craig: all
 this tyme settis na *mar* his heid out of the hous: Than
 bringis sche in a short space sa mony stickis, as
 will serue baith to her biging, and to be fyre to that
 10 hail familie *perchance* the number of xl. persounes (In
 that craig is sa stark ane castell that nane strenthier)
 the space of ane ȝeir, ȝe and langer. In the beginning
 15 *fliedlie* and with gret feir thay to cum are seine, bot how
 sone thay begin to bigg thair nestis, the grettest *gus* that
 20 is schott will nocth scar thame, nor chais thame away;
 thay lay thair egs: Thay feid thair ⁹⁵ birdis diligentlie,
 with the maist diligate fishe that thay find, quhilkes with
 a gret force thay bring frome the sey ground, when thay
 25 *dowk* violentlie. for thay delyte in this labour, and in sa
 gret labour, and thay ar sa ⁹⁷ snell and suift of flicht that
 be the seymen and marinelis sumtymes, thay ar fund
 twa myles and oft tymes mair frome the craig seiking
 thair pray. Mairatouer, thay are sa greidie that gif thay
 30 sie ony fishe mair diligate neir the craig, the pray quhilke
 perauentur, thay brocht far aff, with speid thay ⁹⁸ wap
 out of thair mouth, and violentlie wil now that pray
 invade, and quhen thay haue takne it will bring it to
 thair birdes: Gif thay sie, as oft chances, men take this
 35 fishe fra thair birdes, thay tyre nocth, with speid to flie
 to the fowlling agane; and agane and agane, how oft thay
 ar spoyled, ay quhill the sone gang to; that thay *can*
 nocth langre sie. finalie of thir *cumis* ȝeirlie to the capi-
 tane of the castell na smal, bot ane verie large *rent*; for

* L. “*Aquila quam Plinius Picarinam*,” &c.—that *eagle* which
 Pliny calls *picularina*, and the common people a solan goose.

† L. “*A meridie tamen*”—from the south, however.

nocht only baith to him selfe and to vtheris obteines he sticks, fische, $\text{\textit{je}}$, and the fowlis selfes, quhilkes because thay haue a diligate taste, in gret number ar sent to the nerrest tounes to be salde, bot lykwyse of thair fethiris, and fatt quhilkes gyue a gret price, he gathiris mekle money: of thame this is the commone opinione, that by vtheris vses thay serue to, thay ar a present remeid against the gutt, and vthiris dolouris of the bodie. farther sa gret a number is thair of thame that gif in a schip, tymlie in the morning $\text{\textit{je}}$ passe by the craig, quhill thay $\text{\textit{je}}$ it ar thair, the hail craig bowing doune, quhilke indeid, naturallie is black, $\text{\textit{je}}$ wil think aluttirlie quhyte. In compase it conteines fyve stages, and ane in hichte.* To this fowle the sey is sa natural that gif through a tempest, or any vthir chance sche lycht on the ground, quhair the sey sche sies nocht, as sche war destitute of benifite of her wings, sche can no^t rais her selfe. Thair amang mony vthiris fowlis, is $\text{\textit{je}}$ it ane certane kynd of fowle, in our mother young named the † Skout that bigs with ws, in quantitie lytle mair than the Duke bot weil lang in body, sche layis her egs gretter than guse-egs. In gret diligate is sche haldne: for the maistir of the ground vses nocht to ‡ by thame or obteine thame be price, bot to send thame in giftes and rewardes unto noble men his nyghtbouris and frindes. being sodin, sche is maist tendir, in the breist nocht vnlyke to the

The skout
lays gret
egs.

* Translator's note.—“fyue stages v quarteris of ane myle. heir take ilk stage for ane quarter, and viii stages the myle.” This is somewhat contradictory. L. has, “Continet suo ambitu quinque stadia, altitudine autem unum”—It has five *stadia* in circumference and one in height. A stadium is generally considered to be something less than the eighth part of an English mile; namely, 606 ft. 9 in. The height of the Bass is variously given by modern authorities at 350, 400, and 420 feet; and its circumference as “about a mile.”

† L. The Guillemot.

‡ L. “*pretio addicere*”—to set a price upon them.

Wylde bare,* quhilkes keip lang vncorrupte. Sche is said to be fund in ane only Ile, in the sey cost besyde Cornwale foranent the Realme of France, † bot with ws this fowle may be seine with ⁹⁹neb and feit of purpur 5 hew, nocht only in ane place, that only is thocht to be fund in Cornwale of sum. The Basse mairouer is sik a strenth that nathir be force or fraud is it thocht wizznable. for the craig is a myl within the Sey, and that maist deip round about, ‡ sa distant frome the land that quha *cumis* 10 in ^{w^t} gret difficultie mon *cum*: Thairfor with lang ¹⁰⁰towis and Lathiris lattin doune thay ar towit vpe, quha *cumis* in: and thair can no^t be admitted bot be this Ingine and helpe of thame that ar within: and that necessitie constraine thame nocht quha ar within, 15 ¹⁰¹excepte fleshe, fishe and eldinge, quhilke we said was obteined throuch the benifite of thir fowlis, this Ile hes a pasture, or as we say, a Lesoue, that may feid sum wethiris: ¹⁰²mosse mairouer quhilke ¹⁰³peit and turfe may minister to the fyre: and by all that, a meruelous 20 thing, in the heid of this craig is ane calde and perpetual spring, of fyne, freshe and fair water.

That now we may returne, quhair we *cam* fra: In Laudien toward the west vpon the water of Forth is Striuling Schire nerrest. This schire in respecte of 25 birthfulnes of the ground and § repair of nobilitie

* L. "apri"—wild boar.

† L. "quemadmodum et apud nos videre licet non uno loco corniculam illam, rostro, pedibusque purpureis, quæ in solo cornubia (unde et nomen ei indimus) inveniri a nonnullis putatur"—just as may be seen in more than one place among us that *little crow* with purple beak and feet which is considered by some persons to live only in Cornwall, whence we give it its name. This must be the *chough*, otherwise called the Cornish crow.

‡ L. "adeo undique præruptus ut magna difficultate a quopiam concendi queat,"—so steep on all sides that it can be scaled only with great difficulty.

§ L. "frequentia nobilium"—concourse of nobility.

according to thair * boundis is nathing behind Laudien selfe. Forth thair, by abundance of salmon^{te} fishe that it hes, abundes in sum vthiris kyndes of fishe in † ¹⁰⁴ smacke and plesand taste: vpon thir water bankes appeiris evin as vpon the bankes of Thai, peise and beines to be ranker than in ony vther place: Eldine to the fyre, quhither ȝe ¹⁰⁵ wissem war of Moss, Trie, or Stane, is abundant and sufficient aneuch. The same schire hes a toune of the same name, to wit, Striuling fortified alsweil naturallie as be arte, to † quhilke, a ¹⁰ rouch rock or craig round about, lyes neir, nocht far vthirwyse than the craigs of Madin Castell neir Edinburgh, gif a dangerous hill towarde the North, ioyned thairwith and sticking thairto, war no^t cummirsum and contrare to it: a refuge nochtwithstandeng it is not vn- ¹⁵ sure. Thair hes the king a palice verie honorable, maist magnificent, ¹⁰⁶ sum tyme named the mountane of § Sturte, thaireftir Snawdoune hill: thairfra it is a fair and plesand sychte to the feildes, to the Riuers, to the Parke, and to the nerrest mountainis. Heir ar twa monasteris, ²⁰ ane of men, bitit of alde and magnifike aneuch, induet this day with noble rent, and a riche benifice, called the || feild of Keneth, situat on the bankes of the Water of Forth, within a myle to the toune: The vther monaster, of women xii. myles from the toune to name ¶ Manwal. ²⁵

3erde stane
or trie wod,
that is Peit
or Kole.

Monteith.

Neist this westwarde lyes monteith, nobilitat and

* In proportion to its size—"pro suis terminis,"—L.

† L. "sapore gustuque suavissimo"—of a very sweet *relish* and taste.

‡ L. "cui impendet (non longe securus ac Puellarum castrum Edinburgh) prærupta undique rupe, nisi infesto colle adversus aquilonem coherente premeretur"—over it hangs (much as Maiden Castle hangs over Edinburgh) a rock precipitous on all sides, except that it is pressed by a dangerous hill adjoining on the north.

§ L. "Mons dolorosus"—the hill of sorrow. "Sturte" has the same meaning.

¶ L. "Campus Keneth"=Cambuskenneth.

¶ L. "Man vallum"—Manwall.

mekle commendet through the name of sik cheise as nane fyner, quhairin by vthir singular things that it hes, ane famous suerlie and kinglie Castell, lykwyse ane certane monaster, of midway rentis it conteines. From

5 thir cuntreyes that wyde and ample forrest, called the

* Tor Wod, hes the beginning; quhais boundis war sa large, that frome the Callendar and Caldir wod evin to Lochquhaber war extendet, in † quhilke onlie, estir the commoun speiking, war the quhyte kye fund, of quhilkes now restes verie few, or nane: quhair in lyke maner war sa mony wylde bares, that, as the alde wryters make mentione, than being full, is now nocth ane: (evin as our nychbour Inglande has nocth ane wolfe, with quhilkes afore thay war mekle molested and invadet) bot we now nocth few, þe contrare, verie monie and maist cruel, cheiflie in our North cuntrey, quhair nocth only invade thay scheip, oxne, þe and horse, bot evin men, specialie women with barne, outragiouslie and fercelie thay ouirthrows.

20 In this Wod war nocth onlie kye bot oxne and Bules snawquhyte with a mane thick and ¹⁰⁷ syde, quhilke thay beir lyke the mane of a lyone. thay mairouer war sa cruel and wylde that frome mankynde thay abhored in sik a sorte that quhateuir thing the handis of men had

25 twechet, or the air of thair mouthis had blawne vpon or ¹⁰⁸ endet as we speik, frome al sik thay abstained mony dayes thaireftir. Farther, this oxx or Bull was sa baulde, that nocth only in his yre or quhen he was prouoked walde he ouircum horsmen, bot euin feiret he nathing

30 nathir tyred he, commonnlie al men to invade baith with horns and feit, þe the dogis, quhilkes with vs ar maist

The Tor
Wod.

Wolfs.

Ky Oussin
and wylde
bullis.

* L. "Caledonia silva."

† L. "Jam vero Caledonia ursos, quibus aliquando fuisse refertis-simam antiqui scriptores prodiderunt, nullos omnino non habet"—Caledonia has now no bears, with which old writers tell us it was formerly infested. L. makes no mention of the white cattle here.

violent, he regardet nocht bot walde ¹⁰⁰ clate him with his cluifes or ¹¹⁰ kaithe him on his hornes. His flesche was all girssillie bot of a trim taist. He was ¹¹¹ afortymes a frequent beist in this Torr Wod, bot now consumed through the glutunie of men only in thrie places is left, 5 in the Park of Striuling, the Wod of Cummernalde and of Kinkairne.

In thir cuntryes Eistward, and vpon the water of Clyde southward is the Lennox boundet, quhairin is a freshe watir Loch, lang myles xxiiii. : bot in bredthe viii. 10 oft fleitande with gret surges and waues lyke the wais of the sey, oft I say, quhen nocht sa mekle as ane are of wind wil be harde, called the Loumond, plentifull of Salmond fishe maist plesand, and of diuerse and sindrie vthirs fishes nocht few. frome this Loch rinis into the 15 water of Clyde the water of Leuin, quhair clyd entiris in the sey. Quhair thir twa Riuers meitis hings ouir a gret craig and standes far out, in quhilke is foundet the castell quhilke we cal Dumbrition : Clyd rinis by the craig on the ane sid, or as we say *on* this syd, Leuin 20 rinis by *on* that syd, as we vse to speik, for * it is forkit in the midis (or diuidet) haveng a loch of freshe water standing on euerie syd, bot nocht throughlie diuidet, situat in a gret, surely, and a plane field, haueng na in-clyneng or bowing : bot lyke a lang peir sett in a round 25 aple, and put in the nuik of a round table, it has a refuge maist sure : Be force is it neuir *winn*, be falshed notwithstanding, and treason of ennimies nocht ¹¹² seindle hes it bene takne. In the ¹¹³ scoug of the craig and castell is a verie quyet hauining place : Bot abone or 30 vppirmer, vpon Leuin, is the toune, quhilke frome the

In thrie places now ar they left.

The Lou-mond loch.

Dumbartane Castel and toun.

* L. “est enim bisulca, in medio stagnum aquæ dulcis habens, undique sed non æqualiter prærupta, in magna planitie,” &c.—it (the rock) is cleft in two, having a pool of fresh water in the middle, is steep on all sides, though not equally so, placed in a broad plain, &c.

castel is nocht distant a myle of gait, hit frome the castel has the name. Heir lykwyse is ane hauin of gret securitie.

Wpon the coste of the Lenox lyes Argyle, led about 5 with mony turnings and windings, as it war diuidet in peices be 7 bosumis of the Sey, quhilkes lochis they call: of quhilkes the maist famous, ample, and best amang thame is Loch fyne: for in lenth it is about xxv. myles, in bredth althrouch at the leist 4: In the gudnes, 10 and multitude of herring it hes a gay commend, decored round about with nobil touris, as with Argyle selfe, and vthiris potent, worthie and honorable barounis nocht few. Is thair, lykwyse a freshwatir loch called Lochous almaist of that samemekledome, quhilke in the Loumond 15 was, we now declaireid. In this loch are Iles xii., castles twa Enconel and Glenurquhart. Bot quhair it entiris in the Sey, it is plentiful throuch oft and frequent salmond fisheng: bot quhair Argyle lokes to the Sey, evin to Lochfyn is full of hiche craigs, and black barren mountainis; 20 bot nocht vnmeit to feid hart and hyne, cattel and wyld beistes: bot to beir kornes, except in sum glenis or vallayes, neir the sey syde is verie vnmeit. In the mountainis of Aargyl, in Rosse lykwyse, and sindrie vthiris places, ar fed ky, nocht tame, as in vthiris partes, bot 25 lyke wylde hartes, wandiring out of ordour, and quhilkes, throuch a certane wyldnes of nature, flie the cumpanie, or syght of men: as may be seine in winter, how deip saeuir be the snawe, how lang saevir the frost ly, how scharpe or calde how evir it be thay nevir thair heid sett 30 vndir the ruffe of ony hous. Thair fleshe of a meruellous sueitnes, of a woundirful tendirnes, and excellent diligatnes of taste, far deceives the opiniounis of men, that nevir tasted thame: bot quhen thay ar sodne thair fatt is sik, that aftir the maner of the fatt of vthir ky, it freises nocht frahand and congeilis, bot certane dayes remanes vnfrossin lyke oyle. Bot quhen al of this sort ar mekle

Argyle, afore
114 argath-
lia, now
argadie.

Ky nocht
tame.

commendet than cheiflie ar thay that out of * Karrik ar sent vnto vs. † Thair, herdis keipis the ky: bot the oxne no^t, except ane with ilkie draue: for thay tile the ground with horses. quhen thir sorte, in the sumer tyme thairfor ar weil fed, in wintir quhen thay ar through fatt, and through fatnes weil ¹¹⁵ bowdin, through all partes of the realme thay ar sent to be sauld: and being slane, thay ar poudiret, or with salte ar seasoned vnto the neist summer, to be keipet frome corruptione to thair commoun vse of daylie fude, as swyne fleshe is vset in vthir ¹⁰ cuntries, of quhilke our cuntrie peple hes lytle plesure. Bot betuene Lochfyn and Lochous, quhilke properlie thay wil to be named Argyle, quhais best parte thay cal Cnapdolian, the ground is mekle mair plentifull; for in greine and florishing pasture, in fertile, and fruitful ¹⁵ ground it abundes.

Cnapdolian.

Lorne.

The castel
of Dunstau-
age.

Kaintyr.

Mariouer the countrie of Lorne, sumtyme was a portione of Argyle, quhilke as it is maist pleasant, delectable, and fair to behaulde, sa is it maist fertile and fruitfull: quhair is a castel, quhilke afortymes was called Euonium, ²⁰ bot now Dunstauage, baith in † antiquitie and stabilitie situat maist sure. farther beyonde lorne, the lande as it war in disdane is driuen to a strait and gret narownes, extending the selfe to the § hilande seyes, of a certane || gret boundes lx. myles or thairabout in lenth, with ²⁵ fludes flowing round about, and wattirrie wais evin sa of the sey, quhilke boundes was sum tyme named Menaia, bot now thay cal it Kaintyr, that is the head of the

* L. "Carectonia."

† L. "Earum vitulas tantum servant pastores: vitulos autem (quia terram illic sulcant) nisi singulos singulis armentis non servant"—the husbandmen keep the cow-calves only; but the bull-calves they do not keep, except one for each herd, for there horses plough the land.

‡ L. "antiquitate et firmitate percelebre"—very famous for strength and antiquity.

§ L. "Hibernicum mare"—the Irish Sea.

|| L. "ingenti quadam chersoneso"—in a certain large peninsula.

land. Vndir this name Menaia was thocht ance Argyle to be comprehendet. The ground heir is maist plane, baith in pastoral and in cornes abundant. The * boundes heirfra till Irland is only xvi. myles: bot lyk-
 5 wyse for the concurring of ye troublous ebbing and flowing of the Sey, surges, and wais with vthiris, is verie perilous to the seymen and marizelies. The Promon-
 torie of this place (quhilke thay cal Kaintyr) the inhab-
 bitouris of that countrie calis the Mule of Kaintyr, to
 10 wit, † sik a nuik or elbok of land, quhair is committed lyke a battel amang ye surges of the maine Sey, fleiting and flowing thairout. In al thir cuntries, ar diuorse touris, munitiouns and strenthis, ȝe and kinglie castelis
 15 nocht few, quhilkes war erected of alde that baith the outragiousnes of theiues, and the crueltie of murthireris mycht be stayet, amang the rest is this castel to name Dunartæum, nocht far frome the Mule.

The mule of
Kaintyre.

In lyke maner, gif turneng my selfe to the in-cuntrie, I speik ony thing of the schirrefdome of Perth, or of
 20 Stratherne; and Fife, ȝe have the best parte of the Realme midway, † conforme till our stile, apned vpe. The schirrefdome thairfor of Perth is nocht little bot ample indede and large, quhair is a gret multitude of peple baith in housbandrie and nobilitie, and the ground
 25 plentifull. Amang the rest Perth has a toune named now S. Johnestoune: quhilke as it is ancient and of gret antiquitie, sa in a verie delectable place is it situat vpon the watir of Tai, and lykwyse of alde weil walled about, by ¹¹⁶the consuetude of vthir tounis with ws, and
 30 as this day ȝit is to sie, beutiful and fair, and in ane

Perth the
toun of S.
Johnstoune
called.

* L. "trjectus"—the passage.

† L. "id est angulum illum quo sibi observantum (*observantum?*) oceanii fluctuum quasi pugna committitur"—that is, the corner where is the battle meeting of the ocean waves *warring* with each other.

‡ L. "Priorem regni partem utcumque nostro stylo adumbratam habes"—you have the first part of the kingdom to some degree sketched out by our pen.

ordour maist decent weil disponed, excepte the destructione of religious places. Is nocht ¹¹⁷ honest, that euerie craft (of quhilkes thair is na smal number) occupie his awne gait asyd? A notable brig it hes by the rest with ws. Nocht far frome thir walis was a noble clostre and large of the Cartusianis, quhilke the heides of the toune, Caluinists ouirthrew first of al in thir furie, first, I say, afor ony vthir. Nathir was this prouince destitute of monasteries baith of men and women, albeit nocht sa welthie as at vthir tymes. * Thay farther conteine 10 within thair boundes twa Bischopries, Dunblane and anothir quhilke in respecte of the rentis may esilie striue with ony vthir in our boundes, to wit, Dunkeld. † Perth, Stratherne ly weil manured, frome that water called the water of Erne quhilke rinis into Tai. ¹⁵

the monstru-
ous stane.

Strath-
munde.

ffour myles of gait frome that place, quhair it rinis into Tai, is said to be a stane nocht verie mekle bot (*of*) sum strange *Virtue*, that it can nocht be transported: for ‡ frome the place quhair it lyes, it may be mouet frome this syd to that, or that to this be ony body, bot w^t na 20 force or strenth out of that place may it be mouet, or ony arte or craft of man, this is the commoun and continual rumour and fame of & amang all. Strathmund, also of alde § knawes Perth, abundeing baith in proffitable pasture, and in fertil cornes. Strathmund mairouer 25 hes Athol to her nybour, with plentiful pasture, weil watired. The ground is fatt aneuch bot no^t ouer al alyke for in sum places it is sa fertile, that gif it be weil labourit albeit na seid be sawine, growes gude beir vpe frilie; nochtwithstanding in sum vthir places, gif ^{3e} 30

* It contains. (L.)

† L. "Perthiæ, Strathernia, terra bene culta, subjacet, ab Erno amne Taum influente nominata,"—to Perth belongs Strathearn—a well-cultivated land, named from the river Earn, which falls into the Tay.

‡ L. "in."

§ L. "agnoscit"—belongs to Perth.

sawe, in a schorte tyme, as quheit into beir allutterlie it
degeniris.

Last of al, frome the * diocie of Perth evin to the grete
Sey quhatevir land is betueine thir twa mane fludes Forth
5 southward, and Tai northward, Fife is called : Nathir is

Fife.

this schire sa ample as be the benifite of nature, and
industrie of the peple, it is weil manured and laboured
with diligence. For it round about hes hauinis com-
modious anuich ; † quhair, quhen thay ar bigit, with a
10 certane and gret schawe of magnificence, of sum gret
toune, mony thay delyte. Of thir sorte cheiffie ar thir.
Crel, Pittinweme, Kirkaldie, Diserte, Kingorne, Dun-
fermling, Culrosse. The ground heir ouir al maist fer-
tle, athir in quheit, or ony vthir kynde of corne, or maist
15 conuenient for the feiding of Cattel lykwyse and of scheip :

The tounes
in Fife.

This schire, anew of stane coles to burne in the fyre, and
abundantlie it findes no^t to the selfe only, bot lykwyse to
all beyond Tai, in quhilkes cuntryes, excepte in only
Suthirland, and that only in our age, thir coles ar nocht
20 to be funde. Heir through the benifite of thir coles is quhyte salte.
maid mekle quhyt salte, as on the bray foranent vpon
Laudian syde, is maid of salte water : Bot in vthir places,
for the penuritie of wodis, out of the ȝeard we cutt, peates
and turfes, quhilkes, quhen we haue cuttit, we dry at the
25 sone, and ‡ of this is æstemet lyght fyr, and evin sa-hail-
sum ; throuch the hail Realme. Bot this land, evin as al
that it conteines, we meruel nocht a litle off. ffor it will
be sax, sevin, or viii. cubites hich of fat mossie ground as
glew, bot maist barren, beiring nathing bot ane pure and

stane coles
to the fire.Fire of peitis
of the earth
and turfes
dryet at the
sone.

* L. "Ditione"—the territory.

† L. "Ad quos cum magni quidem vici summa quadam magnificentiae extruantur, plurimum delectant"—at these ports large streets (towns) are built, with the appearance of great magnificence, and are very delightful to behold.

‡ L. "Unde et ignis lucidus et saluber toto fere regno habetur"—whence a bright and healthy fire is obtained in nearly all the kingdom.

smal grase, quhome al almaist thinkes to be mosse, and sik kynde of erthe and sik grase, vthiris thinkes it to be the *herb gude to give the cattel against the rute that thay cal trifoly, because it beires nathing. Bot this causes men meruellouslie to wondir, that vndir that earth ar fund gret stokis and blokis of wondirful akes and vthir tries, sum rottin through aldnes, sum agane fresche and hail and for bigging nocht vnmeit: for that thir tries sumtyme grew in thir places, is cleirer than the nune day, and that through force, and nocht through age thay haue bene brocht out is euident aneuch, quhen mony of thame, as said is, remanes \exists it nocht wormetin and vncorrupte, bot freshe and fyne and meit to be put in vse: Bot can nocht be thocht, at leist may skairslie be thocht, that the ground growing sa thick abone culde haue couiret thik wodis as we sie. Bot how hes sa gret and wyde wodes evir thair growin, quhair now, be na arte or craft of man, will nocht sa mekle as ane small wande grow (the ground is sa barren) we can nocht meruel aneuch. Our Jugement thairfor is, that in the tyme of the vniuersal flude, was castne in, that thick mater quhilke first ouerspred thay gret wodis and large, and quhilke thaireftir in processe of tyme, turned into that thicknes, that it grew into fast eard: for gif at ony tyme, be the inhabitouris it be almaist cuttit out to the vsse of the fyre, it is seine, quhen it is fillet vpe, through a certane gift of nature, in a few \exists eiris to grow agane with speid. Bot of this aneuch. Gentil menis places and gret palices ma sal \exists e find in na place, than in Fife. Is thair, of the kings, ane palice maist magnificent, quhais name is Falkland: Thair twa Lochis, Torre and Leuin: Thair is a castel weil fortified: farther, \exists iemens and housbandmen thair sal \exists e sie gang weil arayed w^t maiestie

Falkland,
the Kings,
palice.

* In place of these two lines, L. has simply "Cytisus"—i.e., a sort of clover or trifolium. The next words—"because it beires nathing"—are not in L.

and authoritie : quhilke albeit in al prouinces with vs be commone, *ȝit* maist of al in Fife : In fife, mairouir, sittis the Primat of the Realme, the citie of S. Androes is the cheif and mother citie of the Realme ; for frome him it 5 hes the name, quha is named patronne of Scotland, to wit S. Andro, quhair with vs is a famous Wniuersitie and a notable schule, quhilkes wald God thay at this tyme flurished alsweil in thair theologie, as thay flurishe in thair Philosophie, and vthiris humane studies. In 10 that prouince is lykwyse the toune of Couper nocth of smal reputatione ; quhair Juges he quha is Juge ; and * Schireffe of the cuntry to his stile hes. Heir ar mony Clostiris, in quhilkes the maist welthie ar the monaster of Dunfermling, Lindoris, the Priorie of S. Androis ; 15 Colrosse, Pittinwime, Balmerino, Abirdour and Elchok, of quhilkes thir twa ar women.

THE PROUINCES OF THE NORTHE PARTE
OF THE REALME.

About to speik sumthing of the vthir parte of the Realme, I wil begin at the west cost of Lorne, quhair I left offe, and thairfra Northerlie wil perseueir, vpon the 20 Sey coste *on* sik a maner as we may *cum* to the mouth or entrie of the water of Tai, quhilke separates Fife frome Angus, that the partes, quhilkes lies in the mid cuntry I the esier may comprehend.

Loquhabre is thairfor nychtbour to Lorne, in pastoral, *Loquhaber.* 25 in wodis, and in yrne abundant, in corne nocth sa plentifull. Thair, twa riuieris, amang the rest, of alde ar no^t a little famous, the name of the ane ¹¹⁸ Louthe, the name of the vther Hispan, quhilkes ar esteemed to excel mony vthirs riuieris baith in Salmonde, and in abundance of

* L. "Vicecomes illi titulus est"—Viscount is his title.

vthiris fishes. Bot the truth of the mater is nocht publisid, because the rude peple, quha ar inhabitouris, strukne throuch a vane feir, that throuch the abundance of thair fishe thay cum ¹¹⁹ nocht sum tyme to skaith, and that of strangers, thay admitt na man thair with thame to the fisheng willinglie excepte thair awne nychtbouris and cuntry men. * Nathir ony maner of way gif thay labour to fishing bot sa mekle as serues to thair awne vse for the tyme, nocht kairing as it war for the morne.

At the entrie of Louth was afor tyme a citie maist ¹⁰ welthie to name Inverlouth, to quhilke the frenche men and Spazieards oft because of thair treffik sailed ouir; bot this eftirward be thame of Denmark and Norway was quirthrawin, and nevir agane restored be us, quhilke afor ony thing may be ascriued to our † beistlines. ¹⁵

Quha passis farther wil find Rosse, nocht a litle parte of this prouince, quhilke sum tyme was called ‡ Luge, is in his way, nocht indeid verie braid, bot meruellous lang, extending the selfe evin to the midland. quhat perteines to the § Irishe Sey may surlie mair commodiouslie be ²⁰ occupiet be the wylde beistes than be men, for the gret difficultie of wodis, and mountanis. bot quhair that pairt of Albion eistward is flowed neir and run by with the || mane Sey, beires corne in abundance, and in mony

* L. "Neque ipsi, in diem modice viventes, nisi ad suos pro tempore usus piscationi ullo modo dant operam"—nor do they themselves give any trouble to the fishing except for their own present use, and they live sparingly and for the day.

† L. "Qua nostra est ignavia"—which is a disgrace to us.

‡ L. "Lugia." The Lugi and Mertæ occupied Sutherland in early Roman days. Ptolemy has the river Lugia in Ireland=Belfast Lough. The Irish name was Loch Laogh, and Adamnan renders it *stagnum vituli*. *Laogh* is a calf in Irish and Gaelic, and is probably the word meant by Lugia. If this is the word Lugi, it is remarkable that *mart* should be the Gaelic word for heifer. It would seem that the two tribes took their names from these animals.—Celtic Scotland, i. 206.

• § L. "Vergivium."

|| L. "Germanicum."

places fyne quheit, notwithstanding engamaist ouer al is mair conuenient to feid cattel, for it is verie famous throuch the name of ky maist fatt; finalie, in hart and hine, dae and Rae, and in wilde foulis of the gretter 5 sort it flowis in abundance. Thair nests heir bigis lykwyse, the falcoun, the sparhalk, and diuersh vthiris kyndes of ¹²⁰ halkes, evin as mony egles. In Rosse and Loquhaber, and vthiris places amang hilis & knowis, ar nocht in missing fir trie sufficient, quhair 10 oft sittis a certane foul and verie rare called the * Capercalze, to name, with the vulgar peple, the horse of the forrest, les indeid than the corbie, quhilke pleises thair mouth, quha eitis her, with a gentle taste, maist acceptable. Sche lyues of only the tuigs or tendir 15 branches of this trie: Is lykwyse in thir cuntreyes anothir foul, in gret number, les than the vther, with ruch feit, w^t rid ¹²¹ bries, our cuntrey men cal her, † “the cok that bigis in places hard and difficle to cum vpe to.” Is also another that bigis in na place 20 bot in sik places as thir, sumthi^{ng} les than the ¹²² fasiane, bot in colour, and partlie in taste nathir is sche vnylyke: we oft cal her the blak cok: sche amang the smal bledis of the herbe called trifolie cheiflie lyues, nathir alluterlie frome the ¹²³ stuffe does 25 sche absteine. Is ³it ane foul, † this as a wype be the way, that gretlie abhoris the presens of man, quhilke the Gustarde commonlie thay cal: vpon the bair ground sche lays her egis, quhilkes gif sche perceiue be the handes of man to haue bene handlet, or be the ende

In harter,
wyld beists
and foulis it
abounds.

The falkon
sparhalk.

The foul
called caper.

The blak
cok lyk the
fasiane.

The foul
called the
Gustard.

* L. “Capercalze, id est *sylvester equus vulgo dicta*”—the Capercalze, that is, *the horse of the woods*, as it is commonly called. This points to the Gaelic name of the bird—*capal coille*—which may be so translated.

† L. “Nostrum Gallum tesquorum dicunt”—our countreymen call it the “heath-cock.” The description plainly indicates the *grouse*, which is called in Gaelic *cun fhraoich* = heath-bird.

‡ L. “ut hoc obiter dicam”—by the way.

or air of his mouth ony way to haue bene violat, sche, as no^t able to ¹²⁴ cleck burdis of thir egis, cumis never thame, bot cleine forsaikis thame: in colour, and taste sche is nocht vnylike the pertrik, bot in gretnes sche is gretter than the * Phink. of Pertrikis in sum cuntryes ar gret abundance, bot of Laferokis ouer al far gretter, in sa far that xii. for a frenche sous thay commounlie sell. farther because nathing is althrouch fortunat and happie, quhat ane way abundes with ws, another way inlakes with vs, and is indigent: for the foul called the storke, the fasiane, the turtle dwe, the feldfare, the nichtingale, with vthiris natiounis ar frequent, bot skairs with us ar fund: Cranes anew, as lykwyse herounis: bot † Phinkis, of quhilkes in Ingland ar in gret numbir, with ws ar fewar.

5

10

15

Amang the Lochis or bosumis of the Sey, that abundantlie flowis in al kynd of fishe, in Rosse, Lochbroune in ‡ commendatione has the first place, copious in herring miracolouslie. Afor xx. ȝeirs was neuir seine, that fisheris vset to frequent Loch brune: frome that tyme, § bot I can nocht tel, gif evir in ony place of the earth in sa narow a place or sa narow boundes, mae in fewar ȝeiris than thair hes bene takne, cuming thair at flicht speid, nocht only the Scotis mer, bot the frenche mer, flemengs, and Inglysmen. ¹²⁵ Bot quhair in sa mony ȝeiris, this vset hes nocht bene, is thocht to be a diuine punitiōne: ffor gif in ony place quhair a tak of herring is,

20

25

* L. "Olorem"—the swan. Phink=finch? The great bustard is much like the partridge in colour. The male measures about 3 feet 9 inches in length, and has been known to weigh 30 lb.

† L. "Olores"—swans.—See note p. 45, line 11.

‡ L. "Primam nostra memoria laudem obtinuit Loubrunus"—Lochbroom has attained its highest praise in our own memory.

§ L. "Verum ab eo tempore nescio si uspiam terrarum tam angusto loco plures certis quibusdam annis quam illic capiebantur"—Bot from that time I know not if in any part of the world, in so small a place, more (herrings) have been taken than here in certain years.

Pertriks,
lauerocks.

Crannis,
herounis,
phinkes.

Lochbrune
copious in
herring fish-
ing.

as thair, be ony slauchtir, or ony scheding of manis blude aryse, for a certane [number] of ȝeiris following, through verie instinctioun of nature, thay ar said to abhor frome that place, and to abunde in vthir places, 5 cheiflie quhair of ¹²⁶ victual is mair skant. Mairouer quhen gret abundance of herring ȝeirlie ouir al through al the cost of Scotland is takne, jit noct in ilk place at ane tyme nathir ay alyke gude: for in the Westir Seyes, in that bosum of Clide, in thir bosumis nerhand, 10 quhilkes Loches thay cal, the hail haruest & beginn^g of Winter is a gret schule of herring, bot in na place sa fatt, and of sa pleisand a taste as in that loch mair Westirlie, quhilke asfor we expremed vndir the name of Fine. About the end of wintir, and thaireftir a certane 15 space asweil in the eister cost towarde Fife, as southward ¹²⁷ foranent Carrik and Galloway thay ar in gret multiplie. Bot as amang thame thay differ in taste, sa with thame baith quhen now thay ar *gutted, and the meltis takne out, thay ar sa leine that thay ar noct 20 to be compared with the rest, to wit, the first. As tuecheng vthiris fishes, I can noct tell, gif in ony place of the warlde, athir be mair varietie or mair abundance, of sum kyndes, baith freshe and salt water fishe, of Turbat, ffluik, and plase fluik, of ostiris, Buckies, 25 and vthiris schal fishe, wilkes, and vthiris fishes amang the craigis and stanes. Also makrel, the codfishe, and perches maist fine: of quhilkes all war anuich to say, that mekle bettir ¹²⁸ cheip with ws than † w^t strangers, quha knawes no^t the mater, we think, thay may *be* bocht. 30 finalie of the Sey calfes, and gret monstorous quhales, of quhilkes in our Sey is a gret number, the † cause of this our compend, permitis vs noct copiouslie to expone.

a wondirful
thing of the
herring.

abundance
of fish in
Scotland.

* L. “exhaustis lactibus”—i.e., after spawning.

† L. “quam ab exteris qui id non norunt credi posset”—cheaper than could be believed by strangers who do not know the fact.

‡ L. “Compendii nostri ratio”—the scope of our compendium.

The porte of
Cromartie
the Rede of
Rest.

Is farthermair in Rosse the firth of Cromartie, sa
plentiful in sa mony kyndes of fishe maist fyne, and sa
famous in sa sure a havin for schipis, that noct w^tout
cause the historiographours named it, the Porte of saif-
gaird and saiftie. That toune is ancient and of gret
5 antiquitie called Rosmarkine, throuch the Reliques of
* S. Boniface; and decored throuch the Sepulchres, and
monumentis of alde of his fatheris: quhairfra is noct far
distant the Cathedral Kirk of Rosse, sa named noct
frome the toune, bot frome the Prouince. the name 10

Rosmark
the Bis-
chopis toune
of Rosse.

of the Toune situat vpon the syd of the firth, is named
the † Chanrie, quhair (*is*) the Bischopes Palice, noct
far distant frome the Channounis houses, in beutie, and
magnificence, Inferiour to verie few with ws. Is thair
lykwyse the kingis castel noct far off on the bray syd 15

a magnifick
Palice.

vpon the vthir syd of the firth, quhais name is Dingwale,
quhair gret welth of Salmonte: and noct far frome this

The castel
of Dingwal.

another kingis castel, to name, the Rid Castel of ald hes
bene, foranent quhilke on the vthir syd standes the
Towre of Louett. 20

abundance
of ostiris.

In thir Seyes amang vthiris fishes, ar mony ostiris, and
mussilis, and abundance of vthir kyndes, and varietie
that breidis amang the stanes and grauel. Neir this is
a famous furde in the Riuver of ¹²⁹ Forn called the
Stocfurde of the Rosse, and this is another maner of 25
fishing mekle esier, q^{lk}e in vthiris places amaist ouer al
lykwyse may be seine. for noct sa mekle fishe thay
with nettis, as with skepis, or long ¹³⁰ kreillis, ¹³¹ win with
wickeris in the forme of a hose sa round wouen, thir
quhen thay lay in the furdes and waterdames that fast 30
thay stik in the sand, than w^t al facilitie thay fishe; for

ane esie
maner of
fisheng.

* L. "S. Bonifacii reliquiis et parentum ejus sepulchris decoratum"—adorned with the relics of S. Boniface, and the tombs and monuments of his relatives.

† L. "Canouria," now Chanonry. Chanonry Point, near Fortrose. This was Bishop Leslie's Cathedral Church.

quhen the Sey flowis and *cumis* in at thir places, the fishe esilie *cumis* in ouer the damis and furdes, and entiris in the creilis: Bot now the Sey ebbis, and the fishe bydes in the creilis dry without water, and sa with 5 little trauel of the fisher ar takne.

Is mairatouer in Rosse the toune of Tan, quhair is lykwyse a collegeiat kirk, verie notable throuch the Reliques of S. Duthak Bischope, to quhilkes afortymes the christiane peple, for the religiounis cause, was wonte 10 to make a frequent and gret pilgrimage: The monumēntis of this Antiquitie remanes evin ȝit in a certane Valey or Dale in Rosse, twa round touris estir the forme of ane bell. Thair ar twa Monasteris, the ane called the monaster of ferne, the vther frome the pleisour of 15 the situatione is named the *fair place or place of ¹³²pleasure.

Strathnauar the vtmost Prouince in Scotland lyes neist Rosse heir flowes the Sey to, called Deucaledonicum. Heir the thrie craigis of the vtmost parte of 20 al the cost make twa bosumis or Lochis. The first of thame in Strathnauar to name is ¹³³Houbrun, notable in mekledome: The vthir twa in Cathnesse ar Hoy, and Dunesbe called, of quhilkes Ptolomie names this 25 Dume. This is the last and hindmest hil in Scotland, and þ thairfor the schortest, bot the maist dangerous sailing ouer to the Iles of orkney be Pintland firthe. The cheif toune in Cathness is called Wik: ar lykwyse mony touris, and sey portis verie commodious. To 30 Cathnese Suthirland is coynoyned, quhair is the Bisches Pintland frith. sait of Cathnese in the citie called Dorn. This cuntry, as lykwyse the vthiris twa, is verie conuenient to the feid- ing of cattel and of wilde deir: quhairthrough the rentis to the possessours is the mair profitabile and sueit, quhen Suthirland.

* L. "Bellus Locus"—i.e., Beauly.

† L. "unde brevissimus, sed periculosisimus est trajectus, &c." —whence is a very short but very dangerous passage to the Orkneys.

through the les labour, and expenses, the ground prouydes quhat is sufficient for thame, frilie as it war. Thair is a castel weil fortified, quhais name is Dunrobin, and vthiris no^t few touris erected to dryue away theiues neirhand, quha vses nocht sindle to dryue the pray 5 thairfra.

Morayland
maist beu-
tiful.

fyue Salmon
fludes.

A * parte of Rosse is Moray land, and lyes vpon the cost syde. It is a cuntrey alane by all the rest commendet with ws, for baith plentie and pleasure. for it is eivin and plane, without ¹³⁴ dubis and myres, meruellous 10 delectable in fair forrests, in thik wodis, in sueit ¹³⁵ sairing flouris, weil smelling herbis, pleisant medowis, fyne quheit, and al kynde of stuffe, orchardes and fruitful gairdins, and than sa neir the coste; Thair is the air maist hailsum, vncorrupte, temperat, thair cludis and rain 15 mekle les than in ony vthir place, and † thairfor, sa gret incresse and plentie of cornes amang the nobilitie of the cuntrey. ‡ Thair the land bowing the selfe be litle and litle, with a certane laich ¹³⁶ lout and bend with her bosum, sche into the mane sey spoutis out thir v. fludes, the 20 Nesse, the Nardine, Findorn, Losse, and Spey. in quhilkes all, abundance of Salmon, ar takne, bot maist in spey. Nathir is alane this proffit obteined in the mouthis and entries of the riueries, in mony places, bot the space of mair than lx. myles abone, þe euin quhair 25 the Loch selfe flowis out. heir sal þe sie vpon baith the sydes of the riuier, for the fertilitie of the ground, the clemencie of the hevin, and gentlenes of the wethir,

* L. "Rossiæ quidem Moravia, pars illius regionis quondam Vararis dictæ, littus adversus adjacet"—Moray, a part of the district once called Vararis, lies next to Ross, towards the shore. Ptolemy calls the Beauly Firth "Vararis sinus."

† L. "atque adeo magna propterea nobilium virorum seges"—and on this account a great number of nobility.

‡ L. "Illic magno quidem sinu terra se paululum inclinans," &c.—There in a large bay the land gently inclining sends five rivers into the German Sea.

notable castelis, and certane touris erected for special men in the cuntrie, to wit, Huntlie, * Rothesse, Athol, and Moray, al Erles, and lykwyse for sum Lardes and Barrounis. Thair sal ȝe sie the larde of Granth with al 5 his † familie in Strathspey, that is in the valley of Spey, on the vther syde towarde the selfe original begining of Spey loch; In Badgenoth sal ȝe find the Glancatten with sum statelie persones with thame of thair clan togither with thair cheif, quhorne thay cal Makantoshe: 10 Mairouer Moray hes a freshe water loch called Spynie, that mekle abundes in ‡ Swonis, in quhilke loch is a certane herb verie rare and sindle to be found, in quhilke because the Swan hes sa gret delyte, we cal the herbe olorine (because the swan in latin is olor). This 15 indeid heirof is the nature, that quhair ance it fixis the rute it spredis the selfe sa braid and wyde, that v. myles of this loch of Spynie, sen we remember, quhair Salmonete afor did abunde, is now maid ¹⁸⁷ glare and myre, the rute sa spredis abundantlie. Heir baith ane honorable 20 castel and a plesande Palise ar erected to the Bischope of Moray.

Nocht far frome the mouth of Spey is a fair and a famous merchand toun, quhais name is Elgin, quhair is sa noble and notable a kirke in beutie and decore that 25 with vs it hes na ¹⁸⁸ make, set furth, trimmed and maid ornat, with the Bischeses Cathedral, and college of the Chanonrie. farther with diueris monasteris of Moray land it is decoret of quhilkes the cheif is Pluscartie, than Killossie. frome thir is nocht far the toune of the § Forest, 30 nocht indeid verie magnifik, bot standes in sa pleisand a

Castelis and touris vpon ye watir of Spey.

quhat Strathspey is.

Badgenoth. The familie of Glancatten quhilke sum callis glewhatten. Spynie loch. finkes or swanes.

The castel and palise of spynie ar named the Bisches of Moray.

The toun of Elgin the Bisches sait.

the toun of forest.

* L. "Rothesius"—of Rothes.

† L. "tribu"—his tribe=clan.

‡ In the text "grene finkes" is scratched out, and "Swonis" written over. "Fink" is also erased under "Swan," two lines further on.

§ L. "Forestium oppidum"—Forres.

The castel
of Tarnuai.

place, that it hes na ¹³⁹ marrow. Is lykwyse in Moray a castel of the kings, celebrat, famous, and of gret renowne, to name Tarnuai, heir uses the Erle of Moray to make his cheif residens and resting.

The toune
of Ennir-
ness and
castel.

At the mouth of the Ness is a toune nocth of smal reputatione named * Ennirnesse, quhair afor tymes was a gret tak and a schule of herring, of quhilke benifit a lang tyme now haue we bene spoylet, † another cause quhy, na ~~mar~~ esteimes, bot the cause forsaid, and this is commonlie thocht. In this toune is the kingis castel ⁵ baith lairge and stark. heir the water of ye Ness flowis out of the loch of the same name, and baith haue this nature. that albeit the frost be nevir sa gret, thay freis neuir: bot gif ony frosin thing be put athir in the loch or in the riuer, it thowis fra hand. Quhairfor quhen ¹⁵ horsmen cumis to Ennirness in a gret and horrible frost, asfor thay turne in to the lugeng, first in thay ryde into this riuer, to wasche thair horses, and to thow the pypes and ¹⁴⁰ schokles of yce, frosin vpon thame. Vpon the loch-syd of the Ness, of the kingis, is situat a verie alde and ²⁰ ancient hous called Vrquhart. In Moray land in the kirk of a certane village or clachan named Petty ar keipit the banes of a certane persone quhome thay cal ²⁵ little Johne, departed bot the space of thrie hundir yeirs, as the *commone brute* amang thame is, ‡ quhome the Antiphrastiks, that is, thay quha quhat thay speik meines co^ztrare, callis little: quhais Wydnes of his banes and gretnes teiches that he was xiii. fute lang. In his ³⁰ thie bane, or as we speik, his ¹⁴¹ hanche bane, is nocth ane of this age quha may nocth esilie hand and arme put in togither.

Vrquhart
castle.

little Johne
lang 14 futes.

* L. "Invernessium"—Inverness: *Ennirness* approaches nearer to the Gaelic pronunciation of the name.

† L. "ea qua diximus causa, vulgus existimat"—for the reason we have already mentioned, as is commonly thought.—See p. 41.

‡ L. "quem antiphrasticos parvum appellant"—whom by antiphrasis they call *little*.

The cost of Moray occupies thir twa cuntries ¹⁴²Ainzie first, than Boen, na les plentiful in cornes, than abundant in pastural. vpon the water of Douern, ful of salmont fishe, standes the toune of Bamfe, quhair is ane alde 5 castel, and lykwyse ane new palice bot erectet and bigit with gret cost and expences, fra quhilke is nocht far the castel of the Boeni: Bot another neirhand throuch the nature of the place sa strenthie, that vnwinnable it appeiris, thay cal it Finlater, nocht far frome the toune 10 of Culen, quhair a collegiat kirk florised of alde.

Ainzie,
Boen.The castel
of the Boeni.Finlater
castle maist
strenthie.

Vpon the Riuver of Douern ar castelis, Touris, palices, and gentil menis places nocht few, in quhilkes ar cheif and Principal, Strathbolgie the principal place of the Erle of Huntley, & Rothemay: Besyd is the toune of 15 Turef and Touris not few.

Strabogrie
the cheif
hous of the
erle of Hunt-
lie.

Nichtbouris to thame is Buquhane conuenient to cattel, nathir vnmeit for cornes: mair fortunat, and happie than mony of the cuntries afor expreimed, in plentie of scheip, and meruellous multitude quhairin 20 thay abounde, in the fynes of the wol and gudnes of it. Al the riuveris that Buquhane conteines, excepte ane named the Ratra, abundes in Salmonte. In this cuntry na ¹⁴³Rattoune is bred, or, brocht in frome ony vthir place, thair may lyue. Is mairatouer at the castel Slanis a 25 certane ¹⁴⁴coue, quhairin water continualie drapping, in a schorte space turnes in a verie quhyte stane, quhilke excepte (as the maner is) it schortlie had beine outtakne, incontinent the coue it had fillit full.

a wondir,
the rattoun
lyues not in
Buquhane.
Watir drop-
ping turnes
in a stane.

As in Ingland the Jeit stane is abundant, sa with ws, 30 throuchout our coste, is mekle of this mater called succine, or ambre, quhilke the Greikis calles Electre: sum * names it frome the Pine tree quhais smel it beiris: sum says it is a mater that wirkes out of the stanes, and hardnes throuch the calde nature of the Sey: It is,

Succine or
ambre in
Scotland is
fund.

* L. "Id alii succinum Pini arboris esse dicunt"—some say it is the sap of the Pine-tree.

verilie, of a goldne colour and of a sueit sauor, cheiflie quhen onⁿ the handes it is rabbit. With it, women uses to decore thame selfes, and hing about thair¹⁴⁵ halse for Jewelis, colaris, or broches, and in lyke maner thairwith thair infantes to fortifie and arme I knawe nocth against 5 quhat evil. A certane gret Lumpe and waichtie masse of amber, in this our age, was fund, gretter than ane horse, in the coste of Buquhane. In Buquhan ar innumerable toures, and Gentle menis places, as of Erles, Barounis, Knichtes, partlie on the Sey syde and partelie in mid- 10 cuntrye situat.

Buquhan and Boyn to thame lyes neist Froumarten in the midcuntrye Westirlie, quhair is a notable Palice of the Lardes of Fyvie, and another of na les renoune pertaining til a worthie Knicht quhais style is Geicht. 15 Strathbolgie lykwyse, and the Gareoth as thay baith ar copious and welthie in cornes, sa ar thay verie plesant in pastoral, medowis, wodis, and forrest fair. In the Gareoth is ane montane, quhilke goldne thay cal, the vulgar and commone stile of this montane is * Dunedere, 20 because it is said to abund in golde. This thay collecte of the scheip, quhilkes ar fed in this mountane, quhais teith and fleshe in lyke maner ar ȝallow, as with the culour of golde thay had bene¹⁴⁶ littid. Is thair lykwyse a wondirful gret croune of stanes, quhilke rings agane, 25 na vthirwyse than w^t ane echo in brasse or coppir. That thair sumtyme was a certane temple of ane Idol the commoun speiking is: Is thair lykwyse a gret craig louting doun, quhilke they cal Bennachie.

The Gareoth situat in a certane plesand and plane 30 valey, betuene four gret and hich mountainis, is sa fertil a ground; that ȝeirlie sik a birth it beiris, as for quhilke cause, it hes obteined this name, that thay cal it, the commoun Barn or¹⁴⁷ garnel of Abirdine thair nychtbour

* L. "Dundore." The etymology in the text is on a par with the accompanying physiology.

Fyvie,
Geicht.

Strathbolgie.

Dundore the
goldne
mountane
called.

citie. Heir ar mony baith Barounis and Gentle men vpsprung and flurised of that alde and ancient Stock of the Læslies, and sen we, or our fatheris could remember, thair haue euir and ay flurised.

5 Ar mairouer in that mid coste vthiris diueris cuntryes, sik as Stratyl, Frendrachie, Baluenie, * Stradoune, and of this sorte mony mae, quhilkes indeid, because in few beuties we can say that thay excel the rest, willinglie we latt passe.

10 Than agane Marr lyes on the costsyde neist, ¹⁴⁸ thrimilit indeid as it war intil a narrow boundes, in ane parte, bot in ane vthir parte vppermer, braider and mair ample, bot in length it extendes to Badȝenot the space $\frac{3}{4}$ of lx. myles rache in ¹⁴⁹ store, and pastoral. In Marr lyes

15 Abirdine a famous citie, in a maner in twa partes diuidet, to wit, in ane alde toune, and ane new toune, and betuene the twa a feild put: bot on that syd, quhair foundet ar, the Bisshopis Cathedral, the Channounis honorable houses, the almons house or Hospital of the

20 pure, and that ancient Academie, and vniuersitie of renoune, is mekle mair illustre, and beutiful to behalde: than the othir, quhais decore cheiflie does consiste in Nobilitie of gentle men, and merchandes, and deidis of ciuilitie: baith the partes of the citie enioyes the twa riuers Die, and Don alyke, with a schip read, or hartsum hauizing place, togitheir with grene Cnowis upon the seysyde. This notwithstanding, peculiar or proper, hes thir twa riuers, that lichtlie thay excel the rest of the fludes and riuers in Albion, in thir thrie things; in

25 30 plentie of Salmon, plentie, I say, Gretnes, and Gudnes.

We knawe sa weil, that nathing bettir, in the Water of Die, at Abirdin, of gret Salmon [†] ¹⁵⁰ after than ance to have bene takne at ane draucht ccc. That, quhilke,

Abirdin a
Bisshopes
sait and
vniuersitie.

The riuers
Die and
Don.

* L. Strathdona.

† L. "minus dico quam saepe contingit"—I don't say it happened very often.

quhy in
Scotland
mair yas in
vthiris na-
tions abun-
dance of
Salmonte.

sumtymes chances in the riuver of Spey, and sum vthiris. farther, quhy with vs is gretter welth of Salmonte, than with vthiris natiou^s quhilkes excel our natioune in wateris and riuveris, this for a rasone vses to be guyen, that this kynde of fishe abhorris frome mudie water, and in cleir water delytes, and in sandie furdes, of quhilke a stark rasone thay vse to collecte, that in Bond, and vthiris riuveris in Irland, quhilkes cheiflie throuch nature ar baith maist cleir, and maist pure, Salmonte in gretter number thair ar takne, than in ony vthir place of the Warde. Mairatouer because we, of the Salmonte, haue maid sa ofte mentione, it wil nocht offend the reidar, heir to twoche sum things, that we haue leired of thame, or of our awne institutiounis, or be sum sure and certane experience, haue knawen.

5

15

The genera-
tion and
nature of the
Salmonte.

The nature thairfor of the Salmonte is, in Haruest to gendre, * at quhat tyme this consuetude is commounie with vs, to haue a cheife regarde to the heid, for than thay feir principallie the perrel of the heid, thairfor thay avoyd al occasione, sa far as is possible, and this indures frome the † saxt of September, vnto the first of December. Bot quhen thair ȝoung is now brocht furth, thay ar sa leane, the hie Salmonte haueng castne the meltis, and the sche salmonte the ¹⁶¹ Rounis, that mony doubtes, gif thir be the verie rycht Salmont, that vses than to be ²⁵ takne, or another kynd of fishe. The occasione of the doubt is this, that at vthiris tymes, in thair bowelis thay ar neuir knawen to haue ony thing, bot a certane thik humour: quhairthrouch mony takes the occasione to meruel, quhairof thay feid, quhen thay ar sa sappie and ³⁰ sa fatt, and gudlyke: bot of this thay meruel, that

* L. "quo tempore capitis periculo lege apud nos cavetur, ne quoque modo capiantur"—at which time it is forbidden among us under pain of death to take them in any way whatsoever.

† L. "a sexto idus Septembris"—from the sixth of the Ides of September—i.e., the eighth of September.

quuhilkes amang thame ar sa leane, quhen thay twoche the fatter amang thame, thay al ar alyke leane, in sa far that oft this hes bene fund, the fatt syde that hes bene twochet with the leane, hes through leiznes bene vtirlie 5 deformet, bot the vthir syde fatt and fair. Thair young, quhen now thay haue castne, afor thay be a * fingre gretter, thay *swome* to the Sey, quhair in the space of ane moneth or twa, thay grow almaist til ane incredible gretnes. Bot incontinent, as gif thay war no^t content of al 10 this felicitie, thay returne to the narow boundes of the Watiris, quhair bred thay war, and in draues as it war, returnes to thair awne cuntry. Than may be sene, how nocht onlie contrare the swofte and vehement surges of the Sey thay *swome* through, quhen thay 15 returne, bot through quick sandes, and narow furdies, with sik force thay passe to the riuers that thay cam fra, that in a band and knot togither thay leip quhair thay find impediment, ouer a ¹⁵² stay bank or hich fal of Water maid in a Damm, sa gret desyr, through the 20 affectione of nature, thay haue to be quhair thay war bred, quhairfor, ony Lope thocht wondirful, is compaired with the Salmonte, and commounlie called the Salmon lope: farthermair, is *cum* in a commone prouerbe, that quha of vs, haue, amang strange natiouns, beine welthie, 25 and estir returneng to thair awne cuntrie, haue falin in pouertie, ar said to be not vnlyke to the Salmonte, quha ¹⁵³ tynes in smal Watiris, and riuers ryght narow, the gret fatnes, that thay fand in the braid Sey.

Is conioynet to the Prouince of Marr, vpon the Sey The Mernes.
30 syde the cuntrie of the Mernes, quhilke in victual, and pastoral excelis mony of the cuntries forsaidis. heir is the castel of Dunnntyre, a hous ryght strenthie, naturallie, and ¹⁵⁴ maist [†] mansione of the Erles of Marchel: heir

* “nec uno digito majores”—nor greater than a finger.

† L. “Castrum comitis Marescialli domicilium natura loci fir-

sinclie touris and gentle mestis places, Couie, lykwyse, and Barie tounes not of the haichest digrie. heir lykwyse ane alde and ancient toune to name Fordun quhair keiper hane bene the reliques of S. Palladius quha was called the Apostle of Scotland. Neist this province, 5
 is the toune of Mountrose, ance Colurt quhilke was
~~nameit~~, * situat with this benifite, that it hes a worthie
 and verie notable hanin for schipis. In the bordirs of
 Marr and Mernes, the gret hil, named ¹⁵⁵ Grampie sa
 mekle renouned in the alde Romane histories, begins 10
 nocht far frome the cost besyd Abirdin, extending
 throuch the midcuntries, sum tymes braider, sum tymes
 narower, evin to the West Sey, ay quhil it cum to Dun-
 bartane, ~~ye~~ and til Argyle.

To the Mernes neist succeditis Angus, a cuntrie surelie 15
 beutiful baith throuch the gift of nature, and throuch
 the Industrie and thriftnes of the inhabitouris: Angus
 is ~~†~~ induet with thrie riuers, first ~~‡~~ northerlie with the
 riuver of Esk, secundlie sutherlie with the sam riuver of
 Esk, thridlie with the best riuver of al the riuers in Scot- 20
 land named Tai: of quhilkes, Tai, riunning throuch
 diuorse cuntries flowis out of a loch of the sam name
 xxiiii. myles lang, ~~§~~ and twa myles braid; at last rinis
 into the main Sey. This ground is fertil baith in quheit,
 and in al vthir kinde of stuffe: braid hillis, lochis, wodis, 25
 and forrestis, garssie passtural and mony medowis,
 Castellis and touris exceeding monie, it hes.

missimum"—the dwelling-place of the Earl Marshall, very strong
 on account of its situation.

• L. "situs beneficio ac insigni portu peregregium"—very excellent in its situation, and its magnificent harbour.

† L. "irrigatur"—is watered.

‡ L. "Septemtrionali Esca, et meridionali quoque"—by the North and also by the South Esk.

§ L. "in Germanicum tandem mare bis mille fere passus latus se precipitat"—at length, when nearly two miles broad, empties itself into the German Sea.

Vpon the Water of Tai sal ȝe sie a notable toune baith in number of citizenis, and commoditie of the hauizing place, to name Dundie, sumtyme called *Alectum*. quhilke albeit it be nocht esteemed the richest, it may 5 weil be esteemed the neist riche: Nether sal ȝe weil discerne, quither thay be richer in outlandis geir, and merchandise, or in thair awne labour and *industrie, quhen throuch the awne schipis and sailing, it lykwyse is riche. † Mairouer because Riches, offspring and 10 plesures, as oft hes bene vsed and sene, with sindrie and strange natiounis, lychtliȝ corruptes the godlie institutionis of our Elderis, (as we sie this day) and lykwyse the gudnes of lyfe or gude maneris, as we say, ‡ Dundie, in latine *Deidonum*, the gift of God, walde be 15 called in Scottis: Bot now, I say, Dundie, contrare the Etymologie or true interpretatioun of the name, was the first amang ws suspecte of hæresie. of quhilke eftward we wil speik mair at large: Is in Angus mairouer the toune of Brichine, and thair a Bischopis sait, bot the 20 eldest toune in al that cuntrey to name is Forfare, and of grettest priuelege and authoritie, quhair is § ane Jugement sait, and Justice courte haldne, and power to Juge, bot now redacted to pouertie, of na reputatioun is 25 haldne, bot brocht to nocht. Amang the monasteris heir in Angus ar twa mair notable than the rest, to wit

Dundei or
Deidonum.

Brichine a
Bisopis
sait.

The toun
of Forfare.

The monas-
teris Arbroth
and Cuper.

* L. "Lanificio"—wool trade.

† L. "quoniam divitiæ, et earum proles deliciæ, sicut et crebrum exteris, iisdemque variis, gentibus, consuetudo facile corruptunt," &c.—but since riches, and their offspring luxury, and frequent intercourse with foreign and different nations, easily corrupt the good ways of our ancestors, &c.

‡ L. "Deidonum, contra nominis etymon, primum apud nos," &c.—Deidonum (the gift of God), in opposition to the meaning of its name, first among us fell under suspicion of heresy. Deidonum seems a fanciful inversion of Dondei, or Dondie. Leslie, however, so spells the name consistently throughout the Latin text. The oldest spelling I can find is Dundei.

§ L. "ubi et hodie juris dicendi potestas residet"—where the courts of Justice are still held.

Abirbroth, and Cuper, because nane wil excel Arbrothe in ȝeirlie rent: and althocht Cuper be na compare to Arbroth, ȝit in monesteris of meane or midway rentis it may haue the first place, of quhilke * afor we haue maid mentione.

5

OF THE ILES OF SCOTLAND,
AND FIRST OF THE WEST ISLES CALLED HEBRIDES
OR EUBONIÆ.

Divisio[n]e of
the Iles.

† Quhen now we of a grosse maner haue sett doun
on baith the handes, the boundes of hail Scotland, we
sal do diligence to forme, and with a pinicill nocht
vnlyke, to drawe the Iles lying thairto. Sum of the
Iles ar called Hebrides ‡ and vthir sum ar called 10
Orchades: Thir hebrides § ar situat Westirlie, toward
the cost of Irland, thir called orcadis or of Orknay
Northerlie or eisterlie, of quhilkes sum monstruous gret
amang thame lyis to the coste of || Carrik and Galloway,
and with a long course evin to the Lennos, and in the 15
entrie and mouth of Clide ar extendet. The first of the
Iles toward the South is named the Ile of Man, in thir
our dayes vndir the dominione of Ingland, quhilke
Cæsar treulie testifies in mid course to be transported

* L. "sed de his hactenus"—so much for these matters.

† L. "adumbrata totius scotiae continentem, non dissimili penicillo
ipsi adjacentes insulas delineare conabimur"—having sketched the
mainland of Scotland, we will now try with the same brush to paint
the adjacent islands.

‡ L. adds, "seu Euboniæ"—otherwise the Euboniæ.

§ L. "Illa[re] partim in mari Vergivo seu Hibernico, partim in
Deucaledonico septentrionem versus, sitæ sunt"—The former (the
Hebrides) are situated partly in the Vergivian or Irish Sea, partly in
the Deucaledonian.

The name of Deucaledonian was given by Ptolemy to the Western
Sea between the Mull of Galloway and Dunnet Head.—Skene,
Celtic Scotland, i. lxx.

|| L. "Syluria,"

The Ile of
man.

from Britannie til Irland : perchance the Greikis named this Ile * Man, first, because it was solitar and frome ony vthir appeired to be far seperat : In lenth it is xxx. myles, for schipis ane hauin or twa, and a Bischopis sait it hes.

5 We haue in a traditione of alde, that thair was the first sait of thame called druides, and that this Ile was the fontane of al halynes and doctrine maist singular : and that the nobil menis sones of our Realme vsed thair to be sent and thair to be instructed, and brocht vpe.

10 Thay, no'withstandeng, of Cambria or Waillis, contendes against thame, and says, that afortymes this now called the Ile of *Man*, was called Maneuia, and the Ile that lyis neist, now called Anglese, was the Ile of *Man*, & this argument of the proprietie of the language thay 15 collecte.

The neist Ile named *Elȝa*, mair worthie to be named *Eliza*. a hich rock or craig, than to be named ane Ile, abundes in Solend geis, and monie vthiris sey foulis.

Agane our rycht foranents the tounis Aire and Irvine *Aran*. 20 is the Ile of Aran, lang xxiiii. myles, and braid viii., quhair cornes abundes and pleasand pastoral. Is heir ane hiche mountane, quhair of Wylde deir is a meruellous multitude.

A porte, or surer schiping place lychtie sal ȝe noct 25 find, thay cal it Lamelas : It is a bosum of the Sey, in the ley of a hich montane conteyned, quhair na storme or tempest of wethir can cwm, bot out of quhat ¹⁵⁶ arte sa euir the wind blawe, schipis may sail baith in and out without al danger.

30 Aran and Bute are noct bathe ane Ile, as sum takes a *Bute or Rosa.* false opinione, quhen the ane being situat in the mouth of the ferrie of Clide, is thrie houris sailing frome the vthir. Bute mairatouer is ane elegant and trimme Ile, x. myles lang eivin and plane, induet with gret fertilite, 35 decored w^t ane ancient and magniflk castel, quhairfra

* L. "Mona." The allusion is to the Greek word *μόνος* = solitary.

The familie
of the stu-
ardes and
kingis hous,
first bred of
Bute.

The Ile of
Rosneth.

Cumbra the
Iles & the
maine.

Sanda.

Vla.

Y Colmkil.

first sprang, as we haue of ane alde traditione, the * clan^s of the kingis hous, to wit, the style of the Stuardes, and familie. This lykwyse is tho^t to be named Rothesai, and that name to haue takne, frome him, quha first brocht the Scottis men^s out of Irland to that Ile, named Rothesus. howeir the mater be, vppirmer, in the sam ferrie, or the coste of the Lennose, is † another no^t vnylike to this in forme, gretnes, and welthines, ye and thair names amait commounie, for it is commounlie called Rosneth: bot quhither it sulde be reckned amang the Iles called Hebrides I doubt^e. 5

Because we make haste, I wil nocht make mekle talkeng of the les Iles, albeit thay haue decore, and ar outsett in touris and litle tounes. Of thir sorte ar twa no^t far frome Bute, of quhilkes the ane is called gret Cumbra, and the vthir lytle Cumbra: another is bezond the heich hill, quhilke thay cal the mule of Caintyre, quhair a Rede for schipis is verie sure, the name thairof Sanda. Agane another is bezond the sam hill, skairce 4 myles frome the coste of Irland, vi. myles lang or thair about, quhair is a porte mekle commendet called ¹⁵⁷ Rachra. farther frome this as ye sail toward the North, sal ye find mony no^t far frome vthir seperat, bot different in names: of quhilkes the maist nominat amang thame is this, ‡ situat foranent Loquhaber, quhais name is yla, xxx. 20 myles lang or thair about, a fair feild and plane, fertil and in mettelis abundant. § Besyd Aona the Ile commounlie called ¹⁵⁸ ycolmkil, that is the || Kirke of S. Colme, called 25

* L. "Unde regia Stuardorum familia oriunda primum esse trahitur"—whence the royal family of Stuard is said to have first sprung.

† L. also speaks of the *island* of Rosneath.

‡ L. adds, "Ultra Chersonesum novantium"—beyond the peninsula of the Novante. The Mull of Galloway is usually so named; but here it seems to mean the peninsula of Cantyre.

|| L. "Juxta"—near by is Iona.

§ L. "Iona insula Ycolmkil vulgo, idest. S. Columbae, Ecclesia

maist famous, be rasone of the Bisches sait that it conteinis, of the monasteris, ane of religious men, another of women, and than because it was the commoun sepolchre and burial of al the kings aftir King Fergus

5 the secund quha Scotland restored agane til ws, quhen we war vanquissit be the Romanis: quhair lykwyse was keipet in custodie mony buikes of antiquitie, quhilkes out of Rome, quhen be the Gothis it was ouircum, through the industrie and trauel of this sam King Ferguson war in this Ile inbrocht. Nocht far frome this, amang mony vthiris les yles, is ane, lytle inferiour to yla selfe, called the Mule, bot ful of hilis and stanes, and barren or mair fructles than the rest: No'theles mony bosumis and lochis, and commodious sey portes it hes.

10 We vndirstand, as we haue hard say, that in it is a fontane twa myles distante frome the Sey, out of quhilke egis verie small, schineng sa cleir as a pretious margarite, flowis intil a certane bosum of salt water *on* the sey syd, quhair in the space of xii. houris thay grow

15 in fair ¹⁵⁹ cokilis or bukies. betuene this and the land, and lykwyse beþond it, as ȝe sail to that gret Ile, quhais name is ¹⁶⁰ Eusta, thir Iles be the way sal *Eusta*. ȝe find, Cambery, Lismon, Terrey, Corsay, and mony mae.

20 25 Mairchis with Eusta, the Ile called Leuiss, mair than *Leuiss*. ony of quhilkes we haue ȝit maid mentione, in lenth lx. myles, and xxx. in bredth, plentie of beir and aites, gude garse, and plesand pastoral, it mairatouer abundes in peple. mony lochis it hes, riuers bot ane, welthie in

30 Salmont. Agane, ane lytle les than this, sal ȝe find not far frome land, called the Skie, induet almaist with the *The Skie.* sam giftes, quhilkes the vthir, and this mekle mair, that in sey calues or ¹⁶¹ saylches it hes na smal number, quha

episcopali sede Sodorensi dicta . . . celeberrima"—the island Iona, commonly called Ycolmkil, that is, of Saint Columba, famous for the church the episcopal see of Sodern, as it is called, &c.

feir bot like the presens of ~~men~~. *Thair clanis, in quhais possessioines ar baith thir Iles, and in a maner ar little kings heire, ar called Makleud, that is, in thair speich, the sonnes of Claudius. Heir † now, be a commone use of succeding, they entir at thair awne hand without any man, albeit afortynes, be electione of thair clan they succederet, as vther lordes or little kings in the Iles. In boundaris about the Skie ar verie mony fair and pleasant Iles, of quhilkes the maist renouned and famous ar thir, the Roa, the Rume, Cannay, Fladdan, Trautness, Egg, Fladd, Ronar; and last of all is the Ile called ^{the} Hirth, and as the Ile of Man is the first of al the Iles called ^{the} Hebrides, sa is Hirth the last, and be the ^{the} Astronomers is reckned betuene Hirth and Man ³⁷⁷ myles, quhen estir thair constitutione, Hirth is in the ¹⁵ saxtie thrie digrie, [‡] and ~~man~~ in the fistie sevith. The Ile Hirth bes the name frome a certane scheip of the ²⁰ ~~same~~ name, in quhilke this only Ile did abunde. This scheip may be § comparet in heicht til a gait, in gretnes til a buffil, quhais hornes in lenth excelis the hornes of a ²⁵ buffil.

Neist this lyis another ¹⁶⁴ Ile, bot nocht inhabited, quhair nae kynd of cattail is fund, excepte sum verie wylde, quhilkes to cal scheip or gait, or rathir ¹⁶⁵ nouthir scheip nor gait, we knawe no^t, nor wat we weil: for ²⁵ by thair wylde nature, nathir haue thay wol lyke a scheip;

* I., "Utriusque insulae reguli cognomine sunt Makleudii"—the chieftains (little kings) of both islands are called M'Leod.

† "Hi communi nunc successionis jure . . . hereditatem capessunt"—they now obtain inheritance by the common right of succession.

‡ I. adds, "Polaris elevationis"—of polar elevation, or—of elevation of the polar star.

§ I. "Haec Caprum altitudine, cornuum quidem longitudine bubalum superat, magnitudine vero exæquat"—this sheep exceeds the goat in height. In length of horn it surpasses, in thickness (of horn) it equals the buffalo (or ox).

nathir beir thay hair lyke a gait, * bot for nane of the twa, I can nocht tel *quhat*.

Amang thir Iles, evin as amang thame of Orknay, ar mony quick sandes, scharp rockis, and gret gouses ful of 5 perrellous and deip dangeris, bot the worst, cruellest, and maist suspecte amang thame al, thay cal Corbreche: because within the space of a myle, it swallyis vp hail schipis, and throuch the violence, and vehement force of contrare workeng of the wais of the sey, quhen ilke 10 streme stryues with vthir, drounes thame in the deip. Quha sailis frome thir Iles is verie radie to incur sik danger, as quha frome the mane land in Cathnese, sailing til Orknay is able to incur danger, throuch Pintland firth, quhair contrare surges and waues of the 15 sey flowis fordward and bakward with sik violence, baith out of the Eister Seyis and out of the Westir Seyis, than lykwyse frome al the Kruikes and turnes of the Iles, thay stryue sa stoutlie in vthiris contrare, † that thair thay can nocht sail, without ony les danger, than thay ar 20 of avail, and a special regarde of thair awne saifte.

In fauour of the reidar, I thocht gude, heir of the geis to speik a few wordes, for thair meruellous multitude in our cuntries, cheiflie in the west yles and lykwyse for the raritie and fewtie or scant of sum of thame in vthiris 25 cuntries.

Excepte the Solande geise, of quhilkes afor we haue maid mentione, how thay ar bredd at hame; with vs vthir sax kyndes of geis ar funde, quhilkes only in thrie things ar fund to differ, to wit, in the sownde of thair 30 voce, in gretnes of thair bodye, and taist of thair fleshe, quhilkes al ar seine in iunumerable draues to flie to thir

Corbreche
the swallie
of schipis.

Pintland
firth.

the vulgar
with thir
names dis-
tinguishes
thame.
The Quinck,
10d Skilling,
Claike,
Routhurrok,
Ridlaik.

* L. "Sed nescio quid medium ferunt"—they have something between the two, I know not what.

† L. "Ut non nisi maximo cum periculo et cautione ibi possit navigari"—that it is impossible to sail there without the greatest peril and caution.

farthest Iles, in the spring of the ȝeir, eftir * midday, and thairfor, this opinione of thame is haldne, that athir in thir westir Iles, or in †Grundlande, quhen toward the ‡ South anothir land is noȝ knewen, thay big thair nestis. Sum of thame noȝ withstandeng, throuch a certane 5 craft, ar allured and prouoked to remane amang the lochis, and myrie places and amang the hathir and mures, amang ws, quhil thay haue laid thair eggis, and clekit thair burdes: for sum of thame, quhilkes wȝ nettis ar takne, thair wingis ar clipit, and fed in the hous, quhil 10 thay be tame: Thaireftir out and in frilie thay flie and swome, and nocht only returnes hame agane, to thair accustumed and vsed fude, bot lykwyse thay bring vthiris with thame of thair awne kynde, as called to the banquet, and commone feist with thame selfes, quhilkes 15 quhen thay haue baytet, thay at last leir thame to sit, without al feir in the mid feild, and ȝardes, and plane places; and haldes thame stil besyde thame as neir nychtbouris, quhil al thair nestis be bigit, and thair 20 young clekit. Of quhilkes is ane mekle les than the rest, 25 that the claike guse we cal, of quhilke nocht only framet natiouns meruelis mekle, bot evin noȝ little our awne cuntrie peple: for it hes nocht sa mekle a taste of the Sey as of the firrtrie, quhairfor because thair nest, nathir thair eggs in ony place ar funde, sum haue the opinione, 30 that thay breid of the fructe of the trie, and now quhen thay ar rype and radie to flie, thay fal into the Sey. vthiris thinkes agane, that nocht oȝlie of the firr trie, bot of the rotne Stockes of vthiris tries, that growe in the Iles, quhair quhen thay ar consumed throuch aldnes, 35 first breidis of thame wormes, at last foulis.

Surelie Hector Boyis, a man nocht les notable in Iugement, than famous in eruditione, and a maist

* L. "a meridie"—from the south.

† L. "Grunland"—Greenland?

‡ L. "versus Circium"—towards the north-west.

That guse is
named claike
qlike is thoȝ
to be bred
of tries.

curiose sercher out of this secrete, and nature of this foul, ascriues this wondirful worke al and hail to the benifite and nature of the Sey ; to ¹⁶⁷ preiue the truth of this mater, and of quhilke the veritie may be esilie 5 knawen, he brings thrie things that he hard, and the fourth ; quhilke he present sawe with his eyne, to quhilkes we thocht gude to ioyne sume vthir things, na les probable. first he affirmes, that in the ȝeir of God 1489, was a gret trie, with the waues of the Sey inbrocht, 10 and on the Sey syd outcastne, at ¹⁶⁸ Petslegie in Buquhan, the trie being sawin, in it was seine, in presense of that illustre and noble Barroune, quha is Larde of that place, and mony vthiris mae than he, a meruellous multitude of wormes, of quhilkes sum war ȝit greine & ȝoung, bot 15 vthiris ar seine with thair memberis hail, and in due forme, and partelie thay had the similitude of perfyte schapen foulis; amang quhilkes (says he) sum was throuch and ruch fethired, sum agane was fethirles, naked and bare: this trie in testimonie heirof, to the 20 kirke of the nychtbour dorpe was brocht, named Tyrie, and thair laid vpe, and evin to his tyme, he affirmes, hes bene keipet.

Another thing no^t vnlyke, he sayis, was seine, twa ȝeirs estir this, in a ferray vpon Tai, at ¹⁶⁹ Bruchtie Craig : 25 last of al he inferis, that nocht lang, bot a litle estir, landet at Leith, the porte of maist renoune in the hail Realme, a gret and monstruous schip, frome ane of thir forsaid Iles, quhair thrie ȝeirs, her anker being castne, sche had stayed, her name christophorus, and brocht 30 now to the schore, he testifies that mony ane sawe the balkes of the same schip cleine consumed, and ful of the same kynd of wormes, sum of thame litle and ȝoung, sum agane with the ful schapp of ane foul. And to the intent, he mycht preiue, that to thir stockis and tries, that 35 grows in thir Iles, this vertue sulde nocht be attributed, he says farther, that him selfe present, he saw bred of a

sey ¹⁷⁰ tangle, mussilis, and quhen thay were apned, throuch desyre to knawe quhat was in thame was fund inclosed nocht fishe, bot foules, euerie foul conueining to the gretnes of the schel, quhairof is euident and cleir, his opinione is, that this generatione of Geis proceids 5 no^t of ane rotne stock, or of the frutes of thir tries that grow in the Iles, bot rathir of the maine Sey, quhilke Maro, and afor him Homer, estemed that the father of al things was it rychtlie called.

This in lyke maner wil preiue the sentence of Hect. 10 Boyis to be true, quhilke estir his depairting we obseruet ~~on~~ his behalfe. for in the \geir of God 1562 in the same forsaide leith porte we saw a certane gret schip, bot throuch aldnes defected, quhilke the wintir afor, frome Portugal thair had arryuet, we saw her brocht to the 15 schore and al her takilling loused. The hail peple than meikle meruelling, that war present, saw vpon the out-syde of this schip, mony thousandis of sik lytle foules stiking to the schip, thrie fingres lang, of a meruellous perfyte and weil schapen forme excepte that thay war litle, 20 lyuelles, and fethirles. Mairouer the \geir of God 1566, was presented to the maist honorable, our noble Maistres Quene Marie of Scotis, quhill in Striuling Sche satt, a branche of a certane trie fra quhilke mony fructes, as thay had bene, ¹⁷¹ hang doune, litle indeid, bot innumer- 25 able mussillis, in quhilkes war fund no^t fishe (a meruel) bot foulis, perchance of the same sorte as Hector Boyis testifies he sawe. In the meine tyme quhill this I wrot I came in cumpanie in Rome with Doctour ¹⁷² Allan of Ingland, a graue man, doctour of Theologie, quha testifies, how oft he saw thir lytle foulis in sik formes vpon the keilis of alde schipis, in the West of Ingland vpon the coste of langcastre and schore ¹⁷³ thair. And this far of the Iles called Hebrides. 30

OF THE ILES OF ORKNAY.

Thir Iles called orchades lyis mair eistirlie, partelie situat towarde the * mayne Sey, and partelie towarde the sey called *Deucaledonicum*, in number thay ar *xxxii*. Amang thir is ane named *Pomonia*, quhilke is of sik a boundes that the inhabitouris calles it the mayne land, 5 and quhilke may haue the first place. In it is a citie to name *Kirkual*, of gude renoune throuch a Bisshopis sait, twa castelis, the ane for the king, the vthir for the Bischope, baith of starke munitione. and trulie to speik without al invie the verie truth, nocht in the 10 Warld perchance sal *ye* find quhair of les expenses, mair bountiful and large thay lyue, than *evin* thair: No^twithstandeng growis thair no^t ane trie, no^t ane ¹⁷⁴ pickle quheit, nochtheles in ates and beir it abundes. We remember in the tyme of King James the fyfte, leist 15 athir strangers or quha cumis eftir vs beleive vs nocht, that a hundir ells *commonlie* war ¹⁷⁵ coft^t for a frenche sou^s of Turine: and that nane think that I speik sophisticallie, thir ells of quhilkes I speik ar henis ells, and new or fresche: and agane that I be nocht thocht to 20 speik hyperboliklie or abone my boundes, I say les, thay sal vndirstande, than the truth is. for chances verie oft with thame, that thair *zewis* sumtymes twa, sumtymes thrie lambes at ance do lambe. To knawe the rest be thir, is als esie as to *þ*ken the lione be his taes. Thair 25 horses ar verie litle, litle mair than the asse, bot in labour meruellous durable. Of the foulis, of the fishes, how copious thair thay ar, I neid to say naything, quhilke far excellis the commounie opinione of men. Is thair farther,

* L. "Germanico"—the German Sea.

† L. "uno asse Gallico Turonensi"—for a French sou^s of Tours.

‡ L. "ut ex unguibus leonem"—as the lion by his claws.

a special benefite of God, quhairw^t thay are bliste, as is affirmed surelie be thame of Irland, that thair is nocht ane serpent fund, nor fund is thair na vennemous beist, ⁵ *je quhat vennemous is, or *lyke a vennemous kynde* athir thair is not^t, as the ¹⁷⁶ paddock; or than oft is nocht, as the eddir. Valiantlie and balde thair vse thay to drinke, bot few (quhairof we wondir) thair sie we drunkne, or vnable to rule thame selfes we find: nathir ony thair wod or ¹⁷⁷ daft, as sum wil. Al thair *cum* to *perfyte age*,—nevir falling in na kinde of seikneis. ¹⁰ *† To the doctour of medicine amang thame na man compleines, or makes his mane: because thay ar al induet with a gude constitutione, and starke complectione of body, and farther thay haue the benifite of a verie hailsume air:* ¹⁵ *† to quhilkes, the labour, quhilke thay vse be sey and lande, sa that it be moderate, gif thay apply, makis a young and lustie age.*

Mony surelie oftymes throughe inuie that thay beir to sa gret felicitie, quhen quyetlie creip in § behind backis thay walde; thay fal ¹⁷⁸ platt on thair backes, that al may ²⁰ behalde. How euir it be, to thair Patron S. Magne neist estir God thay attribute mekle; quhome thay say to appeir to thame in thair defence against thair enzimies in gret danger, and that oft to haue done thay affirme. Bot the gretter Iles of orknay ar thir, ²⁵

St Magne,
Patrow of
Orkney.

* L. "quod venenatorum speciem habet, aut omnino non esse, cuiusmodi est Rana, aut rarissimum esse, sicuti est anguilla"—animals that resemble poisonous kinds are either altogether unknown, as the frog, or very rare, as the eel.

† L. "Medicis apud eos nullus est quæstus"—among them there is no lucrative employment for doctors. The translator has mistaken the meaning of *quæstus*.

‡ L. "quibus moderatus terra marique labor accedens, ætatem floridam facit"—a moderate amount of labour, on sea and on land, being added to all this, makes their life very healthy.

§ L. "in horum sedes clanculum irruerunt, sed in maximas clades palam inciderunt"—some have attempted to settle there secretly, but have very openly incurred great trouble.

* quhilkes this Pomonia conteines quhairof we afor maid mentione, to wit ¹⁷⁹ Soutrowassa, Rosa, Hoy, Stronza, Etha, Pappa, Pappawestre, Sandes, Ronaldsa, bot the les Iles ar Grainzie, Birza, Eglesey Wyer, Ger-
5 soy, Gersol, Kobunza, Sounnas, Stromas, Ouiskelle, Northronche, and vthiris ma.

Ar lykwyse bezond the Isles of Orknay vthiris twa
† Iles subduet to Scotland, to wit of schytland: frome
orknay distant a hundir myles, bot gretter than ony Ile
10 in orknay, amang quhome is verie litle victual, excepte
it be brocht in frome sum vthir cuntrie. Al thair fishe
dryet in the sone, in thame thair riches consists, and
in the oyle of quhailis, and of vthiris fishes, and in
the skinis of wilde beistes: for throuch sik kynde of
15 merchandise, the Holanderis thay allure esilie to thame,
and vthiris nerrest natiounis thair nychbouris, fra
quhome thay receiue agane victual, and vthiris neces-
saris to thair vsses: Thay lyue nochtw'standeng as lyue
thair nychbouris of Norway, surlie maist happilie, w^tout
20 al seiknes, quhil thay be of a decrepite age: This age
with thame, at leist thay cal ane hundir ȝeiris: as indeid
ar mony among thame quha haue past this age, and ȝit
ar fresche and lustie, of body; The forme of thair body
beutiful, a decent stature, and manlie strenth: in the
25 rest thay agrie w^t thame of Orknay. Of all Iles the
180 hindmest is Island in the freising Sey, neist the
pol articte, quhair brayet fishe, thay vse for meil, and
thairof thay make breid, and the baines of thir fishe
thay vse for elding to the fyre. Sum haldes the opinione
30 this to be the Ile called Thule: Bot gif this be it that
the Romanis called Thul, is a questione, and we haue gude
cause to † doubte. for Tacitus writes, that the Romane

The Iles of
schytland.

Island.

* L. "Pomonia omnium amplissima de qua antea meminimus"—Pomonia, the largest, of which we have already spoken.

† L. "insulæ scytlandicæ, quasi Scytarum terræ dictæ"—the Scytland islands, so called as if it were the lands of the Scythians.

‡ L. "intelligi non potest"—i.e., Iceland cannot be understood as

¹⁸¹ Classe, quhilke at the commande of Agricola sailed about al Britannie, saw the Ile called Thul. Of ¹⁸² Thul, quhilke Ptolomie discernet to be amang the hindmest Iles of Schytland, vpon the coste of Norway, for the gret space betuene ~~ca~~ nocht be vndirstandet, and thairfor, ⁵ quhilke the Romanes than vndirstude to be Thul and saw, athir for the fame amang al thir Iles, quhen may be, that vthiris mair northirlie, nocht ~~it~~ haue bene inhabited, or for the affinitie of the name, of quhilke we spak asfor, sum thinkes it be the Ile called Yla. for to ¹⁰ ¹⁸³ eik ane lettir is facile; and surelie gif ~~je~~ consider rycht ouer to the West Yla is of al Iles the hindmest: Sum thinkes agane it be Lewis. Bot be quhat it wil, as Island is affirmed to be the hindmest of al Iles, gif ~~je~~ consider the north, we eftir our opinione, thinkes that ¹⁵ this was Thul. And lat this be sufficient baith for the Iles called Hebrides, and for the Iles named Orcades.

the Thule which Ptolemy saw between Shetland and Norway. See note

OF THE BEGINNING, THE MANERIS,
THE ACTES, AND DEIDIS DONE OF
THE SCOTIS MEN.

THE FIRST BUIK.

IT was the jugement of sum of our Elderis of antiquitie, that nocth only to gret kingdomes and peples bot lykwyse to euerie citie and toun, war proffetابل, that men of actiuitie, and indued with a singular ingine, 5 to the Godis sulde ascriue thair birth and ofspring. * And with this opinione, albeit false, nocthwithstanding not vane thay thocht, thay intendet to persuade thair cuntrey people, that haueng a sure confidence in thame, quhome to thay had ascriuet thair natuuitie, thay mycht 10 with the gretter courage take in hand gret materis, ful of perrel and danger, and farther throuch this occasione, the hertes of the ennemis mycht be discouraged, quhen thair forces, thair intentione, and thair counselis thay war not to bring against men, bot against the Godis. 15 That Alexander the ¹ Magne sett him selfe furth for the sone of Jupiter Ammon, promouet him nocth litle. That the Romanes mycht cause thame selfes to be thocht inuincible in the weiris, thay confirmed Mars to

Sum na-
tions vset
to the goddis
to ascriue
thair natuui-
tie.

* L. "ea quoque opinione, quanquam falsa non tamen stulta, suos etiam populares imbuendos esse existimarunt"—and with this notion, false indeed but not foolish, they thought their fellow-countrymen also should be imbued.

be thair father. The people lykwyse of Britannie referris thair original beginning to Jupiter: for it is reported and put in writte, that the name ^{*} of the Ile was gyuue thame frome Brutus the sone of *Æneas*. bot latting pas thir fables and a hundir sik clattiris, we think nocht sa far to ⁵ ² repeit the beginning athir frome thir schameles and finjet Goddis, or frome [†] sike Gyantes as ar the sones of the Scottis menis Godis: bot only thay things that we mycht collecte compendiouslie, and expone as it war be the [‡] ³ margent, of the maist ancient monumentis and ¹⁰ Wryteris of chronicles, frome our beginzing evin vnto thir our dayes and sal site nathing alienat, or discordeng ¹⁵ w^t the truth of the historie. Nathir coulde I evir, nathir ¹⁵ *it can* I commend thair intentione, quha deuyses mony thingis to decore and outsett, and the historie quha is ²⁰ witnes of tymes, the maistres of lyfe, the lychte of the truthe, with mistie fables, and the painted colour of wordes, thay make mair darke and mistie, than thay ²⁵ make cleir. for a true and sincere speich is ay pure and simple: nathir, as ane trulie testifies, a Historie or ²⁵ cronicle euir is funde to be furnisshed with the preceptes of Rhethorick. We, thairfor, abhorring, nocht onlie frome fables and frome ⁴ leisings, bot frome superfluous ornament and decore, think it sufficient aneuch to sett the mater sincerelie and simpillie, as in verie deid it is, ³⁰ asfor the eyne of the reidar, that the reidar may vndirstand, and sie quhat difference is betuene this maner of wryteng, and gif it war all painted w^t colouris of Rethorick. Quhen thairfor our intentione is of this ordour to proceid, I desyre nocht that ony of our cuntrymen ³⁰

* L. "sibi insulæque datum"—the name was given to themselves and to the island from Brutus, &c.

† L. "vel a gigantibus, eorum filiis, Scotorum originem repetere"—to seek the origin of the Scots either from the Gods, or from the giants, the sons of the Gods.

‡ L. "Summatim et velut per indicem"—summarily and as if by index (margent).

The author
intendis to
follow the
pure and
simple
veritie.

mervel or reprehend mair scharplic than perchance the cause requires, that we propone nocht al things, quhilkes we haue collected out of the monumentis of our elderis, bot thay things only no^t alienat frome the truthe of the 5 historie, and appeires to haue a sure ground for thame. Nathir sulde ony vthir confideng in his awne opinione, start vpe, gif I conceil nocht thay monumentis of our elderis, as al in ane firme consent thay left thame vnto vs, of the begining of our natioune maist auncient 10 surelie, and of vthir secrete thingis, vndir als gret obscurtie. ffor gif we walde think of euerie beginning of euerie natione sen the warlde was maid, twa things almaist ouer al sal we find, in the beginzing athir sa * terrible that we contemne thame, or sa feinȝet that we 15 skorne thame. Quhat the Romane and Greke historiographours declares in the descriptione of the first vpryseng of thair Republik and commounue welth is to al patent, the rest † I pas ouer, of quhilkes mony now vndir ane mule and lumpe of clay ly toghether.

uncertane
the begin-
ning of
euerie na-
tione.

20 Quhairfor because the purpose of our method of proceeding permittis nocht that we be lang in pluking out or repeiting the opiniounis of vthiris men, quhilkes we haue collectet of the vpryseng of our natioune, maneris, and behauisour, and deidis done amang thame, 25 of mony things we sal taist a ‡ few as we may, perchance nocht far by, bot mid way.

* L. "Horrida"—rough, uncultivated.

† L. "ut ceteras gentes, quarum multae eodem luto harent, jam præteream"—to pass over other nations of whom many stick in the same mud, *i.e.*, make the same extravagant statements.

‡ L. "Paucula ex multis utcunque delibabimus"—we shall taste, at all events, a few out of many.

OF THE ANCIENT ANTIQUITIE AND ALDE OFSPRING
OF THE SCOTTIS NATIONE. AND HOW THAY
CAME FROME AEGIPTE AND CAME TO SPANE.

Rasones for
the ancient
Empire continuel
and still constant
of the scottis
natione.

That the Scottis natione * hitherto hes bene maist
ancient, and to God and man^{es} hes bene bathe grate
and acceptable, testifies thair daylye habitatione in the
land quhilke presentlie thay inhabite, thair sure and
constante libertie frome age til age, thair lawfull suc-
cession of kingis sa mony hundir \textbar eirs; thair quick
receiueng of the christne religione, and evin vnto this
age sa constantlie in it perseueiring; The suir, haly,
inuolat, and maist ald and ancient bandes with strange
kinges keipet firme and stable vnto this day, the gret 10
corage mairouer, quhilke ay was inuincible, now cheiffie
may be seine to schine in that natione in this mirk and
mistie tyme, this warlde now sa neir ane end, and weirand
sa fast away. Quhilkes quhen skairse may be fund in
ony vthir natione, al thir to concur togither, we may 15
suirlie say, gif the Scottis haue nocht had thair begin-
ning frome thair finȝet Godis forsaidis, at leist thair
ofspring na doubt thay haue had frome sum † stout and
excellent persounis baith in virtue and nobilitie. We
haue in traditione, set furth, be our cronicles, y^t thir 20
was the Grecianis, and Aegiptianis. for only vnto that
ane Cecrope, quha bigit Athenis, to his sone, I say,
Gathel thay refer our hail stock, and him to be author
of our hail natione; quhilke Gathel sum wil to be the
sone of Argus Neolws quha was the fourth king of the 25
Grecianis. for in the Cronicles thay set doun, that

from the
Grecianis
and Aegip-
tianis the
Scottis men
to haue thair
beginning.

* L. "Deo et hominibus carissimum hactenus fuisse"—the most ancient nation of the Scots has hitherto been most dear to God and men.

† L. "a fortissimis saltem Heroibus ortum habuisse"—that at least they sprang from the bravest Heroes.

quhen Gathelus * passed by Macedonia and Achaia
 mair arrogantlie, presumpteous, and mair proudlie, than
 was decent, or was his dutie, and thairfor to declyne the
 Ire of his father and freindes, and to eschewe thair
 5 seueritie, he descendet into *Ægypte* accumpnied † nocht
 with a smal power, in the tyme of Moyses, and for the
 gret actiue actes, and douchtie deidis that thair he
 wrochte against the *Æthiopianis* than ennemis to the
Ægyptianis, at last he cam in sa gret fauour with Pharao
 10 the king, that he mariet Scota his daughter. Bot quhen
 that king was deid, and now starte vpe, ‡ as the scrip-
 ture says, another king, his name Bocchar Pharao, that
 knew now not Josephe, bot oppressed Israel the people
 of God with ⁵dour and sair seruitude, quhen thairfor
 15 Gathelus perceiuet the diuine Ire kendle toward the
Ægyptianis, strukne with a richtuous, and true terrour,
 he began to think how to flitt from *Ægypte*, and how to
 find a nue habitatione. Quhairfor no^t long estir, quhen
 he had prepared al things necessar to the Sey and his
 20 Veyage, and lykwyse quhen he had gathired with him
 baith of the Grecianis, and of the *Ægyptianis*, quha, as
 him selfe was, throuth feir of the plaig war strukne, ane
 armie gret and sufficient, with his wyfe and barnes, he
 schipit at the portes of the riuier of Nile: thaireftir quhen
 25 be the Sey called *Mediterraze*, that is betuene Afrik, and
 Europ, he lang had ⁶rauet and wandirit, at last he
 arriuet in Numidie, a cuntry now called *Barbarie*:
 quhairfra be the cuntrymen ⁿ with gret force being put
 abak, he sailet ouer to thay frontiers and marches,
 30 quhilkes estir mony ³eirs war called *Lusitania*. Thair-

Gathel mari-
 ed Scota the
 daughter of
 King Phar-
 ao to his
 wyfe.

* L. "per Macedoniam et Achaiam insolentius fuisset grassatus"—had behaved with great excess throughout Macedonia and Achaia.

† L. "Non parva militum manu comitatum"—accompanied with

no small following of soldiers.

‡ L. "Bocchareque Pharaone ejus filio"—and Bocchar Pharao his son oppressed the people of God, &c. The Scripture is not mentioned in L.

How the
Scottis men
arrived in
Portugal.

eftir sum esteemed, * that this first was Portugal, quhilke now in the lattir dayes be ryght and rasone, as it war, is returned to the ald name agane, as afor it had corruptedlie bene called the porte of Gatheli.

Quhen thair he had brochte his power and men of 5
weir, and had socht throuch the feildes vichtual, to wit,
corne and cattel quhairw^t he mycht refreshe his people
opprest with sair hungre, cumis al in armes the cuntry
people, in haste to expel thair force. Thay cum 10
fordwarde with gret puissance, power, & violence, battel 10
thay ioyne. Bot Gathel obteining the victorie, ⁷ contrare
his enimies quhome he had ouircum, al humanitie and
gentilnes that he culde, he vset, of that hope and opinione,
that he sulde drawe that people to sum amitie, and 15
to sum bande of freindschip bring thame, and kyndnes. 15
Nocht lang eftir his armie began to erect the citie called
in Spayne in thir dayes Bracha, quhilke then was called
Brachara betuene the twa riuieris Minius and Durius,
nocht far frome the Sey syde. quhilke Warke that the 20
inhabitours mycht interrupte and hinder, prepares with 20
a new power to truble Gathel, and to stop his enterprise,
throuch battel. Bot quhen thay sie his men of weir
nocht only able to fecht for [†] the manteinance of the
religione and priuat substance, bot stoutlie to stryue for 25
thair lyfe, thay cal Gathel til a familiar speiking: Thay 25
schawe him vpon the north syde of the cuntry, brade
feildes indeid bot few inhabitouris, and that be ane oracle
thay vndirstude, that ane strange natione sulde obteine
that hail cuntry, quhair gif he, with his, walde ⁸ gang, 30
thay promise faithfullie vndir ane athe, that thair weirlie 30

How the
Scottis cam
to Cantabria
called now
Biskay.

* L. "eam primum Portugalliam (qua^e jam quasi postliminii jure
ad priscum nomen rediit) tanquam Gatheli portum corrupte dictam
fuisse." It was first called Portugal as if by corruption of "Port of
Gathel," and now, as if by right of reprisal, has returned to its
ancient name.

† L. "Pro aris et focis"—for altars and hearths—i.e., for hearth
and home.

armies, in tyme of neid, thay sulde ioyne with him against al ennimies how feare and deidlie saeuir thay be. Gathel accepts the conditione, and the diuine seruice of thair maner being done, rycht thairfa w^t his cumpanie
5 he passis to that place ; heireftir that Prouince frome this Gathel was called Gathelitia, quhilkes this day thay cal Galitia in Spayne. Thair, how sune the bande was maid with the inhabitouris, In haist he bigit the citie than called Brigantia thaireftir * Noia ; now quhilke Compos-
10 tella thay cal, † bot the first ornament of that cuntrie, be name was Brigantia, quicklie he decoret the citie baith with lawis, and wallis ; farther he commandet, that nocht onlie be thir lawis sulde thay lyue, bot that thay sulde al be as it war marked with ane commounue name, calling
15 thame al Scottis fra the name of his Wyfe, albeit is plane and euident that mony hundir ȝeiris estir, thay war called Gathelis fra Gathel. Now is reported that thay extendet thair boundes to Celtiberie, of quhilke is a parte Cantabrie in Spayne, quhilke parte now thay cal Biskay, quhilke
20 the riuers Hiber rinis by. Bot how litle vane, or vnfincet, ar thay things that our histories settis furth, of Gathelus, cleirlie aneuch testifies that maist ancient toun of the alde Spaynȝards, quhilke nathir the ald Romanis, sub-
dueris of the Warlde, nathir quha cam estir thame
25 victouris, the Gothis, culde euir ȝit abolishe or scrape out of rememberance, as testifies this day the language of Biskay. farther thir of Biskay, the Irishe men, and our Scottis Irishe acknawlege the same for thair first and mother toun : and quhilke nocht only be thame, bot be
30 our maist ancient nychtbouris of Britannie, commounlie is called, as it is, the Gathelik toun, albeit corrupetlie. As tueching thir maneris and ^otrade of lyfe, thay affirme, quha weil knawes, that litle difference is be-

* L. "Novium."

† L. "Brigantiae primum regio nomine ornatus"—at Brigantia he was first honoured with the name of king.

tuene, * na nocht in this age. This mairatouer wil testifie, that we reid sett furth into thair praise, in latine

¹⁰ Cantaber ante omnes, hyemisque aestusque famisque
Inuictus.

The sentence of this verse of alde
Commendes the peple of Bisky
That contrare hunger, heit, and calde,
+ Was na compare, the truth to try.

Of quhilke we reid, albeit attributed to the people of Cantabrie now named Biskay, our Scottis hilande hes ay mekle delyted in that prayse, and as vthiris settis furth, 5
y^t thay of Cantabrie or Biskay, quhen be thair enimies thay war crucifiet, vset to sing sangs of joy and blythnes, and hymnes of mirrines ; of ouris, in this warke, wil occur sundrie exemplis, and indeid worthie of remembrance, sa that it be for the faith and constancie keipet to thair 10
cuntry and thair captaines. Bot now † proceid we will to make our natione more notifiet and cleir.

* L. "Ne in hac quidem ætate"—not even in these times. But the Basque tongue has nothing to do with Gaelic, or any other Celtic dialect.

† The fourth line of this stanza was a second attempt on the part of the translator. The first attempt still exists in the MS., between the third and fourth line, scratched over but not illegible. It runs thus:—

" *Nane thol culde mair vndir the sky.*"

"Thol" = to endure. Elsewhere he writes Biskay; here Bisky; presumably for the sake of a rhyme. The quotation is from (Bk. 3, 326 of) Silvius Italicus, a poet who flourished A.D. 77. I quote from Andrews's Latin-English Lexicon, as I have never seen a copy of Silvius Italicus. It may be more concisely translated: "The Cantabrian, in endurance of cold, heat, or hunger, superior to all."

‡ L. "jam ad reliquam gentis nostræ propagationem pedem
refero"—I now proceed to the further propagation of our race.

HOW FIRST THE SCOTTIS CAM TO IRLAND.

In a schorte tyme Gathel his people sa multiplied and grew, that * excepte thay had expelled the people with quhome thay had maid the band, because thay brak ¹¹ trueis, that excepte, I say, thay had chaist thame clein 5 out, thame selfes had bene compelled to seik a new duelling. Hiber thairfor and Himechus, the twa sones, quhilkes Gathel gatt with his wyfe Scota, heiring of ane Ile, baith fair and fertile nocth far frome thame, towarde the North, thair ar thay past with gude wil, and consent 10 of thair father and counsel, to explore the mater, and se gif all things war in verie deid as was reported of thame. Quhair quhen thay cam, and a litle had spyeid out, thay fand it mekle bettir than the rumour was, or was reported, thaireftir thay ¹² proponed, thair to plant a stable and 15 sure mansione, and duelling place, to thame selfes and thair eftircumers. And making freindschip with sa rude a people, thay tho^t that eftir sum lycht skirmishes, thay mycht grow into ane people. Quhairfor Hiber, Hemec^{as} remaneng stil prefecte of the Ile, returneng to Biskay 20 eftir his fathiris deith is halden as king amang the people. He far crueler than his father, conqueissing the nerrest tounis, enlairget the impire baith in lenth and ¹³ bredh. Nocht lang eftir, trueis ar bund, mariages ar maid with sum of the Inhabitouris, The Scottismen^{as} ilk 25 haue^{ng} gret affectione ane toward another, and mutual beneuolence, agreit in ane, and now first of al thay named the cuntry ¹⁴ Hiberia, eftir the name of Hiber, euin as thay did the nerrest riuver, calling it Hiber; transferring the names of Gathel and Scota to Hemechus, and quha

quhen the
Scottis cam
first frome
Spayne till
Ireland.

Hiberia
frome Hiber.
The eftir-
cuweris

* L. " nisi eos quibuscum foedus inierant, violata fide, suis sedibus ejicerent," &c.—unless they should break their word, and drive out those with whom they had made the treaty, they themselves would be obliged to leave.

of Hiber
reyngnes in
Hiberia,
quhairfra
thay now ar
called
*Spayn3erds,
or Hispani-
ards.

war with him. Thair the eftircumeris of Hiber war
lang gouernouris of the cuntrey, of quhilkes Metellius
Hermonæus, Ptolemæus, Hibertus, Simon Brechus, war
cheife esteemed and haldne maist notable.

OF SIMON BRECHUS THE FIRST KING OF SCOTTIS
IN IRLAND OR HIBERNIA.

Quhil in Spayne, sik a ¹⁵ rippet is amang thame, and
sik ordour put til executione, Hemechus thinkand it war
a mater of gret ingratitudo to be vnkynd, to gyue for
gude na gude agane, myndful thairfor of the benifit q^{like}
on him his brother had bestowet, makeng him gouernour
of the Ile, walde name the Ile in rememberance of his ¹⁰
brother, and nocht of him selfe, frome Hiber, I say,
walde name it † Hibernia; With gret wisdome and
prudence he gouerned baith the peples, and Juget thame,
descidet al materis of controuersie, and ministered Jus-
tice, with gret respecte baith of thair ¹⁶ geir and of tyme. ¹⁵
Bot quhen Hemechus was deid, the twa peples betwene
thame stoutlie straue for the electione of a new gouernour,
for the affectione that ilk had to his awne kynde, quhen
the ane kynd walde haue the king to be chosen of his
generatione, the vthir of his. Thaireftir rais daylie and ²⁰
cruel battel betwene thame, and on baith the handes new
capitanes thay ¹⁷ cheised, and with baith the pairties
weiris ar begun of new. Sa gret appetite and wil of
beiring rule did fyre wpe, and inflame baith the peples

In Hibernia
quhen Hemechus
is deid sedi-
tious ar
begun.

* L. “unde Hispani Hiberi dicti”—whence the Spaniards are called Hiberians.

† L. From the beginning of the chapter to this word, stands in the Latin text as follows: “Dum hæc apud Hispanos geruntur Hemechus insulam, cuius prefectura a fratre acceperat, beneficij memor Hiberniam appellat”—while this was going on in Spain, Hemechus, mindful of kindness, named the island of which he had been made ruler by his brother, Hibernia.

for ouris entirit in the Ile of na vthir intentione than to constitute a perpetual duelling to thame selfes, and plant a forme of ane Impire. Bot the ald inhabitouris, how feired sa evir thay war at the beginning quhen thay saw

5 that due natione, nochtwithstandeng calling to remembrance how thay war descendet of sa noble a stock and of sa balde Gyantes, thame selfes thay tho^t in a verie miserable state, and thairfor eftir lang consuetude togither, and ilk knew vthir weil, and thair conditiouns

10 war sa notorious, thay began to take mair courage to thame selfes. Bot eftir continual battel and cruel weiris, strenth dekayit on baith the handes, eftir quhilke peace for a quhile succeidet. Bot now litle and litle thair forces beginning to florishe weiris of new startis vpe, in

15 quhilke daylie course thay draue ouer mony ȝeirs with smal odis amangs thame, bot amait ay æqual w^t thair aduersaris. The Scottis, at last, now eftir gret slaunchtir, sent ambassadours to Metellius King of Spayne,¹⁸ besieking him that in al possible haste, he walde, against

20 thair cruel aduersar send thame sum supplie: quhilke excepte war done, thay feired not litle, bot verie sair, that in Hibernia al sulde succeid verie ill. Metellius wissing baith his awne weil, and the weil of his freindes, denyet nocht, bot gladlie granted thair askeng, and with

25 his thrie sones, Hermonie, Ptolomie & Hibertus sent a stout armie of balde men^z of weir, quha¹⁹ dantouned at last the Inhabitouris, bot no^twithstandeng no^t without cruell weiris. Quhen al thingis now war pacified, Hermonie returnes to his father, and left his twa brethir,

30 Ptolemie, & Hibertus, thair behind him. Thaireftir was thair mony ȝeiris eftirhind a happie and gret successe of al things, for without al controuersie al power and authortie to him only was referred, quhome the people elected. In the meane tyme thay bigit tounes, sett doune lawis,

35 and planted a religione of thair maner. ²⁰ Quhil now in peace thay daylie perseueirit, thay in riches lykwyse and

Metellius
King of
Spayne
sendis cuw-
panis of
men of weir
to help the
Scottis in
Ireland.

in number multiplied, sa baith pissant and potent thay grew. Bot ouer gret prosperetie, as oft chances in the warlde, brocht furth this alde accustomed and arrogant presumptione: for seditious of new ryses agane amang thame stryeng for the supreme authoritie, and quha sulde be supreme heid, at quhat tyme * it had *cum* to mekle warr, than was afore, excepte ²¹ Thanaus, a man with thame nocht of smal bot of verie gret aestimatione (quha bot a litle afore was frome Hiberia to Hibernia *cum*, to reioyse on thair behalfe, for thair fælicitie *and* mak mirrie with thame) and for the same cause was sent), & excepte he, I say, prudentlie and wyselie had opponed him selfe to the multitude, had bene mekle * war than afore. The *diligens*, thairfor, Industrie, and trauale of this Thanaus thay vsed to eschewe stryfe and dissensione, to keip aback slachtir that vset, throuch the ambitione of some to brek furth; & throuch quhais authoritie first was done and begun, that the liberal and frie electione of a prince sulde be maid abrogat, and of na effecte, and that he suld be maid king, to quhome be ryght of heritage his sones or [†] oyes followeng sulde succeid to the kingdome. And than surelie first of al throuch this manis Counsel, was Simon²² brechus (a man maist notable in respecte baith of the blude of Metellius that he was and than of gret Justice, and induet w' all *virtue*) ²³ called frome Spayne; and quhen he was sett in the Chyre called the Chyre of Destinie, to wit, quhair the kings ar crouned, vpon his heid is sett the kings croune, the *ȝeir*, afore the birth of Christe, 695 saxthundereth nyntie and fyue: the *ȝeir* eftir was bigit Rome ²⁴ 60, ²⁵ 30

Simon
Brechus is
first king of
Scotia in
Ireland.

* L. "ad multam majorem injuriam"—it would have come to much worse mischief. "War" = *worse*. The translator repeats the passage twice.

† L. "Nepotes"—descendants. Both the Latin word and the Scottish equivalent "oyes" are a little ambiguous, and may mean either grandsons or nephews—descendants either direct or collateral.

the saxtieth, and this with al votes was done. This ²³ marmore stane in forme of a chyre, Hiber brocht with him, quhen he *cam* frome Hiberia to Hibernia, as is reported, and we haue be traditione set doune : * quhairfra 5 began the ²³taken of gud luk of a kingdom to follow. In this chyre, quhilke our cuntry people called of Destenie, all our Scottis kings evin til King Robert the Bruse the first, vsed to be crouned: Bot than it was transported frome Skone in Scotland quhair than it was, to West-
10 monaster in Londoune, quhair now it is keipet, and this was done be king Edward of Ingland. † Thair hail traist, and al thair hope was in this opinione *quhairfore* thay reft it. The opinioune was in thay dayes, that quhaireuir that chyre war fund to remane, the kingdome 15 of Scotland thair sulde be, conforme to that, quhilke now mony hundir *ȝeiris* hes bene fund ²⁴ writne thairin. as followis.

The marmor
chyre is the
Scottis chyre
of destenie or
gude luck. ✓

‡ Ni fallat fatum, Scotti quo^{cunq}ue locatum
Inuenient lapidem, regnare tenentur ibidem.

Quhair Scottis this marmour chyre find stand,
It hes in writte, thair thay sal reygne
With al gude luck ouer sey and land
Gif luck be true, and thair be king.

That first custome no'withstandeng of electione of a King, as we said afore, grew sa stark, and in sik ane 20 vsse, that hitherto the Rewlaris of Irland, and *men* of the principal houses ²⁵ nocht rathir ar admitted to the dominione be successione than be electione of thair stock and kindred, sa gretlie is that peple addicted to the constitutiouns of thair elderis. King Brechus, with gret

* L. "Unde futuri Regni omen cœpit"—whence he took the omen of the future kingdom; or whence arose the solemn usage of the future kingdom.

† L. This sentence does not occur in L.

‡ Unless fate be false, wherever the Scots shall find this stone placed, there shall they rule.

felicitie gouerned that peple lang: and that throuche the counsel and Wisdome cheifie of Thanaꝝ, quhome the King nocth only promouet to gret honouris, bot decored with gret raches, and braid landes in the south coste betuene the gret mountane in *Spayne called *Sacrum* 5 promontorium (or the haly hill) betuene it, I say, and the riuier called Byrsus: Mairouer with ws, the Gouernouris of countreyes, mony hundir ȝeirs following, frome that man Thanaꝝ, war commounlie called ²⁶Thani. The Inhabitouris of that toune quhilke in Hiberia was first bigit 10 called Brigantia, named thame selfes Brigantes frome the toune of quhilke thay war vpsprung: of quhais estircumeris sum estir mony ȝeirs entiring on the coste of Albion, that land quhair thay *cam* to, thay called Brigantia, quhilke this day we cal Galloway: and this was 15 vndir king Fergus first king of Scottis. Simon Brechus gouerned and handlet the Scottis effairis in Irland with gret honour and prayse, the space of xl. ȝeirs. To him, in the kingdome, his sone Fanduff succeidit; to Fanduff Ethion, neist him Glaucus, thridlie, Nathasill, finalie 20 Rothesay, quha first of the Scottis *thielandis* landet in the nerrest Iles of Albion, quhairthrouch we knawe ane Ile named Rothesay that first be him it was inhabited.

Quhairfra
Thani ar
named.

The name
and begin-
ning of
Brigantes.

The seid and
successione
of Simon
Brechus stil
inherited
Irland.

The Ile
Rothesay,
quhairfra
it is named.

HOW THE SCOTTIS FIRST *CAM* IN ALBION.

The ȝeir quhen the scottis *cam* in the Iles of Albion first, quhilkes we cal Hebrides now, was the hundir and 25 auchtint ȝeir estir the Impire of Simone. Bot estir thay

* L. adds, “(Hodie incolæ Doudail vocant)”—The inhabitants now call it Dovedale. “*In Spain*” is not in Latin text.

† L. “ex Hibernicis Scotis”—first of the Hibernian Scots. The translator very often puts *hieland* for Hibernian or Irish. Rothesay is the island of Bute. Fordun says it was called Bute from the *Bothe* or shrine which St Brandan set up there.

war entred in the main Land, the partes of west Albion, cheiflie the North thay first occupied: And than the first prouince thay named Argathil, now Argyl frome Gathel the father of the natione. Bot than, that thay war

5 nocht without lawis and Impire, * euerie familie or hous set a heid ouer thame selfes, quhilkes in thir dayes we cal capitannis. Thir thay holde in sik honour and aestimatione, that thay vsed commounlie to sueir be thair names and handes. Bot quha that aith had brokne,

10 surelie was na vthirwyse punisshed than gif the name and diuinitie of God he had violat: for thay beleuied sum certane diuinitie to be in thair heides and gouernouris, quhome thay vsed to cal vpon for helpe, \exists in all dainger. And nocht onlie cam that opinione schortlie nocht in

15 obliuione, bot in sa far, that sum of thame evin in thir dayes, quhen thay sueir that aith, than thay think that thay surelie, solemlie and halylie haue suorne. Vndir sik gouernours and gydes thay florished mony \exists ers, and in gret peace without externe weiris of strangers, bot

20 multiplied meruellouslie and grew in a copious and populous people. Nathir socht thay ony vthir policie, \dagger sa lang as thay vset thir maneris, to lyue vndir sik gydes and gouernours, and vndir sik kings; ay and quhill thay war invadet be that potent natione of the peyghtes throuch

25 counsel of the Britanis \ddagger quygetlie vndir 27 thoum; and than thay began to craue helpe frome Ferquhard king of Ireland: Ferquhard thairfor frome Ireland directeng his sone Ferguse, with ane gret armie, til Albion, him thay declairet king.

30 Bot because in this place we treit of Albion, mynding heireftir to speik nocht litle of the peichtis and britanis,

The Scottis, first cuwing to albion, thay occupie argyl.

Euerie hous set a heid ouer thame selfes.

Thir heidis or leiders ar halde in gret reputacione.

The Scotti mony \exists ers leiuet vndir gouernours or heides ouer euerie hous and familie without a king.

* L. "Singulæ tribus singulos Duces sibi præfecere"—each tribe placed a leader over itself.

\dagger L. "Neque aliam politeiam, sub uno Duce, Regeve, constitueret"—nor did they institute any other system of government under one chief or king, until they were attacked by the Picts, &c.

\ddagger L. "Clanculum"—secretly = "quietly under thumb."

I thocht gude, that afore I set doun the historie of the ordour of our Kingis, we first in a schort compend, make mentione of the natiounis that occupiet al the partes of Britannie, and thair kingdomes, and laungages, frome the beginning.

5

OF THE NATIONIS, KINGOMES, AND LANGUAGES
QUHILKES NOW, OR SEN THE BEGINNING, HAUE
FLURISHED IN SCOTLAND.

onlie thrie
natiounis
sumtyme in-
habited
Britannie; to
wit the Bri-
tanis, the
Scottis and
Peychtes.

The Impire
of Britannie
chaget oft.

In alde tymes thrie peples onlie war in Britannie, the Britanis, the Scottis, and the Peychtis. The Britanis nochtheles maist ancient: for a thousand a hundir and saxtine $\frac{1}{2}$ yeiris before the Romanis thair cuntry invadet, vndir Julius Cæsar, the Britanis * possesed that Ile: 10 quhais Impire nochtwthstandeng athir † succeeding to thair awne eftircumers, or be violence, force and compulsione occupied be strangeris, hes oft bene changet, as the Inglise historiographouris beiris at large. for to the Britanis gyueng place succeidet the Romanes; quhen 15 the Romanis war expelit, the peychtis and the Scottis tuke possessione: The Britanis now callis the Saxonis to dryue out the Scottis and peychtis, quha neist succeidet to thay ²⁶ roumes; quhen the Saxounis war dantouned succeidet the Danes of Denmark: quhen the 20 Danes ar dung out, the Nortmans establishes that forme of ane Impire, in quhilke we this day sie the dignitie of the Inglishe name perseuering, quhilke be thair monumentis cleirlier thay testifie than that we sulde make mony wordes in oft repeiting. Quhairfor hail 25 Britannie, quhilke in the dayes of the Venerable Beid

* L. "Intrasse"—are said to have *entered* the island 1116 years before the Romans.

† L. "jure derivatum in suos"—either lawfully handed down to their own.

was parted in x. kingdomes, in this tyme is diuidet
bot in twa: for the kingdome of the peyches, quhilke
in that age was maist large and ample, in a schort tyme
eftir cam into the Scottis handes. Bot al the rest, to
5 wit the Eist Saxonis, the West Saxounis, the South
lykwyse, and the North, the Danes and Nortmanis and
than thay alde Britanis that duelte in *Cornwal, at
last grew togither in ane people, as in ane body and in
ane kingdome. Nathir lat ony man think that I walde
10 pare, or in ony thing diminishe the æstimatione and
Antiquitie of the alde † Britanis, quhen my selfe I
acknawlege to be mekle ²⁹ debtebunde to thame. for
albeit at this tyme vndir the kingdome and Impire of
Inglond thay lyue at libertie, notwithstanding this honour
15 by ‡ the rest thay may ascriue to thame selfes, and quha
leiuers with thame obedient to thair *command* may justlie
clayme to thame selfes this ry^t and authoritie, first that
thay take thayr beginn^g of that ancient antiquitie of
the alde Britanis quha war the first that gaue that name
20 to the Ile, and quha that parte of the cuntrey quhilke
now is called Inglond helde frie mony hundir *ȝeirs* from
violence of all enimies evin vnto Julius Cæsar, and stil
keipet incorrupte baith thair language and maneris,
§ Innsafar that no^t only of this Ile may thay verilie be
25 called the first. Thairefter y^t noct only for a lang
tyme, albeit noct || altogether, against the Romanes

In Brittan
war sum
tyme x.
kingdomes
now bot 2,
Inglond and
Scotland.

* L. “Cambriam et Cornubiam”—Wales and Cornwall.

† L. “de Cambrorum seu Vallorum, et Cornubiensium antiquitate”—the antiquity of the Cambrians or Welsh, and of the Cornish.

‡ L. “id tamen lucis et gloriæ, præ ceteris qui illorum sceptro parent, juste sibi vendicare possunt”—yet this much honour and glory may they justly claim for themselves over and above the other peoples who obey that (English) sceptre; first, &c.

§ L. “adeo ut . . . tantum non aborigines vere dici possunt”—so that they may be truly called only *not* aborigines; i.e., all but aborigines.

|| L. “sejunctis viribus”—with separate forces,—not all together.

The Saxons
be thair cap-
tane called
Inglesmen.

selfes, bot against the confederat kings the Scottis and Peychtes, and lykwyse against the Saxounis quha war requiret to helpe thame against * vs, † finalie thay occupieng thair awne kingdome throuth innumerable skirmishes, thay did mazfullie, stoutlie and baldlie. (and 5
‡ quhilke mycht weil be thocht to haue bene done in Reuenge of the ⁸⁰ Pelagian heresie, and lykwyse of the unlawfull band maid with thame quha that tyme knewe no^t Christe contrare thame quha war christne brethir.)

Nathir was thir of Walis compellit be force, haueng sa 10
¶ gret courage, to duell in Wales, as in the waistest, bot an in the surest parte of Ingland ; evin as thair sumtymes thay had thair awne kings, thair awne Princes, and thair awne Capitanis, and skairse evir with gud wil obeyet thay the Inglesmen, how sair saevir the weiris had ouir- 15
thrawin thame, afore Henrie the seuinth, quha of the Walis or Britanis was borne, succeedet to the kingdome. At last throuth his gift the Britanis of Cambrie or Wailis, an thay now cal thame Cambrobritanis, war induet with libertie mair than afore, war glade of his beneuolence, 20
and war vniit in ane people vndir ane law, aequal maneris and conditiones w^t the Inglesmen, war of ane nobil and hich Inge and gret eruditione, and as we remember,

* L. "Nostros"—our people. Leslie identifies himself with the Picts and Scots.

† L. "sibi adversos nostros in auxilium accersitos, sed tandem ipsorum Regnum occupantes"—The Saxons who had been called in to help them (the Britons) against us (the Picts and Scots), but who at length seized upon their own (the British) kingdom.

‡ This parenthesis should come after the word "*kingdome*." "quhilke" refers to the fact there last mentioned—namely, that the Saxons seized upon the country they had been called in to protect. The "unlawful band" is that of the Christian Britons with the heathen Saxon, against the Christian Picts and Scots.

§ L. "Neque illam animi magnitudinem, in Cambriam et Cornubiam ut in asperiora sed tutiora loca, Anglorum armis detrusi, statim remiserunt"—Nor, when driven by the arms of the Angles into Wales and Cornwall, the wilder but safer parts of the country, did they soon lose their courage, for even there they had their own kings, &c.

our age hes brocht furth nocht few, sen we remember, in the Catholik religione verie ³¹ constant; (evin as the Ingles men mony ma of thame does, albeit sum of thame *raue and declyne by the way) † quhome nocht only 5 w^t meritorious and due honouris decores that Ingland at hame bot evin afeild externe and outland natiouns, insasfar that gif Cambrie or Walis with her mountanis and craigs honour nocht thame, notwithstanding thay through thair vertue wil decore and honour her.

10 Concerneng the ³²tounys, declairis Beid that in his tyme our Ile by the Latine touny quhilke, he says, in the kirke was ay commouny, four languages, he says, † was diuershe. and sa mony we may affirme vs to haue in this our age, sa § that the same Iles war subiected til 15 vs; I said of the tounys this we mycht affirme; excepte y^t now the touny of the Kirk be the bigers of Babel within thir xvi. yeirs is || ³³ spred first in Ingland, neist in Scotland. for the Ingles men, evin as the mair ¶ politick Scottis, vses that ald Saxone touny, al ³⁴ through ** vther 20 in commouny, quhilke now is called the Ingles touny, in ane place thay speik of sik ane maner, and in another place of sik a maner. Bot the rest of the Scottis quhome we †† halde as outlawis and wylde peple, (because the institutions of thair elderis, and that alde and simple 25 maner of ³⁵ cleithing and leiueng thay halde ȝit, and wil

The tounys
baith afore
tyme and
now in
Britannie.

* L. “alii aberrent”—although some have gone astray.

† Whom not only England honours, but foreign nations too.

‡ L. “quatuor diversas fuisse”—there were four different tongues.

§ L. “modo subjectas nobis Insulas comprehendamus”—provided we include the islands subject to us.

¶ L. “Confusa sit”—has been confused. The words are a *quasi* citation from Scripture.

** L. “Politiones”—more polished.

** L. “Saxonum lingua, quæ nunc Anglica promiscue dicitur, alia tamen atque alia dialecto, loquuntur”—speak the tongue which is now promiscuously called English, though in differing dialects.

†† L. “quos exteri . . . feros & sylvestres”—whom foreigners call wild and barbarian, but we mountaineers (highlanders).

How the
hilandmen
we name.

not forsaik thair opinione); we, I say, because the mair horrible places of the Realme thay occupie, cal thame quha dwel in the montanis or the mountane people, thay vse thair alde Irishe toung. Bot of the Iles of orchnay, sum ar Inglese, sum of the language of Norway, & thay cheiflie the outmest Iles of Scytlond; In the tyme of Beda, the speiche of the peychtes was *lykwyse in the Ile, bot quhen the natione was put out, lykwyse dekayed the ³⁶language, evin as quhen out of Ingland was castne the Danes thair language in lyke maner ¹⁰followet fast vpon thame. The fourth language is that maist ancient of the ald Britannis, in quhilke sum delytes of Cambrie & Cornewal. Bot in thir lattir dayes, through the diligence and kair of kings, is sa brocht to passe, that in the people is gretter constancie, ¹⁵and truer concorde than was afore, and the ald britanze language in euerie place worne out, as we se, the Inglise toung is leirned ower all. Now a few wordes how the Peychtis first *cam* in Albion. and that al things may be the cleirer, in few wordes we sal comprehend thame. ²⁰

HOW THE PEYCHTIS FIRST IN ALBION DESCENDET.

The begin-
ning of the
Peychtes,
and how
thay cam in
Albion.

Is evident that the peychtis [†]amang al the rest was the Northiren people, bot sum haue the opinione that thay war of the [‡]farthest Scythia called now Denmark; sum agane beleive that thay ar of the Scythianis of ³⁷Agathysie. sum in lyke maner thinkes that thay war ²⁵of Hungre, and affirmes that out of that cuntry of Cimbria thay war chaste. Quhairfra saeuir thay *cam*, is manifest that thay war a people baith ciuile & weirlie,

* "hujus loco"—in place of this—*i.e.*, the Norwegian.

† "inter omnes convenit"—it is agreed by all that the Picts were a northern race.

‡ L. "citeriore"—the nearer Scythia.

and in Albion verie lang keipet thair boundes. Thir peple wt *³⁸ lang schipis bot verie few, tuke the sey quhen baith frome the cost of Britannie and the cost of France thay war haldne abak, †round about,—is reported

5 how thay first strayed in the Iles of orknay; & than that swift and vehement † arme of the sey called Bosphor betuene orknay and Cathneise, quhilke now frome thame has the ³⁹ name, passing through and thair sailling ouer, thay war knawen to occupie the hail Easte pairet toward

10 the Sey, quhilke conteines Cathneise, the Rosse, Morray land, Mar, the mernes, Anguse, fife, laudiane. Sum thinkes that schortlie estir Brutus thay cam and entired in that Ile: vthiris affirmes that a little estir the Scottis, quhilke indeid appeiris to be maist liklie. ffor we nevir

15 reid that euir thay entired into thay westir Iles, pleisand and fair, called Hebrides, nathir to thay best partes in Albioⁿ in the Easte ⁴⁰ foraganes Irland, quhilkes the Scottis hitherto haue occupiet. Bot quhat cuntryes saevir the peyghtes haue occupiet of alde, the same to

20 this day stil sume taknes reteines, in quhilkes sume certane forme of the peyghtis name & thair glore ȝit appeiris, and may be seine. How sune thay entired in the Ile, quhen thay had bigit strenthis, and crouned a king, quha sulde be ouer baith thair Impire and lawes, than thay of

25 barnes ar only solicite and kairful, and sa thay requyre the Scottis of frindship and affinitie, desyrenge to haue wifes of thame, because sik affinitie to wyue baith the natiounis straylie in ane appeiret to haue gretter force and lesse coulorable deceit. Albeit in the beginnung we

30 heir that til owrirs this offir was nocht verie acceptable, notwithstanding considering effirwarde thair awne strenth mair diligentlie, and feiring lykwyse that thay, to wit the

Quhat cun-
tryes the
peyghtis in
Britannie
occupiet

* L. “longis navibus”—ships of war; a few ships of war.

† L. “undique”—at all points.

‡ L. “Bosphorum”—crossing the *strait* between Orkney and Caithness. Bosphorus is not used here as a proper name.

affinitie be
marriage be-
tweene the
Scottis and
Peychtis.

peychtis, had considerid w^t the Britanis, thay concorde with thame. first of al on thir condicouns, that baith the peoples, keiping still thair awne names, in the meine tyme within thair awne boundes thay suld conteine thame selfes, and be proper names * thame selfes sulde name. 5 Agane that contrare quhatsaeuir vthir natione, in armour sik mutual societie thay suld keip, that † quhat ane of thame twa did contrare another suld be accepted as contrare baith. Last of al quhen the peychtis doubted quha suld succeed to the kingdome lawfullie, to wit, conforme to the manis geneologie; the ‡ womanis race and line thay suld seik out. Thir wyet with ws in force and affinitie straik oft mony battellis first against the Britanis, and than against vthiris maist potent nationis, quha estirward juget the Britanis, and sum- 10 tymes with the Britanis selfes, and lykwyse against sindrie vthiris thay did ry^t valiantlie, and w^t gret felicitie. bot be quhat way thair Impire cam in the Scottis handes we sal speik in the awne place. Hithirto we haue schortlie spokne of the peoples of Britannie, kingdomes, 20 and languages, that w^t the gretter facilitie we may prepare the way sum things to reherse mair profunde, q^{lk}e lat be anuich.

The Impire
of the
Peychtis
cawis at last
in the Scottis
handes.

* L. "propriisque nominibus illos dicerent"—and should call them (their separate territories) by distinct names.

† L. "ut qui alteri bellum inferrent, utrique inferre censeretur"—that whoever should make war on either of them should be held as making war on both.

‡ L. "is etiam de foeminea Regum prosapia diceretur"—he should be named from the female royal line. This seems quoted from Bede. The clause "conforme to the manis geneologie" does not occur in L. Succession through the female line was a very old law of the Picts. The story of their obtaining wives from the Scots is probably an attempt to explain the fact that the Picts and Scots spoke a similar language.

OF THE SCOTTIS MANERIS.

In the lyfe and maneris of the ald Scottis schyned no^t that kynd of ⁴¹ brautie quhilke in thir dayes we se al natiounis craue. for this was thair maner of leiueng, and of this maner thair lyfe thay institute, that nathir 5 war thay seine diligate in thair table, nor ornat in thair cleithing, nor throuch melankolie or ⁴² sturt thair hart brokne. as wil appeir mair manifest of that quhilke followis.

THE ALD SCOTTIS MANERIS AND PRESENT LYKwySE.
CHEIFLIE OF THAME QUHA OCCUPIES THE *MOUNTANIS CALLED HEBRIDES.

The Scottis, to begin vpon a ry^t ground, quhithir it 10 was in peace or weir, † draue nocht ouer thair age in curio^{us} cheir, and thair lyfe in daintie and diligat disches, or in taisting fyne wines, and the ‡ sueitter drinkes, as is the commoune custome and consuetude ouer al: Bot thair kair and trayuel was hail in this to sustein thayr 15 bodyes commodiouslie and weil, of sik fude as thay mycht haue of the grunde, and thair thirst to slokne wt § herbes or, gif beir ⁴³ inlaikit, wt sik drink as fountanes and wattir || strandes gae thame thay vset gladlie, and wt gude wil. Sum vset breid of ry, sum of quheit, 20 sum of peise or beanies, bot no^t few of ates, as this or that ground gae in gretter abundance. Grettest delyte thay had in oxin flesche, and in ¶ kye fleshe evin sa, and

* L. "Montana et Hebrides"—the Highlands and Hebrides.

† L. "ætatem suam triverunt"—did not fritter away their life.

‡ L. "potuque meraciori"—more undiluted drink.

§ L. "cum lactis aut cerevisiæ penuria laboratum fuerit"—when there was dearth of milk or beer.

|| L. "fontes et rivuli"—wells or streams.

¶ L. "vitulina"—veal.

* cheiflie quhen the blude was lattin out at sum tymes the maist vset thame, because than thay war mair sappie and bettir than, to the nurishment of the body. Oxne, † kye, scheip, or Gait gif sum tymes war in wanting, not \pm only kaipounis, plueris and vtheris sik kynd of cheir vset thay, bot fishe, of q^{lk}e thay had in abundance, and of quhilkes thay had na smal vsse, thay satisfiet their

They eite
bot ance in
the day and
yt never
afor evin.

hungir sueitlie : Nocht be the day was lycht, nathir at noneday bot at evin only thay first prepared the table, and that verie \pm scharpe and skairs, quhen al thair lyfe 10 nathing thay hated mair than gluttonie, assuring thame selfes that sik sobrietie in meit and drink and sik maner of fair and cheir war mair proffitable athir to restore to thair health seik and waik, or quha war no' seik and waik to make freshe and stark. quhilke through lang exper- 15 ence and vsse thay had leired, quhen amang thame war verie few seiknessis, bot of age al departed this lyfe ;

Daylie Bat-
tel amang
thame.

§ amaist amang thame continual battel. L In weiris quhen thay \pm kit the aduersar, thay invadet athir w^t ane arrow or a lance. Thay vset ane twa edged sword lykwyse ; 20 the futmen a lang sword, the horsmen a schort sword bot baith vset a verie braid \pm sword, with a scheiring sharpe edge that at the first straik, w^t little force, it walde scheir a man in twa in the waste or midle. Thay war 25 \pm harnest with Jacks al wouen through w^t yrne huikes, quhilkes \pm habbirgeounis thay cal : This vpon, or as we say, abone a lathir cote, quhilke was na les stark than it was elegant, thay put on.|| Al thair harnesse was lycht,

* L. "iisque sanguine nonnunquam diffluentibus"—and these sometimes when they were running with blood.

† L. "vituli"—calves.

‡ L. "non tam capis . . . quam piscibus"—not so much with capons, &c., . . . as with fish.

§ L. "Bella illis propemodum continua"—wars among them were almost continual.

|| L. adds, "Nostri Acton dicunt"—our people call it Acton ; probably Gaelic "*Uchdan*" = a covering for the breast.

that gif they fel in ony danger, the lychtlier they mycht al thair
 slip out of the handes of thair ennemis: for in swiftnes armour
 of fute, in quhilke they walde ouirriz the swostest horse,
 * quhither the way war lang & plane, or gif it war
 5 cumirsum throuch hilis or ⁴⁸ hopes, in sik swotnes, I say,
 they obteined gret prais, athir quhen the ennemie flies to
 follow, or quhen the ennemie persues to flie, and gif
 mister be to [†] declyne from perrel. Amang thame this
 was thair maner, the gretter of digrie and the nobiller of
 10 blude that ony of thame war, in the weiris he was for mest,
 and gaue the first ⁴⁹ brasche in the feild, and set first ^{on}
 the ennemie: and this he did to moue and inflame his
 cumpanie to stande stoutlie, & w^tout feir to gang ford-
 ward. the men of weir throuch his exemple, the scharp-
 15 lier walde sett vpon the ennemis, and thair awne bodyes
 sett for the body of thair capitane, and frome danger him
 defend, and frome al perrel of lyf him preserue. for as
 we said afoir, thair prince or capitane, ^{3e} naturallie, as it
 war they helde in sik reuerence, that for thair cause or
 20 at thair command, they walde venture thair awne lyfe to
 quhatsaevir danger or death albeit nevir sa bittir. They
 war no^t now vphaldne to the weiris ^{on} the Kings waiges,
 bot [‡]nurised and brocht vp in the hous, and thair sus-
 tentatione to the feild was brocht out of the hous; quhilk
 25 they vset sa moderatlie and w^t sik sobrietie, that they
 walde leid a lang lyfe frie frome al seiknes, with a verie
 smal portione of [§]kitschine meit, buttir, milke, or cheis,
 mixed w^t meil quhilke throuch souking they fed vpon.

* L. "Vel insequentem, si res postularet, declinandum"—or, if occasion demanded, to slip away from a pursuing enemy.

† L. "aut in via bene longa, aut ullis anfractibus interclusa"—if the way were at all long, or broken up with bendings and windings. The meaning is, that on a short or level road they would have less chance.

‡ L. "sed victu domo asportato aliti et nutriti"—but were reared and fed on food brought from their own homes.

§ L. "ut pariculam quamdam obsonii, ex butyro, lacte, caseo,

Thair exercise in peace.

Gif ony tyme thay had frie frome the weiris, that in peice thay mycht leive, thay spendit it nocth in ydlenes, or vanitie, and in ald wyfes fables, bot thay thocht best, to make the memberis of thair body mair firme, stable, and sure, and to fortifie thame selfes, to spend that tyme 5 in *rinnung*, *fenceng* w^t swordes in the barresse; and in ⁵⁰werstling: and that with age thay mycht that natural courage and straith in thame make mekle quicker and abler, the verie wylde beistes, with a dog & *rinnung*, oft thay hunted; and thairfor verie oft ane another provoket 10 to the singular *combatt. Quhairof proceidit that the les they war gyuen to voluptuous and fleshlie pleisouris.

This maner of way thay vset to bring vp thair bairnes, first to exercise thame in schoteng arrowis, neist in casteng darteris, thaireftir in feiding horses, and prouoiking 15 thame to *rinn*; and last in handling of waaponis exerce thame with all diligence to propone wnto thame famous & preclare exemplis of men of renoume, quhais fustepis thay mycht follow, the ⁵¹fade and inimitie borne toward thair parents to instil in the hertes of thair barnes, that 20 quhen thay *cam* to perfectione the scharpier thay mycht persue thame: albeit in this thay war worthie of al correctione, that thay war sa vehementlie sett to reuenge: for gif ony discorde or diskynnes had fallin amang thame, 25 was estir nevir clein ⁵²forȝhet, na nocth quhen thay war deid, quhen the barnes ȝit alyue nocth only war ennemis to the parentis, bot, excepte thay gaue a manifest and ane euident sygne and takne of peace and luue, with a

ower bent to reuenge how thay ar.

farina coagmentatam sugentes"—sucking some small relish of butter, milk, or cheese, mixed with flour (meal).

* L. "Ipsas feras cane cursuque s̄epissime persecabantur, ac adeo ad singularem luctam frequenter provocabantur"—the very wild beasts they often hunted on foot with a dog, and even frequently provoked them to a single struggle. In the top margin is inserted, near the word "*rinnung*"—"thame selfes held in a syd through speid." This must be meant for an alternate translation of the words, "cursuque s̄epissime persecabantur."

deidlie fade, hatred, and Invie, thay persekuted and persuet the hail stok and familie pertaining to the sam parents, baith barnes, and oyes, and sa this deidlie faid was nevir put in the buke of obliuione.

5 Thair cleithing was til necessitie, and nocht til decore, maist conuenient ay to the weiris ; for thay al vset mantilis of ane forme, baith the Nobilitie and the commone people, excepte that the Nobilitie delyted mair in coloured claith & sindrie hewis, and thir mantilis war baith

10 *wyd and lang, no^twithstandeng about the bosum, quhair thay wald decentie ⁵³losin. I canⁿ weil think thir same to be the kynd of cleithing quhilkes in ald tymes in [†]latin war called ⁶⁴Brachæ. In thir only mantilis in the ny^t seasone thay rowit thame selfes, and in thame sleipet

15 15 sound : [‡]this was thair maner, and this day the hilande men, and thay of Irland weiris even siklyke, bot now thay vse ruch courirings, ane sorte to thair bed, another sorte to the Jornay conuenient. The rest of thair claithis, was a schorte cote of woll, w^t wyde and apne sleiues that

20 20 the radier quhen thay walde thay my^t schote or caste a darte, or ane arrow, breickis thay had verie slichte, and indeid mair to hyd thair memberis than for ony pompe or pryd, or to defend thame frome the calde was meit. Of linnine lykwyse thay maid wyd sarkis, w^t mony bos-

25 umis, and wyde sleifes of negligence hinging doune evin to thair knies. Thir sarkis the mair potent amang thame vset to smeir with saffroune, bot vthiris w^t a certane fatnes, and this thay did to keip thame cleine frome al filthines. Nathing thay thocht worthier of counsel than to exercise

Thair mawer
of cleithing.

ane schorte
cote.

simple
breickis.

maist wyd
sarkes thay
vset.

30 * L. "demissas et fluxas, sed in sinus tamen quosdam, ubi volebant decenter contractas"—long and flowing, but drawn becommingly into folds where (or when) they wished.

† L. "a veteribus"—by the ancients.

‡ L. "habebant etiam, cujusmodi Hibernenses et hodie sibi placent, villosas stragulas, alias ad iter, alias ad lectos accomodatas"—they also had rough woolly coverings, such as the Irish even yet delight in, one sort for travelling, and another for sleeping.

thame selfes continuallie in the sueit of the Barresse, or in siklyke ane exercise. In makeng thame, appeirit na kair or trauel neglected athir in arte or decore: as ^{w^t} threid of silke, cheiflie greine, or rid, al the partes of the sark maist artificiouslie thay sewit.

5

The Wo-
menis habit
how decent.

Bot the cleithing of the women with thame was maist decent. for thair cotes war syd evin to the ⁵⁵hanckleth, wyd mantilis abone, or playdes all embroudiret artificiouslie; bracelets about thair armes, iewalis about thair neck, broches hinging at thair halse, baith cumlie and ¹⁰ decent, and mekle to thair decore and outsett. Bot that we pas nocht far frome the men, quhen al thair kair was to excel in glorie of weifair and victorie, thair labour and hail studie baith in peace and weir was ay sett thairto, gyueng thame selfes, in a maner, haillie to that exercise. ¹⁵

Na *men* war les diligate than thay, les leicherous, and mair abhored voluptuous plesour. of quhilk by al that we haue said, this may be ane evident takne, that thair heid, ³⁰ young nor ald, thay neuir couered in the nycht. oft quhen thay restit, thair heid thay laid vpon the bair 20 erte, or at leist vpon a greine turfe, or sum of the greiner bent or raschis, or than a ⁵⁶grosse seck spred vndir thame. Albeit thay regairdet not mekle diligate cheir, and daintie dishis sik as kitchines prepares, nochtwithstandeng pru-²⁵ dentlie thay fand out a new diuice and maner of kuiking, quhairthrough verie esilie thair fleshe was sodne, and sa weil that neuir bettir. for cheiflie in tyme of weir quhen to the feildes to karie pottis, panis, and vthir kitchine veshels, thay thot hauie and molestful, in place of potis and sik seithing vesselis, the painches of ane ox or ane ³⁰ kow thay vset cheiflie. Gif necessitie vrge, this day thay take the hail ⁵⁷meklewame of ane stain ox, thay turne and ⁵⁸dicht it, thay fill it partlie with watir partlie with flesche, thay hing it in the cruik or a ⁵⁹sting, eftir the maner of a pott, and sa thay kuik it verie commodiouslie vpon the ³⁵ fyre. In quhilke kynd of seithing, is another uthilie ³¹it

hair maner
of sleeping.

Ane new
maner of
kuikrie.

fruitfuller and mair commodious: that the brue of this fleshe, the fatt remaineng stil, thay make of sik a sorte w^t little labour, bot w^t gret ingine, that the best wine nor na vthir kynd of drink thay compare til it. Lykwyse of

5 heipes of corne throuch the same ingine breid wil they make *quiklier estir thair opinione nor vthirwyse. for thay thresche na stuf, †bot with fyre thay ⁶⁰signe it into the pile vpon the ground, quhen thay haue signet it, thay winnow it, quhen it is winnowit, thay grind it in a hand mil, 10 quhilke properlie we call the queirnis, thairestir thay sift it: frahand thay make breid aftir casting it vpon the ⁶¹girdle, or than setting it til a stane, thay bake it at the harth, quhilke breid is nocht different far frome that breid, quhilke the ald fathers calles ⁶²subcinericius, or bakne 15 vnder the ⁶³asse.

The maner
of thair
bakeng.

Breid bakne
vndir the
asse.

Behaulde now the maneris, w^t quhilkes the Scottis of ald war induet, bot quhy say I of ald? quhen thay, quha this day w^t vs speik the ald scottis toung, planelie haue the selfe sam maneris. for quha this day ar, haue 20 hitherto keipet the institutiounis of thair elderis sa constantlie, that nocht onlie mair than 2 thowsand yeirs thay haue keipet the toung hail vncorrupte; bot lykwyse the maner of cleithing and leiueng, that ald forme thay vnganget aluterlie haue keipet. †In this sik a reuerend 25 feir and dreid thay haue leist thay offend in things of honestie, that gif thair Princes, or of thair Nobilitie, visit the kingis court, thay aray thame selfes of a courtlie maner, elegantlie, quhen thay returne to thayr cuntry,

The same
maneris the
Scottis vse
this day,
quhilkes the
Scottis vset
in ald tymes.

* L. "opinione citius"—quicker than would be thought. "Nor vthirwyse" has no meaning, and is not in L. text.

† L. "sed in ipsis adhuc culmis, paleis atque aristis per terram sparsam distentis, atque igne consumptis, frumentum exsiccant."—They do not thresh corn, but dry it on the stalk, by spreading the ears on the ground and burning away the shaw and chaff.

‡ L. "Idque tanta religione"—and this with such exactness, that if their chiefs go to court in finer clothes than usual, they instantly resume, &c.

casteng aff al courtlie decore, in al haist, thay cleith thame selfes of thair cuntrey maner, excepte thay wil incur al manis ⁴danger and hauie offence. Quhilke thing, in sa far, ~~cas~~ nocht be laid as a faute to thame, that a certane singular prais of constancie thay appeir justlie to haue preueinet al natiounis with ; Thair constancie quhilke this day thay haue keipet, is no^t worthie of sobir and slicht prais, cheiflie that in the catholik religione far les thay defecte, and far fewar than vthiris of the mair ⁵*politick sorte amang vs. ane peculiar and proper vice is amang thir men, and to thair commoun weil maist pestilent, that naturallie thay ar bent mair willinglie and vehementlie, gif thair maistir commande thame, to seditione and stryfe : than to be labourars of the ground or men of craft ; thay had leuir be esteemed al nobilis, or at leist ¹⁰baldie men of weir, albeit neuir sa pure thay war, than houshawd men, or honest men of crafte, albeit neuir sa rache. of this cumis thair pryd and ¹⁵hichtines, and bosting of thair nobilitie ; quhen sum writeris in thame noted sik vices thay spak no altogither raschlie. ²⁰

In thir things we war the [†]langer that the cleirlier we my^t paynt thame out : the mair the baldnes of sum, be in our [¶]loising, the mair may thair baldnes be tramped out malitiouslie. For quhen thay reid the ald Scottis, quhais flittaris thay ³⁰it follow in the hilandes of Scotland, was no^t elegant and ornat in thair cleithing, nor honest in thair maneris ; quha, quhen as thay write sik wordes, thay accuse the hail scottis men, not considering that gif ane thing was no^t praisworthie in thame, or in ane sorte ; mony things by that thay haue worthie of singular prais. ³⁰

* I.e. "politiones"—more refined.

† I.e. "In his graphice depingendis eo suimus longiores, quo major est quorundam audacia in nostra laude malitiosè obterenda"

I have been all the longer describing these matters, because of the unusual insolence of certain persons who have maliciously tried to disparage what was to our praise.

lykwyse gif ȝe behald another, ȝe and a far bettir *parte* of the Realme ȝe sal sune vndirstand; thair to be a people, nocht only in young bot in habit, *efir the politik maner, and in conditiouns and maneris of ciuilite

5 thay differ far frome that vthir people. for as in speiche thay differ not far frome thair nybouris the Ingliste men, in cleithing, evin sa, and leiueng thay differ nocht verie far frome thame of Ingland, of France, and of flandiris; †albeit sum thing be in al thrie that nocht ane of thame

10 fauouris, and that sum of thame fauouris. Bot as sum of thame quha inhabites the borders of Scotland toward Ingland, haue maneris frome the rest far different, sa in this place sum of thame I purpose to reherse schortlie.

The maners
of the vthir
parte of the
cuntry.

Sum barbar-
ous wryteris
inconsider-
atlie wald in
thair wryt-
eig block al
the Scottis.

THAIR MANERIS QUHA INHABITES THE BORDERIS OF SCOTLAND FORANENT INGLAND.

Throuch al the prouinces of Scotland, ⁶⁷ quhilkes ar 15 vpon the bordouris foranent Ingland takes to thame selfes the grettest libertie and licence, †quairthrouch thay reioyse that vnpuniste ay thay ⁶⁸chaipe. ffor quhen in tymes of weirs throuch inuasioun of ennemis daylie thay ar brot til extreime pouertie, in tyme of peace, the

20 ground albeit fertil anuich feiring that schortlie the weiris oppresse thame, thay alutterlie contemne to tile. quhairthrouch cumis to passe that be steiling and reif, thay §rayer seik thair meit, for fra scheding of blude

The Scottis
bordirers to
tile the land
plane ab-
horis.

in takeng
prayis thay
exerce thame
selfes.

* L. "rei politicæ ordine"—in the management of political matters.

† L. "etiamsi utraque in re, quædam sunt quibus singuli sibi applaudunt"—although in both matters (food and clothing) there are some things peculiar to each.

‡ L. "qua et impune sæpe gaudent"—in which (licence) they often rejoice with impunity.

§ L. "seu potius depredationibus"—by robbery, or rather by plunder. *Y* stands for *th*.

thay greitlie abhor ; Nathir *gyue thay mekle betuene,
quhither the Scottis or the Inglesmen, steil or reiue or
dryue away prayis of horse, oxne and scheip behind baks.
vpon fleshe, milk, and cheis, and sodne †beir or orgmount,
principallie thay lyue. Thay haue verie lytle vse of 5
breid, evin as thay haue of gude ⁶⁹beir, amaist na wine,
ȝe quhen⁷⁰ baith ar present, thay ar seine in nouther of
thame to delyte mekle. ‡ Thair castelis and palices ar
scheiphouses and luges, quhilkes thay commonlie cal
pailes, of quhais burning thay ar nocth sair solist. § Bot 10
thay far starker do make, four nuked, of earth only
quhilke nathir *can* be burnte, nor *w^tout* a gret force of
men of weir, dounie *can* be castne, or *w^tout* sum trauel,
with the sueit of thair browis, thir ar thair ⁷⁰pailes.

The masseris
of the nobil-
tie duelling
thair.

Amang thame ar sum noble men of quhilkes sum 15
takes na prayes to thame selfes appnelie, bot takne be
ony vther, albeit he be na partaker, ȝit through silens he
dissimilis, that the ⁷¹skry spred nocth in braider, for thay
ar verie war, leist gif in tyme of peace thay schaw thame
selfes mair seueir than rasone requires, in tyme of weir 20
thay find a recompence maid : vthiris agane, quha ar
potent anuich, and studie to politik effairis, can nocth
resist thame for al that, because thay haue ane ald con-

* L. “neque multum interesse putant, sive a Scottis sive ab Anglis
furentur”—nor do they think it makes much odds whether they
steal (&c.) from Scots or English.

† L. “Hordeoque cocto”—and parched barley. Perhaps an equi-
valent of what is called in French “orge mondé,” peeled barley ;
hence “*orgmount*,” not in L. text.

‡ L. “Ædificia sunt casae et tuguria, de quorum incendiis nihil sunt
soliciti”—their buildings are mere huts and cottages, of whose burn-
ing they are not solicitous.

§ L. “Potentiores pyramidales turres, quas pailes vocant, ex sola
terra, quæ nec incendi, nec nisi magna militum vi ac sudore dejici
possunt, sibi construunt”—the more powerful build for themselves
towers in the shape of pyramids, which they call “Pailes,” of earth
alone, which cannot be burnt, nor be thrown down without much
trouble, and a numerous band of soldiers.

quhat meit
thay eat.

quhat lugeng
thay haue.

suetude of growing to that maner quhilke thay ar *cum* to, as it war another nature.

Bot gif the princes of the cuntrey *cum* against thame w^t ane armie frome the king, as oft hes bene *done*, thay 5 bot skorne thame. as thir rieferis through the nature of the place ar sa fenced about that gif out of thick wodis thay be chaist, to hich mountanis thay *præpair*; gif out of mountanis thay be dung, to the watir bankes of riueries and dubis thay flie. Agane gif thay perceiue that frome 10 that place thay ⁷³ mon flie, schortlie thair followers thay saiflie deceiue through certane difficile myres, quhilkes albeit thay be lyke medowis greine abone, and lyke fast 3eard appeir vndirneth, jit quhen a *man* entiris, thay sal gaip wyd, and swallie him vp in a maner to the deipth. 15 be thir sinkes wil gang not only the Reiuers selfes quha ar baith of a wondirful swoftnes and lychtnes, bot the horses in lyke maner thay vse to bow thair hochis and to pase through mony partes, and lykwyse to pas ouer quhair our fote *men* skairse dar follow: and for this 20 cause the horse thay dar nocht schoe w^t yrne schone. A filthie thing thay esteime it, and a verie abiecte *man* thay halde him that gangis vpon his fute, ony voyage. quhairthrough *cum* is that al ar horsmen. gif thairfor 25 thay haue speidie horse and quhairw^t thay may dresse thame selfes and thair wyes, thay ar not mekle kairful for the rest of the houshalde geir.

Quhair as sum wrytes scottis to eit *menis* flesche haue had sik ane vsse, *can* to na vther be attributet bot to the same, nathir to thame al, bot only to thame of Anan- 30 dale: quha afor war called Ordouicks, our wryters makes meztion, that thay war wonte to eit the fleshe of the captiues, quhome lykwyse thay blek in another thing na les cruel: to wit that the *women* war wonte to slay thair *men* with thair awne handes quhen frome the feild 35 thay war *cum* hame ouircum^w be thair ennimes, as to be

* L. "quorundam"—bot some.

The reiuers
⁷³ bogyles
their follow-
ers.

al horsmen.

The wyldnes
of Scottis
*bot sum,
suide not be
ascriuet to al
the natioun.

ouircum war a takne of cowardnes, quhilke in men thay thocht could be na deid mair mischieuous. Bot the alte crueltie of fewe sulde nocht be ascriuet to the hail Scottis natione. How mekle les that, quhilke thay cite out of S. Hierome, y^t a Scottisman was seine in France eit manis fleshe, albeit sum had the opinione that he was na Scot bot a Scythian; bot lykwyse gif it pleis thame til affirme, that thay saw the Scottis eit rawe Salmonte, new drawen out of the flude, but athir bred or salte. ffor our selfes knawe a man and familiarie we knawe 10 him, w^t vs famous anuich, to name Mongo Hog, quha quhen in his ȝouth banist for a quhile lay hid neir a watir syd that na man wist of him, q^r na meit he culde find, alutterlie nathing, seing him self in sandie furdes, through the arte that first he leired, eisilie * can take 15 Salmond: to be schorte, he tuke thame, he eit thame rawe, and w^t sik a consuetud of eiting at last he was confirmed, that quhen he was ane alte man, without ony horrour, quhilke al tuik that sawe him, als mekle salmond of this same sorte he walde eit rawe, as mony vthiris 20 mycht thoch weil sodin, and gladlie walde he eit it in presens of famous persounis quha walde nocht belieue it; bot in thair presens oft hes he beine seine do it. Behauld how vrgent is necessitie, in distres; and how 25 consuetude is als potent as another nature.

a meruel.

Necessitie
vrges to do
mony things.

Bot I returne agane to † our bordir men in quhome sum things ar seine, nocht verie meikle no^t to thair prais, sum things agane rare, sum things finalie meruellous. ffor quhen thay spoyle behind backes al thair nychtbouris feildes, thay intend thairby to seik thair leiueng, nocht w^tstandeng thay ar war with al possible diligens that thay sched nocht thair blude quha ar in thair contrare.

* L. "se facile capere posse"—that he could easily take salmon.

† L. "alia conspicuntur quae non maxime illis laudi dari nequeunt"—some things are seen that cannot be refused to them as of highest praise.

for thay ar persuadet that all the guedes of al men in tyme of necessitie, be the lawe of nature, ar commoun to thame & vthiris: bot slauchtir and sik iniures be the lawe of God forbide. Bot gif thay commit ony voluntarie slauchtir, to be maist in reuenge of sum iniure; and cheiflie for the slauchtir of sum cosing or freind to sum man. fra quhilke thay wil nocht absteine, thoch the lawes of the Realme commandet: quhairof ryses deidlie feid, nocht of ane in ane, or few in few bot of thame ilk 5 ane and al, quha ar of that familie stock or tribe how ignorant sa evir thay be of the iniure. This pest albeit it be commoun to the hail Realme and a greuous calamite, to thir nochtwithstandeng it is cheiflie proper.

Lat this mairouer be eiket to thair first vertue that 15 quhomto ance thay gyue thair faith thoch til ane ennimie it be, thay keip it maist surelie, In sa far that quha ance brek his faith nathing is thocht mair vngracious than he. Bot gif ony amang thame be fund giltie of sik a crime he quha suffiris the iniure vses, or sum in his name, in a 20 solemne conuentioune, * quhen present to mend and bind vp al materis on baith the handes ar baith the wardenis of the bordiris,—eftir this maner thay vse, I say, to put a gluue vpon the poynte of ane speir in exprobatione and schame of him quha crakit his creddence, 25 rydeng of sik a maner throuch al the people, schaweng it out, na infamie is compared to this, his †companions wisis oft that God take him out of this lyfe be ane honest deith. Nathir haue thay no'withstandeng, now vanelie fallin frome the faith of the Catholik Kirk, as 30 mony vthiris haue done. Thay delyt mekle in thair

They ar war
of blud-
shedding.

The deidlie
feides in
Scotland be-
tuene class
and clan.

How surlie
thay keip
the faith
ance gyuse.

The punis-
ment of
creddence
ance crakit.

* L. "Velut in illis dum utriusque Regni limitum Praefecti ad resarcienda utrinque damna pro more adsunt,"—as, for instance, in those (conventions) in which the Wardens of the Borders meet for the mutual settlement of claims for damage.

† L. "Quam vel ipsius perfidi honesta morte, contribules elui non raro expetunt."—The clansmen often demand that the disgrace be wiped out by the lawful death of the traitor.

awne musick and Harmonie in singing, * quhilke of the actes of thair fairbearis thay haue leired, or quhat thame selfes haue inuented of ane ingenious policie to dryue a pray and say thair prayeris. The policie of dryueng a pray thay think be sa ⁷⁴ leiuersum and lawful to thame that neuir sa feruentlie thay say thair prayeris, and pray thair ⁷⁶ Beides, quhilkes rosarie we cal, nor with sick soli-
citude and kair, as oft quhen thay haue xl or l myles to dryue a pray. 5

How qⁿ
they take a
pray they
say yr
prayers.

The maner
of dryueng
a pray.

sluthhundes
follow the
reliours &
sumtymes
take thame.

In the nyght seasone be troupis † thay take mony 10 by-gates; in the daytyme thay ly hidd in secrete places afore appoyned to that end, and thair thay recreate and refreshe thame selfes and the horses, quhil be nyght thay may cum quhair thay walde be. ‡ fra ance thay take the pray, be boutgates alanelie & bygates and the ny^t sea- 15 sonne thay cum quhair thay walde be. § Be thir places of wildernes, bygates, kraigs and glenis the perfyter that ane amang thame is, the mair he is maid of, and in the gretter honour is he halden, as a man of ane excellent ingine: and thay ar of sik subtiltie, that verie sindle thay 20 lat the pray be takne frome thame, excepte sluth-houndes be thair gyd and follow thair fute rycht, than || sumtymes chances that be thair aduersares thay may wante the pray.

* L. "quas de majorum gestis, aut ingeniosis praedandi precan-
dive stratagematis ipsi configunt"—songs, which they compose
about the deeds of their ancestors, and their clever ways of plun-
dering and praying. The pun does not appear in the Latin, but
one can hardly accuse the solemn translator of being guilty of it
intentionally.

† L. "per invia loca, perque multos meandros e suis finibus
exeunt"—through trackless places, and roundabout ways, they start
from their homes.

‡ L. "arrepta præda similiter noctu per circuitus et devia dun-
taxat, ad sua redeunt"—having secured their booty, they return
home, also by night, and by circuitous and out-of-the-way paths only.

§ L. "Quo quisque peritior dux per illas solitudines," &c.—The
more skilful a leader a man is, through these lonely places, &c.

|| L. "ab adversariis nonnunquam capiuntur"—they are some-
times taken by their opponents.

finalie gif thay be takne, thay ar sa eloquent, & sa mony fair and sueit wordes thay *caz* gyue, that thay moue the Juges *ȝe* and thair aduersaries how seueir saeuir thay be, gif nocht to pitie, at leist to woundir vehemtlie. Bot because perchance our ⁷⁶ orisone hes bene langre of thir twa peoples than of sum hes bene desyret, quhat of the rest of the peples of the land we ar about to say, we sall cutt schorter, because thair maneris differis noch verie far frome thair nychbouris chieflie thame, ^{The eloquence of the reiuaris gif they be takne.} 10 quha ar maist ⁷⁷ politick and decent in maniris.

THE MANERIS OF THE RESTE OF THE PEPLE OF
THE LANDE HEIR FOLLOW.

About now to speik of the rest of the people of Scotland, at the nobilitie we wil begin. The nobilmerȝ had leuir duel in the feildes, quhair nocht only ar palices bot castelis of strenth and touris, quhilkes ilk hes conforme ^{Rathir in the feildes than in the tounis had they duel, to wit the nobilitie.} 15 to his substance, heir I say had thay leuir duel than in the tounes. Gret families thay feid, and that perpetuallie, pairtlie to defend thame selfes frome thair nychbouris, with quhome oft thay haue deidlie fead, partlie to defend the Realme. With glade wil and frilie thay ^{gret families haue they and feid they.} 20 vse to luge kin, freind and acquaintance, *ȝe* and strangers that turnes in to thame. * A ⁷⁸ scandirous thing thay esteime it to be, to deny this, and a poynt of smal or na liberalitie. This was the cause, that quhen strangeris haue not bene far *cum* frome the sey syd, thay haue ^{few publik and comonwe tauernis in Scotland.} 25 funde commoune Lugengs, nathir verie magnifike, bot few.

Our tounes we fortifie nocht *wt* walis, bot first the bordiris of the Realme, thaireftr the feildes, quhen mister is, thay fence about and defend, *wt* the force of ^{Quhy few tounis ar walit.} 30 thair body, and armour, accordeng to the lawis of thair

* L. "Illiberales ea in re dici probossum esse ducunt."—They esteem it a dishonourable thing to be called stingy in this matter.

elderis. * ffor of this ar thay nocth a litle war, that thay depend no^t vpon the securitie of ony tounis quhairthrow thay may lang ⁷⁹ deid or slawe frome thair waipounis ly ; nathir that we mak ony sik fortres against the ennemie w^tin the Realme. Quhen ance thay cum^m in sicht of the ennemie, thay stand nocthe vpon a delyuirance, bot thay rusche fordward with al thair force vpon the ennemie, nathir through fraud and gyle, bot strenth and armes thay handle the mater sa that quhen the armie is in sicht, the space of thrie dayes thay byd nocth ⁸⁰ vnbrachte with vs. Bot quhen thay sett vpon the ennemie they keip nocth the commoune discipline of the weiris, † bot how sune the worde is said thay pas in ordour, following thair maistiris, or cheif of thair hous and thair ⁸¹ anseinjie, quhair ilk ane contendis to do quhat lyes in his power, and for his honour scharplie to stryue. To him is attributed the first honour cheiflie, quha gyues athir the first straik or the last, ‡ gif in battel he flie he is ouircum. Quhairthrough oft cumis, that w^t a smal cumpanie against a gret thay fecht w^t gretter felicitie & ¹⁵ succes, than quhen baith the parties ar alyke in numbir, gif the armie on baith the handes be of a gret numbir.

The Nobilitie rushe forward in the battel wt a fierce force.

Baith the nobilitie and the hale peple fechtes vpon thair awne stipends.

Mairouer the hale people, nocth onlie the Nobilitie because thay fecht vpon thair awne purse, enjoy a gret freedome and libertie ; quhairof cumis that vndiscrete ²⁵ consuetude, vndiscrete maneris, that pride, and boasting of thair nobilitie, quhilkes as we haue said, al obiectes to vs. Nathir alutirlie is it false ⁸² that nocth few

* L. "Caverunt enim illi, ne ulla urbium securitate freti, diu ab armorum usu torperemus"—for they (our ancestors) took good care that the security of walled cities should not lead us to laziness in the use of arms.

† L. adds "qua multis pauci præficiuntur"—in which a few are placed over many.

‡ L. "Vel' postremus, si pugnando sit inferior, ab hoste discedit"—or who last leaves the enemy, when the fight has been unsuccessful.

wryteris exprobatis to thame, thair ouir haistines, and ouer bent to reuenge.

Gretlie thay take plesure in the ⁸⁸ wichtnes of thair bodie, in safar that quhat may be done throuch arte & slycht oft thay neglecte: vthiris ascriue vnto our people subtilite of ingine, and plesure in the arguments of the arte of dialectik. How euir it be, we knawe this, that afor tymes thay vset to delyte in the studie of philosophie: and now lykwyse to be curious anuich obserueris of al externe policie, for as doctrine and leirning now lang hes our myndes manured and vndirstandengs, elegancie hes policed our maners, and counsel w^t the vertue of our elderis haue sa co^zfirmed our Realme and commoun welth, that thay ar knawen esilie to follow vthiris natiouns in al kynd of gude, and in a maner equal w^t thame to be: quhilkes that rathir thay appeir noct to be spokne of a vane ostentatione, than of the veritie, besoif ȝour eyne sal we sett the forme of the commoune welthe. Quhen euerie commoune weil, that evir flurished, quhethir in our dayes or in our elderis dayes, is conteinet in certane ordours, lawis, and * magistrates: I seuerallie sal twoche thir, that in our people may be seine to want nathing that serues til a perfyte commoune weil.

They mekle
enjoy thair
libertie &
gret fre-
dome.

In wichtnes
of thair per-
soune, &
subtilite of
yr ingine the
Scottis ar
induet.

The forme
of thair com-
moune weil.

HOW MANY ORDOURIS OF THE REALME AND COMMOUNE WEIL.

25 The Scottis peple is deuydet in thrie ordouris; ane of thame, quhais pietie and hett studie of religione hes addicted thame selfes planelie to serue the Kirke: The secunde of thame, quhais nobilitie, and ⁸⁴ hines of blude, hes placed in the secunde digrie of the commoune weil; the thrid of thame, quhome the tounes accnawleges amang thame to be frank and frie. Of quhilkes seuerallie I wil

Thrie or-
douris of the
Realme,
Ecclesias-
tik, Nobil-
ite, and the
laik sorte.

* L. "magistratibus"—magistracies.

speik, that the Ecclesiastical ordour may haue the first place, first for the authoritie, quhairthrouch sche excellis the rest, and than for a certane diuine power gyuen vnto her. Of the Ecclesiastike state I wil first speik, and trulie in fauour of the simpiller sorte, I may vse maꝝ wordes than vthirwyse this place requiret, because that maist haly ordour throuch ignorance of wicked men or rathir thair maliciousnes is sa vehementlie wraket and brocht to nocht with vs.

5

THE ECCLESIASTICAL ESTATE.

Thrie digries
in the estate
ecclesiasti-
cal.

Bischopes.

Preistes
haueng the
regarde of
the saules.

In administratione of the Kirk, schynes thrie digries, 10 by the rest, in that ordour, to wit, Bischopes, Priests, and Religious. ffor quhen al forme of doeng or keiping ordour may aluttirlie dekay, excepte it depend vpon the superioritie of ane or mony, Bischopes ar ordanet, quha obteineng the first place, walde appoyn特 certane lawis, in 15 a maner, to the rest, of pietie, modestie, temperance, and of al vertues. Bot seing of Bischopes ar sa few, that on fute thay can nocht throuch al places gang, nathir al menis maniris can thair eyne sie, nathir only can thay vse al the offices of thair authoritie ; thairfor ar eikit to 20 thame priestes, quha may to the lai peple betuene dorpe and dorpe, and toune and toune minister the blist Sacra-
ment, and feid thame w^t the pure and sinceir lycht of the Religione. To thame for thair trauel publiklie is ordayned thair sustentatione, ^{as} steddings directed, houses 25 appoynted.

Bot quhen God saw w^t that scharpe sychte quhairw^t he al things sies, that preistes eftir certane ȝeiris, and w^tin proces of tyme, sould gyue thame selfes ouer to vice, and vicious leiueng, to couetousnes, and gaiping 30 eftir ryches, in the mein tyme thair office cleine abiechte, w^t his gude spirit sum he inflamet, quha sulde gyue ouer

the warlde, and al cogitatione of money or gathiring riches, sulde lay asyd, and sulde follow a certane seueir Religious. way and maner of leiueng market with the futepestis of Christe and his Apostles, w^tin the boundes of the mon-
 5 ester, and throuch thair exemple of lyfe, and doctrine sulde informe the people to pietie ; finallie quha, throuch thair prayng, ⁸⁶walkeng, fasting, and vthires godlie actions of that sorte, mycht inclyne Christe to mercie, and moue him to put the sinis of the people in perpetual obliuione,
 10 nevir to haue estirward remeberance of thame. in quhilkes thrie ecclesiastical digries sum tyme sa our cuntrey florishet, that in the Bischopes of Scotland was fund sik liberalitie, as w^t few was fund, in the preistes evin sik diligence, and in the Religious euin sik pietie.
 15 quhairthowre proceidit, that quhen the king, the nobilitie, and the commoune people thay w^t gret vtilities had amplified, in correcteng abominable offences in flagitious persounes, in confirmeng the gude, and w^t sik labour in feiding the poore ; the king, the nobilitie, and the
 20 commoune people, enduet thame agane w^t gret leiuengs, landes, and priueleges, that quha in gret pouertie vset to distribute largelie to monie, mycht, in gret abundance be benificial toward al : quhilke w^t gret vtiltie of al thay al did, quhen Bischopes houses, Priestes houses,
 25 and Religious places, war to al men ⁸⁷ patent lyk certane commoune luge⁸⁸ngs, and lyke certane buithes of humanitie, of pietie, and discipline, war halden and esteimed. ffor to be schorte w^t the rest, this prais hes bene cele-
 brate in al ages amang the Bischopes, that in thair houses
 30 the noble menis sones thay oft fed, instructed, and brocht vpe, and now 30ung men, mariet thame furth, and put thame in steddings. farther quhilke baith oft at vthir tymes is done, than cheiflie in tyme of Parle-
 mest quhen present ar al the thrie ordouris, to the
 35 special nobilitie thay make appne houses. * Because

The haly
liberalitie of
the king,
the nobili-
tie, & the
people to
the Kirk.

The Bis-
chopes hos-
pitalitie.

* L. "Quippe ut quisque nobilis Episcopo conjunctissimus, ita

y^t euerie nobil man^z, neir to the Bischope, sa he turnet in to the Bischopes lugenz cheiffie, and sa lang as the parlement lay, w^t him he rested; quhilke surelie is worthie of the gretter prais, the fewar that the Bischopes ar to receiue sa copious a multitude of nobiles. ffor 5
 only ar twa Archiebischopes, ane of S. Androis, and of Glasgwe ane, * quhilkes in Scotland ar haldne the first, bot S. Andro formest, in quhais Diocie ar conteined 8 Bischopries, Dunkeld, Aberdyne, Moray, Dunblane, Brechine, Rosse, Cathneis, Orknay. In the diosie of 10 Glasgow onlie 3, † S. Ninians, Lismore, and ⁸⁹ Sodore, quhais sait was in the Ile of man. In general assemblies, quhair ar called the thrie ordouris of the Realme, for counsel in sindrie effairis, or makeng of statutes or lawes, baith Abbothes, and sum vthiris Kirkme^z haue thair votes 15 with the Bischopes.

twa Archies-
bischopries
in Scotland,
Bischopries
XI.

Bisches-
opes
and abbots
haue thair
votes in par-
lement w^t
the thrie
Estates of
the Realme.

In thir lattir dayes is sa cum^m to pas, throuch the coun-
sel of Kings, and the Nobilitie, that al Bischopries the
gretter kirk leiuengs, and the fatter Benifices, ar al
amaist distributed cheiffie to nobil menis sones, quhome 20
thay think maist able to supplie that office: ‡ to wit;
quha appeiris to be enduet w^t the best jugement, and to
haue the counsel maist cunning, cumlie, and cannie, and
worthiest authoritie to serue his charge, and gif he be
90 feckful, and haue grace to correcte maneris in wicked 25
persones, sa that the commendatione of Justice may be

ad illius ædes," &c.—In fact, the more nearly related any noble was to the Bishop, so the more frequently did he stay with him.

* L. "quorum ille primas totius Scotiæ habetur"—of which the former is considered to be Primate of all Scotland.

† L. "Candidæ Casæ"—of the White House, *i.e.*, Whithearn, or Whithorn, also known as S. Ninian's, from its founder.

‡ L. "utpote, quorum in consiliis dandis major dexteritas, in munere obeundo major auctoritas, in depravatis hominum moribus corrigendis efficacior justitiæ laus inesse putaretur"—as they were considered of greater skill in advising, greater authority in discharge of their office, and of greater reputation for justice in the punishment of criminals.

impute to him. *Sum* of thir quhen in the effaires of the *commoun* weil thay happilie and weil, all thair trauel, and gudes quhat thay possessit had * wairit, thay exceled in mony honouris, and maist illustr in the *commoun* 5 weil, w^t consent of al the thrie estates. for thay, as tyme seruet, war than promouet to the cheif charges of the Realme, and principal offices in the Repub. as to the Chanciller, Thesaurer, and to haue sik vthires ample dignities in the land, as quhen w^t gret honour and prais thay haue put 10 til executione the charge of ane ambassador in Ingland or france. Bot quhen now in wardlie effairis thay war sa ⁹¹ feltired, and vthiris in the meine tyme leuet sa liberallie, forgetting planelie y^r office and seruice ecclesiastical, † that same thrid estate sa sair thay inuyed, that 15 now mischieuous persounes feir nathing to rail out against that estait, and quhat thay *can*, sklander and bakbyte.

Of the rest of the ecclesiastical preistes, and Religious quhat may be thocht ? quhome albeit the heretiks 20 blaspheme and say thay war al vicious and hipocrites ; war no^t withstandeng in baith the digries, I may say trulie, certane lamps of pietie and halynes. and surlie to speik sinceirlie w^tout invie, quhat the truthe is ; the hail Clergie, *ȝe* in the verie tyme, quhen w^t ws the 25 Religioune was dekayet, war of a notable grauitie, and of a certane liberal honestie, euerie man accordeng to the place he remaned in, and the benifice quhairoⁿ he was susteined, that in few things it was to ony vthir natione evin than, inferiour : Insafar, that na tyme sulde 30 *ȝe* evir se a wandiring, beging, or a Ragit preist. Nochtheles mony was seik of ane vice ; to wit, immoderat libertie of lyfe : and of ane vthir vice, almaist al, ower rekles negligence in preicheng the worde of God. Bot

The Bis-
chopes vsed
the principal
offices in the
Realme.

* Had consumed, worn out.

† L. “sibi tandem invidiae tantum conflarunt”—(the Bishops) at length drew upon themselves so much ill-will.

our elderis war nocht sa, frome quhais integratie of lyfe, albeit we haue declyned, *ȝit* neuir frome the faith and Religioune. flurished, and sumtyme outsprang frome thir generatiouns, as frome a certane coelestial Hierusalem mony *men* excellent in the commendatione and gude reporte of leirning & *virtue*, quha wattired the ²² knottis and Gairdins of Scotland, Ingland, France and Germanie, *w^t* the fountanes of thair Ingines, in quhome, we passing by the rest, war Amphibalie, Palladie ; Rule ; Amphibalie in the Ile of *mar* was first Bischope : Be al ⁵ *maris* speiking the apostle of Scotland is Palladie : S. Rule maid Scotland of nobilitie and renowne, quhen *w^t* the reliques of S. Andro he decoret it, quhilkes out of Grece he brocht ; and than S. Mungo, Ninian, Fiacre, Cozman, Aidan, Colman, Finnian, ²³ Boniface the apostle ¹⁵ of Germanie, and agane, Kiliane, Leuine, Rumolde, Abbat Gal lykwyse, & that diuine Poete of sik fame and renowne, and exeme Theolog, Sedulius, latting *innumerabile* passe by vthiris, athir * writne in the diuine number, or for thair singular *virtue* and halynes of lyfe, mekle commended baith at hame and afeild. Nathir was hitthirto ony age *ȝit* seine sen Scotland was illuminat *w^t* the lycht of Criste Jesus, in quhilke florished not few ²⁰ singular persounis of excellent vertue, and doctrine, of quhilkes in thair awne place, sum thing twoche we sal ²⁵ schortlie. Bot (allace) now wod haeresie occupies al baith in lenth and bredthe, and sa hich a maiestie, of sa hevinlie ane ordour in Scotland hes remouet, that power hes put asyd, & that honour hes dishonoured : bot sal I ²⁴ gar this wound sa gret bleid agane ? sal I rub vpe ³⁰ this aulde sair ? and renew this greif appeiringle almaist forgottin ? I wil nocht do it, that I rathir steir nocht vp than mitigat the displeisour and auld razcour of the furious hæretiks against the Catholiks. for it lyes not in

The Bis-
chopes of
Scotland
notable in
pietie and
leirning.

How sair
heretical
impietie hes
woundet
deuote
pietie.

* L. "vel in Divorum albo relatos"—either placed in the catalogue of Saints.

the prayer of man^z bot in the power of God is put a certane
secreit and sure maner of medicine to be applyed to this
Ill, quhilke we hope he sal adhibite or it be lang, cheiflie
quhen this day ar verie mony of Scotland decored w^t
5 al vertues and inflamed w^t the pure and sincere luue of
the ryght Religione, quha throuch thair exile, quhilke
for the luue of Christe thay willinglie haue accepted,
and throuch thair prayers, quhilkes ⁹⁶ ydenly w^t al dili-
gence thay sched for thair cuntrey, appeir to mitigat the
10 ire of God, and pacifie his angre toward ws w^t tyme.
The godlie memorie of the dignitie of our auld Bischopes
mouet vs in this place to speik this farr.

we sulde not
dispare.

OF THE ESTATE OF THE NOBILITIE.

Seing na Republik or commounweil euir ³it flurished
that contemned the Nobilitie; Scotland sa honoured
15 thame, that it * thocht the cheifest parte of the Republ.
to consist of thame and a sueit succour to the com-
moune weil. Quhilke opinioune trulie was nocht of
smal effecte to keip the Scottismen frome cumbiring
20 thair commoune weil, quhome vthirwyse a certane in-
gendired curage, in a maner, of the mynd, mycht eisilie
inflame, to truble hail the Republik, gif the king leuet
intemperantlie, and by the boundes of his office. Of this
may ony man^z esilie collecte in our people ³it to be a
certane forme of Repub. estir that forme, in latine De-
25 mocratia, y^t is a forme of commoune weil, quhair the
people haue the hail authoritie w^tout ony vthir state,
no^twithstanding with vs, estir y^t maner nocht aluterlie sa,
bot w^t sik temperance, that cheif vpon thair king, and
counsel maist graue of the nobilitie, the Repub. does

The nobilitie
of gret esti-
matione in
Scotland.

Democratia.

* L. "ut in ipsius subsidio maxima Reipublicæ momenta verti
putarint"—that it considered the most critical matters of govern-
ment to depend upon their support.

depend: of this *cumis*, that the kings quahis tyrannie turnet the hartes of the Nobilitie frome thame, oft incurit lykwyse the offence of the people; and the kings agane quahis vertue *wanz* the hartes of the Nobilitie, perceiuet evin sa ane incredible beneuolence of the people, through this alienatione of the Nobilitie and people frome the king, sum tymes is mentione maid of the kings slaunch-
5

The begin-
ning of the
Scotis nobil-
itie.

thamir cam this manir of Nobilitie to Scotland *w^t* thame quha now inhabites the land, bot with thame rathir grew vp, quha first inhabited Scotland. ffor in 10

the first rudiments of our commounē weil and *instructions, quhen sum barbaritie was ȝit in the land, we Reid how they elected certane capitaniis borne of ane illustris hous to quhome thame selfes, and thair Republik thay committed to gyde. Bot now far vthirwyse is the state 15

The first
nobilis in
Scotland
war called
Thani; thay
war of the
clan cheif.

of Nobilitie: for sa in partes it is diuidet, that the king, and his sones lawfullie gottin, obteine the first place, of quhilkes, gif be ma than ane, the eldest prince of Scotland, the rest absolutlie ar called princes, quha indeid al and sindrie, ar haldne in hichest digrie, and worthilie, 20 because thay ar sa neir vpspring of the kingis blude: the secund place obteines Dukes: the † thrid my lordes: the fourt thir nobilis quha *w^t* vthiris natiouns out of our Ile ar nocht fund. This name, my Lord, appeires til vs, in it, sa gret dignitie to conteine, that for honouris cause, 25 we gyue it evin sa to Bischopes, Erles, and to thame quha ar hie magistrats and in cheif honour. The fyfte place occupie thay, ‡ quhome lairdes and barounis we

* L. "rudimentis"—in the rudimentary state of the kingdom. The translator gives the Latin form and then a translation, as he often does.

† L. "tertium Comites, quartum illi nobiles, qui apud alias nationes extra nostram insulam non vigent, et a nobis 'my Lords' vocantur"—in the third rank are Counts (or Earls), in the fourth those nobles who are not found among foreign nations out of our island, and are called by us "My Lords."

‡ L. "quintum Equites aurati, et Barones sibi vendicant, qui

The dignies
of nobilitie
in Scotland
and distri-
butione of
thair titles.
in ald tymes
Dukes war
called
Thani.

Dukes.
Erles.
M. Lordes.
Knychtes.
Lardes.
Barounis.

call. In distributione of thir titles of nobilitie this ordour is obseruet, that he haue nocth the title of a Duke quha had no^t first of ane * erle, nathir of ane Erle, quha first had nocth of a lord, nathir of a lord quha 5 first had nocth the title of a † larde or Baroun. Now in the 6 place ar put thay, and last of al quha ar induet w^t na certane title of honour, quhome in our language we cal gentle men. Of this estimatione ar thay, because gentilmen. thay ar of sum nqbil hous, the brethir and the ȝounger 10 sones of Erles, Lordes and Knichtes, na digrie of Nobilitate makes noble excepte thair birth, that of a nobil hous thay ar borne. ffor in na parte of thair fathiris heritage may thir succeed: bot the eldest sone possessis al, conforme to our lawis this is done that the hous 15 dekay nocth, ‡ and surname as we cal it throuchout al generatioun. This title the people gyues al that ar rich & quha ar large and liberal, § or quha haue sik a name. || fra thir and vpon thame cheifie dependes the 20 hail charge and authoritie; and lykwyse lyis the hail burdine of the weiris. for quhen thay think of quhat hous thay ar cum, with gret baldness and courage thay set stoutlie onn, doubteng na danger, y^t thay may schawe thame selfes worthie of the hous thay ar cum off, and in safar, that thay, w^t sum illustre and notable acte 25 may decore thair hous. The opinione of sum is, the title of gentlemen this way to haue sprung vp, that the Romanis quhen sum natione thay had subduet, to sum

The eldest
sone suc-
ceedis till all.

‘Lairds’ etiam lingua nostra dici solent”—the “gilded” Knights (with golden spurs or shields?) and Barons, who in our tongue are also called Lairds.

* L. “Comitis.”

† L. “EQUITIS AURATI”—*ut sup.*

‡ This is not in L., which reads simply, “conservandarum familiarum causa”—for the sake of preserving the families.

§ L. “Plebs omnes qui divitiis affluent, quique hospitalitatis et clientelarum nomine bene audiunt, hoc fere titulo decorat.”—The people generally give this title to all who are rich, and have the name of being hospitable and generous.

|| “fra thir”—L. “ab his pendet.”

thay gaue lande, money, priueleges, and mony vthiris rewardes, that thay duelling in the marches and bordouris of that land mycht defend that natione frome the force of the ennimie and spoiling. Thir the Romanes called Gentiles: we estir thame, *conforme to thair imitatione, ⁹⁶ Gentilmen. The hail nobilitie, \textgreek the scottis ane and al, in quhatsaeuir digrie or place thay be in, ar bund of that necessitie, that gif the weiris be vrgent thay susteine the kingis weiris vpon thair awne charges: nethir for al that, ar thay thocht, or sulde be ¹⁰ esteemed, to fecht to the king for nocth; quhen thay ar frie of al custumes, w^t quhilkes ar opprest the subiectes of vthiris princes, and lykwyse ar induet with diuerse vthiris priuileges be the king, of his benigitie: first of al vpon^z this conditione, that gif the king command, ¹⁵ \dagger with ane armie thay passe in haist against the ennimie, vpon^z thair awne purse. in quhilke nocth onlie consists a singular vtilite of the people, bot also a principal abundance and welth of the king is includet. Nathir say I this, to gyue ony occasione to suspecte that our king ²⁰ wantes his \textgreek rentis (quhen, in abundance, he hes, of \textgreek rentis, quhairvpon^z he royllie may susteine his court, and vphalde the magnifik persone of a king), bot to lat thame vndirstand that the welth of our king may be weil compaired w^t the puissance of golde and siluir: ²⁵ and surlie for the cause forsaid, that al \textgreek rentis, how abundant sa evir, he may esteime nathing, nathir neides he, quhen all his people w^tout money, quhilke vthiris callis the \ddagger Strenth and force of the weiris, at the kings commande flies til armes contrare the aduersar. ³⁰

This farther may be consideret, our king nevir to that ⁹⁷ fine, at ony tyme to haue beine brocht, that he walde want, by that, men of weir, notwithstanding vpon his

* L. "*ad* illorum imitationem."

\dagger L. "*instructo confestim agmine*"—having instantly mustered.

\ddagger "*Belli nervus*"—the sinews of war.

Gentiles.

The scottis
vpon thair
awne purse
mow sustein
the kings
weiris &
thairfor frie
of custome.

Quhairin
the king of
Scotlandis
riches ap-
peires to
consist.

awne charges. * for the people serues maist to this vse, to brek the first bront of the battel, quha concuris suner than is luket for, as is the ⁹⁸ slokning out of a certane commounue flame of burneng. This, hes the bordouris 5 of our Realme, defendet against sa mony strang ennemis, now sa mony hundir ȝeiris, testified cleir anuich : bot perchance throuch delyte of the mater in the selfe sa singular, we be paste farther than far anuich. Lat vs thairfor returne to the Gentilmen, quha (to twoche 10 schortlie) presentlie ar al in courtlie(r) apparel, and thair table mair diligent and dilitious, than graue men athir vses to approue or commend, or quhat thay haue to leive vpon is able to susteine : our natione frome the nerrest natiounis and nyghtbours haue, to the gret skaith 15 of our commounue weil, contracted this excesse of cleithing and feiding, as a certane peste maist contagious. Finalie of this ar we surlie persuadet, that our Gentilmen with ony nyghtbour natione may weil stryue in elegancie of maneris. The maner now and ordour of 20 the Nobilitie being descriuet ; followis, that we lykwyse explicat the thrid estate in few wordes, to wit, the commounue people.

The maner,
meate, and
claith, of the
Nobil men.

THE ORDOUR AND ESTATI OF THE COMMOUNE PEOPLE.

Quha euir first laid the first foundatiouns of cities, appeir to this end, to haue laid thame ; athir that the 25 immortalitie of thair name war & sulde be to the vtilitie of man, as the †Ethnicks, or w^t the vtilitie of man,

* L. "Cum ipse populus ad hostium frangendos impetus quasi ad commune quoddam incendium extinguendum, opinione citius, concurat."—For the people hasten of their own accord, to resist the enemy's attack, as though they were hurrying to put out a universal conflagration.

† L. "Ethnici"—the heathen.

to the glore of God, as the Christianis. quhilke quhen
thay thocht, na way thay could bettir do, than to gar
thair cities abunde in people, thay drewe to thair cities,
through mony priuileges, people in abundance : quhome
thay called commoune or Lai people, gif thay war vndir

5

Thrie sortes
of the comm-
moune
people.

the digrie of gentilmen. The commoune people in thrie
sortes may be diuydet : the first ar thay, quha, through
the weiris, in quhilkes hes beine thair conuersatione ; or
through lettiris, to quhilkes thay haue applyet thair
studie ; or through money, quhilke through thair industrie
thay haue gathired, or frome thair parents receiuet ; or
sum vthir way, obteines the place of the principal
citizens in the toune. Thay indeid of quhome we haue

10

mony, ar maist of the nobilitie : for, as said is, q^a sa our
lawis provydes, that the eldest succeides, the 30ungest
ar put to sum honest schift, quhairthrough thay may leid

15

The cause
why so
mony Scottis-
ches in vthir
cuntryis.

a lyfe not allutterlie abiecte. of this cumis, that sa
mony of our custrey men, haue sa gude succes, amang
strange natiouns, sum in the Weiris, sum in professing
of sciences, and sum in merchandise. The secund sorte

20

ar thay quha studie to merchandise, and * of that kynd
to honest craftes, quhais † beginnning being obskure, or
nocht perfytlie and cleir anuich notified to al men
through thair industrie, and diligence, thay oft obteine

25

that for thair gret welth & abundance, thay susteine the
persones of honest citizenis. For merchandise, indeid,

30

Merchandise
honest and
to the comm-
moune weil
necessarie.

as w^t ws it is proffitable, sa is it honest, and surlie to the
Repub. verie necessarie : quhen mony merchandes causes

thair sones to be instructed in the liberal sciences that
estirward thay ar sik instruments in the commoune weil,

35

that thair labour is baith to the gret Joy and honour of
thair parents ; for athir ar thay preistes serueng the
kirk ; or men of law to ^o plie a cause, or men of weir

* "atque id genus honestis operibus"—the "of" and "to" have been interchanged—"and to that kind of honest craft."

† "quorum origo"—whose birth.

to fecht. for *thair (as be experiens we se daylie) in weirfair cheiflie is done, quhais myndes deip and præclair studies hes decored, polished, dekid and vptrimid. The thrid sorte of the commoun people ar thay quha 5 numberit ar in the laichest digrie. Amang thame ar al craftes reckned throuche another; without quhilkes na Craftismen. Repub. † nocht only can florishe; bot can nocht stand, we trulie may affirme. Chances that mony of this sorte, w^t the giftes of nature meruellouslie being induet, throuche 10 thair diligence, labour and Ingine, heipes vp abundance of money & riches. Nathir sulde ony mervel heirof, quhen na man, quha leiuers bot midway temperat, in the tounes of Scotland, is nocht sune rich, for the fridome foirsaid fra custum, and vthiris priuileges that thay haue. 15 Bot that the king thair hartes w^t sum benefite may steir vp, and the hetlier inflame thame, in danger to defend the commoun weil, he permitis, that in general parleaments twa or thrie of thame be present, and sum tymes ma, gif the king pleise, out of euerie citie sa mony, 20 cheiflie quha ar esteimet of the best Jugement, wisdome, and leirneng: quhais dutie this is, ‡ of the materis proponed in the parlement frilie to gyue thair vote, and that thair sentence be correspondent to the sentence of the vthir twa estates of the Realme. For this cause sum 25 think this to be done that § gif in the general parlement

The tounes
haue thair
vote in gen-
eral parle-
ments.

* L. “*Illic enim in militia præstant maxime, quorum animos doctrina intima excoluit.*”—For those succeed best in war who have received a thorough education. The translator has mistaken *illic* (= *illi-cte*) for the adverb *illic=there*. The richness with which “*excoluit*” is rendered is inimitable. There are many such instances in the text.

† L. “*non dico florere sed ne stare quidem potest*”—without which a State, I don’t say cannot flourish, but cannot even exist.

‡ L. “*ut suam sententiam, de rebus propositis, cum reliquis duobus Regni ordinibus respondeant*”—to give their opinion on matters proposed, along with the other two estates of the kingdom.

§ L. “*ne si quid in civitatem aliquam severius decretum fuerit injuste id statutum putetur*”—that if anything severe be decreed against any city, it be not considered as unjustly enacted.

ony thing w^t our gret seueritie be decreited against the tounes, be thair sentence, as ane vniust institutione may be reuoked. finalie, al vthiris, quhither thay be of nobilitie, or of the commounpe people, haue na authoritie in general parleaments to gyue a vote, because vpon the estates of the Realme thay hail depend. bot because we heir haue perchance ouer lang insisted, and haue beine tedious to the reider, in sum particular materis and singular, in explicating the lawes, with quhilkes thay ar bund, *passing ower, quhat vses to occur, we sal be 10 sumthing schorter. 5

THE LAWES OF SCOTLAND.

Solon ane of
7 wyse wittie
men in
Greece.

The lawis ar
the rule of
corrupted
nature.

† Quhither Solon spak lyke a *cunning man* or a *wyse man*, I knawe nocht weil, quhen he said that the Repub. q^{like}, to na lawes being astricte, gyues libertie to al in it to do quhat thay pleis, wil schortlie cum til a thing mon- 15 struous and seindle seine. for quhen men ar infected throuch a certane corrupted nature, may follow, that gif the law quhilke al thing(s) vniuersallie callis to the rule of Virtue and ryght rasone, put no^t ane ordour to this deprauatione of corruptid nature, or sum vthir feir and 20 lett, that mony walde be drawne heidlings into the deip swallie of al abhominable vice : quha trulie, for the foul mischievous actes, quhilkes haue infectet thame, ryghtlie may thay be esteemed nocht men, bot certane monstiris of nature, cled in the forme of man. quhilke quhen our 25 elderis, throuch quiknes of thair ingine perceiued perfytlie, w^t authoritie of the lawes the dissolute maneris of thair people sa wyslie thay band, that the law prescriuet

* L. "minutius omnes quæ occurere solent prætereuntes"—passing over those more minute (laws) which are of everyday familiarity.

† L. "Scite, atque haud scio an divine, dixit Solon"—Solon said wisely, and, I almost think, divinely.

nocht alyke maner of lyueng to al, bot to euerie *man* according to his vocatione of lyfe; Quha, thairfor gaue ower the fellowship and effaires of the warlde, putting in ecclesiastical seruice thair hail studie and kair, war bund 5 to the lawis set furth be the Papes and fathiris of the General counselis. Bot seing mony, this day, of Scotland, I can nocht tel, in quhattine a wod furie ar fallin, or rather inspireit with wicket spirites, the lawes, allace, baith of God and *man*, thay violat and corrupte in sa far, 10 that frome the pape and his maist haly authoritie thay haue defected, and til vngodlie false and wicked herisie thame selfes haue astricted, al authoritie of the lawis and counselis Ecclesiastical is withiret amang thame and brocht to nocht; for thay think it bettir and mair 15 glorious mekle and preclair, to stick to *thair counterfited erroris quhome properlie thay cal Ministeris, than vnto thair maist haly counselis quhome the haly Ghaist hes Inflamed.

But quha studie to the effairis of this warlde ar nocht 20 reckned amang the Ecclesiastik persouns, bot bund thay ar to the lawis set furth be the kings, or than confirmed be thame and set furth be the thrie estates of the Realme. Thir lawis partelie set doun in latin, partelie in Scottis language, we vse to cal the † burgesse lawis of the 25 Realme: The title of the law buke writne in latine is sa namet, *Regiam Maiestatem*, y^t is, the Kings Maiestie, because frome sik wordes the buke beginis. The rest of the law bukes haue this title, The actes of the Parlement, because thir ‡ lawis commounlie ar called the

The Ecclesiastik persons in Scotland lyuet vndir the authoritie of the counselis and ordinances y^t decreited.

The seculars of the Realme in Scotland ar gouerned by the burgesse lawis.

The kings maiestie.
The actes of the parlement and the titles of

* L. "ministrorum (quos peculiari nomine vocant) erroribus"—the errors of the ministers, as they call them,—"thair" here="of those"—and is antecedent to "quhome": see also in the next line.

† L. "Leges municipales."

‡ L. "Reliquis legum libris, Comitiorum (quæ populari sermone Parlamenta dicimus) acta inscribuntur."—In the remaining law books are written the *Acta* of the *Comitia*, which we call in the popular language, *Parliaments*.

he law-
sukes in
Scotland.
Now for the
full law in
Scotland
extends.

parlement. Albeit heir sulde be vndirstandet, that this far to the lawis of the Realme we ar astricted, gif ony cummirsum or trubilsum cause fal out, as oft chances, quhilke can nocht be agriet be our cuntrey lawis, incontinent quhateuir is thocht necessar to pacifie this controuersie, is citet out of the Romane lawis. 5

Bot quha wil exquisitlie searche and seik out the original beginning of our lawis, lat him vndirstand the * antiquitie, power and authoritie of thir lawis, to consist in the statutes and ordinances maid be the thrie estates 10 of the Realme, frilie in a general parlement decreited, and with consent of the king confirmet.

Bot now we thocht gude to set doune Kennedie his lawis, baith haly and ancient, set furth afor sevin hundir and fiftie ȝe and ma ȝeiris, amang the Scottis thay † re-mayne in forme of xii tables, thay conteine amait the hail law baith spiritual & temporal of a meruellous maner in xxix chapters: of thir may we Judge of the rest of the lawis and maneris of Scotland. Because eftir thir lawis quhateuir lawis & constitutions succedet to thame, tuke 15 thair beginning frome thame, as frome the first and halyest exemple of the lawis, or the first Wisdome in thame conteined.

he lawis
of King
Kennedie
which
are in
use.

Now to be schorte thir lawis following ar the lawis of King Kennedie. Lat be in euerie prouince of our 25 cuntrey men of law as hes bene institute frome the beginning.

Lat thair sones frome thair ȝouth vp studie to the lawis.

The law tables, the kings chartures, and of gret & nobil 30 men, onlie thir lat keip.

* I.e. "potestatem has ferendi antiquandique, trium ordinum suffragia libere latit," &c.—that the power of passing or annulling them is placed in the freely given votes of the three estates.

† I.e. "Scotia instar legum duodecim tabularum sunt."—To the Scots they are what the laws of the 12 tables were (to the Romans), the universal code of law human and divine.

Gif ony of thir be conuicte of falshet, lat him end his lyf vpon ane fork, and kastne by vnjerdet. *

Lat him quha is conuicte of thift be hanget.

Heid him conuicte of slaunchtir.

5 A woman condamnet to die, outhir droune or † slay her quik.

Quha blasphemeth the name of God, or of his sanctes, the king, or a capitane of his awne clan or familie, lat his young he cutt out.

10 Quha beis conuicte of a leising to the hurt or dishonestie of his nychtbour, lat him want his sword, and thair estir avoyd his cumpanie.

Quha ar † accused or suspected of deith, of the sentence of 7 men, of ane approuen and weil tryet faith, or 15 of 9, 11, 13, 15, or a gretter number, sa it be vnequal, lat thame be Judget.

Reiuers, ¹⁰¹ Raikers, ¹⁰² Herrieris of the ground, punise w^t a sword.

§ Bardis, ¹⁰³ scurris, and addicted til ydilnes, w^t sik 20 sort of persounis, lat skurge.

The wyfe sal nocht thol for the offence of her housband: bot sche wil be in || wrang to her housband, gif that he knaweng, sche offend.

¶ Punise her that lyes by her man, and w^t that sam 25 pane, him that lyes by his wyfe.

* L. "furca vitam finiat"—let him finish his life upon a gallows. An old shape of gallows was in the shape of a "furca," or fork—viz., like the letter Y. The translator had written first "lat him *be hanget* and kastne by," &c. The two words in italics have been scratched out and "end his lyf vpon ane fork" inserted above. This will explain the omission of "be" in the latter part of the sentence.

† L. "defodito"—bury her alive.

‡ L. "Capitalium insimulatos."—Those accused of capital crimes.

§ L. "Fugitivos Bardos."—Wandering bards.

|| L. "Viro autem fraudi erit."—But it shall be imputed to the husband if the wife offend with his knowledge.

¶ L. "Concubinam viri, eadem cum ea quicum delinquit, poena torqueto."—The Latin text seems to be misprinted here. If *eo* be

Quha defloures a virgine, lat him be heidet, excepte quha is deflouret require the author of the iniure to be her housband.

Gif quha defoulis a nothir manis wyfe nocth against her wil lat thame baith die the maist extreime *deith. Gif the woman was forcet, the man iniurious to his nybour sal die be the sworde, the woman sal be frie. 5

Hang quha is iniurious to his parents, estir that frome him is cuttit the young, the fote, or the hand, and cast 10 him by vnzerdet.

A murthirer, a dum, or vngrate to his parents, to thir + succeed thou nevir in heritage.

Burne ane and al Juglaris, magitianis, familiars w^t wicked and euil spirits, or quha craues helpe of thame. 15

Sawe na seid in the ground excepte it be cleine of hurtful pikils.

Quha throuch his negligens, lattis gude ground y^t may be sawine, ouirgang w^t weidis, for the first falte lat him pay ane ox, for the neist ten oxne; In the thrid tak the 20 land frome him.

Burie thy companioun or friend perchance slane in the battel: thy enimie lat ly vnburiit.

Restore a wandirng scheip or beist, athir to the maistir, or to him þ that ¹⁰⁴ seikis the theiues, or than to 25 the priest; bot gif thrie days thou keip it, thou wil be gyltie of the thift, y^t thou hes stollin it.

Quha findes that his nyctbour ¹⁰⁵ tynte, lat him cry it,

substituted for *ca*, it will read intelligibly, thus: Punish her that *ca* with a man, with the same punishment as the man himself. Notice in the text that *by* means *apart from*, and not *with*.

* I.e. "applicio extremo"—let both suffer the extreme penalty.

+ I.e. "homicida, mutus, aut parenti ingratus, hæres non esto"—a murderer, a dumb man, or ungrateful to his parents, shall not inherit.

† I.e. add in brackets: "Tocio derach vulgus appellat."—The *awairer* for thievers, whom the people call "Tocio derach." See note.

that it is fund, or than wil be esteimet as he had stollin it, and he sal haue the reward of a theife.

Quha strykes him in Judgement, qua plies thair w^t him, lat him that strykes be called giltie, & the 5 strukne absoluet.

Quhen Nout fechtis toghether ane be strukne to deid, na man knaweng the stryker, the beist that is ¹⁰⁶ hom^{mil} amang thame Judge giltie of the slachtir. His maister receiueng the slane beist, sal restore the skaith to his 10 nyghtbour.

Gif a Sou eit his ȝoung, stane him, and eit nocht his flesche.

Slay out of hand a swyne that eites the corne, or w^t the grunte casting vp the tilet ground.

15 The rest of the beistes that w^t vs leiuers, gif thay hurt ^{binding.} quhat growis on thy ground, hald besyd the, in thy power, ay quhil thair maistir repair the skaith.

Thir forsaids ar ciuile perteineng to the people, the rest following, quhilkes to vs ar cum, religious.

20 Altaris, Kirkes dedicat to sanctes, Images, oratouris, Chapelis, Preistes, and al of the haly ordour honour w^t ȝour hart.

25 Obserue w^t al honour, festual and solemne dayes, Vigils, fastings, and al maner of Ceremonies, quhilkes the pietie of man^s hes decreited to Christe our King, and his maist haly wearfare.

Be it deidlie to hurt Christe his preist, athir in worde or deid.

Leiue the ground 7 ȝeirs vnlabourit, quhair perchance 30 ony slane persone hes bene buriit.

Haue al thy graues halilie drest; and with the sygne of the croce decore, thaireftr bewar that ȝe neuir trampe thairon with ȝour fute.

Lat the burial of a deid persone be preparet * accordeng as the persone is rache.

* I.e. "habita facultatum ratione."—The Latin is slightly ambig-

Ane honorable man, or quha was laudable in the commoun weil, beir to the graue with a famous pompe, nochwithstandeng dolorous and duleful.

Now haue we schortlie past ouer quhat we thocht necessar to be said of the lawis. followis that lychtlie we descriue estir our * maner of style, the maner of the Magistratis. 5

OF THE MAGISTRATIS.

Albeit the lawis sulde weil be establishet and haldne haly amang al natiouns for the Diuine force in thame conteinet, a certane deprauatione of nature bredd in man, hes no^twithstandeng sa inclynet thair Ingines to follow 10 quhat is pernicious and wicked, that the lawis walde aluttirlie dekay and cum to nocht excepte men baith notable and graue, vertuous and cusing and of special authoritie war appoyntet, quha walde that charge take in hande, to explicate thame, and † persuade the people 15 how necessar thay ar to be keipet, thir men, as al men says, for thair experiens and † promptnes in the lawis, war called be the maist wyse, magistratis.

The lawis
dekay ex-
cepte thay
be fortifiet
with autho-
ritie of
magistratis.

Magistratis
† prompte
in the lawis.

Hairfor our prædecessours being mouet with this rasone had gret respecte to the vtiltie of thair cuntry 20 and commoun weil, quha, quhen thay vndirstude how

uous. It might mean "taking into account *your own* ability," or, more probably, "in accordance with *his* rank and position."

* L. "stilo nostro breviter effingamus"—fashion lightly with our pen.

† L. "servandarum necessitatem populo imponerent"—to force their observance on the people.

‡ L. "quos, omnium trito sermone magistratus vocatos, sapientissimi viri scitissime leges loquentes appellarunt"—such men, called magistrates in common parlance, the wisest of men have elegantly named "speaking laws." The allusion is to Cicero, who says, "A magistrate is a speaking law, and a law is a dumb magistrate"—(De Legibus, iii. 1). The translator has made a similar mistake in the margin, which reads, "Magistratus leges loquentes,"—magistrates speaking laws.

gude and necessar war the lawis q^{lkes} war writne and sett furth vnto thame, appoynet sik magistratis ¹⁰⁷ effeiring to the lawis, to teiche thame, inculcat thame to the people, expone thame, persuade thame to be keipet.

5 ffor surelie, we ¹⁰⁸ mister na Magistrat, quha to the conseruatione and gude estate of the Repub. may be thocht athir profitabile or necessar, that not^t, evin in this mater we lychtlie giue place to the frenche men, Italianis, and Spainjards, with quhilkes natiouns this day ar maist florishing Repub. Amang thir now neist and nerrest to the King the Procuratour (quhome Gouernour we cal) is cheif. His office is to rule the Realme, gif the kingdome be kingles, that is to *say gif the king throuch tendirnes of ȝeiris be nocth able to regne, or vthirwayes.

10 15 In sa gret honour is he, that quha offendis him athir in worde or deid, is euin sa ȝestemet as he had offendet the Kings maiestie. for the Kingis persone, quhome he beiris, to be hurte, thame greiues. and al takes it in ane yll parte.

20 25 Al the rest of the magistratis, quhither in court w^t the king, or in the cuntrye gouerning thair + schirefdomes, (of this maner ar the prouinces named) amaist the same forme thay haue that commounlie haue vthiris natiouns. ffor we haue certane offices w^t ws as vthiris haue, q^{lkes} albeit thay be named from Thesauris, fra comptes, fra lettiris or secreits, fra chambre, claithis, ‡ or capis, or ony sik sorte, ar no'theles of gret honour, and ar no't committit excepte to men of gret nobilitie, as to quhome,

Scotland w^t
honourable
magistratis
is honorabilie
instructed
& weil furnished.

The Gouernour of the
Realme.

Magistratis
ar of the
same forme
in Scotland
that they ar
of in vthiris
cuntryes.

* L. "si rege fuerit orbata, aut si Rex per aetatem teneram Regni negotia non possit obire"—if the kingdom be deprived of its king: or if the king cannot manage the affairs of the kingdom, through immaturity of age.

L. "Vicecomitatum"—Viscounties=counties?

‡ L. adds, "a quadra, a poculo, a libellis"—from table, cup, documents; i.e., steward, cup-bearer, notary? "Capis"—cups. The other offices alluded to are presumably, Treasurer, Chancellor, Secretary, Chamberlain, and Keeper of the Wardrobe?

and to quhais chaire is laid to treate thay materis, quhilkes ar nocht only of waicht in the kingis court, bot of gret effecte in the commounre welth. quhilkes al gif I walde exemme, and heid be heid walde explicat, I feir that I appeiret ouer commounre to learned men, and to the vnlearned ouer tedious. Afor King James the fyfte of that ilke, certane elected of the thrie estates of the Realme past throuch euerie citie, to *persuade the necessitie of the lawis to the people, to interprete the lawis, to agrie the parties quhair was controuersie. Bot 10 King James for mony causes, quhilkes mouet him, walde of the maist notable men, and best commendet in Justice and Prudencie, institute a sessione stil to remane in Edinburghhe, in effairis of the Repub. quhilke counsel, and forme of Jugement, appeiret to al men sa necessar, 15 sa proffitable, and sa neidful, that w^t consent of al the kingis, of al the thrie estates of the Realme confirmet, it stil perseueiris, and how langour Repub. does indure, wil surelie, w^t the counsel of wyse men flurishe perpetuallie.

A cumpanie of sik men, we vse to cal the Senat of the 20 commounre welth, in quhilke is na man elected, bot quha is mekle commendet for his *virtue*, for his quick ingine, and quha is of perfyte and profound knawlege at leist in the lawis of the realme. Of the clergie and secular nobilitie this senat is sa conuenient maid and sa meet, 25 that the ane parte, quhilke is Ecclesiastical be æqual to the parte that is secular. quhilke trulie we can think na les nor throuch a special benifit of God to be done, that the religione and Ecclesiastical simplicitie, may temper the singular secular Jugement and perfyt experiens, 30 quhilke thay haue in the warlde, and that agane the prudencie, and Jugement of secular persouns mycht sasoune the religione in a maner, and as it war with a threid, directe the ald and ancient simplicitie. Ouer the Senat is set a præsident of the Ecclesiastical number, 35

* L. "qui populo jus dicerent"—to sit in judgment.

King James
the 6th ap-
pointed a
Senat in
Edinburghhe
verie meet &
conuenient
of the clergie
and com-
munitie.

The presi-
dent.

quha obteines the first place to giue * out his sentence & to speik his opinione, † excepte the Chanciller of the Realme cum betuene w^t his Jugement, to quhome the Scottis men, in all materis of the commounue welthe, gyue

5 the first place.

The chancellour.

Quha is ouir a syse and to quhome perteines to Juge vpon lyf and blude, is called the gret Justice, Quha is ouir Haevinis and schipredes thay cal Admiral, ouir Campis in weiris, Marischale, ouir the kingis court to 10 punise offenderis, Connistable, we cal. In euerie prouince ar owrismen quhome of ane ald til we cal ‡ Schirreffis, quhais authoritie in civil effairis is to correcte and to diserne betuene blude and blude, and this office na vthirwyse dependes than of heritage quhair- 15 throuch vnto thame selfes thay ascriue schirreffdomes, as thay throuch a certane rychte may be called schirreffis, nocht created or maid be the king, bot borne of thair parents. Cities and tounes haue lykwyse thair awne Probistis, Bailies, and sik vthiris Magistratis, § quha 20 conteines and to quhome perteines to rule the citizenis, and defend the priuelegeis of the Cities selfes. Of vthiris Magistratis to make mentione, quhilkes in this place mycht be spokne off, I superseid and pas ouir, because thay beir rule bot in commounue effairis, and to appne 25 vpe euerie smal office, wil be laborious, nathir at this present perteines it til our purpose. This notwithstanding haue we done, that men quha ar no^t verie idiots may perceiue the rest of our cuntry, the estate and

The gret Justice.

The Admiral.
The Marischall.
The Connistable.

Schirreffis succeditis be heritage.

Prouist & Bailies ouir tounes.

* L. "in dicenda ferendaque sententia"—in deciding or in voting.

† L. "nisi judicio Regni Cancellarius intersit"—unless the Chancellor be present at the sitting.

‡ L. "Vicecomites"—viscounts? The "comes" is the earl. The "vicecomes" is therefore he who takes the place of the earl—viz., the sheriff. The "Actes of Parlement" speak of "heret-able and temporall schireffs."

§ L. "Qui cives in officio contineant"—whose business it is to keep the citizens to their duty, and to protect their privileges.

situacione thairof, be this schadow that heir we haue schawin, and similitude sett afore thair eyne.

Quha now, nocht stane blind, or ful inuye contrare Scottismen, alledgedeng al crueltie vnto thame, wil nocht sinceirlie grant, the forme of Scotland, quhilke heir I in-
differentlie haue adumbrat, to be elegant? quhen our coun-
try may be seine of sik a maner to flurishe in the thrie
estates of the Realme, in sa reuerend a maiestie of thair
lawis, and sa firme and constant ane authoritie of thair
magistratis? Bot that I appeir not to sum perchance 10
prouder than becumis me, throuche luue of my natione,
heir I make ane end, and wil follow furth as, quhen I
begau, my purpose was, quhilke perteines to the rest of
the historie. That thairfor the cleirlier al may sie how
succeedis til vthiris our kingis, and be sik successione ar 15
as thay had beine with a string knutt togithir, deiplier I
wil repeit the historie frome the beginning, and the cause
farthermair wil declar, quhat first mouet the Scottis to
creat thame a king.

5

The Repub.
in Scotland
is absolutie
party.

HOW FERGUS FIRST KING OF SCOTTIS CAM IN ALBION.

Efter the Scottis, as said is, war confiderat with the 20
Peychts, thay, evin as thay, gret peice and quyetnes lang
enjoyet, stil vndir the obediens of Tribunes or Gouernours,
to wit cheif of the clan, or of the heid houses as
* in thae dayes was the consuetude. Thair constant
amitie and freindshipe and gud prosperitie, to thair 25
nychtbouris the Britanis brocht a terrabill feir. Quhair-
for thay did al diligence to dissolute that mutual benevol-

Through
means of the
Britanis the

* L. "Solis Tribunis, seu familiarium primoribus, morem gerentes"—obeying only their chiefs, that is, heads of clans. Translator has mistaken the meaning of the phrase, "morem gerere," *thay, evin as thay*=these, even as those.

ence, that * lang *confirmet* & *constant kyndenes*, and than that ald and freindlie familiaritie. This, I say, the Britanis studiet hail to do. And to this end thay labouret be al meines possible, first to obteine the Peychtes 5 fauour: thaireftir behind backis thay sawe betueine thame and the Scottis the seid of *contentione*, *Inuye* and *stryfe*. Eftir wordes followed warkes; eftir vnfreindlie ¹⁰⁹ flyteng, baith the parties war steiret vp to fechteng, priuat slauchtir cam neist, and last curst and cruel weirs.

10 For the Britanis thocht, as thay thocht true, that a bettir Ingine thay culde nocht find to wrake and bring to nocht baith the natiouns, than be thair awne forces, ilk to slay vthir. The weiris at last grew sa hett betuene the tua peoples the Scottis and Pechtis, that the Scottis 15 of Albion perceiue^{ng} thair strenth dekay, sente legatis to the Scottis of Irland, quhais king was King Ferquhard, legatis, I say, for helpe. Quhen the king and his cheif nobilitie had hard the *complaint* of thair nationes and freindes, of the iniurie and vnfaitfulnes of the Pechtis, 20 the legatis with little labour obteines thair ask^{ng}. And in haste the king sendes his sone Fergus to Albion, a manna les prudent in experiens of weifare than of a flurishing age, and maturitie of zeiris; him, I say, the king directes with a chosen armie of worthie weriouris til Albion to 25 the conseruatione and succour of thair freindes, with wyfes, barnes, gudes and geir, and prouisione of al things necessar.

30 Mairouer, the stouter spirit to stire vpe in his sone, and *contrare* al dangeris that my^t follow, to make him the mair couragious, and put him in that hope sumtyme, that he sulde regne, he bidis him take w^t him, the marmour chyre of Destinie.

band is
brokin be-
tuene ye
Scottis &
pechtis.

The Scottis
of Albion
obteines fra
the Scottis
of Yrland
help con-
trare the
pechtis.

Fergus wt
ane armie
cewis in
Albion.

* L. "quo mutuam illam, et sanguine et familiaritate, ac diuturna consuetudine firmatam benevolentiam dissolventer"—to break up the mutual good feeling that had become established by ties of blood and long and friendly intercourse.

Quhen now Fergus with his force was arryuet in Argyle, and with his cheif Nobilitie, had a counsel haldne how the weiris sulde be begun, and quhat way thay sulde proceid, he testifies that he desyres nocht mair his awne honour, and the glore of thame quha war in his cumpanie, as the libertie of that infirme people of Albion, to quhorne he wissed al heilth and prosperitie be rasoun of thair affinitie: farther he thinkes it expedient that thay consulte vpon this heid, quhither it war mair commodious to be vndir the princes of the cheif houses and clanis, as thay lyuet afortymes, or to be vndir the power of ane king: and that he is radie, how evir thay defyne to employ him selfe. Bot quhen the name of king was maist grate and thankful to thame al, nochtwstandeng na clan walde gyue place til another, Fergus a prince of 15 sa gret expectatione is elected king.

Fergus is
elected King
of Scotland.

THE SECUNDE BUKE

OF THE NOBLE ACTES OF SCOTLANDE.

I.—FERGUS I.

FERGUS sone to King Ferquhard King of Yrland is Fergus be-
namet first King of Scottis in Albion, the ȝeir afor the
birth of our Lorde cccxxx, for his felloune fortitude,
his justice, his prouidence, and his notable vthiris
5 vertues, to the gret joy & comforde of all.

Quhen now he was begun to regne, throuch ordinances & lawis his people he keipet vndir subiectione, alluttirilie rude, and w'tout all policie and ornat maneris. for his armes he vsed the rid Lyone, in sygne and 10 takne of ane inuincible mynd, and a wichte weiriour. Thir armes we knawe evir his estircumeris to haue obseruet, quha war ryghteous Kingis of Scottis, stil fra that furth, quhen first he brocht thame in Albion.

King Fergus throuch a cleir and elegant orisone, 15 discouering the fraudfull counselis and disceitfulnes of thair enimies, pacifies the Scottis and Pechtis, betuene quhome afor was continual stryfe, haitrid and jnvie, a new band now maid: and incontinent he chaises the Britons deidle enimies to baith the natiouns; and 20 ouirthrew thair armie: and slewe King Koil in Kyle fra quhome that cuntrey Kyle tuke the name, quhen he was slane.

Quhairthrouch for his noble and notable actes, of

thame he obteined sik fauour, that the Scottis with a solemne aith band thame selfes and al thair estircumeris in perpetual to King Fergus: and that thay walde neuir be vndir the obediens of ony quha war noct sprung of his body, maist firmlie the gret aith thay swore. To 5 King Fergus, I say, thay band thame selfes, and to his estircumeris & offspring.

This Leauge or band being maid betueine the king and the hail natione, the sentences of this contracte in Marmor war hewin, in Hieroglyphical or mistical lettiris, 10 as in that age was the consuetude for a perpetual monument, and to the custodie of the Preistes was committed. This consuetude and maner of successione, remayned now sa faste & sa sure sixte in our peoples hartes, and hitherto hes w^t our natione obteined sik force, that verie 15 scindle athir Bastardis, or vnlawfollie gottin and borne, or Tyraxis, quha throuch force haue invadet the kingdome contrare this foirsaid ordour of succeeding, haue beine gouernouris of the Repub. quha in a schorte space haue noct perissed athir be conspiracie, or than sair 20 troubled w^t Nychtbour feade.

The Scottis
wil haue na
Bastard or
vnlawfoll
birthe to
succeed w^t
thame w^t
gude wil.

King Fer-
gus. Scot-
land diuyded
in prouinces.

Quhen now King Fergus had obteined peace and rest, the hail land he diuydet in certane prouinces, and boundet euerie prouince w^t certane boundes and marches, q^{lk}es quhen sa he had done, he appoyneted 25 thame to his best capitaniis, quha had in his weiris done sa actuelie, and euerie prouince he named estir the name of his Capitane.

Nocht lang estir he passis til yrland to stay sum sudan furie steirred vpe thair amang his freindes and 30 kinismen, quhilke was reckned the last of his noble actes. for throuch his gret prouidence and wisdome, quhen al things in yrland war weil componed, in his returne to Scotland, vpon the Craig, quhilke frome his deith tuke the name, called Craigfergus, he perissed 35 throuch schipwreck; the xxv ^{yeir} of his reygne, now

King Fer-
gus in the 25
yeir of his
reygne dies
afire christe
jhs.

past, the ȝeir asor the birth of christe cccv. At this time Esdad of the Britouns and Cruthnæi of the Pechtis held the Jmpire betueine thame.

Cruthnæi now king of the Pechtis, bigit Camelodun 5 the principal place of the Pechtis, and Agnedæ * estir called Edinburghe with the madincastle thairin, Edinburghe was asor named Ethinburg frome a certane king of the Pechtis named Etho. Madne Castell was the Castel of Edinburghe, quhair the king of the Pechtis his 10 dauchtiris, and the dauchtiris of his Nobilitie, war keipet quhill thay war radye to be maried, and quhair thay vset to be instructed in the preceptes of vertue, and in thair humanitie to be informed.

Madne Cas-
tel is bigit.

II. FERITHAR.

Amang the Scottis in Albion, Ferithar brother to 15 King Fergus, in the secund place obteined the croune: because fferleg the eldest sone of King Fergus, throuch tendirnes of ȝeiris was ȝit vnable to gouerne.

Than was first this lawe made, gif the king left successione behind him vndir xiiii ȝeiris in meȝkynd, and xii 20 ȝeiris in womenkynd; in place of the king, quha was deid, sulde succeid the nerrest to him of blude: quha being departed, the kingdome sulde returne to the sones of the former depaerted king w'out al controuersie, as to the lawful heiris. Quhairfor Ferithar receiuet the 25 kingis Waipone, to wit, a naikit sworde, a †¹¹⁰ bent and straucht out wande, in thir dayes called a sceptre, and a goldne diademe or croune til his heid estir the forme of a ‡¹¹¹ Trenche in the weiris, in takenis, that he sould

Ferithar a
meke and
a gentle
prince.
Be the law
ȝoung &
tendir of
ȝeiris, ar no
permitted
to haue the
administrations of the
Rep.

The kingis
ornamentis
ar randiret
vnto Feri-
thar.

* L. "Agnedam postea Ethinburgum ab Etho quodam Pictorum rege dictam."—Agned, afterwards called Edinburgh—from Ethus, a certain king of the Picts.

† L. "Virgam rectam"—a straight wand.

‡ L. "militaris valli forma"—of the shape of a military wall.

the countrey and libertie thairof defend, w^t thair ennies baldlie he sould combatt, thay in lyke maner sould be sygnes that he administrat Justice and æquitie, and agane thay sulde signifie that at ane tyme he hes hail power, and last of al thay sulde be taikinis of ane invincible courage and of na faynt fortitude. Thir same kingis armes frome that furth rema^{ned} stil to the Scottis kingis evin to the dayes of King Achaie, quha was the first Scottis king that entred in societie of a perpetual bande w^t Charles the Magne, Romane Emperour, and 10 king of ffrance. He eiket to the circle of the croune four lillies of golde w^t four goldne signes of the croce, sett alyke * far in quantitie frome vthiris sumthing langer than the lillies. Quhairthrouch the obseruatione of the Christiane religione, and constante faith in the Scottis 15 natione, to al the warlde mycht be manifest. Peace thaireftir he confirmet with the Pechtis, quhilke sa lang as he ragnē was neuir violat or brokne.

The armes
of Scotland
new & alde.

a new band
w^t the Pech-
tis con-
firmet.

Bot nocth lang eftir, quhen Ferithar with gret felicitie had gouerned the people certane ȝeires, Ferleg forsaid 20 sone to King fergus, was steirred vpe throuch titling of sum of the courteouris in his eires: Thir courteouris invyet quhen the successione proceidet nocth ryght furth frome the king; vpon this motione Ferleg apinlie requires the Realme frome fferithar. frilie fferithar it 25 grantes, eftir quhilke fferleg he brings afore the Senat, quhair he first publiklie professis that he wil renunce al gouerneng baith for his alde age and to gyue place to the lawful ȝouth quha ryght be lyne was sproung of the kingis blude, quhome lykwyse he commendet to the 30 Senat and to the people.

fferithar
willing to
renunce the
Jmpire is
nocht per-
mitted be
the people.

Bot the people refuset fferleg, and al, quha stude w^t him, thay kaist in prisone. Thaireftir, quhen fferleg had the space of thrie monethis led a priuat lyfe, nathir that without feir of gretter danger, nathir could he sie 35

* L. "paribus intervallis discretis"—separated by equal distances.

another commodious way to obteine the kingdome, at last through fraud and disceit, quhen the Repub. had bene xv ȝeiris weil administrat, gouerned and gydet, be proditione, I say, he putis Ferithar thairfra: Of quhilke 5 cryme sa criminable, Ferleg to flie the panes of his deserueng willinglie was banissted, in banisment he past ouer his lyfe in miserie, sclandir and yll name.

Ferleg la-
bouris to put
dounre Feri-
thar throuch
proditione
afor christe
290.

Ferleg is
banissted for
his produc-
tione.

III. MAIN.

Thridlie was king in Scotland fergus his ȝoungest sone, his name Main, a Prince of ȝEquitie and Justice, 10 and sa mekle gyuen to the ceremonies and vane religione of thair false godis, that he inueyted and inbrocht diuise new kyndes of superstitionis: and in sindrie places he commandet to be erected gret kairnis of stanes, four * square vndirneth, and scharpe abone, ryseng vpe poyntings lyke a steiple, estir the forme of the temples of thair Godis, and places of sacrifice; that the alde discipline of the ȝEgyptianis, and the rite and custome in offiring not alluterlie wandired away, and cleine gaid out of vse. The † ȝeirlie Justice, now called the Justice ȝeir, 15 or 112 air he institute.

King Main,
prince of
sequitie,
mekle ad-
dicted to the
religione.

Tempilis &
places of
sacrifice to
prophane
Godis ar
heir insti-
tute.

The institu-
tion of the
Justice ȝeir.

He rangne in Scotlante ȝeiris xxix, nevir trublet w^t nychtbour feade, bot lyuet in gret peice and rest. ‡ Jn 25 this tyme the king of the Pechtis, to name Chrine, sent legatis to King Main to reioyse on his behalfe that he was maid king, and to renewe the alde peice w^t a nue band, and that he walde follow his fathiris mynde and

H. B.

* L. "instar pyramidum"—after the fashion of pyramids. Perhaps *obelisks* are intended.

† L. "Annum judicium quod nunc justiciarri iter dicitur."—The yearly court, which is now called the judiciary circuit.

‡ From this to (*) is not in the Latin edition of 1675. The letters H. B. and H. in the margin, and H. in text, seem to refer to the source whence it is taken.

Jntentione: quhilke mycht be to the peace and tranquillie of baith the peoples, to quhilke thay ernistlie exhorted, and w^tout double thay sayd walde be, gif he did. King Main now being instructed be sum of the cheife of his nobilitie quhom he had elected vnto his secreit counsel, gentillie receiued the legatis quha war sente vnto him, and maid anser to thair askeng as thay walde. Within a fewe dayes thairestir, the Peace being renuet, and a nue bande maid, the legatis war sente back H.(*) He lyuet in Joy, peace, and pleisour, and diet in gret 5 tranquillie and rest. 10

H.
King main
lyues peace-
billie, and
dies in tran-
quillie in
the 29 of his
rygne; afor
christs 261.

III. DORNADIL.

King dorna-
dil followed
his fathiris
virtue.

he set furth
hunting
lawis.

Boyes.

The fourth king of Scotland was King Dornadil sone to King Main, quha was na lesse a faouurer of peace than was his father, quhais futstepis he followit. quhen he was maid king he confirmet a nue band w^t the 15 Britouns be legatis, & peace w^t the Pechtis he renuet. he mekle delytyd in hunting, and in hunting dogis, he trett mekle the seikeris of wylde beistes, and vennisone. Quhen sa gret a pleasure he had in hunteng, the lawes 20 of hunting he first maid, that quhen ony pray was wonne in the feildes through hunting, it sulde be delte amang thame in peices and partes aftir thair quantitie: and quha had slane a wolfe sulde receiue ane ox of the commounre gude. * Gif ony hunter in his hunting had lost ane eye or be chance ony vthir member in his 25 body, quhairthrough he mycht nocht as he was wonte frequent the hunting, his table sulde be commoun, and publicklie he sulde be fed. It was ane alde institutione

* To end of paragraph not in L. The word Boyes in margin (=Boece) gives a clue to the meaning of the letters H. and H. B., below and above. They probably stand for Hector Boece, with whose history the passages so marked exactly tally.

of our natione fercelie to follow this beist for his crueltie vpon the scheip, by all vthiris beistes. Agane quhen a hart was slane sa thay did: Quhais hunteris hunde had first sett on the wylde deir and followed to the 5 deith, this hundes maister sulde haue the hart his hyde: The hunde neist nerrest sulde haue the heid with the hornes: quhen the body war apned it sulde be distributed at his pleasure, quha war maistir hunter and cheife in the cumpanie. H.

10 This king ragne ȝeiris xxviii in gret tranquillitie and quyetnes of lyfe, in welth and abundance of all things: and last leiueng his sone Reuther bot ȝoung, he paste the way of al the warlde, the ȝeir afor christe 233, and was buriit in Lochquhaber.

Dornadil
dies the 28
of his reyngne
the ȝeir afor
christe 233.

V. NOTHAT.

15 The fyfte quha helde the gouernement in Scotland to name was Nothat, Dornadil his brother, of ane elegant forme, and ane rype Jngine, meit and conuenient to the gouernement, as appeiret in the beginning; for his gret tirannie, notwithstanding, he is slane be a certane Prince 20 to name Dowal, of Brigantine, this countrey we cal in thir dayes Galloway; The tirannie that King Nothat vset was toward his awne Nobilitie, thairfor with conseute of thame he is slane, and Reuther is ryghtuouslie sett in his place: to wit in that tyme quheȝ Judas 25 Machabaeus that balde Prince and leidar of the Jues, w^t excellent and noble Vertue and continual constance, defendet God and his lawis.

Nothat
King.

VI. REUTHER.

Reuther sone to Dornadil was neist Nothat: In quhais tyme, Scotland was na les troublet w^t ciuile than

Reuther
king sone to
Dornadil.

externe weiris, because at the command of Dowal Prince of Galloway, by the consuetude of the Scottis, he is admitted to the croune, being *ȝit* a barne. ffor the Jnvie now at last brekis out of the Britonis, quhilke lang thay keipet vpon thayr stommok, and through the gret contempte, that thay bure toward the young king vnmeit as thay thocht to beir a croune, thay sett sa sair vpon the Scottis, that eftir mony battelis, and exceeding slaunchtir, thay compelled the king to forsaik the boundes of Britannie, and passing in yrland, sulde take that place 10 of exile, for a certane and sure place of refuge.

The Britonis
vex King
Reuther w^t
weiris in
his tendir
ȝairia.

Reuther
settis vpon
the Britonis

The Britonis
ouircus at
Reuthirdale.

Nocht lang eftir, Reuther nocht vnmyndful of his Cuntrey, nathir of the wrang against him committed, frome yrland he sayles to Scotland, w^t a strang and starke armie, and decoret the place quhair the feild was 15 strukne w^t the nobilitie of the victorie, quhair the Britannis he dang furth of thay boundes ; The place of the battel he maid celebrate, gyueng it a name frome his awne ; calling the dale Reutherfordale, in thir dayes called corruptedlie Riddisdale.

Nathir in al this truble and Tormoyle of the Scottis was the Pechtis frie of truble : quhome the Britonis oft sett vpon and sair vexed, quhill att last the Pechtis war compelled through crueltie of the weiris, and fercenes of *yair* faes, to flie frome Britannie w^t quhat thay 25 had intil orknay, and to command lyfe and gudes vnto the credence and custodie of the ylandmen thay war forced.

Nathir lay the Pechtis lang in orknay, bot w^t gret cumpanies, in a balde battel, w^t the Scottis, sett vpon 30 the Britonis, and obteined a glorious victorie, quhair indeid Reuther schewe na smal taknes of verie gret virtue, to quhome pertained al honour of the victorie, and vanquissing of the ennimies, for albeit the Pechtis was w^t thame in the feild, nochtheles Reuther deseruet 35 this honour, because he maid the first onsett, and at the

The Pechtis
& Scottis
agane
chaissis the
Britonis &
vanquisis
thame.

sam brasche put thair king to flicht called *Silius, quha
befor sa vncourteouslie had rebaikit Reuther w^t sa rude,
rasche, and rouch wordes.

The Britonis of this maner, seing thame selfes defett,
5 sent Legatis of peace, w^t al fairnes protesting to haue
peace, of this conditione that the captiues al sulde be
restoired, and ilk sulde be restored to his awne in baith
the peoples, for quhilkes thaireftir thay sulde neuir
stryue, bot the conditione being maid it sould byd per-
10 petuallie, and remane firme and constant.

Now Reuther, throuch sa mony weiris and deip dan-
geris, obteining peace and rest, the reward of his labour,
is riche, and his proffite plentiful, and for this cause ; His
country and kingdome, quhilke, in a ȝoung man he
15 receiuet sair oppressit be his nychbouris, now ane aget
and alde man, with Joy he sies it florishe in commenda-
tione of the weiris, and frie frome al enimies round
about.

He departes this lyfe the xxvi ȝeir of his rigne, deir
20 and weilbelued til his awne, bot feirful, ȝe in his lattir
dayes, to his faes.

Peace con-
firmet
amang the
Scotis,
Pechtis,
& Britonis.

Reuther
enjoies
peace & rest.

He dies the
xxvi ȝeir of
his rigne
afor christe
187.

VII. REUTHA KING.

Reutha was Reuther his brother sone, because
Thereus, Reuther his awne sone, was ouer ȝoung to
gouerne.

Reutha
Reutheris
brother sone
is maid
king.

25 This king was the first, quha institute, that † Steipilis,
Toures, Castel ȝettis, gret pilleris of houses sulde be
decored w^t Jmages in remembrance of thame, quha

* L. Sisilius.

† L. "memoriam publicis monumentis, obeliscis, pyramidibus et
columnis decorari primus statuit"—first ordained that the memory
of those who had fallen bravely should be perpetuated by means of
public monuments, obelisks, pyramids, and columns.

The sepulchres sam-
tyme hadine
as haly.
This king
for the
practice of
medicine
brings in
Scotland,
and Surge-
onrie.

douchtilie had diet in the weiris in defence of thair nativie countrey. Heireftir cam in vsse with vs, that sepulchres was in sa gret veneratione at al tymes, as thay had bene haly. This king was first, quha vnto the Scottis apned vpe the mysterie of medicine and surigeonrie, quhen he saw his people sair verte with diueris kyndes of seiknesses: Quhairthrouch be the supplie and * diuine grace and hailsum remeidis, he restored to thair alde and former halth verie mony sair seik of seiknesses vthirwyse vncurable. This king mairouer was the 10 first author vnto his people of merchandise: quhairfor gret Merkatis, now called fairis, he institute in sindrie places: and to the end that the pryce of the waires, the mair esilie mycht be payet, the pennie he causet be cuinȝet of a buffill hyde, to wit of sik kynde of lathir, because 15 afor him, in Albion was na vsse of strukne or cuinȝet money.

Quhill he † rules butt and benz; and for his wisdome is of a rasonable renoum̄e and reputacione, in his tyme, J say, to Britannie cumis legatis frome Ptolomie King 20 of Ægypte, to behalde, and throughlie explore the situatione of the cuntrey, the nature of the yle, the maneris of the people, and the consuetude of the natione sa farr situat. The king of thir ‡ legatis, for his gret cuynning in the arte of cosmographie, is of gret commendatione ouir al, and his legatis passis toghether through al cuntreyes: quhome, quhen thay had visited al partes, at last King Reutha hartlie receiues, and makes thame honorable treatment, thairestir, w^t sindrie rewardes, quhen he richlie had rewardet thame, he lettis thame passe. 30 The Scottis, through the fame of sa noble a king, noch

The legatis
of Ptolemy
king, al
Scotland
visitis
through.

* L. "Divinæ artis præsidio"—through the help of this divine art.

† L. "domi forisque ob summam prudentiam clarus"—famous both at home and abroad for his great prudence.

‡ "of thir legatis" not in L. text.

onlie war steired vpe to sik deides of humanitie, and gentilnes towarde thir legatis, bot evin for this cause, that thay war surlie persuadet the first offspring and original beginnig of the Scottis to haue proceidet of 5 that ancient & alde stock of the kingis of *Æ*gypte.

At last through desyre of a priuate lyfe, and to be quyte of the glore of a king, frilie renunçeng the Jmpire, he constitutes ane heyre, to wit, Thereus, sone to King Reuther, and this he did in the 14 *ȝeir* of his rigne; afor 10 Christe 173.

Reutha renunçes the kingdom the 14 *ȝeir* of his rigne, afor christe 173.

VIII. THEREUS.

The aucht King of Scotland to name was Thereus, sone to King Reuther. This king, vset the office of a modest and moderat prince the space of sax *ȝeirs*. Thaireftir he fell intill al kynde of lust and licherie of 15 lyfe, contempte lykwyse of religione, for quhilke, quhen he feiret his awne conspiracie of his awne subiectes, he fled miserabillie vnto the Britonis: quhair aluterlie despairand euir to be restored to his kingdom, in exile, the xii *ȝeir* of his regne, in ȝorke he dies, obskure and 20 of na æstimatione.

In the meine tyme, Conan, quha in his absens rulet the Realme exceeding weil, was be the Nobilitie declared Regent. for how lang Thereus lyuet, thay walde constitute na vthir king: being deid, his brother Josina thay 25 crouned in his place.

conspira-
tion against
Thereus for
his impietie.

In exile he
dies in ȝorke
afor christe
161.

IX. JOSINA.

To Thereus succeedet his brother Josina, quha al his dayes meruellouslie executed Justice and pietie. for he renuet the alde amitie and freindschip w^t the Pechtis and Britanis; quhilke, how lang he rang, he keipet sa

constantlie, that in na place he suffired sa mekle as the smallest discord to brek furth amang his nybouris. To Medicine he studiet mekle, in quhilke he was baith cunning and exceeding experte, doctouris of medicine at al tyme he trett weil, and honoured mekle.

5

At this tyme, tua notable men, in lerning, maneris, and halynes of lyfe, frome Hispane arryues in Scotland, quha intendet, al throuch the land, vpe and doun, throuch thair publick preicheng, and innocent lyfe, to rute out al seruice of the ald Godis, or, q^{lk}e ryter may be 10 named maist vane erroris of the Ægyptianis and thair idolatrie, and to ingrafe and poure in the hartis of the ignorant people, diuine rites, and celestial ceremonies, and the knawlege of ane only God: throuch quhais exemple and gude counsel, mony forsaking thair vane 15 superstitious and doctrines of deuilis, began to worshipe the true God.

Quhen the king inquiret of thame quhat thay thocht of the Scottis ground, this answer thay gaue, that it was mair commodious for mettelis, than cornes, and to 20 contain mair riches vndir than abone the erth.

At last quhen Josina had with gret felicitie gouerned the Repub. and gret commendatione of al, xxiiii $\frac{1}{2}$ yeiris, he depairtes this lyfe in ¹¹³ Beregone in Lochquhaber.

Scotland
abundes in
mettelis.

Josina dies
in Berigon,
q^{lk}e is a
strength in
Loch-
quhaber, q^{lk}e
mony of the
Kingis in
thay dayes
was burit.
In the $\frac{1}{2}$ yeir
of his reyne
24 and afor
christie 137.

finwan King
maid a con-
stitutione
that the king
in materis of
difficultie
ould do
nathing by
the counsel
of his no-
bilitie.

X. FINNAN.

To Josina succeidet ffinnan, his sone, vnlyke his 25 father in nathing, quithir $\frac{1}{2}$ e respecte the benignite of thame baith towarde thair subiectes, or the luue and beneuolens of thair subiects towardes thame.

This king in materis of difficultie and principal effairis of the Realme, did nathing, afor he consulted his 30 nobilitie. That this consuetude sa necessar, and of sic vtilitie to the commounre welthe mycht be knownen to

the kingis al that *cam* eftir, this law he maid, that na king fra that furth sulde vse the audacitie and counsel of wicked men and pernicious persounes.

This king trauelit mekle to restore thair ald Jdolatrie, 5 and religione now lang out of vsse; Nochtwstandeng w^t sik ciuilitie, that nathir vsed he his cruetie towarde thame, quha worshiped ane God, and war addicted to that new inbrocht religione, nathir was he mekle offendit with thame; because it was his fathires wil that thay 10 sulde Jmbrace quhat religione lyket thame best frilie, and na man suld hinder thame.

This king first placet thame called the Druides in the yle of Man: and delyuired vnto thame Noble menis barnes, to be Jnstructed and brocht vpe, baith in Religione, and in al vthir Kyndes of Discipline. Onlie 15 ane sone he had, to name Durstus, quha mariet his Douchtir quha was king of Britannie, her name Agasia.

His reygne was xxx ȝeiris: and in tranquillitie he departed in Camelodun, the principal place of the king 20 of the Pechtis, * heir, I say, he dies quhen he *cam* to visit the Pechtis king lyeng sair seik.

Finnax first placed the religious druides in the Ile of Man.

he dies the xxx ȝeir of his regne in Camelodun afor christe 107.

XI. DURSTUS.

Durstus, his father being deid, tuke possessione and began to regne.

Quhat meruel is it, that quha ar of sindrie tounes, 25 cuntryes, or clanis, be of sindrie maneris, and in condicione far vnlyke? quhen^t heir may be seine king Durst, weil gottin and borne, of maist innocent, [†]inteir,

* L. "Moritur Cameloduni, dum Pictorum Regem morbo laborantem ibidem inviseret"—he died at Camelot while on a visit to the King of Picts, who was lying sick there.

† L. "integerrimos." The three adjectives "innocent, entire, and incorrupt" are a translation of this one Latin word.

and vncorrupted parentis, and in al pointes weil brocht vpe, as ane quha be al manis expectatione was *sik* a kingdome to inherite, and quha appeiret na les vertuous than his father. Nochtwithstandeng was the first quha contemned his fatheris edicte, vseng at al tyde and tyme the counsel of maist pernicious and wicket men, and put doun, throuch craft & disceit, al the noble men quha resisted his intentiones.

His wyfe Agasia was a woman baith prudent and wyse, and of al chastitie and honestie, quhomed nocht-¹⁰ w^tstandeng, to his awne dishonestie, sclandir, Jgnominie and gret shame, and lykwyse to the hauie offence of the hail natione, he repudiat, forsuke, and frome him, as vnworthie, schott her * away.

At last sum of the Nobilitie, quha safe had chaiped al danger, and had cum hail and sound out of the handes of this wod and monstruous man, gathiret a stark armie out of Jrland, Argile, Rosse, and out of al cuntryes with quhilkes thay had maid a band, against this Tyranⁿ; Durstus sieng this, is kendled in a furie, ¹⁵ nocht knaweng quhat he sal do he falis in desperatione; nochttheles setting al betueine sax and sevin, with a few number, nathir thay preparat, he meitis his enimies; The battel is skairs begun, quhen Durstus is ouircum, and baith of kingdome and lyfe is † rest. for al this, he is ²⁰ not spoyled of the sepulchre of the rest of the kingis his forbearis. He is slane in the ix $\text{\textgreek{eis}}$ of his regne, quhilke sa filthilie he had ruled. ‡ heireftr fel in questione, quha or of quhat natione, war worthiest of that Maiestie. ²⁵ 30

* L. "repudiavit."

† This paragraph is very much enlarged upon the Latin text, which only has three lines to represent it.

‡ This sentence is not in L.

a man² gyues
to al licherie,
druskinnes,
& gluton-
nie.

Durst is
ouircum be
his awne, &
slane the 9
yeir of his
regne, afor
chryste 98.

XII.—EUEN I.

Euen succeidet to Durstus, and was his brother sone, a notable persone baith in peace and weir, the first of that name.

This king receiueng the croune, quhen the states of 5 the hail Realme had conueined in Beregon, he was the first quha crauet fidelitie of his Nobilitie, and bande thame w^t ane athe to be true to thair Prince: This athe of keiping fidelitie, or as the vulgar vses to name it, ane athe of homage, hitherto hes bene obseruet.

10 Naithir is it in our dayes aluterlie dekayet.

This king commandet to bring vpe the 30uth w^t al hardnes and skaircetie, quhairthrough thay mycht the bettir susteine the weiris, and the incommodities quhilkes mycht follow in perfyter age.

15 This king cheiset a chose of able persounis through the hail Realme, ouir quhome he set maistiris, appoyneng that 30ung menⁿ soulde vse for waepinis a slung with a bow, that in harnes hauie ladne thay sulde rinⁿ, that ouir dykes and dubis, sykes and seuches thayould 20 spang and leip, through stark rinning riuveris thay soulde swome; through quhilke experiens and exercise being confirmet, quhenⁿ defence of the cuntrey, quhen necessitie requyret, thay mycht be maid the radier, the swifter, and the abiller to al auentouris, to interpryse quhatsaeuir 25 danger, to flie nathing notable in the weiris.

Nocht lang eftir he iuned battel w^t the Britonis, to delyuer the Pechtis, with quhome he was confiderat, fra thair iniurie. Thir weiris betuene him and the britonis war lang vncertane: At last, eftir gret slauchter on 30 baith sydes, the Britone gaue bakis, and King Euen obteinet the victorie: and how sune he had wonne the campe, eftir the manir of the weiris he distributes the pray and the spoyle to his menⁿ rounde about; and to

King Euen
I. first socht
ane aith of
his Subiectes
to be true to
thair Prince.

He enioynes
to the 30uth
a mawer of
lyueng, in
a certane
forme or law
of sobrietie.

The exercise
of the Scottis
30uth.

The Britanis
heir gyue
bakis and
ar sair van-
quised.

The liberali-
tie of Euen
to thame
quhais

freinds in
the feild war
tint.

thame quahais kinⁿ or freinds war loste in the weiris, he
gauē large rewardes.

He biggit Dunstaffage, a starke strenth in the bordir
of Argyl, and thair he sett a garison of menⁿ of weir,
quhairby of al reif and steilling he clensem thy partes. 5

He diet
peiceabillie
the ȝeir of
his regne 19
afor christe
79.

xix ȝeiris enduret his regne: at last in al tranquillitie
and peace he departes this lyfe.

XIII. GILL.

Gill a
Tyrant.

Quhen Euen was deid, his bastard sone to name
Gill, a manⁿ of a craftie ingine, and disceitful, and a
notabil hipocrit, occupiet the Realme throuch tyrannie 10
and force of armes. for this crafte he vset: finzieng
him selfe religeous, he gangis to the Ile of Man to the
druides, and takeng fra thame Euen his sones, he slayes
thame al.

This Gill with sik hatred and Jnvie persewit the stock 15
and eftircumeris of Durstas, that he cruellie wraked al
that nobil and famous familie, excepte only ane, to name
Eder, Durstas his oye; quha be the ingine and the
industrie of his nurice was preseruet, and vndir thoume in
a toune in Galloway was brochte vpe. he murthiret maira- 20
touer baith kin and freind that perteinet to Durstas.

Against him
the nobilitie
conspires.

Finallie throuch counsel of a nobil and courageous
manⁿ called Cadal, quhome the Nobilitie in the meane
tyme maid Regent, a certane cumpانie conspires against
him: Til Jrland he flies; thay follow; battel thy stryk, 25
thay win the feild, Gill thy take, and frome him fra
hand thy stryk the heid.

he is slane
the third
ȝeir of his
regne afor
christe 77.

Quhen now al thingis succeidet w^t thame as thay
walde, as Cadal frome Jrland returned, brak vpe a gret
and terrible stormie tempest, quhairthrouch he lost the 30
gretter parte of his armie: of this that famous poete
Claudiane makes mentione.

Gill regnes skairse thrie ȝeiris.

XIIII.—EUEEN II.

King Euen, the secund of that name, the oye of King Finnan, of his brother donalde, quhen Gill was slane, was crouned king. quha in the beginnung of his regne was troubled w^t seditione of thame in Orknay and the 5 yles; quhorne w^t litle labour he satisfiet, thaireftir he lyuet in rest and peace. The king of the Pechtis douchtir he mariet. In the farthest partes of the Realme he bigit the tounes of Enuernesse and Enuerlochtie. finalie frilie renunceng the kingdome, he constitutes in his place 10 Eder the oye of Durstas of his sone Dothan, in the ȝeir of his regne 17. Euen quhen he diet, w^t a godlie exhortatione he besocht Eder to remember of the dutie of a king, and quhat perteines to the administratione of a Realme, and diligentlie with al pietie to put his office to 15 executione.

Onircunes
thame of
Orknay.

He gyues
over the
kingdome
the ȝeir of
his regne 17
afor chr. 60.

XV. EDER.

How soone Eder had receiuet the administratione of the Realme, he was noct lang frie of weiris: bot incontinent prepareng a strang armie he marches fordward till Argil: Thair began he scharpe weiris, vpon a cer- 20 tane hiland man, his name Bred, and vpon the rest of the freindes and acquaintance of Gill, quha sair trublet baith that * yle and al the Westir yles with reife and thift; quhen Bred he had takne and hanget, his natione he restoret to the ald securitie and quyetnes. Quhen 25 this feild with felicitie was endet, another scharpelie sittis til his schouldiris, mair perrilous. For Julius Cæsar, quhen al the cuntreyes of ffrance he had subduet and brocht vndir the Romane Impire, to spred the boundes

vanquissis
Braids.

* L. "illam et occidentales insulas,"—who troubled it (*Argyle*) and the Western islands. *Hiland*=island.

Julius Caesar
first of ony
sailis to
Britannie.

Eder con-
trare the
Romanis
supportis the
Britonis.

The Britonis
puttis the
Romansis to
flicht.

of that Jmpire baith braid and wyde, he first of ony dar
be sa bauld to interpryse to sail into Britannie sa far
seperat fra the hail warlde. Quhairfor the Britonis in
haist sendis legatis vnto the Scottis and Pechtis, with
quhome thay war firmlie and maist sure bunde in the 5
band of peace ; fra thame ernistlie thay implore helpe,
quhais requeiste Eder denyes nocht, bot frilie grantes
ane balde armie ; Gouernour of this armie the king
makes that glorious and illustre weiriour, and sa expert
in the weires, Cadall, Prince of Brigantine al(ias) Gallo- 10
way. Be him Eder sendis supplie to the Britonis.
Nathir in this necessitie and in tyme of neid lyes the
Pechtis abak w^t thair supporte.

Cassibilan King of Britannie, with the helpe that he
hes receiuet frome his nyghtbouris the Scottis and 15
Pechtis, at the first 3oking with the Romanis settis twyse
onⁿ, vncertane victorie at bathe the meitings, the thrid
onsett the Romanis flies, & albeit thay fled, thay
keipet thair ordour, following still thair anseinzie, sum-
tymes renueng the ¹¹⁴carmische, quhair thay mycht ; 20
The Britonis stil followit the chais, nathir cease thay
afor nycht w^t * ony of the twa. Quhen Cæsar saw the
aduersar desist frome persewing, with gret labour he
gathired his men of weir ; quha war sair hurt he sente to
the schipis, intendeng be daylycht to renue the battel. 25
bot quhen he hard of the gret afflictione of the Romane
Nauie through the vehemence of the tempeste, that
mony of the schipis walde nevir serue agane, it straik sik
a cnel to his harte, that he walde differ to seik a reuenge,
quhill anothir tyme quhen he thocht walde be mair com- 30
modious ; and sa louseng frome the Jle of Britannie w^t
his Nauie, in a schorte tyme with al his cumpanie he
landet. for he feiret gretlie that gif the thrid discom-

* This sentence is not in L. text ; its meaning is obscure.
"The twa" are presumably the Picts and Scots. The fact of the
Britons pursuing the Romans till nightfall is mentioned by Boece.

moditie had chanced thame, mycht weil follow that the courage of our people had bene mair inflamed than afore to persue thame scharplier: and that the hertes of the frenchmen quhome afore thay had subduet, frome him 5 soulde haue beine alienat and changet. Of quhilke hail historie our forfatheris sa firmlie frome tyme to tyme maid mentione, and faithfullie left to thair posteritie, that nathing we esteime mair sure nor certane: Albeit Cæsar al throuch sa speikis, that he neuir planelie 10 ascriuies vs ony certane victorie, bot ofter vncertane victorie *on* baith handes.* At last, w^t a new force, the Spring of the neist \mathfrak{z} eir, he invades Britannie agane: and subdues Cassibilan, quha remaned \mathfrak{z} it ouer proud of his first successe. At quhat tyme he maid the Britonis 15 tributaries to the Romanis. Quhen Cæsar nochtwithstandeng saw that thay war nocht lang lykli to byd constant, throuch force of thair nerrest nychtbouris the Scottis and Pechtis, excepte he \dagger conteined thame in thair office athir throuch his awne presense, or throuch 20 garisounis of men of weir, he sendis legatis to King Eder, to promise him in the name of the Romanis peace and freindschip, and al kyndnes, maist firmlie & suirlie: that preclare and noble Emperour feiret sa sair, surelie, the fellowoun force and gret courage in the hertes of our 25 people, naturallie bredd, as he thocht, be thair vertue in the weiris, y^t this far he offiret. Bot quhen he saw how hulie ¹¹⁶ speid he cam for al his fair offirr, and that he proffited nathing, he intendet, that quhat he culde nocht obteine be fairnes, to win it be the strang 30 hand, quhairfor be his legatis in name of the Senate and people of Rome, to King Eder he denunces weiris to

The Britonis
brocht vnder
tribute to the
Romanis.

* See, *e.g.*, The Commentaries, Bk. IV. c. xxvii., where Cæsar finishes his description of this battle with the words: "As soon as the enemy were overcome, and had recovered from their flight, they at once sent messengers to treat for peace."

\dagger L. "nisi in officio continerentur"—unless they were kept to their duty.

the Scotts. Quhilke denuntiatione and proclamatiounе of weiris publiklie being exhibited, the Scottis al kendlet in sik a furie, that contrare the commoune law of al natiounis and libertie, thay almaist had reisen the legatis amang thame.

Eder refuses
to bind w^t
the Ro-
manes.

Cæsar cumis
to Scotland.

5

They ansuer; the Scottis natione nathir to be sa dul nor sa blunt, that thay war ignorant of Cæsar his fraud and disceat: Thay say, that na cause quhy thay sie, quhairfor Cæsar sulde conquisse thair libertie, quhilke hithirto had beine frie and vnuolat, nathir evir subduet 10 till ony framet natione, be fairnes athir be foulnes: That thay wil obey to thair lawful king quhat he iustlie commandes, and to na cruel tyrane vpon the face of the Erth: Thay say farther that freindschip fairlie offired was bot vndir a culour, and for mony causes to bring thame 15 into maist miserable seruitude. Lat thair legatis thair-for passe, and to conclude, lat thame hope na confederacione or kynde of peace, how lang the scottis natione can stand in ony flour of prosperitie. Quhen the legatis of this maner, w^t this ansuer war sente back, Cæsar is 20 compelled to differ his expeditione, quhilke he intendes to Scotland, quhill another tyme, for the rebellioune of the frenchmen that thay at this tyme maid. Nochtwithstanding sum wryteris makes mentione that Cæsar entired in Scotland, and cam evin to that gret wod q^{lk}e 25 now we cal the Callender and Calderwod, quhilke in thay dayes extendet evin to Lochquaber, and seiget the principal toune of the Pechtis to name Camelodun. And that he mycht of this leive to the eftircumeris ane perpetual memorie, his hous in thay partes is ȝit to sie, 30 of stane four square, four and tuentie cubites hich, and xii cubites braid, a meruellous, trulie, monument, and preclare, of the force of the Romanis in thae dayes. Farther, this opinione was prented in the hartes of hiel Scotland, that Cæsar vset to karie this hous about w^t 35 him, quhilke, quhairevir he stayet, mycht incontinent

be erected. The Jngine of this worke and biging was sa meruellous, that in quhatsaeuir place, ilka stane was sett, throuch a certane number that thay war market, the place quhair euerie stane shold be sett mycht esilie 5 be knawen and discernet frome vthir. Bot the truer opinione appeires to be, that this Castel was erected be King ¹¹⁶ Arthur of Britanzie, in quhais name it is cele- brat and famous euin in this age.

Now King Eder is maid frie of sa feirful a fae, and 10 thaireftir troublet with na weiris, he endis his lyfe in glore and gret renoum^{ne}. Honorabillie he is buriit in the sepulchre of the kingis, quhen he had rougne fourtie and aucht ȝeiris.

He dies in
peice the 48
of his regne
afor christe
the 12.

Quhil Eder zit
ragne.

Quhen Julius Cæsar had subduet mony natiounis, and had obteinet a glorious name and a worthie and noble fame, he returns to Rome, and thair, the administratione of the Jmpire attributeng to himself onlie, he laid the first fundacione of the Romane Jmpire. Julius Cæsar was the first Romane Emperour. Eftir him Octauius Augustus.

XVI.—EUEN III.

Till Eder succeedet Eueⁿ the thrid, his sone, to the 15 administratione of the Realme.

This king followit the maniris and vertues of his father in nathing, bot led his lyfe in al vitioussnes and voluptuous lyueng. Sa vehementlie he was addicted to Venus, that quhen he had a hundir noble virginis and 20 honest matronis rest throuch force frome thair parentis and housbandes, thay could nocth al mitigat, nor mekle les to slokne his vnquenchable and Sensual appetite. Out of al partes he gathiret a gaird of his awne brane and Jngine, evin as impudent as him selfe, vnlyke him 25 in nathing, quhome he in al inteir societie acceptet, and

A licherous
peronne and
auaritius,
inclynet to
al impietie.

in al his secreitis admitted : and that he mycht his fleshlie
pleasures the frilier serue, and with the gretter confidence
row him selfe in al filthines, he intendet to ouirthrawe
the hail nobilitie athir secreitlie be fraude, or apinlie
be force ; cheiflie thame, quha scharplie maid thame to
resist his lamentable maneris and his dolorous and
dulful dayes. Nocht lang estir, he sett out sum leich-
erous lawis, that his flagitious gaird, and quha followit
his braine, mycht haue occasione frilie to louse a brydle
to al thair appetites, * verie lyke to Solon : that euerie
ane mycht marie how mony wifes he lyket, or mycht
halde vpe. Nathir was this lycht lawgyuer w^t dishonestie
and shame pricked sa ¹¹⁷ prunȝeandlie with this law, that
he abhored ony thing to sett out another new law evin
als wicket : to wit, that al Gentle men and maistiris sulde
abuse thair tennentis and seruandis dauchtiris as thay
walde : takeng thair pleasour of thame, and that thay
first sould preiue thair madinheid, and haue thair Virgin-
itie, afor thay war lawfullie mariet with ony vthir : and
lykwyse Noble men sould vse † seik menis wifes at thair
pleisour.

Thir lawis
be King
Malcolme
war anuiled
& maid of
na effecte.

Bot how gret and fellowune force obteines a wicked
consuetude, and how greidilie men gripis til it, quhen
anes it is offirit, and how fast and obstinatlie thay halde
it, quhen thay haue it, is euident and cleir anuich, be
this only exemplie of our natione, quha throuch na
admonisment of the kingis that cam estir, athir thair
authoritie or command, euir could be brocht to yat end,
that thay walde lay thayr ald pestilent maneris asyd,
evin vnto the dayes of Malcolme Canmore and S. 30
Margaret, throuch quhais pietie and prayeris sa per-

* L. "tali Solone dignissimas"—laws most worthy of such a Solon.

† L. "infimorum uxoribus"—the wives of men of the lower order. The translator has mistaken the word for "infimorum," and translated it *sick*.

nicious lawes war alutterlie abrogat and put out of vsse :
bot no^t withstandeng of sik a maner that for a certane
soume of money that licence soulde be ȝeirlie redeimed.

Quhairfor, quhen worr and worr al the Nobilitie began
5 to be, and daylie thay sawe Euen mair and mair sklan-
dirous, thay conspyre against him, and putting him
frome the administratione of the Realme, thay command
that to prisone he be led : In Prisone he is inuadet
through the audacitie of a rasche, ferce, and fulehardie
10 ȝoung man, and be him thair he is slane. Quha w^tout
delay at the commande of Cadallan for that same cause
was heidet : sa gret obseruance of our kingis was in the
hartes of our people, quhen he was deid, that quhen
he was alyue thay could nocht abyd his maneris and
15 filthines of lyfe.

Even ragne seuin ȝeiris : quha albeit in leicherie he
led al his lyfe and cogitatione, ȝit he neuir had a barne :
as hes beine the diuine Prouidence, that na yle Prince
sould haue ony successione, as quhat proeides of ane
20 evil rute commounlie beires na gude frute.

Rom. Imp.—Octauius Augustus.

Conspiracie
against
Even.

In prisone
he is slane,
the 7 of his
regne afor
christe 5.

Quha did
the deid is
heidet.

The punis-
ment of
God.

XVII. METELLAN.

In place of Even is sett Metellan, the oye of King Eder
of his brother Caran, Inferiour to nane of his elderis, athir
in vertue or nobilitie of kynde. A prince meik and
pleisand of ingine, quha luised ay weil peice and quyet-
25 nes ; sa that al the tyme of his regne he nevir walde
suffir nathir ane externe nor domestik fae : Thairef stir
followit a woundirful felicitie, Luk, plentie, and abun-
dance of al thingis in Scotland.

Augustus Cæsar he vset for his freind, quha only in
30 that tyme was king and maistir of Rome : quhais freind-
schip he wan^t partelie throughe giftes sente to Jupiter, to

Godlie and
quyet.

He sendes
to Rome, to
the capitolium
and
cesar giftes.

the Capitolium, partelie to Cæsar him selfe, sa that nathing coulde be mair inward or freindle w^t him than Augustus.

About the xth yeir of Metellanis regne, quhen the dinsⁿ of al armour began to cease through the vniuersal warlde, and al people began to enjoy the pleisour of peice but peir, christe, creator of mankynd, is borne of the maist bliste Virgine Marie: quhais aduent is prouen baith be mony prophesies of the ald and ancient propheites, and than agane be present miracles.

This natiuuite of christe befel maist happie and haly, the yeir estir the Scottis cam in Albion cccxxx.

Now Metellan weil strukne in yeiris, quhen he had borne rule xxxix yeirs, and gouerned the kingdome w^t gret felicitie and wisdome, he departed frome the land of this lyueng, nocht but a publick murning and mony teires of his awne; * gif a thankful remembrance of him culde stick into the myndes of men, war a just reward of the lyfe past, and sould be thocht ane abundant proffite and large, of solide and true vertue.

Jesus Christe gret Bischope & æternal first laid the fundatione of the Romane Bischoprie in Erthe: quha, frome this ascendeng to hevin, to S. Petir and to his successours he committed his place.

Rom. Emp.—Oct. Augustus, Tyberius.

XVIII. CARACTAK.

He is courageous and a Prince in al his doengs maist constant.

Metellan being deid without barnes, Caractak his systiris sone, and the sone of that noble capitane Cadallan, obteined the kingdome, quha is to be preferet to ony afore him, quhither the glorie of the weires in him be

* L. adds, "vel ipsa morte felix"—happy even by his death, if the grateful remembrance of him fixed in the minds of his subjects may be considered the just reward of a good life, &c.

respected, or his *constancie* * onwyay. How sune he was maid king, he is maid rich w^t the money of Metellan afor deid, and w^t his ample substantiousnes, and of this *mazer* he being enriched, vpon the þ hiland yland 5 *men* he gangis with ane power, quha studiet to rebel-lione: quhorne esilie he þ pacifet, quhen the Prince of the rebelis he had put away, and the cheif authoris of the seditione he athir had slane or chaiste.

he mitigates
the sedi-
tion of the
þ hiland
men.

About this tyme Guider, King of Britannie, is be the 10 Romanis set in place of Cymbellan now deid, a feare 30ung man, quha quhen he saw the seruitude of his natione, and culde nocht abyde to beir the Romane 30k, helpe he crauet of Caractak; bot because he sawe his 15 cuntry slane doun, burnte, and herriet, walde nocht tarie quhill helpe came, bot in haste 30kit w^t the Romanis vnhappilie, quhair he was slane.

Eftir him his brother Aruirag w^t consent of al is 20 crouned king, that the effairis of Britannie perise nocht alluterlie, shaikin with sa mony battelis, gif abune thame 25 thay wante a king to quhorne thay may obey.

Aruirag
King of
Britannie.

Quhen this king had mariet the sister of Caractak, her name Voada, he resisted the Romanis for a quhyle. Bot quhen he saw, sa strang enimies he was nocht able to resist lang, he thocht best w^t the Romanis to 25 com-ponde: quhairfor he repudiat Voada, and mariet another called Genissa of the Romane blode.

he maries
Voada to the
scottis
Kingis
sister.

Now Britannie at peace, al the waicht of the weiris 30 lyes vpon Caractak, quha intending to reteine his libertie, and inflamed lykwyse to reuenge the Jniure of his sister, he nyne 30iris stil helde the Romanis at weiris: Oft w^t diuerse capitanes he straue w^t vncertane victorie: he

The Ro-
manis now
weiris vpon
the Scottis.
he oft ouir-
cumis the
Romanis
and oft is
ouircum be
the Ro-
manis.

* L. "in prosperis simul et adveris"—his constancy in success and in failure.

† L. "in insulare" —against the men of the isles.

‡ L. "pacavit"—reduced to silence.

§ L. "Hebridianos"—the men of the Hebrides.

vexed Cæsar selfe, * Claudius, Vespasian, Plaucius and Ostoriūs, al maist noble capitanis, w^t vncertane victorie. Monie straikis he gaue, and mony lykwyse did receiue ; Mony enimies he slewe, and agane gret slauchtir w^t

His wyfe,
barnes, and
brether ar
al takne.

5 thame. Finallie at the last feild, estir gret and hauie

slauchtir, his wyfe, barnes, and brethir ar al takne, him

selfe only safe and sounde chaiped ; and through the

The King
through
fraud of his
step mother
is taken and
sente to
Rome.

fraude and disceit of Cartumand his stepmother, to

quhome he fled for reliefe, he is delyuired til Ostoriūs :

for nathing is sure in aduersitie, nor true in despera-

tion. Ostoriūs

in haste sendes him to Rome to the

Emperour Claudius. Quhen Caractak was sett afor

Claudiūs, he besocht noct for his lyfe, nathir crauet he

it w^t ony humilitie, or feirtlie, bot pronuzcet ane oratione

The orisone
of Caractak
may be red
in the 12
buke of that
notable historiograph
our Cornelius
Tacitus.

15 sa excellent and elegant, w^t sa constante a countenance,

that the verie Romanis selfes, victorious winzeris, mer-

uelled meikle to sie him and heir him, and of his mazlie

fortitude, and vndiscouraged in aduersitie. Nathir was

the name of King Caractak of smal æstimatione with the

Emperour selfe : quha through the fame of sa noble a 20

king, and through the chance as it befel, was sa mouet,

that quhen w^t al humanitie he had receiuet him, he

named him freind, and quhen with gret giftes and

honouris he had enduet him, sente him back to his

Through the
clemencie of
Claudius he
comis to
Scotland.

awne, safe & sound : and farther, not only restored the 25

Emperour to the king wyfe, barnes, and brether, bot the

kingdome selfe he sett at libertie, for the nobilitie of

that king and stommok sa stout.

Nathir for al this wanted Claudius Cæsar the due &

ryteous proffite of his gloir ; because through al natiounis 30

his name was mair famous for that humanitie, and

clemencie, quhilke towarde King Caractak he schewe,

than for al the triumphe, that he triumphed ouer sik ane

ennimie, and the Britonis sa oft ouircum. Caractak

now estir his returne to Scotland, lyuet twa ȝeiris : Thair- 35

* L. "Cæsarem Claudium"—the Emperor Claudius.

eftir he dies mair throuch sair trauel, than throuch age,
the tuentieth and ane ȝeir eftir the deith of his vnkle
Metellan.

5 florished in thir dayes in Rome Persius, Juuenale, Seneca. Than lykwyse the fame of the Christiane Religion began to spred throuch all cuntryes in Lenth and Breid.

Christe, cheife and gret Bishope, Suffret in Hierusalem.
Than Rom. Emper. Tyberius, eftir him Gai. Caligula,
Claudius.

Caractak
died in the
ȝeir of his
awne regne
21, of God
54.

XIX. CORBRED.

Corbred, eftir the deith of his bruther Caractak, is declared king, and gouernes weil baith in peice and weir.

10 This king in the beginzing of his regne, perceiuing quhair Jnsurrectione and rebellione began to sprout vpe, vpon thame with ane armie he maid, to wit, vpon Rosse, Cathanesse, and vpon the rest of the * hiland men: quhair quhen he had put ane ordour to the 15 authoris of the tumulte and seditione, he pacifies his people.

Corbred
bruther to
Caractak
king.

He stayes,
in the be-
ginzing of
his regne,
seditione.

In the mein tyme quhen the maiestie of the Romane Jmpire in Britannie daylie dekayet, and almaist was cum to nocht, the Pechtis finding occasione to win thair 20 libertie agane, began to rebel, and helpet be the Scottis, thay straik a feild, in quhilke thay put Ostorius to flichte: quha nocht long eftir, throuch the ¹¹⁸ warkynge woundes that in the battel he receiuet, he dies.

The Pechtis
be the Scot-
tis helpet
ouircusis
the Ro-
manis.

Didius, Romane legat, quha succeedet to Ostorius and 25 Manlius, denounces weiris to the Scottis be ane harrat of armes, excepte in haist thay passe out of Gallouay; for thay affirmet that prouince only to the Romanis did perteine, and King Caractak did enyoy it bot for his

* L. "in Hebrides"—upon the *islands*. The words, *vpon the rest*, not in L.

lyfe tyme, only permitted to him throuch benignitie of the Emperour.

The Romanis prepares to weir upon the Scottis, Peice takne agane.

Cesius Nasica ane strang capitane passis in Gallouay, he weiris with the confederat kingis vncertane victorie : nocht lang estir, for the rebellioun of Britanzie, he is 5 commandet be Didius to craue peice vpon æqual contiounis, this peice induret sax ȝeiris continuallie.

About this tyme depairtes this lyfe Claudius, to quhome succeidis Nero in Rome ; Didius lykwyse dies, in his place is set ouer Britannie, be emperour Nero, a man 10 of a cruel & proud spirite, mekle addictet to winn glore, to name Veranius, quha frahand began to inuent new things ; quhairthrouch followit gret and sair slauchter onz baith sydes ; bot this capitane is preueined in Camelodune w^t deith in few dayes.

15

The yle of man wan from the druides.

To him succeides Paulinus Suetonius in Britannie : quha quhen he had renued the bande w^t the Scottis and Pechtis, he wanⁿ the yle of Man frome the druides.

Nathir culde al thingis continue lang in this estate, for in haist Suetonius is compelled to spoyle Brittannie bair 20 of all externe man of weir, to releive France, quha amang thame selfes war at sik straikis, and scharpe seditione. Heirestir monie of Albion throuch hope of libertie, and the occasioun that thay saw, w^t ane consent thay conspire against the Romanis.

25

Petrus Cereal, quhen his armie was al put to wrake in that parte of Northumbirland that lyes about *Beruik, him selfe with mekle ado fled saif and sound to Capitane Catus, quha than was Procuratour in Kent, of the Romanis.

ffrome Britans Passis Catus & tint the victorie, he passis at the sped as fast as he may flie.

Quhen Catus had in ffrance repared his forces he 30 invades Brittannie agane : and finding Voada the King of Britannies wyfe, Corbredis sister, her and her dauchteris he † obiectes to the badrie of his men of weir.

* L. "Ordolucia."

† In the Latin sense of the word, *subjects them to, &c.* L. here has *objicit.*

Corbred sair prouoked throughe the Jniure and wrang committed against his sister, throughe the helpe and supplie that he receiues of the Pechtis and Moray men, he chaises Catus out of Albion. Moray men war now 5 dung out of Germanie be the Romanis, and this thair first entres in Albion.

Quhen the Romane Maiestie in Albion was sa waik, in due tyme cam Suetonie out of ffrance w^t twa legiounis of men of weir. The scottis throughe the hope partelie 10 of thair awne, partelie of thair nyghtbouris; at thair cuming baldlie and w^t scharpe weiris thay meit thame; in quhilke battel was fochtne maist stoutlie on baith the handes, quhair the Scottis, and quha stude w^t thame, ar slane almaist ane and all, verie few excepted.

15 Voada, quha quhen sche first fauchte in the feild w^t v thousand women of Britan blude, to eschew the crueltie of the ennimie and thair mockrie, sche to put handes in her verie selfe feirit nathing. This battel to the Scottis, Pechtis, and Moray men, was sa duiful & deidlie that 20 skairs war thay able to reteine thair awne ony langre. Tacitus that notable historiographour wrytes, that in that feild, of Albion perisshed four score thousandis.

The Moray men, because thay had beine sa manlie, and done sa fellounlie in this feild, at the commande of 25 Corbred, thay occupiet all that boundes vpon the Riuier of Spey, expelling the Vararis quha duelte thair asor. And sa the Moray men w^t the Scottis growe in ane natione. This cuntry that was assignet to thame, was be thame selfes called Moray land: quhilke this day 30 keipes the name.

Corbred frome the same tyme furth w^t na man was troubled, bot spendet the rest of his lyfe in pleisand peice, quyntnes, and rest; quhen the Romanis in the mein tyme, sair troublit with intestine seditione and 35 domestik weiris amang thame selfes, culde skairslie, and with gret trauel, be legatis halde the Britanis in ordour,

The Scottis
& Pechtis
ouircus be
the Ro-
manis.

Corbred
heirefür ab-
steines from
weires.

and cause thame to do thair dutie: him selfe at last ane aget man, in the tyme of Emperour Vespasian, dies the xviii $\frac{1}{2}$ ir of his regne in that place quhilke this day is namet * Dounstaffage in Lochquhaber. Thrie sones $\frac{3}{4}$ it bot $\frac{1}{2}$ oung he left behind him, the eldest Corbred, quha 5eftirwarde, for the elegancie of his maniris, was Galdie named, the neist Tulcanie, and the thrid Bretie.

fflorished about this tyme in Jtalie, the gret \dagger poete Statie, Lucan, and Plutarchie sa artificiouslie quha could illustir histories, and was sa notable in the policie, dek- 10king, and outset of maneris and honestie. of Christianis war than Petir and Paul, quha for the faith of christe spred maist wyde, and maist constantlie fochtne for, at the command of Nero, thay receiuet a glorious palme of martyrdome, the ane vpon the croce, the vthir with the 15sword.

Papes in thir dayes—S. Petir of Galilie the apostle of ch \ddot{r} .

Linus.

Rom. Emper.—*Claudius*, Nero, Galba, Otho, Vitellie.

He dies the
18th of his
regne the
 $\frac{1}{2}$ ir of God
71.

Notable
men in thir
dayes in
Jtalie cheif-
lie.

XX. DARDANIE.

Dardanie,
called
Grossie.

Corbred, the eldest of the thrie sones, of quhome afore we maid mentione, was brocht vpe with Voada, quene of Britannie, and instructed in the maneris of the Britonis, and thair policie, quhairfor Galdie thay named him; 20 That thairfor the Realme mycht continue in gude estate, ay and quhil Corbred *cam* to maturitie of $\frac{1}{2}$ eris, Dardanie Metellanies oye, quha fra the gretnes of his grouth was called Grossie, is maid king.

Afor this man began to regne, he wan π al manis 25 fauour and kyndnes, baith throuch the grate and thankful

* L. “Ebonii” = Ebonium or Oban—see note 113.

\dagger L. “Statius Melicius, poeta Lucanus, et Plutarchus chæronæus,” &c.—Statius, the poet Lucan, Plutarch, &c., &c.

rememberance of his gudshir Metellan, quhilke stak ζ it in the myndes of men, and agane for his gret obseruance baith in peace and weir, towarde the twa Kings Caractak and Corbred. Bot or it was lang, in this man did appeir 5 a vane schawe of vertue, and a false colour of fein ζ et gudnes. ffor he had nocht ζ it fulfilled the thrid ζ eir of his regne, quhen with a *plumpe he fercelie fallis in al kynde of mischeife, and foul and filthie badrie, adultrie, whoredome and harletrie. Nathir was this his lyfe 10 without mekle blude and sair slauchtir: for he com-mandet Cardorie to be slane, a man of cheife nobilitie, and in the mein tyme, \dagger schawe him the cause quhairfor, to wit, because he was so scharpe vpon his abuses, and maid him to mell with his effairis.

15 That same tyme, for that same cause, with that same crafte and Jngine, he slawe doune monye of the Nobilitie: Bot quhen his haitred and Jnuie war sa starke, that with al this nobil blude he culde nocht stanche his stommok, he labouris to put doune Corbredis thrie sones, throuch 20 craft of a certane courteour to name Carmonak. To be schorte, he was sa tyrannous to his awne, that Galdie, with commoun consent of al the \ddagger thrie estates, payet him iustlie his rewarde, deprieng him baith of lyfe and 25 Realme, the fourth ζ eir of his regne.

In the be-ginning of his regne a gude Prince afterwarde vitioues.

In the fourth ζ eir of his regne, for his tyrannie is he slane; the ζ eir of christe 75.

Papes in thir dayes—Linus, Clemens.
Rom. Emp.—Vespasian.

§ S. Petir apostle & mar. : s. 3. 24. m. v. D. 12.

S. Linus mar. : Petir ζ it alyue. s. 3. xi. m. iii. D. xii.

S. Clemens, mar. estir S. Petir his deith; s. 3. ix. m. iii.

D. xxvi.

Tak s. for sat, 3. for ζ eir: m. for moneth: D. for day. For shortnes we lettiris put for wordes, and mar. for martyr.

* L. “præceps.”

\dagger L. “indictâ causâ”—after bringing him to trial.

\ddagger L. “omnium ordinum”—of all ranks.

§ *Translator's note.* The length of Popes' reigns, &c., is not given by Leslie, and only added by Father Dalrymple in this and the following ten chapters.

XXI. GALDIE.

King Galdie
maist hon-
orable, baith
prudent &
wyse in
weirlie
virtue.

Galdie quhome Tacitus callis Galeacie, is be al voitis
declaired king. How sune he had thanket first the immo-
rortal Godis, neist the Nobilitie, thridlie the commounie
people for thair beseuolens, in haist he gaue him selfe,
and alluttirlie sett his harte, to be conforme in maniris
to his foirbearis, to follow thair * liberalitie and thriftnes.
ffor quhen he with him selfe had laid mony rasounis and
waichtie, he began to consider, that the maist florisheng
kingdomes war nocht sa mekle estableshed throuch deides
of armes, and weirlie actes, as throuch exercise of Justice, 10
discipline and lawis.

He clesnes
the cuntrey
frome tray-
tourie.

Quhen this king began to gouerne, he gyues ane athe,
that he wil do nathing contrare the principal Nobilitie,
and w^tout thair counsel. Incontinent he Justifiet al the
partakeris and companiounis of Dardanie, with a seueir 15
torment, ryghteouslie; and, throuch trauel of the Moray
men, quhen al traytouris and limmeris he had put away,
he restored his cuntrey to the alde securitie.

lawis of al
vtilitie he
setis furth.

A litle aftir, the thrie estates of the realme (*he orders*)
to conueine in that place in Lochquhaber, quhilke this 20
day is named Dounstaphage, quhair he sett furth mony
edictes and lawis, honorable for the dignitie of the
Realme, and for the commounie vtilitie profitabile, zie
and necessar: Mony lykwyse he brak that war to the
hinderance of the alde dignitie of the Republik, and 25
first of al that filthie law set furth be Euen, quhair the
maisteris mycht at thair plesure vse thair tennandis
wyfes.

Emperour
Vespasian
sendis Peti-
lie to Scot-
land.

Now be Emperour Vespasian, was Petilie Romane
legat sente to Britannie, nocht onlie to releive quhat 30
thair he had loste, bot to subdue quhat was nocht ȝit
subduet.

* Not in L.

Amang al the countreyes perteyneng to the Pechtis,
the Romanis first wasted thir twa called Ordolucie and
Deere ; Ordolucie conteines the boundes about Beruik ;
Deere conteines the Merce, Tinidale, Esdale, Eusdale
5 and Tuedale : Thaireftir thay invade the cuntrey now
called Gallouay : quhair King Galdie haueng vndir
charges fistie thousand men of weir, meitis the Romanis :
The Scottis couragious, of a blyth hope, and a mychtie
spirit, lepis to straikis. A baulde battel is begun : a
10 sair slauchter on baith handes. * Quhill the men of
weir of this maner fallis doun, the capitaniis manfullie
does thair dutie. Sa scharplie was w^t baith sydes
fochtne, that King Gald selfe, receiueng a wyde wounde
in the face, spangis vpe on horse back, and flies af the
15 feild. The rest seing the king flie, discouraget, thay
gyue bakis, ouer hil and hoip, bank & bra, dub &
myre, mos and mure, at speid. The Romanis persues
peirtlie the flieris ; quha flegg flies na farther, quhair euir
a Romane can apprehend him.* xii thousand Scottis,
20 and vi thousand Romanis war miste in this feild.

In the meane tyme, the ȝoungest dauchter that the
King of Britannie with Voada had, her name Vodicia, to
reuenge the adultrie first committed against her be the
Romanis, a gret armie sche gathiris out of the yle of
25 Man, of † Gallouay, and Britanie, and in the ny^t, quhen
the Romanis thocht litle of sik a mater, thay cum vpon
thame in thair campes, and maid a gret slauchter :
Thaireftir in haist sche cumis to ¹¹⁹ Epiak the cheif
toun in ‡ Gallouay, quhilke suddenlie invadeng sche

The Scottis
meitis the
Romanis.

The Scottis
ar van-
quished.

Vodicia in
the nycht
among the
Romanis
makes gret
slauchter.

* The translator has apparently expanded the following four sentences out of this one : "In quo Galdus dum egregiam quandam animi generosissimi speciem pugnando præ se fert, vulneratus et in fugam versus, victoriam hosti longe funestissimam relinquit"—in which Galdus showed wonderful bravery, and being wounded, fled, leaving the enemy a very costly victory.

† L. "Brigantibus"—from among the Brigantes, and Britons.

‡ Not in L.

esilie obteines. Bot at last be the Romanis sche is put to flichte.

Frontinie
succedit
to
Petilie and
carmushes
with the
Scottis.

ffollowis now a strang rebellioune in Kent schyre ; q^{lk}e to the legat Petilie is impedient, that he can^t mell na mair w^t the Scottis. Quhen Petilie had put the land to rest, he disseises in the same place. Than Julius frontinie occupies his place. 5

How lang this man was legat, betuene thame and the Scottis was neuir a set battell, bot lycht carmushing evir.

Agricola
succedit
and except
the Scottis
subduet hail
Albion.

Emperour Domitian calling him vnto Italie substitute 10 in his roume Julius Agricola : This legat ouircam al the legatis, capitanis, and Romane gouernouris, in actes of Nobilitie, that evir war in Britannie asfor him. ffor throuch gret and hauie slauchtir he brocht the Pechtis almaist to nocht, and maid thame sa waik, that thay 15 becam tributaries. Lykwyse he put the Britonis in ordour, and quha inhabited the yle of man, for al thair rebellioune, quhilke was nocht seindle.

He cruellie
invades the
Scottis and
in battel
twyse ouir-
cuwis King
Galdie.

Quhen now al Albion, excepte the Scottis, was brocht vndir, Agricola turned al his force vpon the Scottis : 20 quhorne certane ȝeiris he with cruel weiris oppressed baith be sey and land : and because he thocht king Galdie was sa obstinat, that naway he walde be vndir the Romane Jmpire, twyse he compelled him to take his refuge in wod and wildernes, his hail armie aluterlie slane 25 doun. Bot gif throuch Jnvie of the Emperour he had no^t bene called bak to Rome, and in Rome poysouned and sa endet this lyfe, doubtles hail Albion to the Romane Jmpire he had subduet, through his gret vertue and actiuitie. 30

Agricola in
Rome is
poysouned,
as Tacitus
in his lyfe
makes men-
tion.

Quhen Agricola left the land, he committed his authoritie til ane, his name Cnie Trebellie, ane auaritious persone, replete of al wickitnes, addicted til al vice, and of a verie yl fame. The mair that the men of weir abhor his maneris, the mair thay refuse to follow his command. 35 Heireftr meruellous mutatiounis war sein in Britannie

throuch the controuersies and mutual dissentione betuene
the Capitanis and the men of weir.

King Galdie seis heir gud occasione of sum reuenge,
and thay chance to haue gude succes, thairfor vpon
5 Angus he brekis in vpon a suddentie, for in that boundes
the Romanis lay, and thay partes al thay occupiet. The
Romanis nochtwithstandeng of that suddan onsett, for
al the dissentione amang thame selfes, baid nocht abak
frome the battel, and fled nocht the feild, bot steppit
10 stoutlie fordwart. Gai Sesinnie, quhome thair capitane
thay chosen had, being deidlie hurte, thay fercelie follow
to the Scottis, quairthrouch deidlie hurt and slane, thay
gauie backis. The Scottis obteineng the victorie followet
the Romanis quha fled quhil farr in the nycht.

15 Throuch this battel the Romanis now being weil
dantouzed, to thair ennemie thay leive Angus bair.
Galdie thankeng the Jmmortal Godis, quha for mekle
sair trauel had gyuen thame ane blyth day for al, w^t al
consentis thair present, quha had won the victorie, with
20 thame he marches fordward to the pairtis in thae dayes
called Calidonia, that the Romanis now skattired, had
na tyme to gather agane. Bot the Romanis knaweng
the mynd and intentione of the ennemie, elected a capi-
tane *Celius*, a man verie experte in the weiris, thay prepare
25 courageouslie, nathing abaket, and quiklie cumis furth
to kepp the Scottis in thair cuming. Thair a cruell
battel is strukne, in that parte of Calidonia now called
Dunkeld: at last throuch the Vertue, gret force and
mycht, and able actiuitie of Albion, the Romanis ar put
30 to flycht, and tynes the victorie, with tinsell of fyue
thousand of the Scottis.

Quhen Galdie had now twyse won vpon the Romanis,
quhilkes twa victories war notorious, and victorious,
terrible and cruel, he began to be haldne gret and hon-
35 orable and in woundirful aestimatione w^t al men. quhair-
throuch followed a meruellous gratulatione and exceeding

The Scottis
ouircus the
Romanis.

Galdie
agane ob-
teinis vpon
the Ro-
manis.

Joy of the hail Ile of Britannie. The Noble men frome
al partes cumis rinzing till him, sa did the Laii people
daylie.

The Romanis now sa sair oppressed, thay send legatis
to Marius king of Britannie for helpe, bot al in vane. 5
Quhairfore seing thame selfes now in sik danger, haueng
mair respecte of thair lyfe, nor ony dignitie, the neist day
thay send al thair companies of men of weir to that parte
in the westland than called Silurie, quhilke now conteines 10
Kyle, Carrik and Kuninghame, a far Jornay ; bot
feiring the suddantie and craftines of the cuntry men, in
haste thay flie vnto Gallouay.*

Galdie being admonissted quhat the Romanis intendet,
his purpose alluterlie was to follow the chaisse ; and
because his confidence was the gretter to obteine vpon 15
thame, the speidier that he war, and the suner he culde
fal vpon thame, with speid he spuris into *Gallouay,
leiueng Siluria, that is Kyle, Carrik and Cuninghame
vntueched. The Romanis meitis him, furious and wod,
partlie through crueltie of the ennemie, partlie of cleine 20
desparatione : thay flie nocht at the first ; bot Galdie sa
fercelie falis vpon thame, that on thame he laid a scharpe
chaisse, and douchtilie draue thame into thair strenthis,
quha culde be formost in flicht, al through vther, and as
we vse to speik, arse ouer heid. The Romanis, quha 25
† had a bettir hope of gretter felicitie, and quha war
proud for thair prosperitie, quhen now na place thay sie
sure quhair thay can set thair fute, nathirȝit of power to
fortifie thair munitiouns and strenthis, humblie thay pray
King Galdie, be legatis, for thair lyfe, offiring thame selfes 30
and al that thay haue vnto his Grace.

Galdie the
thrid tyme
ourcumis
the Ro-
manis.

The Ro-
manis hum-
ble craves
froſſe Galdie

Galdie haueng now won thrie victorious victories,
kinglie, and cruel, is nocht sa inhumane that he denyes

* L. "Brigantia."

† L. "quibus omnis spes felicioris eventus præcidebatur"—who
had now no hopes of better fortune.

thair askeng, bot is sa humane, gentle, and bezing, that vpon conditiounis he grantis thame, quhat thay craue. And first, that frome that tyme furth thay nevir inuade Scott nor Pecht, ony way be weiris: Neist that in haist 5 thay rander al cost and * quarter in thair handes, tour and toune, castel and citie, al Strength and Munitione: That, thridlie, vpon gude faith and vpon thair conscience, thay restore trulie, al that laitlie thay haue spoylyet, al fled vnto thame, † limmeris; al pledges, and al captiues: 10 10 finalie that the band of freindschip with the Scottis & Pechtis thay confirme with ane athe to indure perpetuallie betuene thame, and that this band stande baith for thame selfes and thair estircumeris, w/out impediment.

Galdie at last efter gret aduersatie, sa sair slaunchter 15 and peirles persecutioun, obteines na les triumphe for his humanitie towarde the Romanis, than gif he martallie and valzeantlie had ouircum thame, quhen he brocht his kingdome to sik quyetnes. Nocht lang estir, the thretieth ȝeir of his regne, he disceisses with the hauie dis- 20 pleisour of al man, dule and dolour; he departes in Epiak the cheif ‡ citie than in Galloway, bot with the Romane weiris brocht to nocht. A king indeid to be preferret in martial actes, and deides of armes and actiuitie, to al the kingis afor him.

25 Heir, to be schorte, this J may weil say, he had bene abundant happie in al thingis, gif behind him he had nocht left a sone vnlyke him selfe, vitious, and ful of al mischeife.

Papes—Clement, Cletus, Anaclet.

Rom. Emp.—Vespasian, Titus; Domitias, Nerua, Traianus.

S. Cletus,

mar. sat.

2. vi. M. v.

D. iii.

S. Anaclet,

mar. s.;

2. xii. M. i.

D. xxvii.

* L. “regiones et oppida”—districts and towns.

† L. “perfugas”—deserters.

‡ To end of sentence not in L.

THE LOSTAK.

After Galdie that wynt and noble Prince, bynak his
 sonne obtained the government. This King was so far
 toynke his father to lyfe, manners and Iugement that quha
 with al hert and gude wil, herte and kyndnes embracis
 his father, for that excellent formidie and noble nature
 quha wylle he was inheret, and lykwyse for his vertuous
 actes; thay al held his sonne for a verie vittous vice,
 descriptioun and pece of the comynche wecht, for his
 fiftie yere, his honestable maner, and a certane
 tirannous criditie, quha like was in him. He lykwyse 10
 committed the gryding of the countrey to personnes, quha
 in the same pestiferous errouris abundet: quha, that of
 vtheris menis riches thay mycht: enryche thame selfes,
 thay causet to pte doyne mony baith of the Nobilitie,
 and of the Vulgar people, mischeuouslie. 15

I gladlie and w^e gude wil pas ouer the rest of his
 abominationis, that quhen him seife is put out of re-
 memberance, al his foul and filthie actes that he com-
 mitted may be forȝhet with him. The thrid ȝeir of his
 regne, the principal Nobilitie, destryueng him, with his 20
 erroneous cumpanie, of al authoritie and ryches, in a
 general counsel al ar * justifiet, and sa this lyfe he endes
 for his tyrannie.

Lugak
 regnes 3
 ȝeiris.
 for his Tyr-
 annie he is
 Justifiet.
 The yere of
 God 105.

Pates—Anacletus, Euaristus.
Rum. Emperouris—Traianus.

XXIII. MOGALLIE.

In the be-
 gynning of
 his regne he
 trauellis to
 follow Gal-
 die in man-
 eris.

Mogallie, Galdies sistir sone, with al consentis is
 chosen king. This king in respecte of his beginning 25
 may weil be numbriet with the best, nocth vnmyndful

* L. “supplicio afficiunt”—punish him with death.

of thair honour and gloir quha war before him, at Gal-
dies sepulchre he prayes estir the consuetude, his insti-
tutiounis, vertues, and maneris, he diligentlie followis:
firmlie the band bund with the Romanis and Britonis
5 suirlie he keipet and trulie.

With al diligence he restored the seruice of the Godis,
and ceremonies, partelie neglected throuch the weiris,
partelie contemned throuch the Jmpietie of Lugtak.
Justice and æquitie he ministerit amang his awne w^t gret
10 commendatione, sa that al manⁿ saw in him, and behelde
as it war with thair verie eyne, the viue and perfyte Jmage
of King Galdie. Jn the meine tyme the Romanis brekis
the band betuene thame and the Scottis and Pechtis,
vexing thair boundes sundrie wayes baith be spoyllie
15 and slauchter.

The Ro-
manis brek-
ing the
band Jn-
vades the
Scottis and
Pechtis.

King Mogal now findeng occasioune to win honour
and gloir throuch martial deides, blythlie he apprehendes
it: and demandeng of thame be legatis, quhy thay had
brokne the band, violating thair promise, gyue^{ng} vpe
20 trues contrare conscience; with Scottis and Pechtes, he
cumis fordward cheirfullie w^t a gay courage, and a hope
ful bent to winⁿ. Baldlie a balde combat is begun,
quhilke evin quhil nycht continued still, quhair King
Mogal sa stoutlie straue that vponⁿ the Romanis he
25 laid the chaisse, and brocht away the victorie. Efter this
victorie, he wastes with sworde and fyre the regiounis
nerrest him perteineng to the Britonis, throuchout, * in
boundes baith braid and wyd.

He puts the
Romanis to
flycht.

Lucie, at this tyme Romane legat, quhen he saw that
30 he was nocht able w^t sa smale a power to susteine sa
ferce a force, he wrytis to Emperour Hadrian, than in
Rome, that lyklie it was, the Romanis in a schorte space
to be dung out of Britannie. Hadrian heiring this, was
woundir discontent, and thir tydings greiuet him sa sair,
35 that with a chosen armie elected out of baith Italie and

The Ro-
manis in-
vades the
Scottis &
Pechtis
agane.

* L. "longe lateque"—far and wide.

ffrance, and vthiris gret cumpanies of men of weir, he sayles into Britannie, and passing by with al speid * 3ork schyre; vpon the Scottis, and violentlie in ower thayr mairches he brekis. Thay in the meine tyme, as they war leiret of an alde institutione of the natioune, saifet 5 thame selfes in Wodis, Mosse, and Mure, and mair susteined the terrible Romane forces throuch calde, hungre, and skairstie of al thing, than throuch ony set battel.

Adrian with processe now not of mony dayes, bot in 10 a schorte tyme, quhen vctual began to inlake in his campe, nather be ony meines culde thay drawe the ennimie to straikis, he is compelled to returne. And to delyuer the Britonis, quha war induelleris in the cuntry, the mair commodiozslie, frome the invasiounis of the 15 Scottis and Pechtis, he laid a woundirful wall, a woundirful wark, of aucht † thousand pase lang, frome the mouth of the riuers of Tyne, vnto the riuers of Eske, betuene the Germane and the Yrishe seyes. That notable Romane historiographour, his name, ‡ Elie, and vthires noct few 20 diligent wryteris, maid al mentione of this § Vale or Wall. Our chronekles affirme that Adrian began this wark, and Seuerus endet it: The reliques or 120 stedis thairof this day ar seine, þit named the Vale of Adrian.

Nocht lang eftir, quhen the Romanis now war van- 25 quishet and put bak, King Mogal gaue him selfe ower to vice and ydilnes: sa that peace and tranquillitie did him mekle mair skaith, than labour and pane in the weiris. ffor he coulde stanche nather his vnquenchable and burning lust, nather his auaritious greidines, noct 30 sparing ony noble manis wyfe w^t her to commit adulterie, nathir feiring to violat ony virgine for his pleisour: Without ryght and rasoun, mony menis guedes and geir

Wodes, mos,
mure, hun-
gre, calde
& al pouer-
tie preser-
ues thame
contrare the
Romanis.

The wal of
adrian be-
gunes.

In the lyues
of Adrian
and Seuerus
Emperouris
mentione
of this Wal
is maid.

The deprau-
atione of his
maniris.

* L. "Eboracum."

† L. "octoginta"—eighty.

‡ L. "C^ælius Spartianus."

§ L. "vallis"—rampart.

he * maid ¹²¹ cheitt off, and turned vnto his awne propre vsse.

He first of al the Scottis kingis set out this law, that the gudes and geir of al persounis condemnet to be Justifiȝt, sulde redoune to the kingis wse, haueng respecte nathir to father or mother, barnes or freindes: This consuetude be the kingis his estircumeris and successouris was, as we vse to speik, vndir + thoume stil reteined; At last throuch conspiracie of the Nobilitie, ^{a law sett out of the gudes and geir of persons condemned to be justifiȝt.} ^{He regnes 36 yeiris.} ^{for his tyrannie he is put dounie the yeir of God 148} quha langre culde nocht thole his tyrannie, he is put dounie, the saxte and thretieth ȝeir of his regne.

Papes—Euaristie, Alexander I., Sixtus, Thelesphor, Higinie,

Pius I.

Rom. Emp.—Traianus, Elius, Adrian, Titus Aurelius

Anton. Pius.

XXIIII. CONAR.

Albeit throuch conspiracie King Mogal was put dounie, his sone Conar succeidit nochtw't standeng to the kingdome, quhais regne was nathing happie.

15 In lyfe and maneris nocht verie vnylike his father, schortlie gaue him selfe to lust and licherie: and quhen he saw his rentis not sufficient to satisfie his appetit, a new cense he lays vpōn the hail Realme, sik a taxte as nevir befor was hard tel off in Scotland, quhilke quhen

20 he had laid on, he commāndes it to be gathired through al the partes of Scotland. The cheif Nobilis abhorring to heir the ill name of thair king, and his sklandirous maneris, thay cast him in prisoune, and Argadie erle of Argyle for the present thay set in his place, Regent.

25 Oft chances, that quha in gret prosperitie aboundis followis gret Jnsolense and baldnes: exemple of this

* L. "nullo jure fisco addictas"—he escheated unjustly.

† L. "mordicus"—tenaciously.

Addicet til al vice, and licherous.

In prisone he is castne and the realme rulet be ane Regent.

that quha * began to enlarge his awne power with alliance and service of the Fodders. But the multitude of the men the noble men had made being suffred, excepte that many waies he had won their fauour agayn, and remoued them out of thame: This way with a conseruacion he is returned to his awne dynigne before the Realme he ruled excellent well w^t a longtyme.

Once the fourme part of his regne through labour and miseries that he preserte he indurte, no persone he made this lyfe.

10

Page—Page 2
Item 2nd.—ARMED PLAS. Mark Argyle.

XXV. ETHODIE.

Quhen Ceser now is * Justicie Ethodie w^t approbatione of Argadie, Regent, and consent of al the thrie estates, obtaynes the Kingdome. This Ethodie was sister sone to Mogal.

King Ethodie, because the Regent had sa weill deserued at his hand, and sa mekile merited of the hale Realme, the king, I say, promouet the Regent to gretter dignitie, committing to him cheife authoritie to punise offenderis: and w^t this dignitie the king did him decore, that he war no^t funde to be vngrate toward him for his deseruengis. Quhilke office, in thir dayes be the king selfe commendet vnto the Erles of Argyle, that charge or office, we name the charge of the gret [†] Justice. Supreme power perteines to this man neist the king to punise offenderis. Quhen Argadie was gouernour, 25 correcteng the authoris of seditione, he stanchet all

* L. "Hic etiam ut saepius insolentia nimis felicitatis comes est"—this man also, as very often insolence is the companion of gret prosperitie.

† L. "extinctum"—dead.

‡ L. "Magni Justitiarii"—the great Justiciary.

He put the
yles in due
order.

seditionis persones, putting ane due ordour, peice, and rest to the hail yles.

Nathir lang permittit the Romanis the Scottis and Pechtis to lyue in peice and rest. ffor quhil Ethodie 5 settis his mynd to the weil and commoditie of the Realme, the Romanis, breking doun the forsaide Wal of Adrian, Jnvades the Scottis & Pechtis quhair thay war nerrest, thair gouernour * Victorin.

The Romanis invades Scotland agane.

Heir the confederat kingis fled nocht a fute, heir 10 stoutlie strukne is on baith handis, quhil nycht fell, ze and far in the nycht. At last thay sindre w^t æqual victorie. This combat was sa deidle, and sa cruel to baith the pairties, that the hail zeir following thay absteinet on baith handes frome armes, and nevir ȝoket 15 sa mekle as anes.

A bludie battell heir is fochtne.

Nocht lang eftir Calphurnie Agricola, a captane of gret and noble fame, the oye of that noble Emperour Julius Agricola, sayles into Britannie w^t a chosen and waled armie, in releife of the Romanis.

20 This Agricola, how sune he cam into Britannie, against the Scottis he culde begin nathing, his awne war sik ane Jmpediment to him. Bot quhen he had bigit the wal wpe agane, and erected al the strenthis, Emperour Commodie callis him to Rome.

25 At this depairting the Scottis and Pechtis war blyth, because thay knew, that quha occupiet his place, Trebellius to wit, was trubled with nychtbour feid, and sair seditione amang thame selfes, the Scottis thairfor, w^t gret cumpanies, brekis in ower the nerrest 30 prouince, quhair the Romanis lay. Trebellie occuris in al haist: bot wickitlie is he lefte of his awne, eftir gret slauchtir he chaipes hardlie throuch speid of fute. In the meine tyme quhen Ethodie saw na man to meit him, al Westmurland and the land neist it he wastes

The Scottis ourcum the Romanis.

* L. "Duce Aulo Victorino" — under the leadership of Aulus Victorinus.

vpe and doun, in lenth and bredth. Eftr Trebellie, a Romane * Consul to name Pertinax, vset the office of a Romane legat in Britannie. He with lytle labour pacifieth the Britanis, and put ouris aback, beþond the forsayd wal of Adrian ; and al thingis now componed at wil and 5 pleasure as thay walde, he restores to Trebellie the gouernment agane : Heirefist King Ethodie was with the Romane weiris neuir agane vext.

Argadie, quha was asor Regent, the king sendis til Argyle w^t twa thousand þ hiland men, quhair fraudfullie 10 and throuch disceit, he is slane. Ethodie was sa noyet, and sa sair offendet at his deith, that partlie throuch dolour, pairtie throuch angre, twa hunder of the principal þ hiland men he caused to heid ; to the rest was thair lyfes granted.

15

Quhen Ethodie was now quyte of al weiris round about, and quhen his pleisour cheiflie was in musik, the threttieth and ane ȝeir of his regne, be the trasounable 122 trane of a certane hiland pyper, he was put doun.

In tyme of his regne *Lucius* king of Britannie requyret 20 of Pape Eleutherie to be sente into Britannie men baith of pietie and leirning ; the name of the ane Fagan, the name of the vther § Diruian, or as sum say Dannan ; Thir twa instructed the king and the people in the christne faith, and thaireftir, in the haly fonte baptiset 25 thame, the ȝeir of God clxxxvi.

Britannie
receiuies the
christne
faith : the
ȝeir of God
186.

S. Anicet.
mar. a. 3.
viii. m. viii.
D. xxiii.
S. Soter.
mar. a. 3.
vii. m. xi.
D. xviii.

Papes—Anicetus, Sother, Eleutherie.

Rom. Emp.—Mark Aurelie, Antonin, Commodie, Aelius, Pertinax.

* L. “Vir consularis”—a man of consular rank.

† L. “Hebridianorum”—men of the Hebrides. This word is consistently translated throughout the book by “hiland men.”

‡ L. “Insularum primoribus.”

§ L. “Damianum vel Dannanum.”

XXVI. SATRAHEL.

Satrahel the brother german of Ethodie estir him salutet is king. He was of a craftie, slie, and subtile Jngine. ffor quhen he thocht to keip the kingdome to him selfe and his barnes, he intendet to put doune the sone in his ȝouth, quhorne Ethodie had. quhill now this was his intentione, that the bettir, and esilier he mycht do it, his purpose was, be sum subtile trayne, to steil doune al baith freind and familiar perteineng to that ȝoung brother.

He is a
tyrannē.

10 At last quhen for his terrible tyrannie, of al man he was hated, the fourth ȝeir ester he began to regne, he is put to deid be sum of his awne hous.

he regnes 4
ȝeiris.
for his tyr-
annie he is
put doune
the ȝeir of
God 197.
S. Eleuthe-
rie, mar. s.
ȝ. xv. D.
xiii.
S Victor, m.
a. ȝ. xii. m.
. D. xxviii.

Papes—Eleutherie, Victor I.
Rom. Emp.—Aelius, Pertinax, Seuerus.

* Heir the first of al the Scottis
kingis embracet the faith of
christe. The ȝeir of God
203. His name
Donalde.

THE THRID BUCE.

XXVII.—DONALD I.

a gude and
godlie
prince.

Quhen Satrahel was slane, another brother of Ethodie,
his name Donalde, receiues the gouernement of the
Realme. This king, being of a nature meik and
pleisand, through lenitie, gentlenes, and liberalitie, he
reconsiled and wan al manis hartes.

5

This king, in administratione of the effairis of
Scotland plade the parte of a gude and godlie prince :
The dissentione and controuersie amang his people
he satisfied wt gret æquitie : Theiues, Traytouris, and
that kynd of men, he persewit ay scharplie ; he evir had 10
vpon the bordouris strenthis of men of weir, to reuenge
his awne, and to defende thame frome the cruetie of
thair ennemis.

Now Lucius king of Britannie is † put affe, the Romanis heirestir settis furth ane publicke edicte, that 15
nocht ane, borne of Briton blude in Britannie regne

* This is the heading of the "Stemma" which is prefixed to the
Third Book, and contains a picture of Donald I.

† L. "extincto"—being dead.

agane: Athir that be this way thay al occasione of seditione may cut away; or that rather thay may occupie Britannie; and that is lykliest, and quhen thay haue it vndir thame, and in thair handes, thay think to keip 5 it in *creddance, and Brittanie in bettir obedience, w^t les labour.

A certane noble man of Britannie, his name Fulgentius, dispytes to heir that edicte, and wil noct abyd to heir the contempe and seruitude of his natione; and 10 makeng a confideratione agane w^t the Scottis and Pechtis thair nyghtbouris to helpe thame, thay mayd gret slauchtir amang the Romanis dyuerse tymes. And excepte Emperour Seuerus had cum in haist, ane end had bene maid, out of hand, of the Romanis, in sik 15 danger, being oppressed w^t coniuratione of sa mony people. Seuerus at the first ȝoking slewe of Albion xx thousand, and out of thair enimies handes obteined al authoritie.

Seuerus did nathing digne & prayseworthie eftir this 20 victorie, excepte that be his sone Antonin he erected the wal of Adrian agane. Schortlie he tuke trues w^t the Scottis and Pechtis. Sa did he w^t Fulgentius and the Britonis his partakeris vpon †pladges. Seuerus noct lang ester through ald age, in ȝorke, dies.

The band of
peice remet
agane with
the Ro-
manis.

25 He deid, Antonin his sone leuies Britannie bair, but ony saifgarde, and passis to Rome. Quhen thair he cumis, that him selfe alone mychte posses the Jmpire, wicketlie he murtheris his brother Geta in his motheris armes.

30 Quhen King Donald his awne people now had restored & sett at peice and libertie, eftir thay in a maner had bene ‡alienat frome him; and now quhen

* L. "in *fide* continerent"—to keep it to its fidelity.

† L. "obsedibus acceptis"—having taken hostages.

‡ L. "Quasi postliminio restitutis"—acquired, so to say, by right of reprisal.

frome Pape Victor I. mekle he had hard, baith in mirackles, and of al christne pietie, (In tyme lykwyse of this forsaid Emperour Seuerus, this same Pape Victor was adorned w^t the croune of martyrdome) he humbillie be legatis requyres, that men of religione and of leirneng be sente in Scotland to teache him, his wyfe, and his barnes, professing the name of christe, the haly scriptures, and informe thame thairin, and finalie baptise thame in the haly fonte. This al was done. Throuch quhais exemple baith the Nobilitie and the people war 10 steirred vpe, and, in that * samyn place, schewe a singular pietie in imbraceng the faith of christe. True it is, that the kingis of Britannie and Scotland war the first quha w^t thair peoples professed the Christne Religione publiklie, the constance nochtwithstandeng of the Scottis, sa 15 constante ay hes bene, that vnto this age na monument can schawe the Scottis frome that faith, quhilke ance thay receiuet, euir at ony tyme to haue suaruet.

This ȝeir, quhen the Scottis receiued the lychte of the Catholik religione, was the thrid ȝeir abone twa hundir 20 frome the birth of christe; frome the first institutione of the Scottis kingdome the thrid abone fyue hundir and threttie. Quhilke wil testifie thir verses albeit noct verie † politik, ȝit throuch commendatione of ancient antiquitie maist ‡ probable. 25

Christi transactis tribus annis atque ducentis

Scotia catholica cœpit inire fidem.

ffrome christe twa hunder ȝeiris and thrie
Scotland began christne to be.

The first vse
of cuinȝet
gold and
siluer in
Scotland.

Mairouer king Donald first of al the Scottis kingis 30 cuinȝet golde and siluer peices, on the ane syde w^t the image of the haly croce, on the vther syde with his awne Image he commandet to stryke. Afor that tyme was

* L. " Illico "—there and then.

† L. " Politi "—if not very polished.

‡ L. " probatissimi "—most approved.

The Scottis
Inbrace the
faith of
christe the
ȝeir of God
soj.

na sik vse of cuinȝet money with our cuntrey men: ex-
cepte the Romanis perchance or the Britonis had brocht
it in, quhen al merchandise in thae dayes was throuch
change of wares.

5 Bot King Donald, weil instructed in al vertues, the
tuentieth and ane of his regne,* was ane parte of his
glore, that na tyme or place euir had asfor him, and that
he abundet in al welth.

He dies a
godlie king,
the 21st of his
regne, the
3eir of God
216.

Papes—Victor I., Zepherin, Calistie I.
Rom. Emp.—Seuerus, M. Bassian, Caracal.

S. Zepherin,
mar. a. 3.
xx. d. xvii.
S. Calistie
I. mar. a. 3.
vi. m. i. D.
xii.

XXVIII.—ETHODIE II.

Ethodie, sone to the first Ethodie, is crouned king.
10 bot because al his lyfe he was brocht vpe amang the
religious in the yle of man, he appeirred vnable † to the
administratione and gouerneng of sa noble a kingdome :
quhairof in a schorte tyme he schewe a cleir takne, for
hail addicted til auarice, his mind thocht of nathing bot
15 to gathir money, and harde vpe ryches.

A prince
gyuen to
greidines.

Quhen the principal Nobilitie saw him for gouern-
ment vnmeit, certane prudent and wyse men thay sett
ouer ilke prouince, quha sa perfytlie playd the parte of
a Magistrate, that al thair tyme Scotland w^t externe or
20 ciuile weiris was neuir troublt.

The king wardet, in the meine tyme, invades him a
troupe of harneste men, and suddenlie is he slane, xvi
of his regne: sum no'theles affirme that for his gret
greidines he was put doune be his awne.

He is put to
warde.
He is put
doune 16
3eir of his
regne.
The 3eir of
God 221.

Papes—Calixte I., Vrbane I.
Rom. Emp.—Bassian, Caracal, Opilie, Macrius, M. Au-
relius, Antonin.

S. Vrban,
mar. a. 3.
vii. m. vii.
D. v.

* L. “in partem illius gloriæ venit, quæ nullis ætatis locique terminis circumscripta, omnibus abundat bonis”—came to the participation of that glory which is not limited by time or place, and abounds in all good.

† L. “Regno non idoneus”—not suited to the administration, &c.

XXIX. ATHIRCO.

a gude
prince in the
beginning.

he followis
his fatharis
futstepis.

The King
quhen
Natholok
dauhtiris.
Quhairfor,
whilk compi-
tar is against
him, he
putis hand
in him saltis,
the is fife
of his regne,
of that age.

Quhen a parliament was now sett, thairin Athirco with al votes, eftir his father Ethodie is maid king.

This king skairse ȝit of that perfectione to regne, obteyned the commendatione of a gude, meik, and moderat prince. Bot the expectatione, quhilke al men had of him, he keipet noȝt lang. ffor eftir the viii ȝeir of his regne, he followis his fatharis futstepis and filthie lyfe and maneris in al thingis. Casting thairfor asyd the commounе effairis of the Realme, reiecteng the commounе welth and contemneng the Nobilitie, * sporteris, 10 danseris, minstrelis, and that sorte of persounes war maist acceptable to him.

At last, quhen he had defylet Natholok of Argyle his twa dauchtiris, and maid thame commounе amang his court, and daylie mair and mair abuset him selfe, this 15 forsaid Natholok of Argyle, wȝt the rest of the Nobilitie, conspyret against him, and tuke him in that place of Lochquhaber, quhilke now is named † Dounstaphage: quhair ‡ first vnhappilie prepareng to the flicht, to eschewe his enimies handes, he put handes in him 20 selfe the twelste ȝeir of his regne.

About this tyme Door, this kingis brother, fled wȝt his thrie sones Findoc, Carancie, and Donald, to Pinthland, to eschew the handes of Natholok.

Emperors — Urbane I., Pontian, Anther.

Rom. Empr. — M. Aurelie, Antonin, Alexander Seuerus,
Tullus Maximinus, Gordianus.

* I. "Mimos, Histriones, Lenones."

† I. "Evont."

‡ I. "fuga prius tentata"—having first attempted flight.

XXX. NATHOLOK.

Now quhen Athirco was put by the ¹²⁸ gate, and his barnes al banissted, Natholok wrangouslie possessing the Realme, quha quhen he tyranouslie had keipet it a quhyle, payet the pane of ane maist worthie deith for his tyranzie.

ffor that he mycht establishe the kingdome to him and his heiris, sum of the Nobilitie he invades w^t waypounis, vthir sum he corruptes with gyttes. Door, and the kingis barnes, throuch his tyrannie he seikis to slay ; ȝe, quhilke was maist tyranous, thay slewe a certane persone, because he was lyke vnto Door. Mairouer he maist cruellie murtherit quhomeruir he knew weil faouored Athercois barnes, without ony respecte athir of digrie or dignitie.

15 This being done, a secreit counsel is begunⁿ be sum persones against Natholok, and daylie in the bordouris of Gallouay and about Argyle was begun seditione.

Now Natholok, his awne conscience accusing him of his wickednes, and feiring his lyfe nocth without cause, flies to Moray land and Rosse. Thair he sendis a moray man, to quhome he gaue credit in al thingis, to the yle of Jon til a certane alde witche, of her to inquire, of his lyfe, of thair counsel quha had conspyret against him, and of the rest of his effairis. She presentlie ansueris the king to be in gret danger throuch ane, in quhome is maist his traist, and cheife of his familiaris. Quhen she was asked gif she knew the persoune quha was about to do the deid. Thou art the persoune, Moray, says she. He esteimeng it nathing bot the arte of Magik, and ald 30 wyes vane fables, luich and departed.

Bot as with him selfe he conferit be the way, this he thocht that able the king, quha not^t surelie bot of a lycht suspicioune considereng the mater as a vane fable mycht

he playes
the parte of
a tyran.

Natholok
consultes an
alde witche.

estirward accepte it as ane oracle, and sa maist surlie beleive : quhairfor he tho^t best to deuise how to find out the way to put doun Natholok in haist.

He is slane
be this
Moray.
The ȝeir of
his regne 11.
The ȝeir of
God 253.

At his returne, vpon Natholok he cumis or he wist, and slew him in his inner chamber : than quiklie spangs vp on a swofte horse, and ¹²⁴ founde away at speid til Argyle, to the counselloris of that conspiracie. This was done the ȝeir of God ccliii. 5

Papes—Fabian, Cornelie.

Rom. Emp.—Gordian, Philip, Arabs, Decius.

XXXI. FINDOK.

Quhen Natholok was slane, Moray brocht Athircois thrie sones frome Pithland : of thir thrie Findok the 10 eldest obteyned the kingdome, a notable persone in giftes baith of body and mynd.

a pleasant
personne in
forme &
maniria.

This king was of a gentle Jngine and pleysand natur, and with al diligence studiet to peice, and peice Jm-bracet with all his mycht, quhairfor the bande maid w^t 15 the Romanis, Pechtis and Britanis, he keipet weil, and brak nevir. How lang this king rang Scotland was nevir vexte w^t externe weiris, bot with ciuile weiris and sair seditione was trublet no^t a little. for Donalde of the yles waysted baith Rosse and Morayland in reuenge of 20 his freind Natholok, and slewe a gret multitude vp and doun.

Findok paci-
fies the Jn-
surrectione
in the Jles.

Findok verie discontent with this iniure, gangis in haist w^t ane armie vpon his ennemie and followed him, as he fled into the Jle of Yla. Quhen Donald had tint the 25 Victorie, he thocht best to saif his lyfe be flychte, quhilke as he did, vnhappilie he drowned him selfe. Quhen now findok had pacified the Jles, he returnes til Albion with ane victorious hoste.

Nathir keipet the Jles lang credance, bot Donaldes 30

sone, his name evin sa Donald, thay maid thair gouernour, and socht helpe out of Jrland, and vexed Argyle and the nerrest cuntreyes with reif and thifte ; quhilke way, and for this cause, was commouet agane against 5 thame King Findok. At his first cuming followit a gret and cruel slaunchter amang the rebelis. Nathir had Donald chaiped the Kingis hand him selfe, gif in a bote he had no^t quicklie fled in Jrland, and thair lyne w^t the conspiratouris a certane space to safe him selfe, and 10 this bote was fund bechance. But quhen he saw he culd do nathing be the strang hand, he intendet to preiue his ingine throuch craft and disceit, quhairfor he hyres for wage twa cutthrotis to put doun the king, and admitted w^t him in fellowship of this wickitnes the 15 kingis brother Carancie : thir cutthrotis dissembling the mater, and feinzieng thame selfes to be flieris frome the vthir parte vnto thame, findeng the king at the hunting, and of sik thing haueng na suspicioune, cruellie slew him.

Thir murthireris now takne, schew how throuch coun- 20 sel of Donald of the Jles and Carancie that deid thay did ; quhen this thay schawin had, baith war heidet.

Carancie feiring the ignominie and schame to follow, and perchanse the pane that he was to thole ; frilie accepted banishment and w^t gud wil : and no^t lang eftir, 25 w^t the Romanis paste out of Britannie, til Jtallie, quhair vndir Aurelie Prob. and Diocletiane Emperouris, for the valientnes of his courage and mychtines of his spirit, he obteined the glore of a worthie weirour.

Papes—Cornelie, *Luci^s*, Steiphne I.
Rom. Emp.—Decius, Gal. Valerian.

Nue Jnsur-
rectione is
begun in the
Jles be
Donald thair
Duke.

Findok
through dis-
ceit and
trayson of
his brother
Carancie &
Donald of
the Jles, is
murthirret,
the 10 yeir of
his regne, of
God 163.

Banished is
Carancie.

XXXII.—DONALD II.

Donald, the secund of that name, Athircois sone 30 3oungest, succeidit to his brother ffindok ; how sune he

began to accepte the gouernment of the Realme, and to entir in authoritie, dispyteng the Jniure done to his brother, armed him selfe with diligence to reuenge vpon the falsett of Donald of the Jles the slauchter of his brother. In Moray land thay mett, and thair a feild vnhappilie thay strayk, quhair the king with losse of thrie thousand of his men, him selfe with twa woundes in his body, is takne; and on the thrid day estir the battel departes this lyfe, mair through sturt and dolour of mynd, than through greife of his woundes. This is 10
*Hurt in the field, he dies the first year of his regne, 5
 of 1000.*
 the first yeir of his regne, nathir the 3eir hail out.

Royas—Steiphne I., Sixt II.
Rom. Emp.—Valerian.

XXXIII.—DONALD III.

Quhen King Donald the secund in the former feild was slane, and the principal Nobilitie athir takne or slane, Donald of the Jles, with the strang hand invades the Realme, finding it than voyd in a maner and bair of 15 strang handes to defend it, and finding na man to repugne, avinnes unto him selfe the dignitie of the king.

That this king mycht defend the Realme, quhilke through tyrannie he had conquiste, that he, I say, my^t walle and sound defend it frome al to quhome it rycht-wudlie perteynet, and frome al force of enimies, he put downe sindrie wayes, mony noble men. Quhomeruir he suspected he commandet his garde to slay, and publiclie * declare the cause: of nature he was sa cruell, that in nathing sa mekle his mynd was satisfiet as in 25 slamlitir and manis blude. At last, quhen he xii 3eiris al amairt out had coesummed in administratioun of the Realme to the gret damage and skaith of al man, as

* "Indictit causis, traxitari fuisse" — he brought to trial and indicted to be put to death.

he was to passe to the west Iles, he was slane at Jnuer-lochtie with al his houshalde, his garde, and his fauour-eris. This was done throuch the wicht spirit of that Noble ȝouth, King Findokis sone, his name Crathlintie.

Papes—Sixt II., Dionyse I.
Rom. Emp.—Valerian, Claudie 2, Aurelian.

XXXIV. CRATHLINTIE.

5 Crathlint with al concentis is crouned king, because
his fostirfather affirmet with ane athe that he was findokis
sone, king of that Realme, and that throuch his Jn-
dustrie he quyetlie had bene brocht vp ; He practised
in his awne lyfe and maniris, with al diligence, the lyfe
10 and maneris of his father, he was a seueire defender of
Justice and æquitie, and that na spot of vnrychtyousnes
mycht be seine stick till him, he walde * evir haue the
cheif Nobilitie vpon the counsel.

Quhen this King had pacifiet the maist *cumirsum*
15 troubles, quhill vpon the † Mounth he was hunting,
legatis frome Thelargo King of the Pechtes he receiues
with al humanitie : Thir legatis reyoyses on his behalfe,
of the destructione of the Tyrane Donald, and of the
reuenge of his brotheris slauchtir, and desyret the alde
20 band of freindship and familiaritie to be renuet betwene
the Scottis and Pechtis.

Nocht lang estir, sum ȝoing gentle men of the Pechtis
cam to King Crathlinthie to the hunting in the † Mounth:
The king gentillie welcumed thame, and passing frome
25 the Mounth til Athol, he gaue thame sindrie gifts and
rewardes, cheiflie hunting dogis, and sa sent thame back.
Bot hamward as thay returnet, sum of the kingis dogis

* L. “ Regni Primores in judicium ordinem semper cooptavit ”—
he always appointed the chief nobility as judges.

† L. “ Grampio Monte.”

He is preu-
er to be
findokis
sone be his
fostirfather
quha secreit-
lie brocht
him vp.

secreitlie thay tuke with thame, namelie ane, quhilke the king weil trett, and maid maist of, the keipers knaweng thairof nathing. This greieng him sair, to quhome the cheif kair of the kingis hundes was committed, he followis the thievis : Thay sieng that be force thay walde 5 take him, slayes * him w^t thair hunting clubis.

Betuene the
Scottis and
Pechtes
great fead
begun, for
the slachir
of a dog.
scharpe &
cruel weiris
betuene
thame.

A ¹²⁵ spraich ryse from the nerrest, monie of the Scottis returneng hame war nocht than far affe, thay spur with speid that iniure to reuenge : The Pechtes ar nocht slawer to the combat. A gret and miserable slauchter 10 of men followit this, and sa mekle the mair cruel, that baith the parties war vnarmet, or as we vse to speik, naked men. Heireftir monie skirmishe and combat was fochtne, w^t vncertane victorie on baith handes, monie straikis baith tane and gyuen, mekle slauchtir on baith 15 sydes, scharpest + weiris commounlie amang nychtbouris, as, quhair the ennemie is rychtbour, oft may be seine.

Thrie
monethis
respet ar of
the Scottis
reuyret.

The first worde that Thelargo King of the Pechtis hard of thir nues, being now cum to perfyte age, greiuet him sair, and in haste he sente legatis, athir to put the 20 mater cleine out of remeberance, or gif the myndes of men walde nocht be satisfied, to requyre certane dayes respite. Thay, the scottis, I meine, gaue thame with hard wil thrie monethis respite, and sa sente thame back. Sa scharpe weiris of sa sobir beginzng, betuene 25 nychtbour natiounis, quha had beine sa sure freindes mair than fyue hundir zeiris, now suddazlie ar begunn, that appeiringlie thay skairslie may be sloknet.

Quhen Car-
ancie return-
ed, he makes
peice be-
tuene the
twa Kingis.

Bot Carancie (of quhome asfor we maid mentioun) cam in due tyme to Britannie, and the king of the 30 Scottis w^t the king of the Pechtes sett at ane, and maid thame fyne freindes.

* The master of the hounds. L. "canum prefectus venabulis ab illis conficitur." "Take him" refers to the hound.

+ L. "nihil tutum a mutuis insidiis"—nothing safe from mutual treachery. "ut in vicino hoste usu venire solet."

This Carancie the space of certane ȝeiris seruet in the weiris to Emperour Diocletiane vnknawen : This Emperour, for his wichtnes in the weiris, decored him w^t all weirlie taknes. Finallie he was amrel of ane nauie 5 contrare the ffrenches and Saxounis, trubling the west seyes in thift, rugging, and reiueng.

Bot quhen he knew of the disceit and traysone of Maximian, than Proconsul in ffrance, wrocht against him, and vndirstude how, throuch the inuie of sum persounis, 10 he had bene sklandiret to the Emperour, that sum way he had * hurt the Emperouris Maiestie, he left France, and w^t his hail classe, by † Irlan^d, he landes in Westmarie. As he landet, and at his first arryueng, the inhabitouris of the cuntrey cam ‡ in wil, quhome gladlie he receiuet, 15 and in al haist sendis legatis to King Crathlinth his oye, and to the Pechtes, to schawe of his cuming to Britannie, and fra baith the kingis to require helpe against Quintine Bassian, Romane Legat, for w^t lytle labour gif thay ioyned thair forces togither, he affirmes, and ernistlie 20 persuades thame, that the Romanis may be expellet out of hail Britannie. The legatis fra baith the Kingis war gentillie accepted, and haueng obteined that reuest of helpe, with joy thay returned. Nocht lang estir, Carancie him selfe conueinet baith the Kingis, throuch quhais 25 authoritie and counsel baith war aggriet. In haist throuch baith the realmes hes gathiret ane chosen armie, Carancie throuch expences and helpe of baith the Kingis, passis vpon the Britonis : quhome throuch a cruel battel he brochte almaist til vtter confusione.

30 ffel in this field Quintine Bassian legat, Hircie the Emperouris Prokerrour in Britannie, and mony Noble men.

Quhen Carancie had obteyned of the enimies ane

The request
of Carancie
be legatis
of Crathlin^t.

How Car-
ancie con-
ueinet with
the twa
Kingis, and
reconciled
thame.

* L. "de laesa majestate"—had accused him of high treason.

† L. "Per Hibernicum mare"—through the Irish Sea.

‡ L. "Incolis in fidem acceptis"—having received the obedience of the natives.

Quhen Carancie had slane Basian and won Londone he is maid King of Britannie.

glorious victorie, he passis to Londone, and thair na man resisteng, he is maid King of Britannie, the ȝeir of God ccxc. With Carancie remayned of the Scottis and Pechtes to the number of twa thousand, quhome he susteined w^t a gret stipend as a Kingis gaird; the rest 5 weil rewardet he sente hame.

This being done, and the Kingdome of Britannie set now at peice, Carancie sendes legatis to Crathlint, and to the King of the Pechtis, to delyuer vnto thame Westmaria, Cumbirland, and al the * regione in the boundes 10 of ȝork shire, and the Vall or Bulwark of Adriaⁿ, in perpetual possessione.

Carancie regneng vii ȝeiris through disceit at last he is slane.

ffrome that furth, Carancie, albeit oft invadet be the Romanis, stil vii ȝeiris bure rule in Britannie: bot at last through disceit of Legat Alecte, thair appoynted be 15 the Romanis, quha naturallie to fraude and disceit was addicted, he was slane.

Notable men of pietie and lerneng, commoedie call'd Culdei.

fflorisset in Scotland about this tyme notable men of learneng and religione, called in our vulgar language † Culdei,¹²⁶ in quhilkes war Amphibalie, Modocie, 20 Priscie, Calanie, fferanie, Ambianie, Carnocie, and monie vthiris, cunning ‡ men of religione, quha through the tyrannie of Diocletiane and Constance fled frome Britannie, quhome King Crathlinthie receiuet w^t al benignitie and gentlenes: and gaue thame place in the 25 Jle of man, expelling the Druides, the alde Jnhabitouris, and consecrate to thair Bischope, Amphibolie.

Amphibalie in place of the Druides is maid Bischope of the Ile of Man.

Quhen Crathlinthie had wrocht monie godlie warkes he dies in

Sua al the prophane rites of the Ethnikis, quhilkes euin quhil than, coulde nocht be put away, through pietie of this king war al abolished.

* L. "regionem quam Eboracensis ager et Adriani vallum terminant"—the district included between Yorkshire and the Wall of Adrian.

† L. adds, "Dei cultores"—and implies that *culdei* (*ceile-de*, *Gille-de*) was its Gaelic translation.

‡ L. "doctrina et religione insignes"—renowned for learning and holiness.

Quhairfor Crathlinthie, quhen xxxiiii ȝeiris he had
gouerned weil hame and afeild, with al felicitie he
departed this lyfe, weil strukne in ȝeiris.

the ȝeir of
his regne
xxxiiii of
God 313.

Papes—Felix I., Eutichias, Gai, Marcellin, Marcel, Eusebie,
Meltiadie, Syluester.

Rom. Emp.—Aurelian, Tacitus, Florian, Probus, Gai,
Diocletian, Galerie, Constantin.

XXXV. FINCORMACIE.

Eftir the deith of Crathlinthie, the Kingdome of
5 Scotland succeidis to his brother sone Fincormak.

This King, nocht weil sittin doune in the Jmpire, and
skairse begunȝ to gourne, is sair vexte with the Romanis,
because he refuset to delyuer to Traherie Roman legat,
at his askeng, Octauie king of Britannie, quha had fled
10 to him for refuge, and wȝt him in his fauour and gudwil
did remane.

his worthie
answer to
Traheires
requete.

This Traherie, I say, was legat in Britannie for Em-
perour Constantine, quha for his noble actes was named
Constantine the Magne. As the Romanis brak in vpon
15 Vestmaria, Fincormak met him with a gret number of
Scotis, Pechtes, and Britonis. he had than vndir his
ansinzie, as Veremundie makes mentione, to the number
of saxtie thousand men. Traherie now being ouircum
and chaiste, left Britannie to his enimie Octauius, and
20 Past in ffrance. Nathir now, albeit Octauie had seine
him selfe restoret throuch the succour and supplie of
Fincormak, maid he ane end to inuent new * toyes, as
sindrie Jngines of men ar sa vngrate and vnthankful,
that na benifite, thochte neuir sa gratious, thay wil
25 acknowlege.

How Fin-
cormak
ouircaw
Traheirie
in Battel.
Quhat Vere-
muudie
writes.

Fincormak gathiret a gret power, scharplie to reuenge
the vngrate mynd of sa cruel a man as Octauie, and to

* L. "Res Novas."

brek his force, quhen he invades Vestmaria; throuch this power he chaisces Octauie, and dryues him into sum secreit nuikis of Britannie and holes. Nocht lang eftir, the Roman legat expellis him out of Britannie, and he flies to Norway. Quhen the legat was deid, he 5 returnes; at his returne being restored til his Kingdome, he labouris how to find the way to mak sum significacione of his grate mynd, for the benifites innumerable and notable, quhilkes afortymes frome the King of Scottis he had receiuet. Quhairfor be messingeris he 10 offired to Fincormak abundant giftes, quhairthrouch he alluired him to renew the ald band of freindschip w^t the Britonis. Sua that throuch the fauour and kyndnes of the King of Scottis, the King of Britannie of sik a maner is * vphaldne, that expelling the Romanes close and clair 15 out of Britannie, the Scottis King frome the King of Britannies nek, brak the Romane 3ok, and throuch him and his supplie, bettir gouerned and gydet that cuntry, Vestmarie to name, and the regiounis quhilkes Carancie had afore takne in. The King of Britannie w^t thir 20 rasones being mouet makes perpetual peice w^t the Pechtes lykwyse.

He dies the
yeir of his
regne 47—
of God 358.

ffincormak being a singular weirour, and preclare in abundant giftes baith of bodie and mynd, lang vexed w^t the Catar, at last it consumes him the xlviij yeir of 25 his regne, of God ccclviii.

Jrland Jm-
braceit the
catholik
faith the
yeir of God
358.
Melchiades
sorsaid is
the last
martyr of
the first 33
papes, all
martyris.
And Sylves-
ter heir fol-
lowing the

In tyme of his regne, the inhabitouris of Jrland receiued the Catholik faith, and war al baptizet. About that sam tyme brak out the Arian haeresie, quhilke infected mony natiounis, thairestir condemnet in the 30 counsel of Nice.

Papes—Sylvester, Marke, Julie I., Liberie.
Rom. Emper.—Constantin I., Constantin 2.

* L. "ut illius ope servitutis jugum excuteret," &c.—so that by his help he shook off the yoke of slavery.

XXXVI. ROMACK.

ffincormak left twa * ȝoung mer behind him to his sones, no^t cum to perfectione. quhairfor Angusian, Romak, and Fetelmak, Crathlinthis brethir sones of sindrie brether, quhen for the kingdome thay straue 5 amang thame selfes, throuch priuat Jnuie and hett hatered, thay drew to pairties, and began to pe(r)sew the mater w^t swordes. Bot as the mynd of Angusian being sinceir and plane, alluret and wan the hartes of al; sa the Jngine of Romack throuch fraude and dissimulatione 10 tint al masis hartes.

Bot Romack, dependeng vpon the riches and affinitie of the Pechtes, occupies vehementlie throuch force the hail administratioun of the Realme, expelling Angusian and Fatelmak vnto the Jles; Romack, I say, nocht 15 onlie throuch force occupies the administratioun of the Realme, bot schawes mony signes and taknes of a certane curste and vnhappie crudelitie in him.

Quhat followis? Of this lycht, smale and sobir beginning, the Scottis and Pechtes furiouslie burns in thair 20 ald discorde.

In the meine quhile, quhen Romack Jnuades the hail cuntry, Ethodie and Eugenie, Fincormakis sones, throuch the Jndustrie and fauour of freindes, war brocht to the Jle of Man. bot because his crueltie was daylie 25 mair vehement than athir culde or soule be suffiret of a frie people, throuch coniuratione or conspiracie of the Nobilitie, the thrid ȝeir of his regne, he is put doun, thair fauour was sa feruent towarde Angusian, quha than fled was.

first confessor not martyr, because christine religiouse begass now to spread through the warde.

Romak, Angusian, and Fetelmak stryue for the kingdome, bot Romak occupies al.

Romak be conspiracie is put doun the ȝeir of his regne 3, of God 361.

*Papes—Liberie.
Rom. Emp.—Constantin II.*

* L. “duos filios impuberes reliquit.”

XXXVII. ANGUSIAN.

Angusian
after the
slauchir of
Romack is
King.

Angusian vndirstandeng throuth lettiris writne frome his freindis, that the tyran Romack was put by the gate, fra hand louses fra Irelan to entir in possessioune of the Realme. Jmmmediatlie the King of the Pechtes, called Nectan, Jnflamet against the Scottis, in a terrible Jre through the deith of his kinsman Romack, destroys, consumes, and wastes, with a suddane power, the nerrest cuntryes perteyne^z to the Scottis. 5

He ouir-
cuysid Nec-
tan King of
Pechtes in
set battel.

In the sec-
cunde onset
ar baith the
Kingis
slane.

Angusian be legatis * accusid him of that Jniure, bot in vane, baith inflamet with Jre cam at lenth to straikis : 10 quhair, the Pechtes dung and chaste, the Scottis obteinet the first victorie. Nathir was Angusian for this cause the mair outragious : bot sente legatis agane to treit for a † ¹²⁷ soueranse : bot the Pechtes, contempneng his requeistes w^t cruel and lychtliful anssers, agane was a cruel 15 battel strukne betuene the twa kings, almaist to the pernitioune of baith the armes.

Angusian
in the 3eir
of his regne
the 2. of
Gud. 163—is
slane.

This battel fel in the secunde 3eir of the regne of King Angusian : quhair nocht onlie baith the kingis war slane, bot baith the natiounis sair opprest, in sa far that 20 lang thay neuir 30kit agane, bot frome al kynd of sharpe wapne did absteine on baith handes.

Papes—Liberie.

Rom. Em.—Constantin II., Julian, Jouinian.

XXXVIII. FETELMAK.

Quhen Angusian was slane, Fetelmak obteineng the Jmpire rang in the Realme w^tout controuersie. This, in

* L. "Illum injuriarum postulat"—demands of him satisfaction for these injuries.

† L. "de induciis"—for a truce.

the secunde *ȝeir* of his regne, maid gret slachter amang the Pechtes: and nocht lang estir betuene thame was a sett feild, quhair thair King Nectan, the former Nectanis brother, deidlie hurte, Fetelmak obteines a glorious 5 victorie, and is decoret with a noble fame. Frome that furth the Scottis verie oft wasted with sword and fyre the Pechtes landes. Thay in the meine tyme, to keip thame the bettir out of thair ennemis handes, crouned Hergest^{us}, and decored him w^t the dignitie of a king, a 10 subtle man, and ful of crafte & disceit, is w^t al consentes elected. Quhen this king saw him selfe sa Jnfirme and waik, that he was nocht able to meite the Scottis in sett battell, he slew King Fetelmak be twa of his awne banished men, quha finȝiet thame selfes Scottis, and be 15 the kingis musitioner, called his cythariste, quh^ome the Pechtes king had corrupted w^t a sume of money. bot the cytharist, and the vthir twa murtheris, war takne, and in * duigis and bladis reiuen betuene horsses.

Fetelmak was slane in the *ȝeir* of God ccclxix. About 20 this tyme Sancte Rule, borne in Greece, a man of a singular pietie, cam in Albion, w^t the reliques of S. ¹²⁸ Andro. first he landet neir the place quhair the toune of S. Andro now standes.

Hergestus, King of the Pechtes, was blyth at thair first 25 landing and Joyfullie mett thame: and granted to him and his marrowis his awne palice. In this citie, quhilke is the cheif citie of the hail Realme, a singular † college in thir our dayes is vphaldne.

He our-
cuw^{is} the
Pechtes.

Through
fraud Fetel-
mak be his
awne cithar-
ist is mur-
thirret, the
7 *ȝeir* of his
regne, of
God 369.

The vthir
twa ar
reiuen be-
tuene
horsses.

S. Rule
cuw^{is} in
Scotland
with the re-
liques of S.
Andro.

The first
fundacioun
of the Ab-
batie of S.
Andro.

Papes—Liberie, Felix 2.
Roman Emp.—Jouinian.

* L. “equis alligati, membris in diversa actis, diserpti sunt”—bound to horses, and torn to pieces by being driven in contrary directions.

† L. “Academia insignis cernitur”—a celebrated university exists.

XXXIX.—EUGENIE I.

Eugenie the first of that name, Fincormakis sone, with his brother Ethodie, * of the Jle of Man quhair he was [†] obliste to be brocht vpe in the liberal sciences ; with al votes, and consentes of the hail Realme he is crouned King.

5

*The Ro-
mane legat
steiris vp the
Pechtes to
destroy the
hail Scottis.*

In thir dayes, the Romane legat Maximus had the gouerning of al Britannie, quha, to the end that he mycht amplifie the Romane Jmpire, labouris w^t the Pechtes be messengeris to obteine his desyre, thinking that sa may be, throug [‡] fraud of the Scottis and Pechtes : first, 10 that a souerance be takne ; neist that the Scottis be declared publick ennemis to the Romanis, Britanis, and Pechtes : finalie that thair thrie forces thay joyne together, & weiris vpon the Scottis agane suddenlie thay beginne.

15

Quhen Maximus had sa concludet w^t the Pechtes, in haist he be a heralde of armes denounces weiris, and proclaymes against Eugenie, except he forgyue al Jniure and wrang quhilke the Pechtes athir afor committed or presentlie against him ; and quicklie that he performe it. 20

*The Kingis
answe.*

Eugenie makes ansuer, that sen^r he was king, he neuir trublet the Romanis and Britanis, sua that betuene him and the Pechtes al thingis war just and weil done: Jn sa far that quha violates the statutes of the band anes maid, he receiue due pannance conforme to the instituounis 25 of the countreye. Bot gif the Romanis for the Pechtes cause Jnvade the Scottis Jniustlie, baith wil the Godis of Vengeance cum^r, and reuenge vpon thame ; quhilke nocht

* I. "ex Mona insula, ad regnum vocatur"—is called to the kingdom from Man.

† I. "ablegatus"—whither he had been sent away.

‡ I. "ex Scotorum Pictorumque dissidiis"—by occasion of the disagreement between Picts and Scots.

onlie wil thay do, bot ar able to susteine quhat ony
ennimie may do, in thair contrair.

Quhen Maximie, eftir this *ansuer* of King Eugenie, had
augmented his legiounis with a gret number of ffrench-
men, Britonis, and Pechtes, he intendis and prepairis
him selfe as to ane certane and sure victorie, evin as
sure he thocht as it war in his handes, quhairfore w^t vio-
lence, he brekis in ower the nerrest Prouince of Scot-
land.

10 Eugenie, in the meine tyme, was present, arrayed in
the grettest power of Scottis that he culde be in, to
halde the ennemie abak from waisting the Scottis feildes.
A feilde first thay straik vpon the Riuier of Crie (quhilke
the name ȝit reteines): Quhair our folkes, in a maner
15 abaset w^t the force and multitude of thair ennemisies,
skairse mycht thay susteine and byd the firste Brasche.

The Romanis now victorious, quhen skattiret out of
ordour, thay followit the flieris, a nue ennemie met
thame: for the men of weir and ¹²⁹ Suddartis of Argyle,
20 quha had nocth ȝit conioyned thame selfes with Eu-
genie, quha quhen first thay cam to, renewed the battel,
and w^t gret slauchter dang bak the ennemie.

25 The Scottis, lykwyse, throuth hope of this new releife
vnluiket for, war conforted to renew the battel, throuth
quhilke renouatioun, mony ane thay brocht to the
ground. The nycht at last cam onⁿ mirke, the pairties
thairfor sched.

30 Quhen King Eugenie saw the gretter parte of his force
brochte vndir in the former ȝoking with the Romanis,
nathir that he was able to meit thame agane, thair power
was sa stark, he tuke him selfe til a strenth.

Mairatouer the Roman legat, throuth the * motioun
of the Britonis, past in haist to Kent. In the meine
tyme the Scottis with diuerse and oft skirmishes vexis

* L. “ob famam Britanici motūs”—through hearing that the
Britons were moving.

The Roman
legat with a
meruellous
multitude of
men of weir,
trubles al
Scotland.

Thay sched
with vncer-
tane vic-
torie.

The legat
the secund
tyme in-
vades Scot-
land agane.

the Pechtes. Quhairfor the Romane legat sair offendet,
the neist summer he invades the Scottis agane.

A cruel bat-
tel is begun.
Quhair
Eugenie
strukne
doune and
slane is. the
ȝeir of his
regne 10. of
God 379.

a new bikker
brocht on.

As the Roman legat Max. brak in ouer to Scotland,
King Eugenie mett him in Galloway: Quhair quhen a
battel bald betuene thame had bene strukne cruel and
terrible, sa that with Eugenie was left nocht ane, he
haueng the ansinzie in his awne hand, and that it
sulde neuir be said that he only war left vnslane, he
slingis the ansinzie out of his hand, and rinis w^t force
amang the thick of his enimies, quhair he is slane. In 10
the meine tyme the *skuddilleris, and kitchine boyes,
and a fewe suddartis, quha be King Eugenie war left to
keip the Campe, seing the miserable slauchter of thair
people, thay fel al in dispair, & falling in dispair, thay
invade the enimies: quhilke thay did mair throuch 15
feircnes of thair nature, than throuch prais of ony vertue:
at thair first cuming to, for a certane space was begun a
balde biker. Bot thir dung back, and put out of ordour,
ar at last al slane.

Maximie the Romane legat, estir sa noble a Victorie, 20
wald haue Eugenie honorablie put in graue, for his gret
vertue and commendatione, quhilke the hale armie of
the men of weir gaue him: he caused lykwyse his
brother Ethodie fund amang the deid, and mony vthiris
woundet persounis, to be †buriit w^t al humanitie and 25
gentlenes. Nathir this woundirful slauchter of the
Scottis was ynoch to satisfie the cruetie of the Pechtes
harteres, Jnuie, and hatred: bot thay wrochte with the
familiaris of the Roman legat, corrupted w^t money, to
obteine at the legatis hand that al Scottis to ‡ cum thair- 30
estir, w^tout ony distinctione, sulde out of Albion be
baniste. a day of Banisment (*is*) set & appoyned:
that na man in Albion estir that day, vndir the pane of

The hayue
hatred and
Jnuie of the

* L. "Lixæ et calones"—sutlers and camp-followers.

† L. "humaniter curari"—to be *cared* for.

‡ L. "omnes Scotis oriundi"—all of Scottish descent.

his heid suld be fund. for this cause, mony throuch feir of this edicte, struckne with a terrour, departes to seik * roumes, quhair to place thair gudes. Sum to the Jles of † Irland, vthiris to the Jles of Orknay, sum to 5 Norway, and sum to Denmark; and sum to vthiris Natiounis.

Pechtes to-
ward the
Scottis.

Nochtw^tstandeng, the crueltie of the Legat was assuaget & kuilet towarde Queine Cartamund King Eugenies wyfe: for quhen he sand her lyeng neir her 10 housbandis graue in dreirrines, lamentatioune, and mourneng sair, he gaue her landes and steddings with seruandes to labour thame, nocht respecteng the scharpe repunging of the Pechtes.

This was the 10 ȝeir of the regne of Eugenie, quhen 15 the Scottis be the Romanis was put frome thair roumes, bot the ȝeir of God ccclxxix. frome the beginzing of the Scottis kingdome the secund aboue dccx. The secund of Julian the apostate, quha than in Rome was maistir of al.

20 Quhen the legat Maximie was deid, Emperour Theodoze sente Victorie to Britannie, quha calling vnto him the principal of the Pechtes, reprehendes thame scharplie that thay did nocht applie thame selfes better vnto the maneris of the Romanes: quhilke he commandes that 25 thay do thairestir. He farther commandes that the best, ¹⁹⁰ waltest, and most chosen amang the Pechtes, the lustiest of thair ȝouth, adioyne thame selfes to the Romane legiouunes; This hapned vnto the Pechtes, † by thair opinioun: and thairfor to King Hergest, now ane 30 alde man, was so molestful, that he put hande in him selfe, that langre he suffired na sik tyrannie. Quhen Victorie knew of the deith of King Hergest, frahand he

The Ven-
geance of
God vpos
the Pechtes
and thair
King for
thair crue-
lacie vpos the
Scottis.

* L. "sedes"—homes.

† L. "In Hebrides, in Hiberniam, in Orchades"—some to the Hebrides, some to Ireland, &c.

‡ L. "præter spem"—contrary to their expectations.

commandes the Pechtes, that na king be elected of thair awne natione mae: quhilke edicte vnder the pane of deith be nocht disobeyet: bot the kingdome of the Pechtes, eftir the deith of Hergest, euir to perteine to the Romanes, quhilke was concludet vnder bandes and conditiounis betueine legat Maximie and King Hergest of the Pechtes. The Pechtes nochtwithstandeng nocht suffiring sik crueltie, called a counsel for that samyn cause, in quhilke Durste, the secund sone of Hergest, thay crouned king: quha immediatlie with the Romane 10 weiriouris was takne, and in bandes was castne, and sent to Rome to the Emperour. Than the principal persounes of the Pechtes, quha stude with thair new elected king, first war skourget, than publiklie eftir the Romane maner war heidet: the vulgar and lay people 15 war lykwyse sair oppressed w^t labouris and taske warke for thair pairt. ffor at command of the legat, al sprung of the Pechtes blude, quha remaned in thay boundes quhair now standes Beruik and the boundes perteine^{ng} thairto, the Merce, Tinisdale, Esdale, Eusdale, and 20 quhilke Tuedale conteines, quhilkes al vndir ane name in ald tymes was named Deer; and than Gallouay, Pentland, Kyle, Karrik and Kunighame, w^t the hail cuntrey quhair now Striuling standes, and Monteith, and al about the Kalender and Kaderwod. The people, 25 I say, quha inhabited thir partes, war compelled to * ȝeld thame selfes, to make a Bulwark baith lang and stark, to cast a seuch of a wondirful deipnes, betuene Abir-corne and Clydmouth, the way that we passe be Glasgwe, this Cldymouth is, quhair now the Castle of Dunbartane 30 standes.

The Pechtes now subduet vndir sa sair seruitude of the Romanes, seing thair lamentable kaise and miserie: quhilke miserie began to leir thame a lessone and to begin to be wyse. Now at last thay consider w^t thame 35

* L. "cedere"—to give up possession of the countries named.

The bulwark
bigit at the
mouth of
Clyde, to
name Abir-
corne.

selfes how vncircumspectelie and vnwislie thay wrocht, quhen sa cruelle thay enveyet against the Scottis, and contrare thame war sa outragious, quhairthrouch thame selfes and al that thay had, thay put into the wil of 5 the Romanes ; this, I say, thair miserable kaise, now to lament thay begin : and finalie to beseik and craue the succour and supplie baith of God and man against the Romane vntrue tyrannie.

The Scottis in the mene tyme banist out of Albion, 10 wandiris heir and thair through al countreyes, bot quhair or in quhat place sa evir thay be, meruellouslie thay multiplie. And quhen thay war brocht to sik necessitie that al hope of gudes and geir or ony kynd of gude fortune or Luk was out of thair mynd, * Loo for the 15 ouer vnwonted and strange deiling of the Romanes with the Pechtes, for the extreime calamitie of the Scottis quhairw^t sa sair thay war vext, a lychtsum lycht, and weil fortunat, Joyful and plesante, schyned vnto thame agane, that the hard seruite of the Pechtes was 20 occasione to restore the Scottis.

Afor was said, that the brother of Eugenie, quhais name was Euthodie, in the former battel mony and sair woundes had receiuet ; neuertheles through the benignitie of legat Maximie, was restored to his former helthe. 25 Eftir he passit in Denmark : quhair a sone he conceiuet vpon his wyfe, quha followed him. This sone, quhen his father was deid, marriet a noble manis dauchter of Denmark, neist the king selfe, cheir (*cheif*) Gouernour of the citie. This womanis name quhome he married 30 was Rothie, her father Rorichie. Vpon her he gat a sone, his name Fergus, quha the Scottis restored til Albion.

The Pech
hard hand-
ling helped
the Scottis
hame agane.

The Kingis
birth and
lawful suc-
cession is
heir in this
banishment
of the Scot-
tis reserued.

* L. "en ob nimiam Romanorum in Pictos insolentiam, lætissima prosperi successus lux illis extrema miseria vexatis illuxit"— Lo, on account of the Roman cruelty against the Picts, a glad light of prosperity rose upon them in the depths of their misery.

Betuene
Eugenie &
Fergus are
44 ȝeiris.

Betuene Eugenie the first, and fergus the secund, the kingdome of Scotland was vndir na king; betuene quhilkes twa, fourtie ȝeiris and four past by.

Parawndus
king of
France is
crouned the
ȝeir of God
496. & diet
the ȝeir of
his regne 11.

This tyme began the frenchemen to haue kingis, quhair Pharamund king of France first is elected; This king, sum do affirme, amang thame was author of the law, that na woman sould succeid to the kingdome of France.

5

Papes—S. Damasæs, Siriciæs, Anast. I., Innocence I.
Rom. Emp.—Jouinias, Valentiniæs, Theodose I.

THE 4 BUCE.

XL.—FERGUS II.

KING FERGUS the secund of that ilk, is justlie reckned in this place the fourtieth king of Scottis. For as king Fergus the first, to him selfe and his eftircumeris confirmet & maid suir ane kingdome in Albion, sa, quhen 5 this King Fergus had seine al turned ouer and ouer, and the Scottis Natione, throuch the Romane tyrannie, to be al skattired and al amaist wraiket, he to the former maner restored thame agane, and eftir fourtie ȝeiris, in the *secund ȝeir of thair exile, happilie and w^t gret 10 felicitie he placet thame in the rounes of thair foir-bearis. Our writeris affirme of this mater, this to be the principal and cheif cause heirof as followis.

Quhen now the Pechtes war daylie mair and mair oppressed w^t a hauier ȝok of seruitud, quhilke the 15 Romanis had laid vpon thair neckis, thay began to consult how to cast aff this ȝok. The Pechtes thairfor thinkes it maist couenient, be messingeris affectuouslie to pray the Scottis to be na mair myndful of ald Jniurie & wrang wrocht betuene thame, because thay repented 20 verie sair, that evir thay tuke parte with the Romanes contrare the Scottis: quhilk was to thame selfes na less lamentable, than to the Scottis damnable and deidlie;

The Scottis natione xl ȝeiris eftir thair exile, to thair country war agane restored.

The Pechtes exhorte the Scottis to returne, & promises to bind surlie w^t thame contrare the Romanis.

* L. "Post quadragesimum secundum exili anno"—after the forty-second year of exile.

& that thay haue had sufficiente experience how intollerable the Romane Jmpire hes beine to frie nationes, and ⁵ ȝit wald be, gif thay fand na Jmpediment. Quhairfor thay promise, gif thay wil follow thair counsel, to put thame in sure hope of thair retурne agane: and that nocht only thay sal adioyne thame selfes to thame in Battel, and in the weiris keip cumpanie with thame, bot lykwyse be *authoris of the weiris, cheiflie quhen thay doublet nocht that the Romanis, deuydet amang thame selfes, ar not able lang to indure and to susteine the ¹⁰ forces of the Scottis and Pechtes quhen thay ar Joyned togither. Thir things al war done with the Scottis, quha in thay dayes war banisshed Jnto the Jles, Jrland, Norway, and Denmark.

King Fergus, quha for certane ȝeiris had maid seruice ¹⁵ in the weiris til Athalarik king of the Gothis, with gret commendatioun and prais, and lykwyse was present at the seige of the citie of Rome, receiueng a message frome the Pechtes, in haist he declairis the mater to the King of Denmark, throuch quhais counsel he sent sum ²⁰ of his awne people to Norway, til Argyle, to the Jles, til Orknay, and Caitnes, and vnto Jrland, to explore the myndes, state and condicione of the Scottis luyeng in thae partes. Quhen he vndirstude that the Scottis natione with sik a luue and desyre walde haue him, ²⁵ pairtie furnished w^t his awne raches, and the Raches of the King of Denmark, pairtie of his Gudshir sa woundirful Rache, he furnisshed a meruellous classe, quhilke to the sey he sett ladne with a multitude innumerable of men of armes: and at Denmark shiping in, the 8 day ³⁰ thaireftir with gret felicitie, he landet al his Nauie in the Rede of Moray.

Compeiret in haist, and war present verie monie borne of Scottis blude, quha war steiret vp throuch the

* L. "non solum belli socios sed etiam auctores fore"—they would not only be allies, but themselves declare war.

cuming and fame of King fergus, steirer vp, I say, frome al cuntreyes and places neirhand. Conueined lykwyse the Princes of the Pechtes, to weilcum him hame and to accepte and receiue him in the land with al joy and 5 gladnes; Thay mairouer besocht him to be na mair myndful of ald byganes, bot to renue the band with the Pechtes.

ffergus maid answer to this, that the ald band lang before institute betuene the Scottis and Pechtes pleiset 10 him verie weil, sa that vpon the same conditounis, quhilkes afor, it war renuet, to wit, that the Pechtes take part with the Scottis against the Romanis: That mairouer the Pechtes renunce frilie al that euir perteined to the Scottis. Al things perfyted conforme to the band, 15 fergus passed in Argyle: heir in the sait of his elderis and Marmour chair he is sett, and crouned king, heir accordeng to the Pompe of ald Vse and Wount, he is of al saluted in kinglie honour.

This was the ȝeir xlvi frome the tyme that the Scottis 20 war baniste out of Albion. The ȝeir of God ccccxxii. The ȝeir of the regne of the emperor *Honorius* xvii.

Legat *Victorius*, meruellouslie at thir nues, with a 25 furious mynd he settis vpon the confiderat Kings. The feild was strukne at Carron: The combat was sa cruel, that thay sched baith alyke in Victorie; throuch the tempest of a terrible storme, that sa vehementlie schuke thame. This battel was deidlie on baith handes; quhairfor the Romanis fled into Kent, the Scottis and Pechtes to thair awne possessionis. In the mein tyme 30 legat Victor commandet to erecte the dyk betuene Abircorne and clyd mouth agane: quhilke, be a noble capitane called *Grame*, was al brokne and douncastne, quhen he expelled the Romanis. fra quhome evin in our age it is ȝit called *Grames Dyke*, and fra quhome 35 the commounie opinione is, my Lord *Grames* hous to be sproung and cum aff.

The Pechtes
with the
Scottis re-
nues the
band.

Fergus heir
is crouned
King.

Legat Vic-
tor raises
weiris
against the
Scottis and
Pechtes.
a cruel bat-
tel heir is
strukne.

The original
beginning of
my L.
Grames
hous.

Quhen now legat Victor be his weiriouris is maid Emperour, nocht lang eftir throuch thair fraud and disceit, he is delyuired into the handes of Heraclie legat til Emperour *Honorius*, quhair he is heidet. In the meine tyme the Scottis and Pechtes receiuet thair cuntreyes agane, occupiet be the Romanis. quhilke quhen the Romane legat Placidie vndirstude, offendet him sair, and thairfor a cruel combat agane was strukne betuene him and the confederat kingis: Quhairfor, be legatis he tuke trewis, and the ald boundes restored agane 10 to baith the natiounes.

Quhen King fergus had obteined sum rest frome weirfair, he gaue diligent labour Peice to vphalde, and to compone the materis of the Realme. Beginning thair, quhairfra ane honorable prais and commendatione 15 of religione vses to schine; the kirkes he repaired, quhilkes ather throuch aldnes war corrupted and eitne vpe, or throuch brasche of weir fallin doun: Throuch al partes of the land he placet notable godlie and gud men, evin as gif seid he had sawine throuch the cuntrey 20 to spred the puritie of the true faith, and the honour of God to enlarge. He called agane and releiuet the Mounckes and Preistes, quha fled the crueltie of the Romanis, banissted be thame, and stedingis and landes quhairon thay mycht lyue, frilie gaue thame: Strenthes 25 and Castelis he erected in the bordouris, to be sum defence to the Realme: he biggit lykwyse the Abbasie of Jona, quhair he appoyned in tyme cuming the sepulchre of the kingis of Scotland to be.

S. Ninian.

About this tyme was in Scotland Sancte Ninian, of 30 Galloway Bischope, quha quhen he had teimed the hartes of mony, of the foul puddil of errorre and vice, and in thair place filled thame agane with the lychte of Vertue and Veritie. To S. Mairtine, his father brother, he dedicated a fair kirke, weil garnissted, and in fair 35 ornamentis and noble decore, magnifiklie. He, farther-

The pietie
of King
Fergus.

mair was first, quha in Galloway fixed a Bisches sait : quhair eftir, and in quhilke place, ane verie excellent kirk was consecrate in his name, and evin vnto the tyme quhen hæresie pluked vpe al monumentes of pietie in 5 Scotland, this kirk was visited maist religiouse with innumerable pilgrimes : Of quhais notable vertue and verie worthie, albeit this was a cleir testimonie, nocht-w^tstandeng this was a signe and takne of his singular pietie, that quhen hett weiris war amang the Scottis 10 Pechtes and Britonis, the weiris cloised vpe al passage frome ane people til another, was a sure passage nocht-w^tstandeng be * ony to S. Ninian^z ay quhen pleased thame. for thay beleiuet that na craft or disceit or ony Impietie and wickitnes culde happne vpon S. Ninian, 15 quha was a man^z of sik excellence, and in solid vertue sa glorious.

About this same tyme florised lykwyse Cælius Sedulius, Priest and Scottis man, † being a lustie ȝouth frome his tendir ȝeiris vpe, he was inflamed with the desyre 20 and studie of lerneng : quha mairouer studiet diligentie w^t that maist honorable and learned Scottis Bischope to name Hidelbert, baith in diuinitie and in humanitie : quhen Hidelbert now fra this lyfe was departed, throuch sair trauel he wandireth throuch Hispane, ffrance, Jtalie, 25 Greice, and Asia, to leir ȝit mair. Quhairfor quhen he was with al eruditione enduet, he eftirward w^t the preclair monumentis of his Jngine the kirk decored, baith in verse and prose. Him Pape Gelasius called Venerable, he meruellet sa mekle at his gret vertue (as 30 of him wrytes Gratiane in the fyftinthe ‡ distiche).

Cælius
Sedulius

* L. "illi tamen ad singulos tutissimus pateret aditus"—to him (S. Ninian) was always allowed a free passage to either party.

† L. "adolescens"—in his youth, from his early years onwards.

‡ L. "(Dist. 15)"—the 15 distinction. Gratian's divisions are so headed. His words are—"Item venerabilis viri Sedulii paschale opus, quod heroicis descripsit versibus, insigni laude proferimus." He is mentioned next after the historian Orosius, in the list of

Quhen Honorius had endet this lyfe, the Gouerneng of the Romane Republik fel into the handes of Theodose, quha for the King of Britannies cause ȝokit with legat Cassius, quha, quhen he was slane, obteined a noble Victorie.

5

The thrid combat con-
tra the
Romanes :
quhai King
Fergus and
Durst ar
baith slayne,
the ȝeir 16 of
the regne of
Fergus. of
God 430.

Now Dionethie is maid king of Britanzie. Bot Maximiane being to that place sente with sindrie stout and balde armies, frome that noble capitane Aetius, at the first battel, restored quhat the Romanis had afor tinte: At this feild fergus king of Scottis, and Durst 10 King of Pechtes, with the gret parte of thair hoste war al slane.

This vnhappie feild was fochtne the xvi ȝeir of the regne of King fergus the secund. Dionethie haueng receiued a gret and wonnderful wound, he is lyfted be 15 his awne, and is karied into Cumbirland. Maximian cruel for his Victorie quhilke he had obteined, he brekis in ouer into the nerrest feildes of the Scottis and Pechtes, and wastes, burnes, and slayes al that he 131 tocumis. Thaireftir intendeng to posses al Britanzie be force, 20 that he the mair esilie mycht obtein his purpose, marie he walde Dionethies eldest dauchter, to quhome, the rychte of the Realme did apperteine, as the commounie opinioune was, and this he walde with concente of the cheif nobilitie of al Britannie. he vpon king fergus 25 sister gat 2 dauchteris, the name of the ane Athilia, the name of the vther Vrsula; Quhen Vrsula now was consecrate ane haly Virgine, Sche commandet her *gud-father Dionethie to obteine the cheif roume efter her in Britannie.

30

Efter this vnhappie battel, the Scottis had bene al

writers approved by the Catholic Church in a synod held at Rome under Pope Gelasius, A.D. 494.

* L. "sacerum"—her father-in-law. So too the translator; but according to the text he was *father* of Ursula. Boece calls Ursula the *eldest* daughter of Dioneth.

again banisshed out of Albione, gif the Romane Jmpire had nocht begun to be skattired throuch Afric, throuch ffrance, and throuch vthires cuntryes meruellouslie.

King fergus left behind him thrie sones, Eugenie,
5 Dongar, and Constantine, quhilkes he gat vpon that maist noble Grahames Dauchter in Denmark. About this tyme Pape Innocente the first was Bischope of Rome, quhome sum haldes the opinione, and manifestilie * affirmes to haue bene ane albane, or Scottis man.

Papes—Innocent I., Sozimie, Boniface I., Coelestin I., Sixtus III., Leo I.

Rom. Emper.—Theodose I., Honorius, Theod. II. Pharamund the first king of france, quha wrote the frenche chronikle, quha + beginis to number the kingis; and eftir him Clodouie.

XLI.—EUGENIE II.

10 Eugenie the secund, sone of King fergus, quhen his father was deid, is crouned king. This king delfeng vpe his fatheris reliques, causet thame with gret solemnnitie, pompe, and processione to be karied to the Jle of Jone, and thair w^t al pietie to be buriit; quhilke his father 15 commandet quhil he was ȝit alyue. This place evin vnto the dayes of King Malcolme Canmore remanet a place of burial hallowit vnto kingis w^t al deuotione.

Quhen Maximian had made peice with the Scottis, his men of weir saluted him with the name of Cesar, 20 and to him selfe attributed the authoritie of king in Britannie: he than eftirward committing the procuracione of Britannie til Dionethie, passid in ffrance: quhair quhen he had slane Jubal, king of Armorik, he

* L. merely says, “nonnulli affirmant”—some say. He was probably a native of what is now called *Albano*, near Rome.

+ L. “a quo chronicæ eorumdem Reges enumerare incipiunt”—from whom their chronicles begin to number the kings.

lap with authoritie in his kingdome, committing it in gouerning to Conan Meriadok, and to the Britanis delyuering it to manure and inhabite. Quhairfor Armorik was eftirward be the new Jnhabitouris named Britannie.

5

Armorik is named be the new Jnhabitouris Britannie.

Vrsula virgine w^t ten thousand virgines ar at Colane al martyret.

About this tyme is maid mentione, that Vrsula Virgine with ten thousand Virgines constantlie refuseng the mariage of the Hunnis, war crouned w^t the croune of Martyrdome, dryuen w^t a stormie tempest to Reyne mouth, nocht far frome the citie of Coleyne in Germanie.

Jn the meine tyme King Eugenie and the Peychtes Jnuadet Britannie wast of men of weir, quhen na campe lay in it, Maximian than gouerning in ffrance: and w^t sworde and fyre wasteng al vpe and doun baith in 15 bredthe and lenth, nocht only obteined thay the feildes and cuntrey, bot the verie citie of Jorke selfe. Emperour Valentiniiane sente a capitane frome the citie of Rauenna in Jtalie to Britannie with ane strang armie to stay the Jnuasiounis of Scottis and Peychtes. At the cuming 20 of this legat, thir confederat kingis lay with thayr campe beyond the riuier of fforthe. This legat Gallio, quhen the enimies he had put to the flichte, he commandet the wal of Abircorne to be erected agane of viii els thik, xii els hiche: quhen this wark was endet, he passit 25 in ffrance. How sune the worde was past, in publik, of the Legatis departeng, the Scottis and Peychtes, in haiste breking doun the Wal, and breking doun al the fortes and strenthes lyeng thairabout, mair vehementlie than afor thay Jnuade Britannie, and quhen the Romanis 30 thair enimies thay had chaiste ouer the Watter of Tine, thay lay with thair campe at the Dyk of Adriane: and passing or farthirmair proceeding, thay waste and destroy al in thair way evin to the Riuier called Humber, and than w^t al kynd of crudelitie, thay flie vpon the miser- 35 able and pure Jnhabitans of the cuntrey. The Britanis

The Wal of Abircorne is restored agane.

fell in ciuil discorde burning hett, procuring helpe of the Romanis contrare the Peychtes and Scottis, bot in vane, for thay grant thame na helpe ; and this ciuile weir thay begin for putting doun of Conan Prince of Wailis, 5 because he prudentlie with wisdome persuadet rest and peace : Bot at last thay Jntend sum vther way to lay to the water (*mater*), to wit, a gret soume of money, and al the cuntreyes bezond the Riuers, to promise the twa kingis of Scottis and Peychtes, gif thay absteine fra 10 weiris, and lyue in peace. Quhen thay sie thayr askeng refuset, frahand and w^tout ony mair is the feild strukne, in quhilke feild ar slane xv thousand Britanis, bot of Scottis and Peychtes four thousand, quha wan the Victorie.

15 Quhen now the Britanis war ouircum, vpon sik conditiou^s thay cam in Will to the Scottis and Peychtes, that fra that tyme furthe na legat, na Romane armie thay haue w^t thame : That w^tout counsel of the Peychtes and Scottis kingis thay mak nather peice nor weir w^t ony 20 natiōne : That thay persue w^t al thayr forces quhom-saeuer ennemis haue ather Scot or Peycht : That thay gyue ouer the cuntrey of Jorke, and al the feildes on this syde of Humber, and to the Scottis and Peychtes commit thame in possessione : That thay gyue a price 25 of saxtie thousand crounes to be destributed seuerallie to the Scottis and Peychtes men of weir : That ȝeirlie xx thousand crounes thay pay in *custome. Thay mairouer soule gyue a hunder pledges nocth ȝounger as xviii ȝeires of age, nor elder as xxx, as the Scottis and 30 Peychtes requyret. Mairouer Jn the ȝeir of God 436, of the regne of Eugenie the 7, Britannie was takne frome the Romanis and subduet to the Scottis and Peychtes.

About this tyme S. Palladie, frome Pape Celestine the 35 first, was sent to the Scottis, quha lang befor beleiuet in

Conan Prince of Wales is alane be-cause he labours to procure peice. the Britanis ar ouircum in battel be the Scottis & Peychtes.

The conditio-
ns of
peace in-
loyet to
the Britonis
ouircum.

The Britonis
ar maid pen-
sionaris and
custimeris to
the Scottis
and Peych-
tes.

s. Palladie
is sent in
Scotland,

* L. "tributi nomine"—as tribute.

be pape
Celestine
the first.

S. Seruan
Bischope.
Teruan also
Archiebi.

S. Patrick.

finmack-
oul.

Christe ; that the ruites of the Pelagian hæresie, now spruitting vpe litle and litle, quhilke, ester the Peychtes and Britannis, began lykwyse to Jnvade our natione. and did diligens to put the ruites of the sincere and pure Religioune in sum suir place ; to festne and to rute it into the hartes of wandireris by the way. To this Palladie, and the sait of Rome, our Bischopes gae sik * authoritie, that quhen afor euir with ws Bischopes war nocth chosen bot by electione of the Mounches, This be the Papes halynes sent vnto ws, 10 with al concentes was admitted and approuen with Joy and Gladenes. ffarther S. Palladie gae S. Seruan a Bischoprie and sente him ouer til Orknay, thair to Jn- struck the Rude and Barbarous people in the christne faythe ; Teruan also he maid Archiebiskeope of the 15 Peychtes. Jn quhilkes places thir twa, sa diligentlie conforme to pietie and Religione, largelie did thair dutie and perfytlie ; partlie ruteng the Pelagiane hæresie out of thair hartes ; partlie quhen thair hartes war cleine purged, instilling in thair hartes the puritie of religioune, 20 that esfirward the ane worthilie was æsteimet Apostle of the Peychtes, the vther Apostle of Orknay.

S. Patrik lykwyse that sam tyme cam in Jrland. The opinione of monye, this is, that Finnane the sone was of a certane man called Coelis ; this Finnan in our 25 mother young named Finmakcoul, a man of gret statur, in that age duelte with ws ; quhais † ofspring proceidet of the stock of the ald gyantis. Jn the meine tyme the Britanis quha now x ȝeiris had bene ‡ pensioneris to the Scottis, quyetlie, throuch counsel of Conan sone to the 30 former Cozan, thay conspyre against the Scottis and Peychtes : Quhais counselis quicklie war stayed, quhair-

* L. "tantum detulere"—paid such deference.

† L. "tanquam ex veterum gigantum stirpe exortum"—as if he had sprung from the race of the old giants.

‡ L. "Vectigales"—tributary.

for, nocht a few number war laid in pledge. heireftir the effairis of Britannie ar afflicted amang thame selfes for a certane space; because the lai people was sa sair offendet with the Nobilitie, firmlie beleiueng be thame 5 to thair ennemis to be betrayed. To reuenge this iniure the lai people war lang contrare the Nobilitie. Quhen this ciuile battel was now neir ane end, hungre and pest schortlie began to follow, for the space of thrie 10 ȝeiris, sa monie creatures perissed throuch famine and hungre, the thrid ȝeir followed sik a pest, that skarce war sa mony alyue, as to burie the deid. Quhil the Britonis ar in sik penurie, the Scottis and Peychtes ar in sik peace and quyetnes, that of Britannie thay enioy ȝeirlie tribute.

Ciuile weir
betuene the
Nobilitie
and the lai
people in
Britannie

15 Quhen King Eugenie had restored the Scottis Kingdome to the ald estate, and had enlarged the boundes thairof evin to the Riuver of Hembre, in gret peace and tranquillitie and all commendatioun he endet this lyfe.

King Eu-
genie de-
partes in
peace.

Papes—Leo I., Hilarie.

Rom. Emp.—Theodosie II., Valentine III., Martianus, Leo.

Franc. Rex—Clodouey, Merouie, Childerik.

XLII. DONGARDIE.

20 Quhen King Eugenie was deid, but barnes, the reuling of the Realme was delyuerit w^t all consentis to his brother Dongarde.

Dongard
regnes
broyer till
Eugenie.

This man began to regne be the exemple of his father, and with al pietie and godlines; cheiflie Godis Preistes, 25 S. Palladie Bischope, and vthires quha w^t him cam out of Italie, notable in eruditione and innocent lyfe, * ouirthort in his kingdome, he promouet thame to steddings and feildes and vthiris commodities of this lyfe, and

The pietie
of this King
in the ser-
uandes of
God, and
obseruance.

* L. “sparsim”—scatteredly.

commandet that be al man, w^t al Reuerence, thay sould be obserued, to thir he granted to *continue fra the weiris. And quhatsaeuir place war consecrate to christe throuch hail Scotland, a ¹³² girth maist firme and sure lykwyse he walde haue it: that quha bechance had fallen in ony cryme, how lang thair he did remane, he sould be frie frome al skaith and perrel of skaith. 5

The diligence of the administration of Justice.

Quhen this king nevir maid mair of ony thing than of peace and Rychtuousnes, he placet excellent men of gret commendatione baith in Justice and æquitie, he 10 placet thame, J say, in euerie cuntrey to ministir Justice.

The landing in Britannie of Constantine sone to the King of Armorik.

Constantine King of Britannie is crowned.

The Britonis ouircus in battel.

Quhill in Scotland thir thingis ar done; the Britonis willing to cast aff thair Kaiuel, and sair tyred to keip it langre, to be trubitaries to the confederat kingis Scottis and Peychtes, thay send to the King of Armorik, or of 15 little Britannie, legattis to send thame supplie, w^t Constantine the kingis sone, and besocht him to performe it. The Britonis bosting mekle of this Succour and supplie, quhen Constantine was crowned King of Britannie, and had gathired a woundirful armie, vpon the 20 confederat kingis of Scottis and Peychtes, neir Humber thay sett: bot the Britonis deceiuet of thair hope, being ouircum miserabillie, war put to flichte.

Nochtwithstandeng quhen King Dongard, throuch a vehement orisone and notable exhortatione, the hartes 25 of al his people had steired vpe to the battel, In the mid feild quhill in gret feircenes he brak throuch to slay King Constantine, him selfe is slayne, in the fyfte ȝeir of his reygne, and the ȝeir of God four hund. saxtie & fyue.

Papes—Hilarius.

Romane Emperouris—Leo I., Maiorane, Seuerus.

King of France—Childerik.

* L. "a militia vacationem"—freedom from military service.

XLIII.—CONSTANTINE I.

Quhen Constantine, eftir his brotheris deith was in his brotheris place appoyned, frome his brotheris maneris he far differed. ffor neuir was sa constant a virgine quhome this king forced nocht: Neuir a matrone sa 5 schamefaste quhome he defylet nocht. finalie he sa delyted in al kynd of voluptuous pleisour, that gladlier he hanted w^t playeris in * interludes, than w^t honest men and free borne; and w^t daunceris w^t bettir will and geisteris, than with noble men and honest per- 10 sounes.

Quhen with this king the Britone had maid peace, nathir w^t concent of the Nobilitie, nathir w^t thair counsell, he delyuered thame frome the tribute and custome, quhilke xxx ȝeiris afor continuallie to the Scottis thay 15 had payed: he mairouer delyuered sum castelis quhilkes war situat vpon Humber, frank and frie, to the Britonis.

The King of Peychtes sa dour discontent is, that King Constantine is sa licherous, sa dul, and heauie, sa dul and deid † ydle, that sum of the Peychtes he 20 ‡ oppugnes for money, quha figurand thame selfes Britonis, walde quyetlie throuch deceit put doun Constantine King of Britannie, quhome thay durst nocht sett vpon in plane battel; Nathir lang eftir lyuet Constantine King of Scotland: quhome a certane noble 25 § hiland man ¹⁸⁸ smuiret in the nychte, for the forceng of his dauchter, the xvii ȝeir of his regne, the ȝeir of God cccclxxxii.

Evin to this age did lyue S. Palladie, of quhome afor

lost throuch
licherie.

He delyuer-
et the Bri-
tone fra
tribute.

* L. “histrionibus.”

† L. “otio torpentem, luxuque diffluentem”—slothfully inactive and luxuriously dissipated.

‡ L. “oppugnat”—he prevails upon.

§ L. “Hebridianus.”

we maid mentione; quha quhen gret workes of vertue, pietie, and beneuolence he had exhibited vnto the Scottis, being thair Apostle, nocht only is it commoune speiking, bot the Historiographouris in thair wrytenges and monumentis have left it behind thame, and celebratis it in thair Warkes. This *man* persuadet Constantine w^t mony rasonis, nocht to helpe the Sax. of Jngland, infected with the filth of vicious error, nocht, J say, to helpe thame against the alde Britonnis, disciples of the religioune of Christe Jesus, and true Christianis. 5 10

Papes—*Simplicius*.

Rom. Emp.—*Seuerus*, Anthemie.

Kingis of France—*Childerick*.

XLIV. CONGAL.

King Congal, sone to King Dongard, and oy to Constantine throuch his brother, is maid king, and the croune sett vpon his heid. This *man* gaue cheif diligence and principal kair to repair the thinges, quhilkes, throuch the negligence of King Constantine, and his 15 womazlines, war ouirthrawne, and brocht to nocht, and appoynted notable and wyse men, thair to Juge the people, to compone al materis of strife, and to sett al at ane in euerie prouince.

This king, to wit, Congal, w^t Vortigerne, King of 20 Britannie, and Hengest, and the Saxonis quhome to thair supplie thay had procured, sindrie tymes straik verie manie & strang feildes, now w^t ¹⁸⁴ tinsell, now w^t vantage. For Vortigerne had for a hyre allureth the keipers of Constantine, * king of Scotland, to betray him: bot that the 25 fame of this false and vntrue [†] *facte cam* nocht to lycht,

*He oft w^t
Hengest and
Vortigerne
combat tis
cruellie.*

*Vortigerne
the King.
dome of
Britannie
be fraud
obteined.*

* “King of Scotland”—not in L. The King of Britain, son of the former Constantine, is meant by Leslie.

† L. “*Sceleris fama*”—lest the news of this crime should become known.

he commandes thir keiperis to be takne, in prisone to be sett, in haist to be heidet. At last quhen he was maid king, he buir him selfe w^t sik Maiestie in authoritie, or after the opinione of sum, w^t fulehardines in audacitie,

5 that alluterlie he refuset to pay the ald vse and wont to the confederat kingis, in tribut and custome. of this, betueine thame, rase hatred and Jnuie: of hatred & Jnuie cam Jniurie and wrang: of Jniurie and wrang weiris ar begun. The day of battel is sett, baith

10 pairties meites, baith sydes ȝokis; The feild is strukne, w^t straikis sad & sair: The Britonis parte slane, parte chaste, gauie backs; Guitellie thair capitane is slane. Quhen Vortigerne saw him selfe sa sair opprest, that he was nocht able, him selfe alone, the hale ennemis to

15 resist, quha laitle had wonȝ sa noble a victorie vpon the Scottis, he callis the Saxonis, that cruel and wylde natione in Germanie, to helpe, albeit thay war Ethnikis and supperstitionis. The superstitionis Saxounis cumis at flichte speid, following the convoy of ane Hengistie

20 and his brother Orsie, contumeliouslie w^t weiris thay vex the confederat kingis of Scottis and peychtes, and vehementlie oppressis thame. Oft thay meit: oft thay parte w^t lytle vantage. Bot quhen the Saxounis ay vrget ner hand, and of thair weiris maid nather end nor stay, at

25 last Vortigerne him *selfe and his delyuered frome the seritude of the Scottis & Peychtes, obteyneng the Victorie, quhilke felicitie followet this calamitie far bittirer, that quhais helpe in thair delyuiring thay had vsed happilie, into thair seritude nocht lang estir thay

30 cam miserabillie. ffor quhen Hengistie † bruiket certane boundes gyuen to him and his, to place his gudes and geir intil, he callis his wyfe out of Saxoune, and with her a gret Nobilitie, and of men of weir nocht a smal multitude: quhairthrouch in a schorte quhyle inflamed

35 w^t desyre to regne, he settis his mynd vpon a nue studie,

The Britons
ar chaste be
the Scottis
& Peychtes.

The Saxons
being
Ethnikis ar
procured
in supple
aganste the
Scots &
Peychtes.

The Scots
and peych-
tes ourcum
be the
Saxons.

The Sax
invades the
Briton.

* L. "se suosque."

† L. "tueretur."

Hengest
occupies
Jngland and
is maid
King.

Jngland sa
named fra
Hengest.

The reliques
of the
britonis
frome this to
Cambrey,
now Wallis,
departes.

Paganisme
was brocht
in be the
Saxonis.

The Britonis
constant in
the faith of
christe.

and at last he makes a brekk, and throuch many iniures and wranges he prouokes King Vortigerne to battell. The gret parte of the Nobilitie of britannie he brings to nocht: the rest of the people outhir quyte he destroyes, or in prisone w^t King Vortigerne he miserabillie thame castes. Hengestie haueng athir put the Britonis to flicht, or brocht thame vnder seritude, occupies the cuntry braid and wyd frome end til end, and commandes in Londoune that crouned he be king, and that, gif war possible, he mycht cause al blude of the yle of Britane 10 be in perpetual obliuione, and neuir thaireftir cum in remeberance, the Realme he commandet to cal frome that furthe * Hengestland and the people Hengest men frome his awne name, to wit, Hengestie: Thay no w^tstandeng, thinkeng the language sa hard, thocht 15 better to follow the style that now thay follow, to cal the Realme England, and the people Englesmen.

Nocht lang eftir, quhen Hengestie had now confirmed his kingdome, that of him eftirward war no^t said that he had beine vnthankful of al benifite and gude deid 20 ressaued, he appoyneted to Vortigerne, and the rest of the peple of Britannie that remaned, the cunterie of Cambrei, (quhilke now thay cal Wallis) Hengestie, I say, left this parte to thame to inhabite, in quhilke place, this peple sticking maist constantlie to the puritie of the 25 Christne religioune, suffired na blek nathir of paganism, nor ony vthir secte, bot the religioune of Christe in that cuntry to entir: for na storme of persecutione. fra this furth Hengestie settis furth lawes vndir the pane of heid-ing, that na man profes the faith of Christe, or exercise 30 ony Lawes estir the Christiane rite, or name of Christe. heireftir the Christianis partlie vexte w^t cruell iniurie,

* L. "Vocum duriciem mollientes pressius nunc England," &c. —softening the hardness of the words, they pronounced the word more compactly England. The etymology is novel. The name England was not used till the ninth or tenth century.

partelie w^t miserable death put doune, gae, surelie,
notable sygnes and taknes of thair constancie. ffor
albeit the crueltie of the Saxonis was sa gret, in de-
stroyeng the kirkes, in murthirng the Preistes amang
5 the altares, in slayng the Prelat with the peple al through
another, that ane christiane, as witnessis Beda, skairslie
durst burie another christiane, notwithstanding, na feir,
nathir ony torment or persecutione evir was hard tel off,
that at ony time culde drawe the Britonis frome christe,
10 quhome evir thay seruet maist halylie. ffarthermair
Vortigerne receiued thaireftir his rewarde surely for his
mischeif that he had wrocht: for Aurelie Ambrosie,
King Constantines sone, miserabillie draue him and his
barnes in a tour, and all toghether consumet with fyre:
15 his *wyfe mairouer was ethnik the dauchter of Hengest:
This, Merlin the soothsayer or forteller of things to cum,
borne of a noble woman, gottin (as said is) be ane euil
spirit, fortalde him, that sa sulde be his end. bot of
King Congall, quhat followed, lat vs heir.
20 In keiping freindschip sa sinceir he was funde, and sa
cleine without fraude, that in tyme of neid or necessitie
he was neuir absent til Vortimer his frinde, sindrie
frome vther + almaist ane vniuersal warlde, quha was
maid king in place of his father Vortigerne, he J say,
25 nevir was absent in mister, cheiflie to the expelling out
of the boundes of Britannie Hengestie, and his sone
Occa. he sent farthermair, quhen Aurelie thair was sair
vexte and miserabillie handled, his brother Conran weil
arrayed w^t a chosen armie of wailed men of weir, to his
30 helpe and supplie; quha quhen Hengestie and Occa
had wasted the landes of Britannie vp and doune, braid

The crueltie
of the
saxow vpon
the chris-
tianis.

Vortigerne
pays for
his mis-
deides.

Merlin ane
soothsayer
or foreteller
of thingis to
cum or
inchanter.

The integri-
tie of King
Congal in
his freind-
ship keip-
ing.

How he
helpet Vor-
tigerne and
Aurelie
Kingis of
Britonie.

* L. "destroyed him, his children, and his heathen wife, the daughter of Hengest."

+ L. "In rerum suarum pene verso orbe, Vortimero necessario suo non defuit"—In circumstances of almost utter destruction he did not desert his friend Vortimer.

and wyd, he draue thame arse ouer heid out aganست
thair will.

The so 3eir
of his Impire
he dies. of
God soi.

Eftir this, and sindrie vthir notable deides honorablie
done, King Congal departed this lyfe: and his burial in
Jona, that yle, is maid, the tuentieth 3eir of his regne.

Germane
and Lupe
notable
men of Pietie
& doctrine.

About this tyme the twa Bisches, Germane and
Lupe, Jlluminat w^t al vertues, as w^t starnes, cam in
Britannie, of y^t mynd and intentione, to rute out be the
rute the Pelagian hæresie, and to informe the King
Hengest w^t the Saxons in the Catholik doctrine dulie,
and haly præceptes thairof: quhilkes baith, verie happilie
succeidet with thame, quhill in the meane tyme, thay
wanted nocht to helpe thame, in this thair godly inten-
tione, mony Princes weil confirmet in the Catholick &
Christne faith, of Britannie selfe.

5

15

Papes—Felix 3, Gelasius I., Anastasius 2, Symmachus.

Rom. Emper.—Theodoricus, Anastasius.

*Kinges of France from Clodouie the first Christne King of
france*—Clodouie I.

XLV. CONRAN.

Conran (vthiris names him Corane) Dongardes ful
brother was; becaus King Congalis barnes war ȝit bot
ȝoung, he was maid king. Jn haist, that his brotheris
barnes be weil brocht vpe, he does al diligence, and is
verie solist and caifful.

His law of
the giltie;
that baith ye
names and
crimes sulde
be wrtinge
in a proper
table.

This king, mairattouer, how gentle he was to the
pure, how iust to the giltie, how mercifull to the inno-
cent is meruellous; Quhen he knew that gentle men
war iniurious to pure men, without cause, quha athir
throuch simplicitie mycht nocht, or throuch feir walde
nocht deferr thair names vnto the Juge: he appoynted
that the names of the offenders with thair offences,
sulde, be the searceris, elected, and to that office chosen,

20

25

(be) writne vpe and secreitlie endyted in the kingis bukes; quha, gif thay war agane accuiset and fylet, thay sulde surelie be punissted seueirlie. This sindrie tymes being put to profe and experiance, in haist maid 5 the Realme to florise and abunde in peace and welth. Now Conran receaueng in mariage Ada the sister of Ambrose king of Britannie, cam in gret freindschip and familiaritie with him.

Mairattouer he helpet nocht litle, againste the Sax-
10 ounis, thir tua kingis of Britannie, Vteropendragon and Arthur.

About this tyme, in Moray, was a certane * Shirreff, wyse and prudent in the lawes, and a sincere Judge in executeng Justice. throuch quhais seueritie in reueng-
15 eng, (for he was supreme Juge, now commounlie called the gret Justice) certane vn honest and filthie persones, feiring him gretlie, consulted amang thame selfes, and schortlie eftir amang thame slewe him. quhom how sone the kingis Justice thay hard obiectet to thame,
20 thair stommokis with feir maid sa repleit, that thay thocht thay in Scotland, in na place culde be sure excepte the King war frome amang thame, quhairfor certane mischievous and wicked persones, heiping cryme vpon cryme, maist cruellie put him doun.

25 Jn his tyme rang in france Childerik and Clodouie, in Britannie Aurelius, Vteropendragon & Arthur. It is declaire in monuments of antiquitie, that to King Conran chanced a meruellous thing and notable in tyme of hunting, for he mekle delyted in hunting the wylde
30 deir: quhen now with the hundes the Hart was hunted and at last ouircum and slane, out of his mouth caist a meruellous multitude of serpentes, quhen, nochtw' standeng, the Hart hornes ¹³⁵ vses, as testifies Plinius, to remeid the Serpents bite. Jn this age Scotland, by the
35 Sanctes Colman, Priscus, Medan, Modan, and Euchin

his supplie
to the
Kingis of
Britannie.

Conran is
slane
through
fraud the
zeir of his
regne 34. of
christ 535.

To King
Conran
apeireid a
meruellous
thing in
tyme of
hunting.

* L. adds, "Toncetus quidam."

Bischopes and Confessouris, Scotland, I say, bure a notable disciple to the kirke, to name ¹³⁶ Winfreide named be sum, quha of the gretter honour was worthie, that he was the King of Scotlandes sone. quhen gret diligence he had giuen to his Philosophie, in haist he set his hail intent to amplifie the kirke and to extend the boundes of the religioun. for quhilke cause he tuik pilgrimege, and mony strange natiounis, miserabillie bunde in superstitione, w^t the true lychte of God he illuminat. Quhen many, and no^t few, hevinly preichengis he had preached, and mony buikes cunzinglie he writtne had, at last he dies in a Monasterie called * Augia vpon the Rehne and thair neir the altar honorabillie was buried. About the sam tyme Giberine our cuntry man, a man of pietie and verie notable, feiring ¹⁵ that through the iniuries of the Ethnickis in Albion he war sett vpon; his brethir, sistires, and the rest of his frindes, with his prayeris, gude counsel and admonitione, he began to induce and bring to this purpose, to passe withe him intil france, and thair in the seruice of ²⁰ Christe, lyue the rest of thair lyfe in halynes and quyetenes. And sa thay al descend to the citie of Remehne, quhair Giberin in the prais of Pietie sa florised, that Christe walde his halynes through his lyfe, maneris, ²⁵ faith & Mirackles, maist walde his glore thair amplifie.

Giberine a
haly man
and a godlie,
now Bis-
cope of
Rhemes.

He foretells
q^t is to cuss,
and dis-
coueris the
secret vices
and crywes
of the gentil-
men, and
drawes
thame til
amendment.

Conuallan mairatouer, he quha did bind religious Mounkes to the seruice of Christe in the Ile of Jone, through his discipline, counsel, and commande, him selfe Abbat, through his awne exemple the improbat he teached, through his doctrine the obstinat, and through ³⁰ his preacheingis al vthiris quhome he mycht to the rychte way of Lyueng be brocht. Quhairthrough we reid sa gret a grace frome hevin to be powred in his harte, that lykwyse the ¹³⁷ seiage that was approcheng to the kingdomes of Peychtes and Britanis for thair ³⁵

* Rhenaugia, or Rheinau.

impurities of lyfe, inspired be the spirit of God, he sawe
and fortalde quhat he forsawe, throuch diuine Jnstinc-
tione. And monie thingis of the Scottis successione,
w^tout ony distinctioun of tyme : quhilkes trulie, becaus
5 sa was the wil of God, war to *cum* for the sinis of *men*,
as to sum of the Nobilitie be a certane and sure signe
he said he sulde declair; be declairing and apneng vpe
quhat lyis in the secreteis of thair harte. And frome
the wicked maneris to quhilkes thay war inclyned, to
10 ane godlye and haly lyfe, throuch his exemple and
gude admonitione, he walde leid thame, as his promise
was.

At this tyme, a haly *man*, and of excellent lyfe, S.
138 Benedicte to name, his cuntrey Nurse, the ordour of
15 Mounkes, quhilke S. Basile afor had founded in the
orient and had constitute w^t mony and preclair preceptes
of Lyueng, in a certane toune of Italie, to name Sublake,
S. Benedicte renued the same. Quhair quhen he hard
that the glore of his pietie & halynes was spred ouer
20 all, feiring to collecte of the rumour of this vane glore,
sum stommok of pride; he past to the toune callit
Cassine, and thair hid him as in a nuik, and biging a
Monasterie, tuik til him certane marrowes, quhome he
brocht to the ryght rule of lyfe, & throuch the rule
25 quhilke him selfe first maid, he thame informet. w^t the
better will J of S. Benedictes ordour heir maid mentione,
because of the mae frutes that the Mounkes of that
ordour haue brocht furth in our countrey Scotland; and
* quhair the Monasteries of the Scottis at the larger, was
30 doune throuch thair Labouris, quha in that familie

Quhen the
ordour of
S. Benedicte
was justi-
tute, thair-
ester it
florised in
Scotland.

Monasteries
of this
ordour in
Scotland and
Germanie be
the Scottis
war erected.

* L. “*ed libentius mentionem feci, quod plures fructus . . . ejus-
dem ordinis in Scotia, et quod ampliora monasteria Scotorum . . .
laboribus—in Scotia et Germania extrebanter*”—I have mentioned
this order with greater pleasure on account of the many benefits
derived from it in Scotland, and also on account of the numerous
foundations made by Scotsmen of that order in Germany as well as
Scotland.

thame selfes did consecrate to God, baith in Scotland and in Germanie.

Papes—Symmachus, Hormisda, Joane I., felix 4, Boniface 2,
Joan 2, Agapet.

Rom. Emp.—Anastase, Justin, Justinian.

Kingis of fr.—Childerik, Clodouie, Childebert, Lotharie.

XLVI.—EUGENIE III.

Eugenie the sone of Congal, quhen Conran was slane, entiris to the gouernment of the Realme. * Sum war of Conranis freindes, that steirred vpe this new king to reuenge the deith of his father brother. to quhais speiking quhen he tuik na heid, King Conranis wyfe, suspecteng him to haue bene the author of her housbandis deith, w^t her barnes Reginaz and Aidan, sche passis in haist to Irland, quhilke was a † gret Jornay. 5 10

his clemen-
cie toward
his subiectes.

Eugenie the thrid, in the beginning of his regne, was meruellous clement toward his subdites. Quha that w^t the gretter beneuolence he mycht bind thame towarde him, him selfe walde oft be present in publick Judge- 15 ment, 3ea and principal for thair cause, quhome he thochte was opprest with vniust Jugement, and walde pray thame to renewe the pley; quha had not money to defend and susteine thair cause to the end, the king selfe caused to helpe thame of the ‡ commone.

His lawis.

This king commandet that na orphiling (or § pure) 20 soulebe summound afore lawful age: Nathir soulebe a Vidue be compelled a thousand pace ouer her awne dores to ansuer to the Lawes: Theiues, Traytouris, and thair fauoureris, he caused to be punissted seueirlie; that the bande maide and confirmed amang the Peychtes 25

* L. “erant ex Conrani amicis.”

† L. “Magnis itineribus”—with great haste.

‡ L. “de publico”—from the public treasury.

§ Not in L.

and britonis, soulde byd ratified and still constant he
gave diligent Labour. Thay wryt that about this tyme
King Arthur subduet throuch battell Scotland, Jrland,
Jsland, ffinmarchie, the Jles of Orknay, Denmark,
5 sswadne, Sarmatia, Prussia, Pomerania, the landes of
Gothe, Holland, Zeland, Brabante, flanders, (Flandiris)
al Britane, and at last hail France, to haue maid
the inhabitouris of thir cuntreyes w^t thair Princes,
tributaries. thaireftir (that J pas ouer the kingis of
10 Grece, of the Meades, & Persianis be him ouircum) thay
wryte that the Romane Emperour *Lucius* he subduet.
Mony rasonis persuades me to reakne sik speikingis
rather amang flett * fables, than notable Histories, bot
how evir the mater be, the King Arthur was notable, of
15 a coragious spirit, a noble & balde vertue, and honorable
in actes. Thay, of this King Arthur wryt, that he had
four and tuentie kene knyctes, and because of thair
honour and glore in weirfair, that he nobilitat thame
with †armes, as in our langage we name thame, and for
20 the knawlege thay had in weirfair, and for the gretnes of
that glore, he imbracet thame al alyk with alyk fauour.
Quhen thay al satt doun to the table, that na man^z war
proud, or throuch vane glore began to crak hich gif he
war in the first place sett, or began to Jnvie gif he saw
25 him selfe set laicher than he walde; he caused a round
table to the forme of a croune be maid. The place in
quhilke al thir vset to sit, baith our countrey men, and
the britonis vset to name King Aarthures round table.
The sam selfe table (gif our countrey men throuch sum
30 superstitioune of our forbearis haue not erret) haue my

King
Aarthur
falslie is said
to haue
subduet
mony na-
tioniunis.

King Arthur
a notable
prince.

King
Arthur's
round table.

* L. "potius in anilibus quam annalibus numeranda"—to be reckoned rather as old wives' tales than annals. The pun disappears in the translation, but might be rendered—"rather as *stories* than *histories*."

† L. "equestris ordinis insignibus"—he ennobled them with the insignia of knightly rank. The words, "as in our langage," &c., are not in L.

selfe seine; quhair it is solemnelie keiped, perpetuallie to be remembered of; in the castel of Wintoune, and ouer al noted w^t the names of his weirlie knyghtes; quhilke I sawe noct lang syne.

Guanora his
Wif, Quene.

This Arthur at last, as our Histories makes mentione, 5 was slane be the Scottis and Peychtes, quhais wyfe, to name Guanora, be the Peychtes estir his deith was takne be weiris, and to the day of her deith, in Angus vnder sure custodie, was keipet; quhais Sepulchre is ȝit to sie.

The liberali-
tie of Eu-
genie toward
thair heires
quha in
battel war
slane.

Bot (to our purpose to returne) Eugenie, quhen King 10 Arthur was slane, and had won the Victorie, al quha had chaiped the sworde, constant in thair office, he enduet thame w^t notable giftes; thaireftir he was sa liberal toward thair bairnes, quhais fatheris baldlie had bidne in the battel, that the peple loiuing him with al 15 thair harte thay Jmbrace him with al cheritie. Heireftir quhen he had rung the rest of his lyf, he departed to that hevinlie Hall, quhair flowes al gude vntinkable.

Eugenie
dies in
peace, the
33 ȝeir of his
regne. The
ȝeir of
Christe 568.

Mony monstorous thingis vnnatural, war seine in Albione afore the deith of King Arthur. The Saxonis 20 evin than, with thair capitane Jurmirik, draue the Britonis, w^t thair King Constantine, out of Albion to the farthest nuikes of Wailis. Thay ar noct * farr, quha testifies and left in traditione that Constantine thaireftir past in Jrland, and to that end he mycht 25 seperate him selfe frome the Warlde and set his hail studie to diuinitie, incloset him selfe w^tin the boundes of ane Monasterie, and not lang estir, for the doctrine of Christe, be mony constantlie is affirmed y^t the palme of martyrdome he suffired. Wrytes noct a few that 30

The Saxonis
dryues out
Constantine
King of
Britowie.

Eugenie gat S. Mungwe of Anna the Sister of Aurelie King of Britonnie, and lawful heir to the King of Peychtes; quha gaue gret labour to instructe the people of Orknay, and of the west yles, and lykwyse of vthires nationis, into the christne religione, and bring thame vpe 35

* L. "Non desunt"—not wanting.

S. Mongwe.

in lyfe and gud maneris. He being the first Bischope of Glasgwe, was notable in miracles baith in lyfe and in deith.

Papes—Agapet, Siluerie, Vigilie, Pelagie I., Jhone 3.

Rom. Emperouris—Justinian, Justin 2.

Kingis of france—Childebert, w^t Lotharie, & Lotharie alone, Hiribert, Hilperik.

XLVII. CONUAL.

Conual german brother of Eugenie, abbunding in al
5 vertues, estir Eugenie he obteinet that felicitie, that he
suceidet to the croune, and was maid king. Aman^g
the rest of the douchtie deides, and actes excellent of his
pietie, this is maist notable ; that w^t al diligent kair he
caused the croce of Christe to be placed in dorpes and
10 in Touzis, to the ruiting of the Luife of Christe in the
ground of the hartes of his awne : he mairattouer ap-
pointed, that quahaireuir he gaid, that croce cunninglie
wrochte out of siluer, soulde be borne afor him ; quhilke
quhen he was to leip *onⁿ, maist sueitlie he vset to kisse ;
15 and with all honour he vset to follow, with the bystanderis.
The singular zeale of the haly religione, into this Prince,
his incredible pietie, his burning desyre towarde God, of
this we cleirlie may sie, albeit na vthir thing war to
knowe, by : that he forbad throuch seueritie of ane
20 edicte, that the sygne of the croce nane durst be sa-
balde as ony way to paynte or forme vpon the ground,
quhairthrouche feit mychte haue occasione to tred or
tramp thairpon. He mairattouer honouret christe in
his Preistes, in sa far, that he sett furth a law that quha-
25 w^t his nife had strukne a Preist, he soulde be punised by
ane escheit ; bot quha had slane a Preist, his gudes
maid forsat, him selfe quick shold be burnte, and this

A notable
Prince.

his pietie.

The image
of the croce
ay borne
afor the
king.

His godlie
lawes.

* L. “equum esset ascensurus”—to mount his horse.

* escheit sulde first, of the first *ȝeirle* teines, be payet to the Preistes, and for that cause to be bro' hame, and laid vpe in thair awne Barnis, was commandet be ane edicte. And that the Curetis of the Kirk mychte the frilier, and w^t bettir will, vse thair office in ecclesiastical administeratione, this king appoynted that euerie ane sulde haue his portione allowet vpon him, hard besyd the kirke.

5

S. Mongwe
and S.
Columba.

About the sam tyme S. Mongwe Bischope, and Columba, baith notable in godlie eruditione, delyuered the Peychtes frome the Pelagiane hæresie, in quhilke 10 thay war fallin agane, and in sinceritie of the true Religioze instructed thame.

dies the 10
ȝeir of his
reygne : of
christe the
ȝeir 578.

Bot this King Conual, the tenth ȝeir of his reygne, without barnes, dies : quhais burial w^t a solemne pompe was maid in Jona, and to that Jle was borne, w^t the sair 15 and hauie dule of all.

S. Colum-
ban.

At this tyme Abbat Columban was preceptor and Maister to the Scotis, be gyueng thame the ry^t rule and preceptes of lyfe, quha, (as is euident of his maniris) decored w^t the simplicitie of a †dowe, and with the 20 maist perfyt Philosophie was instructed ; he spred ouer al, evin to the neist Natione, the boundes of his *Virtue*, and smel of his Religioze, togither w^t S. Gall, and certane vthiris haly disciples and † probable : with thame, J say, the Religioze baith braid and wyd, he spred. 25 This Columban was scharpe in snibbing of maneris, in the decore of vertue ernist, mony quhome he had caused to renunce thair vice, to the ry^t way of vertue he brocht. Sum of thir, quha war bent til a solitar lyfe, throuch his counseil, past to Burgundie, til Lexouie, a place in hiche 30

* L. "Is primus de decimis quotannis sacerdotibus pendendis," &c.—he first made the law of paying yearly tithes to the priests. The translator takes "is" as referring to the previously mentioned fine.

† L. "simplicitate columbina"—endowed with dove-like simplicity ; a pun upon Columban's name.

‡ L. "probatis"—approved.

France; thair frome the maist *cumirsum* sorte of the peple to be seperat: quhair, quhen thair lyfe he monastiklie had informed, a Magnifik Monasterie quhair thay mycht duel, he erected, w^t permissione of Theodoricus 5 King of France, and lykwyse that Clostir in France to name *Fontanense*, he biggit. This *man* (as appeiris) Jnspiret with the haly Spirit, is said to haue fortalde mony things of the effaires of France, quhilkes quhen thay war seine *cum* to pas, war knawen be thair end to 10 be true: albeit in that, he appeiret to snapper, anent the celebratione of the Pasche day, that nathir he teiched nor beleiued estir the richte vse and consuetude of the Kirk; at q^{lk}e stane ¹³⁹ snappired lykwyse Bischope Aidane, No^twithstanding a verie haly *man*, sa did mony 15 vthiris of our *cuntriemen*, quhais prais speikes at large Beda in his Jnglise Historie. ffor it was verie hard and difficle to draw frome thame quhat in the begining thay had ressaued. Eftirward no^twithstanding with requeist of the Papes Halynes, leiueng thair opinione, mony of 20 thame conioyned thame selfes to the approuet and accustomed consuetude of the ¹⁴⁰ Kirkes. Heireftir Columban entiris in Alemanzie, quhair S. Gal he leste, bot him selfe passing in Italie, quhen this lyfe maist halylie he had past ouer, in that Monasterie called 25 Bobien, or estir Marianus Scottisman, Bouien, he departes to that assemblie quhais ordour euirmair he followed in Constancie of lyfe. *Marianus* callis this Monasterie Bouien, *because be him being fundet and erected in Italie, it wil be a perpetual monument 30 of his liberalitie and Religione.

In the same Kingis age fell S. Brigida (bryde) of baith s. Bryd.

* L. "Quod ab ipso fundamentum . . . perpetuum erit monum-
mentum"—Bobbio . . . which was founded by him (Columbanus),
and will be his perpetual monument. The L. text merely asserts
this fact, and does not say the monastery was called Bobbio or
Borio *for that reason*.

her father and mother * lawfullie borne, and baith noble and honorable; that appeirandlie, nothing can be eiked to the felicitie of the thrie † Scottis that cheiflie fell in this age; Quha can wiss aboue thir thrie? or desyre hicher? To be at the command of sa haly ane King, 5 to be induet w^t the doctrine of sa cunning ane Abbat, and steirred vpe w^t the exemple of sa diuine a Woman, † quhilkes thrie, al chancet in ane tyme.

In Scotland
thrie al of
ane diuine
vertue, of
ane singular
pietie in-
duet, at ane
tyme.

To al manⁿ wil appeir manifest, quha with me this mater diligentlie consideris, this Womaⁿ with the spirit 10 of God to haue bene inspiret. fför, as I ‡ sal schawe sindrie taknes of her vertues, how mekle sche was inflamed with the loue of God was meruellous; quhen the xiiiij ȝeir of her age skairse endet, contemning the plesures of the Warlde, sche a virgine of the hichest 15 Nobilitie, to God her selfe in the wildernes sche dedicat; quhen through her exemple sche drewe innumerable to her cumpanie; quhen without feir estir her consecratione, haueng put on the Vale of her Virginitie § conforme to the maner of the Bischope, estir the consuetude of the 20 kirke, sche past to the Jle of man, quhair the mair commodious sche my^t lyue: Quhen sche was sa familiar with God in speiking, and w^t his Sanctes sche was sa acquaint, that mony of the maist hevinlie secreteis sche knewe, and war priuie till her. Quhen, last of al, sche 25 wrocht mony mirackles allanerlie through the benifite of haly water, ȝie evin through the testimonie of thame

* L. “utroque parente nobilissimo prognata”—the child of most noble parentage on either side.

† L. “ut ad Scotorum tunc temporis degentium felicitatem nihil videatur posse addi”—so that it would seem impossible to add anything to the happiness of the Scots who lived at that period. “Thrie” and “quhilkes thrie,” &c., are not in L. text.

‡ L. “ut indicia quædam virtutis ponam”—to give a few proofs of her virtue.

§ L. “pro Ecclesiæ more, Episcopi consecratione, accepto virginitatis velo”—having received the veil through the ministrition of the Bishop, according to the Church’s custom.

(albeit war na vthir testimonie) quha ar aduersaris to the verie faith, selfe. *Sum* nochtwithstandeng, of the vnlearned sorte, quhen thay wryt of Brigitta of *Suevia, in quhais name ar writtne mony reuelationis, w^t this our 5 Brigida thay confunde her name: †writeng for Brigida Brigitta, and for Brigitta Brigida; nocht knaweng that Brigitta was mony hunder *ȝeiris* estir Brigida. The Scottis, Peychtes, Britanis, Inglysmen, & Irishmen with sik veneratione in ilk place haue honouret S. Brigida, 10 that innumerable kirkes erected to God, amang thame al, to her, *ȝe sal se*; *ȝie* and mae to her than to ony of the rest: The Irlan^d men contendes that her haly body thay haue w^t thame in that toune quhilke thay cal Dun, in q^{lk}e place the body of thair Apostle S. Patrik is keipet. 15 our cuntry men ascryues the same Glore vnto thame, quha thinkes, that hitherto thay haue honouret it, in the Chanrie of Abernethie, & rychtie haue done thay think.

The *ȝeir* of
God 579.

Papes—Joanne III., Benedicte I.
Emper.—Justin II., Tyberie II.
Kingis of fr.—Hilperik.

XLVIII. KINNATILL.

Kinnatill conuall, his brother, obteinet the kingdome, 20 conuall being deid. Quhen S. Columba and his oye Aidan cam frome Yrland til Albione, with gret fauore he receaued thame and freindlines: quhairof this was a cleir takne, that nocht only elected he, in †name and possessione, Aidane, bot evin in societie of the Realme 25 w^t him selfe, he cheiset him.

Kinnat. de-
partes the
secund *ȝeir*
of his regne
of christ 579.

* L. “Brigitta Suetica”—St Bridget of Sweden.

† This is not in L.

‡ L. “in nomen ac hæreditatis possessionem adoptavit”—not only gave him possession of his own name and inheritance, but also a share in his government.

Eftir this, falling in seiknes, till Aaidane gye^{ng} ouer and committing his full power & authoritie, he gaue vpe the Ghaist, the secund \mathfrak{z} eir of his reyngne.

Papes.—Benedicte I.

Emper..—Tyberie II.

Kingis of fr..—Chilperik allane, Lotharie 2.

XLIX. AIDAN.

Aidan is
crouned
King, be
sancte Co-
lumba he
is weil in-
structed.

Sessionis ar
institute.

Aidan sone to Conran, in Scotland throuch the diligent kair of S. Columba, being brocht, he is crouned 5 king. He be Sancte Columba, in pietie and godlines, verie weil and maist halylie is informet: ffor Sancte Columba with all diligence warned him, quhat perrell in breking the Lawes of the Realme was to follow, and quhat ffelicite in weil keiping thame, Justlie and Trulie. 10

This king was he, quha, first appointed thrie Judge-
ment saites to be seperate ane frome another in solemn^{ne} places, quhilkes this day our cuntrey men^z vses to cal Sessionis: ane, to wit, in Galloway, another in Loch-
quhabir, the thrid in Cathenise. that gif had cum^z to pass 15
in processe of tyme, corrupted and abuset maneris to
haue cropin in amang the Scottis, he neglected nocht
throuch seueritie of Law, to pluck out be the ruites thir
same abuses: He Jnstitute, that al thing sulde be done
conforme to the rule of Justice, dulie and trulie; that 20
na controuersie or pley war hard, outwith the boundes
of thair awne cuntrey, to quhome the actione did per-
teyne: This rule brocht to Scotland, na smal, bot gret
peace and tranquilitie, and to him selfe ane worthie and
immortall name. 25

Aidan re-
fuses to
raader sum
nobil men^z of
the Peichtes
q^z to him
war fled for
refuge.

Mairouer, Sathan, quha invyes all man, and the de-
uyser of al contentione, despyteng sair that King Aidan
sould be in sa gret felicitie, betuene him and Brudie
King of Peichtis, a terrible discorde vpe he steiret. The

hail caus of the discorde beganⁿ this way, for sum
Peychtis of the principall and cheif Nobilitie ; thir being
throuch the feildis, togither at the hunting, cruelle slewe
sum of thair awne æqualis, quhilke quhen thay had done,
5 to King Aidan thay fled for refuge. Quhen Brudie had
requiret that thay war randerit, to be Justifiet, Aidan
denyes to rander thame, and said it was contrare his
honour, to deceiue his clientis fled to him for refuge.
The mater cruelle was delt betuene thame with swordes,
10 and neir Dunkeld, in Striueling boundes, *yair* was the
feild strukne w^t scharpe straikis. In this battell the
Peychts ar sair ouircum, and mony of thame slane doun.
Bot Columba partlie throuch scharpe admonitione, part-
lie throuch godlie exhortatione, the myndes of thir kingis
15 he inclynet to mutual fauour, and at Lenth, bande thame
w^t inward familiaritie.

Heir is ane
sair battell
begun.

Bot Ethelfred, to quhorne in gouernment fell Nor-
thumbirland, ane of the vii kingis of Saxone, quha
amang thame occupiet Britanzie parted in vii king-
20 domes ; quhen of gredines, he lusted eftir the King of
the Peichtis kingdome, to the king he cumis of Peichtis,
with a dissimulat and finȝet countenance, and sayes, that
he sair, and with hauie dolour Lamentis his kais, skaith,
and diffett, quhilke of the Scottis he had receiuet. ffor
25 this cause he gyues him this counsel ; that in haist he
set vponⁿ the Scottis : and this he says, of this mynd and
intentione, that the force of Brudie King of Peichtis war
allutirlie Wracket be the King of Scottis. quhairfor he
was Author that the Peichtis sulde Jnvade the Britonis,
30 quha laitlie war considerit w^t the Scottis ; that quhen the
force of thair companions & societie war brokne, the
Scottis mycht the esilier be ouircum. farther, that he
mycht inflame and steir vpe to thir weiris, Brudie king
of Peychtis ; he assuiredlie promises him, that nathir
35 him selfe, nor his people at ony tyme he sal misse radie
to assist him. Brudie thairfor invades the Britonis.

Quhen thir
Kingis war
be sancte
Columb re-
prehender
thay war to
his admis-
tions obedi-
ent.

Through the
craftie de-
ceit of Ethel-
fred betuene
the Scottis &
Peychtes
weiris ar
begun.

The Britonis being haldne vpe, and supplet w^t the Scotis, dang back the Peichtes, slew the King of Westsaxonis sone; bot Brudie, to quhome gaue the confidens that in the Saxonis he had, gret corage, with speid he sped to the releif of his awne, and albeit at the first onsett monie he had loste, notwithstanding at the neist onsett, with gret audacitie, baith the Scotis and Britonis he putis to flight. Ethelfred is maid quyt of ane eye: Brudie receiueng in his thie ane gret Wound, lost verie mony of his cheif nobilitie. Aman^g the rest 10 quaha of Scotland had beine slane, the violent deith of Dungar, the lawfull sone of king Aidan, brak the hartes of all our people w^t cruell dolour. This Victorie, the hartes of Ethelred, Brudie, and Culin sa far did extol, that the neist summer thay walde Jnvade Scotland: 15 quahome king Aidan mett w^t gret audacitie and baldnes, and aman^g thame maid gret and sair slaunchtir, quhair Centrine king of Westsaxon endet his lyfe. Al halie men, bot cheifie king Aidan, the palme and price of this Victorie ascriuet chieifie to the prayeris of S. Columba, 20 and thanked him yairfor.

Nocht lang estir this, king Aidan departes this lyfe the xxviith yeir of his rigne. quhen within verie few dayes, S. Columba, excellentlie and weil enduet w^t al the gude and gratious giftes of God, leiueng the vntrue 25 trauell of this lyfe, did pas to the glorious counsell of the Sanctes. Him Reid we to be laid in ane Sepulchre with S. Patrik, and S. Bryd, in the toune of Dun in yrland (as thay wil) al thrie in ane graue. Cam with S. Columba til Albion of haly men in number xii, quha 30 maist sinceirlie professing Christ in thair exemple of lyfe and doctrine, spred in our cuntry the Christiane Religione. of quhilkes Bathenie and Cominie war occupied in the instituting of Religious Mounkis; Cibthacie and Etherenan, quha war Columba his brother sones, in 35 fulfilling the office of preistheid did thair diligens;

Aidan winnis
the feild
vpon the
Peichtis
and West-
saxonis,
be thame
agane is
ouercumt.

Aidan
through the
prayers of
S. Columba.
ouercumt
his ennemis.

He departes
in peace the
yeir of his
regne 27.
the yeir of
christe 606.

S. Columb,
Brigid and
Patrik ly in
ane tomb.
War xii haly
and godlie
men of lyfe,
qua ha w^t S.
Columba
teachid the
Scotis
through
thair lyfe
and doctrine
in Scotland.

Domitius, and the vther sevin, ilk according to his power doeng quhat he could or mycht, obteined gret glore in halynes, charitie, and Luue.

And quhen S. Columba did sayl in Yrland, thay to the Jle of Jon tuik thair vaise, and with sair truel thay pas throuch the hail cuntries of baith the Scotis and Peichtis, occupiet in Teacheng, disputeng, and Wryteng, and instructeng the cuⁿtrie men, and all induellaris, in puritie of mazeris and Religione, with gret diligens. In that samyn tyme did Baldred flourishe, and was haldne of gret renowme, and hich aestimatione; quha throuch the gret lust, and desyre, that he had to amplifie the Religione, meruellouslie being steired vpe and thairto inflamed, turned him to the Peichtis, and in the ryght way how to serue Christe instructed thame. How that this haly manis bodie estir his deith, in thrie diuerse places at ane tyme was funde, woundirfullie treitis our Histories. Lykwyse Drostan, King Aidanis vnkle on the motheris syd, forsaiking the kairis of this false Warde, in a clostir he closes him selfe: and throuch his haly example monie he couerted till a gude & heuinly lyfe: S. Conual, S. Mongowe his disciple, lyueng the same maner of lyfe, obteynet the same name in halynes and prayse, with the same fructe, quha quhen he was present at the buriall of king Aidan, quhen he was buriet in the Jle of Jon, and being at the Parleament in Argyle haldne, quhair Kennethe Keir was crouned king, conforme to the ald maner, he nevir left aff, bot evir, w^tout intermissione did publishe the christne and ryght Religione with honest and gude maneris, Jnculcating and dinging it, in the eiris and myndes of all.

About this tyme S. Gregorie, Pape, sent to Jngland twa haly men, Augustine and Mellit, to instructe the Saxonis in the true Christiane religione: of q^{ukes} throuche thair ydan, still, and continual preichengs, mony, first of all thame of Kentschire, w^t thair King Ethelred War baptised.

Thrie fol-
lowing of
pietie in
Scotland.
Baldred.

Drostan.

Conual.

S. Augustin
apostle of
Jngland.

ffarther was in Scotland, evin than, Bischope Dagamie a man of singular pietie, quha, albeit of onlie, and verie natural simplicitie, he thocht al was Hæresie, contrare the alde vse and consuetude of his awne cuntrie, and still had thame suspecte of hæresie. Maist suirlie thairfor following the alde consuetude quhilke he first had professid, he repugned S. Augustine Vehementlie in sum ceremonies at the first beginzing: thinking thame nathing conforme to the Roman Kirk, bot of S. Augustinis awne brayne to be invented. No'withstandeng at last, 10 Nocht against his will, he followis S. Augustin, obeying his sentence, with ful consent, bot for al that, skairse culde he be brocht to, and persuadet to grant the ry^t celebratione of the Pashe.

Papes.—Pelagie II., Gregorie the magne, Sabinian.

Emper.—Tyberie II., Maurice, Phocas.

Kings of fr..—Lotharie 2, or Clotarie.

L.—KENNETHIE I.

he resignes
the Realme
the fourth
moneth estir
his crowning,
anno chri.
606.

S. Gal
Scotis man.

Kennethie Keir, Conual his sone, is crouned king of 15 Scotland. Perceiueng his helth w^t sair and hauie seiknes to be persewit, his kingdome he gyues ouer to king Aidanis sone, Eugenie: And the fourth moneth estir he was crouned, was transported (as we hope) to the number of the Sanctes: at * Kilmacolme is his Burial seine. 20 About this tyme, was a certane Scotis man, to name, Gal, of a Nobil familie sprung vpe, vndir S. Columba instructed: This haly man meruellouslie inflamed to spred the Religione in ffrance, throuch ye gret zeale and affectione he had thairto, w^t S. Columban, of quhome 25 afor we maid mentione, he paste ouer. quhair, quhen he cam, in thae partes, al the monumentis of idolatrie be the rutes he rugit vpe, and laid the fundatione and

* L. “Apud Colmkill”—Kilmacolme=Kil-mo-colum.

ground, of the Christiane Religione w^t al securitie. Heir Gunzo, Prince of this place, quhair he maid his residens, offirit him the Bischoprie of Constans, and thairw^t walde him decore. Bot S. Gal thinking w^t him 5 selfe, the mair compendious & ryght way to God, war the Way of the Wildernes, the Bischoprie he resygnet to * Deane Johne his disciple, a man quha feiret God, and Was Weil maneret, and of singular conditiounis.† him selfe gouerned the Monasterie, quhilke was be him 10 selfe bigit amang the Suiceries, and he gydet it in al pietie and halynes of lyfe: quhair this day, this sam monasterie may be seine famous aneuch, and flourise in al pietie and eruditione of godlie and Religious Mounkis, in the toune called S. Galis Toune, in Suicerland.

Papes—Sabinian.

Emper. R.—Phocas.

Kingis of F.—Clotarie 2.

LI.—EUGENIE IIII.

15 Eugenie 4. Aidanis sone, is maid king, with ful consent baith of the Nobilitie, and commounpe ple. Weil brocht vpp.

S. Columba, inspiret be the haly spirit of prophesie, fortalde Eugenie lang befor, that he in Scotland sum tyme sulde Reygne: quhen frome his barneheid vpp, he 20 was brocht vpp be S. Columba, and be him informet in the Way of vertue, he tuik far mair trauel to defend his awne w^t wapounes, than to seik nocht perteineng till him, or vthir menis geir. To wicked men he Was euir mostfull, all gude men w^t gret luue and charitie, he 25 Jmbraced. † Kardes and Bardis, Gemsteris, Glout-

a thryfie
man, and
profitable
ensimie to
gluttonie
and al vice.

* L. “ Diacono suo ”—his deacon.

† L. “ singulare morum probitate praedito ”—endowed with exceptional holiness of character.

‡ L. “ Mimos, Bardos, Histriones, Parasitos ”—jesters, bards, players, and on-hangers.

tounis, and syk kynd of men, that in nathing delyted
bot in ydilnes, he out of his cuntrey thame quyt ban-
ised, for the maist parte, and mony of thame compeled
to seik thair leiueng hardlie, and with sair labour. Peace
and concorde w^t the Princes, his nerrest nychbouris, he 5
evir manteined, and with thame still keiped: The x ȝeir
of his Rigne, all Kirkes and Castelis q^{ues} the Saxonis
¹⁴¹ mishantlie had Wraked, afor thay war in our Religione
instructed; he caused to be restored all, and reformed.

Cadual
King of the
Britonis flies
in Scotland.

Caduall, King of the Britonis quha war in Cumbirland 10
left, quhen the kingis of Northumbirland & Westsaxone
had brocht his pouer to noct, he fled in Scotland.
Nocht lang eftir, he tuik his Jornay to the king of
Armorik or litle Britanzie: throuth his supplie, in a
schorte tyme, the Saxonis being all dung out of Cum-
birland, he is sett frie, at libertie in his awne pos-
sessionis. 15

The ȝeir of
God 620.

About this tyme, Redualde king of the Southsaxonis,
and Ethelbert king of the Eastsaxonis, war conuerted to
the Catholick Religioun; and even than, w^t terrible 20
and feare battell, persewit thay the king of Northumbir-
land: heir Ethelred is slane.

S. Bonif.
frome Italie
comes to
Scotland:
in Rosmark
is buried.

Vndir Eugenie, that maist haly Bischope Boniface,
(quha eftir the opinione of our peple, was Pape, and
was beleiuet willinglie to haue resignet it) cam out of 25
Italie to Scotland: throuth quhais diligens, quhen the
peple throuth the lycht of Christe was illuminat, maid
cleine of al superstitione, and Pelagian heresie, and
sindrie kirkes to sindrie Sanctes had appointed, in Ros-
markine is he laid. Heir lykwyse S. Molokie, a man 30
of meruellous pietie, in mirackles verie notable, is
affirmet w^t him to ly, quhome thay say was his marrow,
and quhair evir he trauelit, buri him cumpannie in a' his
Jornayes throuth Scotland.

Eugenie
dies the xv
of his

King Eugenie dies, the xv ȝeir of his Reygne, verie 35
fortunat, and happie was he, in thrie sones, to wit

fferquharde, Donalde and Fiakre: of quhilkes, ffiakre Reygne, of
christe 620. contemneng all wardlie pompe, and effairis of this lyfe, walde lyue the lyfe of ane heremite in ffrance, and diet maist halylie. In gret glore, honour, and renoune, is S. Fiakre

5 this man haldne amang the ffrenchmen, cheiflie in that Clostir, quhilke to his name is dedicat in Champanie, and perpetual memorie. Eugenie had ane onlie dauch-
tir, to name, Syra, quha wounderfullie was, throuch pietie
10 of her brother, and his exemple of lyfe, mouet with effectione of a religious lyfe; quhairfor in the toune of Meldem, verie famous amang the ffrenchmen, sche with monie vthiris virginis dedicat her selfe to ane haly and Religious ordour: Al women in this cuntry ar suirlie
15 persuadet with thame selfes, that quha in S. Fiakre his chaple settis * his fute or entiris, thaireftr athir schortlie to be blind, or daft, as we say, or by his mynd.

Papes—Sabinian, Boniface 3, Boniface 4, Theodatus or God
guae, Boniface V.

Rom. Emp.—Phocas, Heraclie.

Kingis of Fra.—Clotarie 2.

LII.—FFERQUHARD I.

fferquhard the eldest of King Eugenies sones, is crounit king. S. Connan, Bischope of Sothirland,† instructed him in all vertue and honest maneris, how
20 lang vndir his discipline he continuet. Bot how sune he his skuil had left, as a man of his awne libertie, thocht he mycht do quhat lyked him best; quhat euir gude he had gottin, and be the Bischope had bene enduet with, in haste he forȝhet: Neglecteng mairouer the dignitie
25 of a king, he gaue him selfe ouer to all kynd of intemperance: This na man hard w^t gud Will, bot war all discontent thairof; he thinking w^t him selfe, that his

first weil
brocht vpp,
thaireftr in
all kynd of
vice he falis.

* "Her."

† L. "Sodorensia."

a King vicious and pelagian.

power mycht be the starker contrare the force of his Nobles, gif he coulde find the way to sawe discorde amang thame ; in this was his haile intent, and heir was he hail occupiet, to raise in his Nobilitie seditione and domestick or nychtbour fead, as we speik. Bot quhen he nouther culd find out the way how to sawe this discord, nather culd make ony end of his wicked Jntentione, ȝie quhen he fell in sik a foule and filthie maner of lyfe, that it was feired, leist quhen he had castne from him the feir of God, he sulde fal miserabillie in Hæresie, cheiflie in the Pelagian, quhilke nevir to ony Scotis king had ȝit besfallin ; fel from him, for this cause, J say, baith the hartes and myndes of his Nobilitie, and his hail cuȝtrie peple, with al vehemence. Thay al suspected him of haeresie, of quhilke verum and bittir 15 poyon heir was he noted, that behind backis he vset to scorne the baptisme of barnes, and confessione auricular to the Preist. for in him oft was this * noted, quhilke was the cause that Pape Honorie, throuch scharpe writeings, accused his wickednes w^t a sour 20 repreife, and rigorouslie reprehendet that falte of his : quhen this Pelagian hæresie was far spred throuch Scotland, and appeired to schute out the hornes ay wyder and wyder, Pape Jhone, quha succeidet to Pape Seuerine, sett al at ane, amang our cuȝtrey men, n^t only 25 in Hæresie, bot in Jnuie, discord, and al kynd of Jnimitie, amang ws. Quhairfor with the commoun consent of all, Ferquhard from the kingdome being deposet, is quicklie castne in Bandis. Jncontinent ar legatis to France directed to the King Clotarie ; quha 30 mycht declare to his Maiestie the estate of Scotland, and ask his grace, to be sa gud, as to grant that ffiakre,

Being from his king-
dome de-
poset he is
castne in
prisone.
legatis sent
to ffrance
S. ffiakre do
require.

* I. "Quartadecimanorum partes in Pascha celebrando secutus, effecit ut," &c.—Having taken the part of the Quartodecimans in the celebration of Easter, he gave occasion to Pope Honorus to write, &c.

quha in his Realme led a priuat lyfe, war lattne passe to his fatheris Heritage, quhilke to him lawfullie did perteyne. The king granted, ffiakre denyet, quha because he knew perfytie that in Warldlie effairis was

5 constancie nane, na stabilitie, nathing sure, nathing praisworthie, drawing his mynd frome thame, he gaue him selfe till another maner of luyeng, mair diuine. He thairfor to his cuntrie Wissis all prosperitie ; and maist constantlie ansueris, that his solitarines was to him

10 deirer and meikle better to haue than ony kingdome.

S. fiakre
refuseth a
kingdome.

Quhen S. Fiakre had gyuen this answer to the legatis, and thay war thairw^t returned, the Principalis of the Realme appoyneted, that the gouernment *yairof* sulde be committed to four men^z maist faithfull and

15 worthie of all credit, ay and quhill another war fund out, lawfullie to succeid to the kingdome. fferquhard, in the meane tyme, that thay compellit him no^t lang to suffir, quhilke of his raschnes, in prisone he than sustined, cruellie put hand in him selfe, and vehementlie

20 w^t violens rest his awne lyfe.

four Regen-
tis creat in
Scotland.

Faerquhard
in him selfe
putis hand,
the geir of
his Jmpire
12. of
christe 632.

Jonas a haly Mounk, at this tyme florished : quha becaus he was brocht vppe vndir S. Columban, was of hiche estimatione for his pietie. In ffrance he sailis, quhair he was verie diligent in drawing the peple to

25 God, and informeng thame in the ryght Religione, as he was weil expert thairin. Tritemius declairis that he was induet w^t all eruditione and leirning, and preclare in maneris. The maist vngratiouis creatur of all quhome evir this Warlde wrocht, that Mischeiuos Machomet,

30 bred in this vnhappie kingis tyme : quhais hail Alcoran (as thay cal it) is * Referit to his voluptuous maner of lyfe ; quhilke throuch the persuasione of Sathan, for this cause he did, that his terrible statutes, smeiret ouer, as it war, with thir his Wantount, delectable, and ple-

The vprys-
eng of the
Machometic
secte.

* L. "totus refertus est"—is wholly *filled* with voluptuous licence.

saunt allurmentis, the esilier mycht take rute in the hartes of his peple. proceedis of this doubtles, that sa monie Nationis, Jmpyres, and Kingdomes, had rather, and with bettir will, ly in the deip darknes of thair awne sensualitie and fleschlie plesure, than to walke in the maist cleir lycht and brychtnes of Christ Jesus. he vses the counsel of ane Sergius, a mounk and sclae of the Nestorian and Heretical Jmpietie, quhair-through he mycht make him selfe the mair vulgar, *commoune*, and knawen, * quhen he gathiret his vile, vnhon-est, maist Jmpure, and vncleine secte, of all sectes, J say, maist Jmpure; he instructed it partlie with the Law, partlie in the Evangel, and partlie of the sectes of al Nationis, in thir thrie, that man of sin, maid vp his awne.

5

10

15

Papes—Boniface V., Honorie I.

Rom. Emp.—Heraclie.

King of fr.—Lotharie 2, Dagobert.

LIII. DONALDE or DONEUALDE.

Donald, estir fferquhard, was maid king of Scotland: This Donald was King Eugenie the thrid his sone: this king being vpsteirit with the exemplis of his foir-bearis and elderis, he restored to the auld dignitie the kingdome, quhilke the vncoristancie and Jntemperance 20 of fferquhard had wraiket and brocht to noct. Throuch this, the myndes of his cuntry peple meruellouslie he reconciled, and allured to him selfe. In his tyme, Cadual, king of Britonie vehementlie rages contrare Eufred and

Quhat was
dekeyet he
restores.

* L. “ quo popularis magis esset, cum ex lege partim et evangelio, tum ex omnium gentium sectis suam omnium impurissimam sectam peccati homo conflavit ”—that it might be the more popular, this man of sin compiled his system partly from the old and new law, and partly from the sectarian religions of other nations.

Ostrik, kingis of Northumbirland, because thay had defected frome the Christiane Religioune : Thir kingis nocht lang befor, war be Donalde restored to libertie and to thair kingdome. Cadual, heirefтир persewing 5 thame, putis thair forces to flicht; heir thame selfes takne ar baith, and castne in prisone, quhair ilk slew vthir. Quhen this way Ostrik and Eufred had endit this lyfe, the commoun consent of the kingis of Britan-
nie gauē the kingdome of Northumbirland, estir this, till 10 ane honorable and haly man, of ane inteir and singular lyfe, thair brother german, his name Oswalde : Donalde king of Scotland in the meine tyme was present baith with his counsel and diligent trauel quhat he could helpe. Quhen Osuald had bene in exile with Doneuald Oswald and
haly king.

15 now xviii ȝeiris, he returns to Northumbirland, not onlie in perfectione of the Scotis young, bot of the Catholik and Christian faith ; and quhen he was inflamed to spred the faith, quhilke he had receiuet, braider and wyder, and had a gret desyre deiplier to rute it, and a 20 gret feroour to confirme it, to Aidan he wrote *letters* that to him he walde *cum* to Instructe his *cuntry* (*men of*) Northumbirland in the christian faith. Bot because Aidan, of the Saxon language was rude and ignorant, he culde no' instructe the people in the Christne faith, 25 quhat euir in Scotis he spak in his preiching in the pulpet, Osuald incontinent to the peiple exponet it, in the Saxon language, trulie w^t a magnifik spirit inspired, and Verilie Apostolical. quhairthrough, thay baith, Aidan, to wit, in sincere preicheng, Osualde in godlie 30 interpreting, profited sa far in spreding the Euangel in thir partes, that in sevin days space Aidan baptised the number of men and Women, that *cam* till xv thousand. heirefтир he is created Bischope of Northumbirland, and in Word and Religione sa Instructes his peiple to 35 gudnes, through his exemple he sa inclynet thame, in constancie through his mirackles he sa confirmet thame,

he helps
Aidan to
preiche with
fructe and
profit no'
little, and is
interpretour
of his ser-
mons.

The saxonis
ar maid
christiane in
Northumbar-
land.

that all Ethnik Gentilitie, q^uin thay war brocht vp, being
forsaikin, in a schorte tyme that hale cuntrye he enduet
with the lycht of the Euangel, and throuch the helpe of
vthiris preistes, quhome Osuald had brocht out of Scot-
land, he erected to Christe and his Sanctes mony kirkes,
baith into Northumbirland,* far and neir. Bot Osuald
be ane callit Penda, was martyret, thaireftr was illustre
in Mirackles. The Jndustrie of the Bisches Aidan and
Corman, Jndustrie, I say, maist haly, maid that kingdome
daylie mair and mair Christian, quhair the forme of al
solid and true Religione was tramped vndir fute, throuch
the false hartednes, volupteous litherie, and al kynd of
Viciousnes, quhilke bred in Ferquhard forsaid. 5

At last King Oswalde, notable in vertue and Mirackles,
be Penda king of Merche is slane. 15
Donald is
drounet ye
xx year of his
Empire, of
Christe 666.

being the kingis frinde, was sair sorie for his deith, and
first setting his hale Realme at peace, Castellis ouer al
fortifiet & maid strang, quhill he in the meine tyme
vpon the Riuer of Tai, in a fischer bote was recreateng
his mynd in fischeng, he is drounet. In a publik pro- 20
cessione, his deid bodie was transported to Duskelde,
and *yair* is buriit.

Sigenie, a Scotis Preist, evin than Abbat in † Suicerland
of a closter of S. Benedictes order, instructed al his
Mounkis dulie and trulie in the rule of S. Benedicte, 25
conforme thairto, and to his ordour: and with al dili-
gens teichet his peiple in al puritie of the Christne and
Catholk faith: quha in gret veneratione was amang
thame all, becaus of the hope thay had into his prayers,
and sincere traist. At this tyme S. Conuan, Columban, 30
Corman, Bigitan, and Bischope † Damias, as our Histories

* L. adds, "et in aliis vicinioribus locis"—and in other neig-
bouring places.

† L. "in Helluensi insula." This may be a misprint for Hiiensi.
Segenus was fifth Abbot of Iona, and died A.D. 652.

‡ L. "Dimaum Chroniacum."

Deuot and
haly mes in
Scotland.

makes mentione, maid Scotland noble & Jllustre, throuch thair haly lyfe, thair sincere exemple, and yair solide doctrine. To thame wrote sindrie and diuerse *lettres* ane certane Archbischope, anent the restitutione 5 of the kirke. This Archbischope was now in france ye Papes legat, his name Hilarie. Was thair mairouer vtheris twa baith Johnes, the ane counseller of the sait of Rome, the vther *gangis formost w^t the torche, as wrytes Bedd.

Papes—Honorie I., Seuerine, Jhone 4, Theodor I., Martine I.

Rom. Emp.—Heraclius, Heracleon, Constantin 3.

Kingis of France—Dagobert.

LIII.—FERQUHARD II.

10 fferquhard the secund, was fferquhard the first his sonne, eftir Donalde he is crouned king. He, afor his crouneng, schew him selfe meruellous clement, with ane fauorable and liberal counte^rance. Bot how sune he began^t to turne his mynd frome all vertue and gudnes, 15 suddenlie he changes in a tyrann, vnquencheable and Gredie in seikng siluer, a cruell ennimie to al Preistes, quhome he knew to abund in money: slew his awne wyfe, committed adulterie violateng his awne Virgine, his dachtyr, I say: with cruel seueritie he persecutet 20 his verie subdites w^t a meruellous kynde of cruentie, turnet the commoune purs in his awne vses. quhais lyfe now cled w^t all kynd of viciousnes, quhen the tua notable Bischopis and singular in halynges Colman & finnan oft had admonised him, bot in vane, and al for

Wickitlie
Reynes he.

* L. “et Joannem ejusdem Sedis Primicerium”—and John the Chancellor of the Roman See. Only *one* is mentioned in L., but *two* by Bede (ii. 19), to whom apparently Dalrymple has referred. “Gangis formost,” &c., is meant to be a translation of Primicerius.

not, at last they forbad him the kirke, bot quhen that helpe nothing, the kingis Nobilitie despyteng his lyfe and maneris, amang thame selfes consulted of another king cheising. Bot throuch the prayeris and request of S. Colmas thay stayet, and he was the impediment that thay proceedet no^t: for he said that God schortlie walde reuenge, and scharplie, the contempte of his Religione. And accordeng to the wordis of that maist haly Colman; sa ca^w to pas. ffor nocht lang estir, bot a few dayes, quhen the king for his Recreatioun was in 10
 hunteng, a Wolfe with his teith rane his syd. ffollowit this Wound ane suelling in his bellie maist lyke the Hydropsie. followit mairatouer a Rottinnes in the Jntrelis, of a filthie and Rottn corruptione, casting furth rottne Wormes. Quhen now the space of twa 15
 zeiris he perceiuet it to grow nathing betir bot ay wor and wor, vttirlie abiecteng al kynd of hope of ony helth, bot desparing, he began to remember of his alde maner of lyfe, & with his teiris woundirfullie to wesche thame. Quhen thairfor he cam til him selfe, he began to * confirme his croce and punitione, quhateuir he had, and w^t mony and hauie teires, he besocht S. Colman, to delyuer him frome this seirfull curse, quhilke he was in. Quhilk quhen S. Colman had done, and maid him participant of the Sacraments of the kirk, plesandlie he deceipted 20
 this lyfe, the xii zeir of his reigne. As the maner and consuetude was appoynted of alde, his body in gret solemnnitie was buriit in Jona.

He rignes
xii zeiris.
He dies the
zeir of
chryste 664.

Scotland Nurised in that age thae twa Religious lychtes and Vertuous Bischopis, Colman and ffinian: 30
 quha first following the futstepis of S. Benedicte, throuch thair studie and diligens thay obteined, that the Notable formes of al kyndes of vertue in thair lyfes and maneris mycht be seine schyne. Thair temperans in feidings,

* L. "divinam ultiōem justam confirmare"—to acknowledge the divine vengeance as just.

simplicitie in cleithing, thair prudense in ordering the grettest effairis of the commoun Weil, mony of the Ecclesiastick sorte of that age vset to follow, verie few to * gang w^t thame. Colman nocth lang eftir cumis to 5 † Lincolme in Jngland, as thay cal it, he cumis, I say, sent for, and thair a gret number of Saxonis, and amang the rest, King Penda, quha to Penda his father in the kingdome succeidet, he brocht frome the seritude of Gentilitie quhairin^t thay war brocht vp, vnto the libertie 10 of the Evangel: ffinⁿanⁿ his haly marrow tuke parte w^t him of the truel, quha past throuch almaist all Britannie, quhilk laitlie the Saxounis had occupiet, with Colman^t he gaid laboriouslie; and gret fructe, ^{ye}, and plentiful, brocht furth in the kirk of God, with mekle 15 luk and grace. Colman at last leiueng Britannie, in pilgrimage he truelis throuch mony cuntreyes of Germanie, in sawing the word of God, and innumerable conuerteng to the Christne faith, farther throuch Boheme, Vngarie, and a gret parte of Grece he passis throuch. 20 Bot returneng throuch Austrie, be sum quha war ennies to Christe he cruellie is slane, thair he obteynes the palme of martyrdome gratious and glorious; in that same place does the peiple honour him in gret Veneration and Reuerens. Of his lyfe and martyrdome, by 25 mony alde wryteris, makes mentione Johne Stabius, Emperour Maximilian I. his Historiographer, notabillie depainteng it furth in sapphik verse.

Colman and
fiseman con-
uerts the
peiple in
Britannie &
Germanie to
the faith of
Christe.

Colman in
Austrie suf-
firis marty-
rdome.
Thair in
honour is
haldine.

Papes—Martin I., Eugenie I., Vitalian.

Emp. Rom.—Constantin 3, Metzen, Constant. 4.

Kingis of fra.—Dagobert, Clodouie, Lothorie 3, Helderik 2.

* L. “Multi securi, pauci assecuti sunt”—many have aimed at, but few succeeded in attaining.

† L. “Lindefernensem”—Lindisfarne. Colman succeeded Finnan as Bishop of Lindisfarne, and afterwards (A.D. 667) retired to Inisboffin in Mayo. See Bede (iv. 4), who gives no hint of the travels mentioned in the text.

LV. MALDUIN.

*He rignes
prudentie.*

Malduin the fourt sone of King Donalde, eftir ffer-
quhardis death, with al votis he is declaired king.

This king with his nyghtbouris, hes evir keipet peace
of a meruellous maner vniuolat ; and albeit he sa hes
done, No^twithstandeng, facillie and with litle labour, to
rest hes he put thae * childre of the Jles and Lennox,
quhen first the author of the Tumult he had brocht laich.

5

The Kirk in the Jle of Jona, maist honorable to the
monumentis of the Scotis kingis, than fallin doun, he
causet to be erected agane, and decoret, and to be 10
dedicat to Christ, and to S. Columba.

*The Pest
seindle in
Scotland.*

How lang this king rang, the cruel pest, the space of
thrie yeiris, was throughe the vniuersal warlde, and slewe
all ouirthort, vp and doun, mony a mortal creature :
Scotland for al that, throughe the grace of God, baith 15
than, and thaireftir, euin as of the hett fevir, lang was
frie. Nathir saw ony man Scotland vexte with this
seiknes : afor we contempneng al sobrietie, thay gaue
thame selfes ouer to all intemperans and gluttonnie.

*The Saxonis
and peyctis
cummisum
to the Scotia.*

Quhen this kingis tyme was now neir ane end ; the 20
Saxonis and Peyctis maid the Scotis mekle ado : quhais
craftines and force Malduin hinderit w^t gret facilitie.
bot small proffit gat he of ony Victorie that he obteinet.
Bot now, because he was suspectet to haue lyen by his
wyfe, not lang eftir, sche ¹⁴² wirriet him in the ny^t, the 25
20 yeir of his Rigne. Bot Sche on the neist day was
appinlie burnet, with al her partakeris, and to quhome
that murthir sche had reueilet. Scotland and Jrland
baith, at this tyme bredd and brocht furth to the kirke
mony of thid lerning, and of a haly lyfe ; of quhilkes, 30

*Malduin
murthir be
his wyfe the
20 yeir of his
rigne, of
chryste 684.*

* L. " Argades & Lennoxios" — the people of Argyle and Lennox.

† L. " abstrusioris."

that haly father Disibodie renunced his Bischoprie, and with all quhome he had gathired vnto him for the spredding of the Euangell, he sailis in Alemanie, thair-efter he gyues him selfe into the Monasterie of ffulde,
 5 quhair the rest of his lyfe he my^t lyue conforme to his deuotione and pietie. Heir lyuet he sa halylie, and of sik aestimatione was amang the peiple, that the honouris quhilkes thay gaue him war estemet litle from diuine honouris.

Disibodie
renounces
his Bischop-
rie, and
leidis a
priuat lyfe
in the Mon-
asterie of
ffulde.

Papes—Vitalian, Adeodatus, Doncius I., Agatho.

Rom. Emp.—Constantin 4.

Kingis of fr.—Helderik 2, Theodorik.

LVI.—EUGENIE V.

10 Eugenie V. Malduinis brother sone, eftr Malduin is crouned king. This king sent legatis to the king of Northumbirland Egfred, to that intent he and his peiple mycht a litle drawe thair braith, or end, as we speik, oppressid with daylie battell, spoylie, and destructione,
 15 and pray him, gif possible war, to Jncline him selfe and accepte peace. The legatis frome Egfred obteinet nocht peace, bot a souerans for certane monethis: that in the meane tyme thay prepareng all necessaris for the Weiris, thay my^t eftirward the scharplier marche ford-
 20 warde, and the baldlier thair Battell promoue. Bot Egfred traisting sa far in the freindschip and kyndnes of the Peychtes, quha suirlie had promised him thair helpe and releif, nocht standeng to his promise tueching the souerans, cumis in Scotland with ane armie of Jnglismen,
 25 and makes a brek vpon it: King Eugenie meites him at the Watter of Leiuin: Thair is a felloun feild, and a strang strickin, thair King Egfred and with him of Saxonis slane mair and les the number of xx thousand, bot of ouris sax thousandis.

The Saxonis
inuades
Scotland,
thair gouer-
nour Egfred.

a notable
Victorie of
Eugenie.

Quhen Eugenie had won sa wicht a victorie, with sa
little ane ouirthrawe of his awne, he hame returnis.
Brudie king of Peichtis (quha begylet the Saxonis in this
battell, not assisteng thame) turnet vpon Northumberland
w^t cruel battel: quhome doubtles he had subduet, gif S.
Cudbert Bischope of * Lincolme had nocht than proffited
mair in his prayers, than vthiris did in thair waiponis.
a little estir Eugenie dies, and in Dunkeld now is his
† burial visitid. quhen skairse he was cum to the fourt
ȝeir of his rigne.

S. Cudbert.

5

He raigne 3
ȝeiris and
died the ȝeir
of christ
688.

10

vndir this king chanced Ronnaȝ, quha trulie did the
dutie and office of a haly and deuote preist for he was
inspiriet with the spirit of God of sik a sorte, that to de-
fekte frome the Roman kirke bot ane iot war sa horrible
a sin, that nane could be hicher, or mair horrible. 15
† Quhairfor sik inuie & hatred was seine against thame
quha war contrare, that a cruel battel he tuik in hand
agazste thame, quha amang the Scotis being infected with
the errore of antiquitie had violatt the forme of the
Romane kirke anent the celebrateng of the Pashe. 20

Papes—Leo 2, Benedict 2.

Rom. Emp.—Constantin 4, Justinian 2.

Kingis of Fran.—Theodorik.

LVII.—EUGENIE VI.

Quhen Eugenie the fyfte was now deid, the kingdome
cam to Eugenie the sixte of that name, fferquhardis sone.

* L. "Linfersensis"—of Lindisfarne.

† L. "tumulus ostenditur"—his grave is shown.

‡ L. "acerrimam ergo pugnam, collecto multorum inde odio,
suscepit contra eos qui apud Scotos, Romane Ecclesie formam in
Paschate celebrando, antiquitatis errore infecti, violabant"—And
therefore, at the cost of much odium, he maintained bitter hostility
against those Scots who, through a mistaken love of the antique,
violated the custom of the Roman Church in the celebration of
Easter.

S. Cudbert with litle labour, persuadet this Prince to confirme the band w^t thame of Northumbirland. bot with nathir prayeris nor persuasione culde he be brocht evir to mak ony band w^t ye Peichtis, quha sa oft falsed 5 thair promis vntrulie, quhomto culd na credit be gyuen : with thame, the hale tyme of his rigne, continuallie he was at weiris, bot at sindrie * tymes. This king in al vertues was instructed vndir Bischope † Adaman, instructed in *lettres*, not lychtelie, vndir quhōme he in al 10 pietie and haly lyfe had studiet weill.

Adamas a Bischope deuote, Eugenie his maistir.

Quhen ten ȝeiris war cum and gane, he, tyret throuch seruice in the commounē Welth, departes this lyfe the ȝeir of our Lord sax hunder nyntie and sevin : Jn Kilma-colme is he buriit. Jn Britannie war seine in thae dayes 15 mony meruellous, strange, and woundirfull thingis, of quhilkes all tuik a felloun feir.

He dies the ȝeir of Christ 697, and regnes 10.

About this tyme Scotland bure to the kirk ane certane notable defender of the truthe, of pietie, and deuotione, his name Florens. as he was in pilgrimage, mony he 20 conuerted frome the darknes of Paganisme, vnto the lychtnes of Christe Jesus. He led a dour and hard lyfe in the farthest parte and innest of that maist thick wodd, nocht far frome that famous flude in Alsatia to name † Bruche. Thair an honorable Monasterie he erected to 25 accepte thame intil, quha for the religioune cam frome Scotland to seik him. § Thay of Wertsburghe estirward cheised him thair Bischope, quhen Rotharie was deid. He is buriit in the monasterie quhilke we said he bigit to Scotis Pilgrims.

S. Florens a deuote man.

a Scotis monasterie in Alsatia.

Papes—Benedict 2, Johan 5, Conon, Serg.

Emp.—Justinian 2, Leo 2, or Leontius.

Kingis—Theodorik, Clodouie 3, Hildebert.

* L. “varia sorte”—but with varying fortune.

† L. “Adamnan.” † L. “Bruschio.”

§ L. “Argentinenses”—the Strassburgers.

LVIII. AMBIRKELETHIE.

Ambirkelethie, quha was the sone of King Eugenie the fyfte, was maid king. In the meane tyme, that he now led a priuat lyfe, with sik brautie of maniris he was decoret, with sik humanitie induet, that al conceiuet a gude hope of him. bot how sune he ascendet to the 5
 digrie and honour of ane king, he was far frome the
 * defens of that hope quhilke of him asfor thay had, bot
 rather all vnhonestie of a foul and filthie lyfe had he
 Jmbracet. ffor he changet Humanitie and Gentlenes
 in crueltie, continencie in plesure and leicherie; liber-
 alitie in Gredines; and last of all, the best walde maneris
 he changet into the maist foul vices, that quhome asfor
 w^t al fauour thay Jmbracet, quhen he led a priuat lyfe,
 now w^t al inuie thay persecute al, extollit vnto the
 honour of a king quhen thay sie him; and that for his 15
 ill conditiounis.

The Peichtis, thinkeng with thame selfes, that the maneris of sik a king war a verie conuenient and gude occasione to thame to do thair turne contrare the Scotis, in haist thairfor thay sett vpon thame, and quhair thay 20 cum, makes a gret slaunchtir. The king partlie to eschewe the necessitie of the present perrel, partlie mouet through the persuasiounis of his Nobles, he passis furth w^t a gret armie of Suddartis against the ennimie.

Schott w^t
 ane arrow,
 he dies, the
 zeir of God
 699.
 he rang
 zeiris 2.

The feild being sett vpon the bank of the wattir of 25 Taij, the king passing furth to do his eise, in the gloming of the euining, in the heid he is schott, be quhome cana man tell, quhair he dies, and frome that parte w^t gret triumphe is buriit in Jona.

This tyme is noted † Adamanus; quhome, honourit 30 and did gret obseruans to, haile Britannie, and Reuerens,

* L. "Spem tueretur"—far from maintaining that hope.

† L. "Adamannus Coludius."

as a Scot, of his natione, ane Mounk of his ordour, quick
of Jngine, Notable in the scriptures, perfyt in actes of
Antiquitie, and sa singular in the sueitnes of preicheng,
sa douse in exhortatione, that he was haldne ane vniuer-
5 sal mirakle in his tyme.

Papes—*Sergius.*

Emp.—*Leo 2*, siuc *Leontius*, *Tiberius 3*.

Kingis—*Hildebert.*

LIX.—EUGENIE VII.

Eftir Ambirkelethie, Ruled the Realme his brother
german Eugenie. This king takeng peace w^t Garnard
king of Peichtis, mariit his dauchtir her name Spontan ;
quhome her twa brether, the neist ȝeir, intendeng to haue
10 slane the King Eugenie, slew her selfe in her bed, schoe
with barne evin than. quhairfor thay war takne alyue
baith, and castne quick to the dogis, quhair thay war
reiuuen in ¹⁴³ duigis.

The kingis
wyfe for him
selfe is slane.
The authoris
ar w dogis
reiuuen.

This Eugenie causet verie monie cunning and leirned
15 men out of al partes to be socht, and to be susteynet of
his expensis, quha mycht note vp the actes and Monu-
mentis baith of Scotland, and of all Natiounis. He
mairattouer commandet to repare in his Realme, alde,
throuch all partes deformet, reiuuen, and brokne kirkes :
20 He finalie had persones consecrate to the service of God
in al honour and reuerence.

Jn Abirnethie he dies the xviii ȝeir of his regne,
quhilke was the ȝeir of our Lorde dcccvi. Jn Kil-
macolme is he buriit. Jn the tyme of this king, the
25 halynes of a certane man to name Doneualde, of a Noble
hous, did mekle gude to drawe the myndes of the peiple
to pietie. Quha in the wildirnes of Ogilui, not far frome
the toune of * Dundie, with his ix dauchtiris, ane strait

Eugenie de-
partes this
lyfe the 18
ȝeir of his
regne, of
christ 716.

* L. "Alecto."

Doneusild w^t
his 9 dauch-
tiris lyues
ane religioust
lyfe.
a monasterie
in Aber-
nethie is
erected.

and hard lyfe lyuet al thair dayes, in fasting and prayer. Quhen thair father was deid, Garnard King of Peychtis, in Abirnethie bigit a gret hous w^t a kirk and gauie it Rentis, and incumming of the nerrest feildis frilie, quhair thir Women mycht honestlie be susteinat, and lyue religioustlie. 5

Papes—Johne 6, Joh. 7, Sisinie or 3osimie, Constantin, Gregorie 2.

Emper.—Tiberie 3, Philippik, Anast. 2.

Kingis—Childebert, Clodouie 4.

LX. MORDAKIE.

Baith gude
and richte-
ous.

he diet the
xvi ȝeir of
his rigne, of
christ 731.

St Boniface
apostle of
Germanie.

Mordakie, Eugenie the saxte his brother sone, is crowned king, he dressis him selfe all the tyme of his lyfe, to keip concord, to be a rychteous persoune, til expreme pietie in al his actiounis. quhen thairfor he 10 was confiderit with the Peychtis and the rest of the kingis of Britannie, that Monasterie (quhais name is the quhyte hous, called be Bedd * Pictiuin, and illustre throuch the mirackles of S. Ninian) and mony vthiris places, quhilkes war consecrat to deuotione, he causet 15 to repair and mend. he endet this lyfe the xvi of his rigne, of Christe dccxxxi, quh^{lk}e tyme in lyk maner Bedd maid ane end of his Jnglis Historie. Quhairin suirlie he wratt mony thingis of the Scottis and Peichtis baith to thair glore and honour. The Remembrans and 20 Memorie of ¹⁴⁴ Boniface we thinke sulde be celebrat, baith because in his tyme in *vertues* he was notable, and that throuch the testimonie of Scot Marian, he sprang of Scottis blude. This man, quhen he was of singular vertue, and in Rome verilie had schawin evident 25

* “ Pictivina ” presumably meaning—belonging to the (southern) Picts. The word does not occur in the Ecclesiastical History, where it is called *Whithearn* and *Candida Casa*.

taknes and singular, of a spirit Apostolical, Pape Gregorie the secund of y^t name, thocht him Worthie to be sent to Germanie, to conuert the Alemanis to Christe: In quhilke Natione, quhen he had put hand to 5 the pluiche, to receiue yairof proffite and gude fructe as ane industrious persoune, and induet thame with al faith as ane deuote persone, and with sik wisdome had gydet all thingis, that the name of the maist cunning and best leirned he obteynet amang thame all: At last 10 sa hard and sa hich in the hartes of this people he appeired, that quhen he had ruited out of thair hartes the Monumentis of all gentilitie, cleine out be the rutes, and the croce of Christe deiper in had planted, thay aesteimet him Worthie to be the first creatt Archi- 15 bischope of *Ments, and in al manis mouth to be celebrat Apostle of Germanie. Bot quhen the Pape, his halynes, vndirstude his Wisdome, Vertue, and Jngine, with his authoritie decoret, legat he sent him to France: that as he had brocht furth fair and plesand 20 fructe in Germanie, in France and to the kirk of that cuntrey, he mycht labour with that sam felicitie: Heir lykwyse, he throuch conuerteng of † Turing, Hessis, and thir callet Austrasioris, had ane happie haruest, and ane gratiouis gathiring. S. Boniface eftir this, returzis to his 25 awne Germanis, quhome throuch tyretnes he forsaikis nocht, bot throu^t teacheng defendes, throuch trauel Incessis, & baith braid and Wyde erectes Monasteries to God and to his Sanctes throuch Germanie. Heireftir quhen he was verie soliste and kairful for his people, 30 that na way thay had beine infected with the Ethnik errorre and opinione of thair Nychtbour ffrysing, quha war no^t ȝit conuerted frome thair black Darknes; In al haste thairfor he postis w^t speid to ffrysing, and quhill

Archibis-
chope of
Ments and
legat frowne
the sait of
Rome.

He erectes
monasteries.

* L. "Moguntiacæ"—of Mainz or Mayence.

† Thuringians and Hessians. "France" of the text must be understood as *Frankland*.

Heir is he martyred.

with al possible kair and diligens he thair was Jnstructeng thame, be sum malitious persounis, w^t his marrowis is he put doune, heir is he honourit in this Earth with the glore of Martyrdome, bot in Hevin^r his reward gratiouislie hes he obteyнет. The ȝeir of our Lord dcclv his bodie first was transported to Traiecte, thaireftir to Ments, Thridlie to ffulde, quhilke labour a litle afor his deith he committed to Bischope Lull his successor; heir w^t all religious honour is he * maid off, and had in Reuerence be the citizenis, and nocht onlie this Prouince, consecrat to his name, dedicatis to him the first place, and estemes him for thair Patroun, bot evin hail Germanie our all haldes him for thair Apostle, and offiris him al obseruance and seruice quhat thay can.

Madulphie.

Madulphie skuilmaistir was that same tyme: quha of a singular ingine, hiche in Theologie, Notable baith in Greik and Latine, nochtwithstandeng he esteemet nathing (*superior*) to pietie and Religious lyfe. Quhen laboriouslie and w^t gret labour, throuch monie ffar cuñtries, he had bene pilgrymme, at last he cumis to Malmisburie a toune in Jngland, and thair he fixis his sait; q^r being a certane Wod and pleasant forrest, he delytet meikle thair to remaine; Thair he erected ane Monasterie Magnifik, to mony, quha gladie and with gud Wil followit his hard and strait maner of lyfe, for the commendatione of his doctrine: This Monasterie The Jnglismen frome that [†] citie names Malmisburie, heir he in the same Monasterie lyis, eftir gret seruice to God, and to the com-
moune Welth.

Papes—Gregorie 2, Gregorie 3.

R. Emper.—Anastas. 2, Arthemiūs, Theodosius.

F. Kingis—Clodouie 4, Chilperik 2, Theodorik.

* L. “delatum”—carried hither.

† Or, from his name, *Maidulfsbury*.

LXI. ETHFIN.

Ethfin the sone of Eugenie the 7, with *commoun* consent, and publik vote of all, is chosen and crouned king. quha quhen he was woundirfullie induet w^t al ornamentiſ of vertue, he fande out the way to nurishe 5 peace with his nyctbouris; and was verie diligent to purge the Realme frome the foul pudle of al wicked and malitious persounis: Constantlie he defendet the Jnnocent against Crueltie; the pure against the stout and mychtie: he wayted weill onⁿ, be all meines pos-
 10 sible, that nathing dekayet of Justice in his Realme, quhithir it war in the Ecclesiastik or Secular Sorte. ffinalie defected throuch age, his strenthe sa dekayed, that quhenⁿ he was nocht able to beir the burdine of the Realme be him selfe, he cheiset of his Nobles four 15 Regentis to gouerne vndir him; to quhilkes four æquallie he diuydet the cuntrie; Jn *thir four was a certane plesante forme of Vertue, bot vnder colour. of this maner amang thame he diuydet the cuntrie. to Donald Argyl; to Colan, Athole; to Murdoch Galloway; and 20 to Conrad, Moray land. Thay nocht samekle respecteng the publick effayres of the *common* Welthe, as thair awne vtiltie and proffit particular, to thair awne hous thay drewe all hame: throuch quhais fulishnes, or thair mischeiuous deides rather, the *commonne* Welth of 25 Scotland cam neir to dekay. Quhill Ethfin began to think how he mycht cal the *commoun* Weil to the alde state and forme, deith cuttit the threid of his lyfe. He dies the xxx ȝeir of his rigne; of our Lord dcclx2.

Mony about this tyme backbate the Romane Kirk for 30 sum ceremoniſ thairin; maist vngodlie, and wickitlie; bot

A Just and a
true persone,
mantener of
æquitie.

He dies the
ȝeir of our
Lord 762.
xxx ȝeiris he
rignes.

* L. "in quibus præstans quædem, sed fucata virtutis species eluxit"—they were distinguished for their remarkable, but counterfeit, show of virtue.

maist constantlie ganestude thame thir thrie Scotis amang the first, Kilian, Colonat, and Tholuamie, al Mounkis, decored w^t al the orname^{ntis} of vertue: quhais desyre to spred the Catholick faith was insatiable, sa that quhen the boundes of Britannie could no^t satisfie thame, thay passe in far cuntries: quhair thay cum to Wirtsburghe in Germanie, and thair, in setting furth the puritie and sinceritie of the Euangel, constantlie ganestude the enimies of the truth; bowet, zie and brack the backis of the heretickis, ouerthrewe the Jntinetiounis of al gentilitie 5 and paganisme, firmlie in quhilke doeng a lang tyme, thay wrochte a notable Worke to God: and last of al obteyned the palme of martyrdome in Germanie.

5

10

Papes—Gregorie 3, Zacharie, Stephne 2, Stephne 3, Paul 1.

R. Emp.—Leo 3, Jsaurik, Constantin 5.

F. Kingis—Helderik, Pipin.

LXII.—EUGENIE VIII.

Eugenie VIII. Mordakie, his sone, is appoyned to rule the Realme. This king was verie infensiu to the 15 Regentis and Gouernouris, quha of the commone gude of the Realme maid thair awne particular proffit. Mordakie, comprehendet in Treasone against the croune, he causes to be heidet: the rest giltie of the *commone gude, he condemnet in a gret soume of money: Jn q^{like} 20 doeng, to him selfe he procuired the fame of all æquitie and richteousnes amang the people, and lykwyse a singular glore of moderatione, that in the begining of his rigne, he was rigorous contrare na man, that he nathir did or said ony thing with seueritie. Bot as oft cumis 25 to pas, that quhen the myndes of men abundes in all Welth and ydlenes, thay fal heidlings oftymes in al mischeiffe: sa he now, throuch the name of the supreme authoritie that he had, was drawin away w^t his awne

first he
lyues laud-
able and
prais-
worthie.

* L. "Repetundarum"—guilty of extortion.

affectionouȝis, suddanlie, J can nocht tell throuch quhat wicked & malicious spirit he is steiret vp, of a gude king, he is maid a cruel tyrann : quhairfor that na skaith sulde fal in the Realme, his awne gaird doupit him 5 throuch w^t quhingeris the seuinth ȝeir of his rigne.

Thaireftir he
tynes him
selfe throuch
glottone
and leich-
erie.

heir is he
slane be his
awne.

Artuill^{us} ane illustir sone of the Nobillest Erle in Scotland, and Sedulius ȝounier, Bischope in the south cuntry in Scotland, in this age obteynet ane glorious name for thair Jngine and excellent vertue : Artuil in 10 Philosophie, Sedulie in Theologie.

Artuil wrot and sett furth a buik of the Mathematikis, commendet for the exquisit Judgement of the wryter. Sedulius in lyke maner, of the actes and monumentis of the Counsell in Rome haldne and celebratt, left till his 15 posteritie a Notable Wark of al eruditione repleit : With Bischope Pergust, in this counsell he was present.

Artuil &
Sedulius.

Sindrie wryte mony and meruellous things of S. Viro, bot for thame al J accepte Surius, quhais proper wordes J will set doun because thay make mentione of Scotland 20 land. Scotland, a birthful Jle of haly men, and in a maner compare to the starris in Number, quhilke throuch the support and defence of Sanctes producet and brochte furth S. Viro : this man forsaiking the honour of a Bischoprie, cam to Rome ; frome Rome sent in Scotland 25 land be the Pape, he vset his office dulie and with al deuotione, and estir certane ȝeiris sailing in ffrance, for his haly lyfe he is aestemed Worthie to be confessour to the king of France of that age, his name Pipinus ; and that he mycht constantlie passe ouer the tyme of this 30 lyfe, the Monasterie of S. Petir in Francozia, to him this king causet til erect, quhair in al tranquillitie he restis in peace ; Thair lyes his haly and blissit body, at quhais Sepulture ar mony benifitis to mony ane bestowet frome hevin, throuch the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ.

S. Viro.

Bischope.

Scotland
fertil in
haly men.

Papes—Paule 1.
R. Emp.—Constantin 5, Copronyme.
F. Kingis—Pipinus.

LXIII.—FERGUSS III.

fferguss 3. Ethfinis sone, succeidit til Eugenie. This king culde baith in simulatione and dissimulatione make a strange * countenauns, for (*while*) he lyuet as a proper and particular persone, (and) he ouercoloured his wicked lyfe, to him natural, w^t a certane feinȝet schadow, and false forme of true vertue. Bot how sune he ascendet to his supreme dignitie, to the dignitie of a king, he gaue him selfe clein and clair ouer to al vice and Voluptuous plesure ; quha thairfor vnhappilie endis this lyfe as followis heir. ffor the thrid ȝeir of his rigne, his 5
 wyfe, quha culde nocht suffir his soull, inordinat, and voluptuous vaiging by her, stikit him in his sleip. Quhill the author of the slauchtir in the mein tyme lay hid, and noȝt schortlie was fund out, sindrie Courteouris war had in suspicioune, than fel furth the questioun quhilke of 10
 thame it sulde be : quhilke quhen the Queine harde was sair displeiset, and culde noȝt suffir to heir, quhairfor Sche walde compeir in publick, and her selfe schaw, quhat Sche had done, and how Justlie, and her dolour thairfor. Now thairfor sche compeiris, and grantis her selfe to 15
 haue slane the king ; for quhilke cause, thay neid noȝt, sche sayes, put ony man to tormentis, for that, quhilke sche appinlie and planelie grantis of her selfe. Quhen this Sche had said, with a knyfe, quhilke vnder her claithis sche had hid for that vsse, Sche strykes her selfe 20
 to the harte.

He followis
the maneris
of Eugenie.

He is slane
be his wyfe,
the ȝeir of
Lord 768.

The quene
grantis wil-
linglie quhat
Sche had
done &
slayes her
selfe.

Patto a
Scot.

Patto, a Scot of his natione, and Abbot of Amarbarik, exceeding baith vertuous and cuzning, he was sa kendlet with Godlie ȝeale, as with a hevinlie fyre cuming doun frome aboue, that he tuik his Jornay to Saxonie to drawe 25
 the darknes of hæresie frome the hartes of that people :

* L. "Simulandi dissimulandique egregius artifex."

Charles the **Magne**, quha sa duchtilie * dang doune thair duchtines, delyted sa mekle of his studie in preiching the sinceritie of the **Euangel**, and of his seruour in pluking vp hæresie, that quhen Suidbert Jnglisman was 5 departed this lyfe, he causet him be maid Bischope of Verden, eftir him.

Pap.—Stephane 4.

R. Emp.—Constantin 5.

F. King—Pipin, Charles 1, Magne his surname.

LXIII. SOLUATHIE.

Soluathie, Eugene the 8 his sone, is to the kingdome preferit, elected, and crouned. This king was of sik a kourage, that he was bent to all kynd of preclare actes, 10 Noble and douchtie deidis, as he naturallie had bene borne thairto. Bot the Podagra or Gout, quhilk of the Vehemencie of calde he contracted, Vttirlie ouirthrew his preclare † Jugementis, and his Wittie and wyse counsel.

15 With his nyghtbouris, he euir keipet peace. the thrid ‡ Bauie slane.

¶ L. “ cogitationes, consilia, conatus, prorsus evertit ”—put an end to all his intentions, plans, and attempts.

‡ L. “ *Banus*.” The metrical chronicle calls him Macdonald Banis.

§ L. “ *Hebridianorum sanguine ortum* ”—sprung of the blood of the Hebrides.

He pacifiet his Realme & sa held it.

Argyl, companiounis to Donald, quhome afor Eugenie had heidet. How prudent and Wyse he was in gouerning the commounre Welth, and Ruleng the Realme, is evident of this, that qnth the Saxonis and Britonis war at deidlie feid, and continual slauchtir betueine thame on

Saxonis & Britonis at perpetual Weiris.

baith sydes, throuch quhilke seid baith Nychtbour and deidlie, the Peichtis in thair guddis and ryches downward began to declyne, he, I say, in sa gret truble amang sa neir nyctibours natiounis, was with Weiris nathir vexed hame nor afeild, far off, or neir hand.

Sindrie
notable cu-
ning men of
religiois in
Scotland.

About this tyme, in Scotland war sindrie cuuning and religious persounes, and notable; to Wit; that maist Vigilant Bischope, and kairful for his flock, Macarius; the Cathedral Kirk of Abirdine was erected in this manis honour; than Diuinicus, Archidiacon thair, Cogar and Dunstan Abbotis, albeit sum alledge, thay fell in another tyme. Soluathie the xx ȝeir of his Rigne departs this lyfe.

Solmathie
dies xx ȝeir
of his Rigne.
of our Lord
733.

Papes—Adrian 1.

R. Emp.—Constantin 5, Lion 4, Constan. 6, with his mother Treme.

f. Kingis—Chairles the Magne 1.

* The 4 Stemm, or digrie of kin and blude, suld heir

be imprented, of Kingis: of quhais lyfes and

Notable actes the fyfte buke heir

following will make menti-

one, historicallie and

declair.

* In the Latin copy these “stems,” or genealogical tables, are printed at the commencements of the different “books.” The one here mentioned contains a portrait of Achaius, with his hand grasping what is apparently intended for the hand of Charlemagne, with whom, a note states, “he made a perpetual league which the Scots have religiously maintained with the French until the present day.” The heraldic shield, which in previous tables only exhibited the lion rampant, is here further adorned with what is intended for the well-known “Tressure flory counter-flory” of the present royal shield of Scotland, which is said to have first appeared upon the shield of Alexander II. about A.D. 1235. Bishop Leslie not only gives it a much earlier date, but interprets it to represent the *fleurs de lys* of France, introduced upon the shield of Scotland in memory of the league made with Charlemagne, “enriched with a double line adorned with lilies, as a perpetual memorial of the league made with Charlemagne.”

5

15

OF THE NOTABLE ACTES OF SCOTLAND

THE FYFTE BUKE.

LXV. ACHAIUS.

EFTIR King Soluathizs had followet the way of the followeris of nature, Achaius Ethfinis sone, Was æsteimet as ane amang thame all cheiffie Worthie to take the croune vpon his heid, baith for his quick prudence, in 5 quhilk he excellit in Judgement, and for his singular pietie, quhairin he was noted to be sett alone. He thairfor maist prudentlie perceieng in how dangerous ane * state now the Realme was, how Scopulous,¹⁴⁵ stendirrie, or stanie, was the stedd, quhairon thay than 10 stude, how sair a plaig was till it, ciuile † weiris, in his beginzing, he gaue him selfe hail to repare that, and put al till ordour, that Nichtbour fide being ¹⁴⁶but to rest amang the commoun people, his Nobilis mycht, amang thame selfes, constantlie luue ilk vthir, throuch ben- 15 euolent keiping of kyndnes, cumpanie, and freindschip. Quhen this knott he happilie had ‡ knutt, and brocht this his purpos to passe; he Jnvades the § Hiland men, quha Wraket all about Dunbriton, and waisted that

Achai a
gude king
and a pru-
dent.

He drawes
the hertes of
his nobilitie
till him
throuch
fauour and
kyndnes &
drives away
the § hiland
men.

* An "e" has been partially erased at the beginning of this word.

† L. "Quam difficili scopulosque in loco versaretur Respub. quam civilis dissensio affixit"—in how dangerous and rocky a situation was the state which was afflicted by civil discord.

‡ L. "feliciter nexuerat id negotium."

§ L. "Hibernos."

cuntrie. Thay fled for lyfe, and at last crauet peace of Achai, constantlie promiseng to keip gude ordour.

The yeir of
our Lord
was this
788.

About this tyme, the * Jnglismen, partie throuch the ryches, quhairin thay aboundet, partie throuch greidines, that maid thame sa vnsatiable vpon vthir menis geir, sa trublet baith the frenche and German Seyis in Rubrie and Reiueng, that al passage of Treffik with strangeris, or trauelling to farr cuntries, Was neirby cuttit away fra Britannie. Quhairfor quhen Charles the Magne, (eftir Emperour,) saw the Riches of ffrance 10 gretlie cum to dekay, quhais riches cheiflie in thir dayis mekle consisted in merchandise and treffik with vthir Natiounis, to remeid this evill a mair commodious way, than this, he thocht, he culde not find: To make a League or band w^t the Scotis and Peichtis against the 15 Jnglismen, quhilke being done, al thair forces mychte weil be hindret. He thairfor, Charles the Magne, I say, directes Legatis to the Scotis and Peichtis contrare the Jnglismen, concerneng this Band, that thay laying thair heidis together, mycht find the way of concorde. The 20 Peichtes vtirlie refuses the conditionis offired. The Scotis, With blyth consent of the hail peple, accepts the band, and Jmbraces al the conditionis, eftir that be the Nobilis of the Realme thay had beine Weil Weyit and considiret, eftir ardent † prayer, eftir discording 25 w^t thame selfes ilk w^t vther, in maneris, eftir sure confirmatione of the band on baith handes.

This thing, w^t my selfe, quhen I weil Wey and consider, I nevir thocht vthirwyse nor can think to proceid, than of the Prouidence of God. for in truble and Vexatione; ffrance culde neuir haue a stouter man of weir than a Scott; Nathir ffrance flurissing in her flouris,

* L. "Angli"—the Angles.

† L. "diversissimis orationibus diversissimis studiis agitatem"—discussed in very opposing speeches, and with opposing interests.

culde neuir find a faithfuller freind than ane Scott, euir,
J say, ȝit had, or hithirto culde haue.

How fauorable shall J say the frenche men haue on
the vthir parte beine, and beneuolent agane to the Scotis?

5 quhen all monumentis of Antiquitie, baith of the tyme
by past, and present, cleirlie can testifie, that the frenche
man with the Scott, quhair euir he mett, held him for na
vthir than for a frenche man, than for a brother, than for
a faithful obseruer of the alde, constant, confirmet band.

10 This I thocht necessar heir to make mentione of, as a
Wype be the way, that all baith frenche and Scotis may
vndirstand, that be God, this band, to the confirmatione
of baith the Realmes, Was confirmet, be this taken, first
for the disagriment of the Nobilitie amang thame selfes

15 concerneng the samyn band: thaireftr how schortlie
al in ane agriet, With blythnes consenteng toghether;
quhilke band, car nocht without a pernicious Wick-
itnes and mischeuous maner of deiling, be man can not
be violat: cheiflie now qn sa mony hundir ȝeiris ar past

20 ouer, sa constantlie on vnto this day it hes perseueiret
vnuolat.

Thir ar the conditiounis of the band.

The band
betuuen the
Scotis and
frenche is in
perpetual
confirmet.

I. That the freindschip betuene Scotis and French
is nocht bund for a certane tyme, bot to in-
dure perpetualie in al æternatie.

25 II. That quhat Jniure ane of the tua Natiouzis re-
ceiuies of the Jnglismen: sal be done as vnto
baith.

III. That quhen the French is inuadet be the Jnglis,
the Scotis sal rais ane furnist armie, nocht-
withstandeng vpon the French expenses.

30 IIII. That quhen the Scott is inuadet be the Jnglis,
the french sal assist; vpon thair awne ex-
penses.

35 V. Gif Scott or frenche, priuat or publik, susteine
ane Jnglis with counsel, money, or furnissing,

The condi-
tiounis of
the band.

cuntrie. Thay fled for lyfe, and at last crauet peace of Achai, constantlie promiseng to keip gude ordour.

The Jeir of
our Lord
was this
788.

About this tyme, the * Jnglismen, partie throuch the ryches, quhairin thay aboundet, partie throuch greidines, that maid thame sa vnsatiable vpon vthir menis geir, sa trublet baith the ffrenche and German Seyis in Rubrie and Reiueng, that al passage of Treffik with strangeris, or trauelling to farr cuntries, Was neirby cuttit away fra Britanzie. Quhairfor quhen Charles the Magne, (eftir Emperour,) saw the Riches of ffrance 10 gretlie cum to dekay, quhais riches cheiflie in thir dayis mekle consisted in merchandise and treffik with vthir Natiounis, to remeid this evill a mair commodious way, than this, he thocht, he culde no^t find: To make a Leage or band w^t the Scotis and Peichtis against the 15 Jnglismen, quhilke being done, al thair forces mychte weil be hindret. He thairfor, Charles the Magne, I say, directes Legatis to the Scotis and Peichtis contrare the Jnglismen, concerneⁿg this Band, that thay laying thair heidis togither, mycht find the way of concorde. The 20 Peichtes vttirlie refuses the conditionis offired. The Scotis, With blyth consent of the hail peple, acceptes the band, and Jmbraces al the conditionis, eftir that be the Nobilis of the Realme thay had beine Weil Weyit and considiret, eftir ardent † prayer, eftir discording 25 w^t thame selfes ilk w^t vther, in maneris, eftir sure confirmatione of the band on baith handes.

Charles the
magne
sendis legatis
to the Scotis
and peichtis,
craueng
with thame
to make a
band con-
trare the
Jnglismen.

This thing, w^t my selfe, quhen J weil Wey and consider, J nevir thocht vthirwyse nor can think to proeid, than of the Prouidence of God. for in truble and Vexatione; ffrance culde neuir haue a stouter man of weir than a Scott; Nathir ffrance flurissing in her flouris,

* L. "Angli"—the Angles.

† L. "diversissimis orationibus diversissimis studiis agitatem"—discussed in very opposing speeches, and with opposing interests.

culde neuir find a faithfuller freind than ane Scott, euir,
J say, ȝit had, or hithirto culde haue.

How fauorable shall J say the ffrenche men haue on
the vthir parte beine, and beneuolent agane to the Scotis?

5 quhen all monumentis of Antiquitie, baith of the tyme
by past, and present, cleirlie can testifie, that the ffrenche
man with the Scott, quhair euir he mett, held him for na
vthir than for a ffrenche man, than for a brother, than for
a faithful obseruer of the alde, constant, confirmet band.

10 This I thocht necessar heir to make mentione of, as a
Wype be the way, that all baith ffrenche and Scotis may
vndirstand, that be God, this band, to the confirmatione
of baith the Realmes, Was confirmet, be this taken, first
for the disagriment of the Nobilitie amang thame selfes
15 concerneng the samyn band: thairef stir how schortlie
al in ane agriet, With blythnes consenteng toghether;
quhilke band, car nocht without a pernicious Wick-
itnes and mischeuous maner of deiling, be man can not
be violat: cheiflie now qn sa mony hundir ȝeiris ar past
20 ouer, sa constantlie on vnto this day it hes perseueiret
vnuolat.

Thir ar the conditiounis of the band.

The band
betuene the
Scotis and
ffrenche is in
perpetual
confirmet.

25 I. That the freindschip betuene Scotis and French
is nocht bund for a certane tyme, bot to in-
dure perpetualie in al æternatie.

II. That quhat Jniure ane of the tua Natiounis re-
ceiuies of the Jnglismen: sal be done as vnto
baith.

30 III. That quhen the French is inuadet be the Jnglis,
the Scotis sal rais ane furnist armie, nocht-
withstandeng vpon the French expenses.

III. That quhen the Scott is Jnuadet be the Jnglis,
the french sal assist; vpon thair awne ex-
penses.

35 V. Gif Scott or ffrenche, priuat or publik, susteine
ane Jnglis with counsel, money, or furnissing,

The condi-
tiounis of
the band.

cuntrie. Thay fled for lyfe, and at last crauet peace of Achai, constantlie promiseng to keip gude ordour.

The 3eir of
our Lord
was this
788.

About this tyme, the * Jnglismen, partie throuch the ryches, quhairin thay aboundet, partie throuch greidines, that maid thame sa vnsatiable vpon vthir menis geir, sa trublet baith the frenche and German Seyis in Rubrie and Reiueng, that al passage of Treffik with strangeris, or trauelling to farr cuntries, Was neirby cuttit away fra Britannie. Quhairfor quhen Charles the Magne, (eftir Emperour,) saw the Riches of ffrance 10 gretlie cum to dekay, quhais riches cheiflie in thir dayis mekle consisted in merchandise and treffik with vthir Natiounis, to remeid this evill a mair commodious way, than this, he thocht, he culde not find: To make a League or band w^t the Scotis and Peichtis against the 15 Jnglismen, quhilke being done, al thair forces mychte weil be hindret. He thairfor, Charles the Magne, I say, directes Legatis to the Scotis and Peichtis contrare the Jnglismen, concerneng this Band, that thay laying thair heidis toghether, mycht find the way of concorde. The 20 Peichtes vttirlie refuses the conditionis offired. The Scotis, With blyth consent of the hail peple, accepts the band, and Jmbraces al the conditionis, eftir that be the Nobilis of the Realme thay had beine Weil Weyit and considiret, eftir ardent † prayer, eftir discording 25 w^t thame selfes ilk w^t vther, in maneris, eftir sure confirmatione of the band on baith handes.

This thing, w^t my selfe, quhen I weil Wey and consider, I nevir thocht vthirwyse nor can think to proceid, than of the Prouidence of God. for in truble and Vexatione; ffrance culde neuir haue a stouter man of weir than a Scott; Nathir ffrance flurissing in her flouris,

* L. "Angli"—the Angles.

† L. "diversissimis orationibus diversissimis studiis agitatem"—discussed in very opposing speeches, and with opposing interests.

culde neuir find a faithfuller freind than ane Scott, euir,
J say, ȝit had, or hithirto culde haue.

How fauorable shall J say the ffrenche men haue on
the vthir parte beine, and beneuolent agane to the Scotis?

5 quhen all monumentis of Antiquitie, baith of the tyme
by past, and present, cleirlie can testifie, that the ffrenche
man with the Scott, quhair euir he mett, held him for na
vthir than for a ffrenche man, than for a brother, than for
a faithful obseruer of the alde, constant, *confirmet* band.

10 This I thocht necessar heir to make mentione of, as a
Wype be the way, that all baith ffrenche and Scotis may
vndirstand, that be God, this band, to the *confirmatione*
of baith the Realmes, Was *confirmet*, be this taken, first
for the disagriment of the Nobilitie amang thame selfes
15 *concerneng* the samyn band: thaireftir how schortlie
al in ane agriet, With blythnes *consenteng* togither;
quhilke band, car nocht without a pernicious Wick-
itnes and mischeuous maner of deiling, be man can not
be violat: cheiflie now qn sa mony hundir ȝeiris ar past
20 ouer, sa *constantlie* on vnto this day it hes perseueiret
vnuolat.

The band
betuuen the
Scotis and
ffrenche is in
perpetual
confirmet.

Thir ar the conditiounis of the band.

1. That the freindschip betuene Scotis and French
is nocht bund for a certane tyme, bot to in-
dure perpetualie in al æternatie.

25 2. That quhat Jniure ane of the tua Natiounis re-
ceiuies of the Jnglismen: sal be done as vnto
baith.

30 3. That quhen the French is inuadet be the Jnglis,
the Scotis sal rais ane furnist armie, nocht-
withstandeng vpon the French expenses.

35 4. That quhen the Scott is Jnuadet be the Jnglis,
the french sal assist; vpon thair awne ex-
penses.

V. Gif Scott or ffrenche, priuat or publik, susteine
ane Jnglis with counsel, money, or furnissing,

The condi-
tiounis of
the band.

cuntrie. Thay fled for lyfe, and at last crauet peace of Achai, constantlie promiseng to keip gude ordour.

The zeir of
our Lord
was this
788.

Charles the
magne
sendis legatis
to the Scotis
and Peichtis,
craues
with thame
to make a
band
contrare the
Jnglismen.

About this tyme, the * Jnglismen, partie throuch the ryches, quhairin thay aboundet, partie throuch greidines, that maid thame sa vnsatiable vpon vthir menis geir, sa trublet baith the frenche and German Seyis in Rubrie and Reiueng, that al passage of Treffik with straungeris, or trauelling to farr cuntries, Was neirby cuttit away fra Britanzie. Quhairfor quhen Charles the Magne, (eftir Emperour,) saw the Riches of ffrance 10 gretlie cum to dekay, quhais riches cheiflie in thir dayis mekle consisted in merchandise and treffik with vthir Natiounis, to remeid this evill a mair commodious way, than this, he thocht, he culde not find: To make a Leagge or band w^t the Scotis and Peichtis against the 15 Jnglismen, quhilke being done, al thair forces mychte weil be hindret. He thairfor, Charles the Magne, I say, directes Legatis to the Scotis and Peichtis contrare the Jnglismen, concerneing this Band, that thay laying thair heidis together, mycht find the way of concorde. The 20 Peichtes vttirlie refuses the conditionis offired. The Scotis, With blyth consent of the hail peple, acceptes the band, and Jmbraces al the conditionis, eftir that be the Nobilis of the Realme thay had beine Weil Weyit and considiret, eftir ardent + prayer, eftir discording 25 w^t thame selfes ilk w^t vther, in maneris, eftir sure confirmatione of the band on baith handes.

This thing, w^t my selfe, quhen I weil Wey and consider, I nevir thocht vthirwyse nor can think to proeid, than of the Prouidence of God. for in truble and Vexatioun; ffrance culde neuir haue a stouter man of weir than a Scott; Nathir ffrance flurissing in her flouris,

* L. "Angli"—the Angles.

+ L. "diversissimis orationibus diversissimis studiis agitatem"—discussed in very opposing speeches, and with opposing interests.

culde neuir find a faithfuller freind than ane Scott, euir,
J say, ȝit had, or hithirto culde haue.

How fauorable shall J say the frenche men haue on
the vthir parte beine, and beneuolent agane to the Scotis?

5 quhen all monumentis of Antiquitie, baith of the tyme
by past, and present, cleirlie can testifie, that the frenche
man with the Scott, quhair euir he mett, held him for na
vthir than for a frenche man, than for a brother, than for
a faithful obseruer of the alde, constant, *confirmet* band.

10 This I thocht necessar heir to make mentione of, as a
Wype be the way, that all baith frenche and Scotis may
vndirstand, that be God, this band, to the *confirmatione*
of baith the Realmes, Was *confirmet*, be this taken, first
for the disagriment of the Nobilitie amang thame selfes

15 *concerneng* the samyn band: thaireftir how schortlie
al in ane agriet, With blythnes *consenteng* togither;
quhilke band, car nocht without a pernicious Wick-
itnes and mischeuous maner of deiling, be man can not
be violat: cheiflie now qⁿ sa mony hundir ȝeiris ar past

20 ouer, sa constantlie on vnto this day it hes perseueiret
vnuolat.

Thir ar the conditiounis of the band.

The band
betuuen the
Scotis and
frenche is in
perpetual
confirmet.

I. That the freindschip betuene Scotis and French
is nocht bund for a certane tyme, bot to in-
dure perpetualie in al æternatie.

25 II. That quhat Jniure ane of the tua Natiouzis re-
ceiues of the Jnglismen: sal be done as vnto
baith.

III. That quhen the French is inuadet be the Jnglis,
the Scotis sal rais ane furnist armie, nocht-
withstandeng vpon the French expenses.

30 IIII. That quhen the Scott is Jnuadet be the Jnglis,
the french sal assist; vpon thair awne ex-
penses.

35 V. Gif Scott or frenche, priuat or publik, susteine
ane Jnglis with *counsel*, money, or furnissing,

The condi-
tiounis of
the band.

contrare Scott or French ; with baith, he sal be accuisset of Traison.

VI. That the french With the Jnglis sal neuir bind,
bot w^t consent of the Scott, nathir Scott bot
with consent of the French.

To thir conditiounis of peace, this, for a conclusioun
was agmented, that thir conditiounes publikelie Writtne
in Parchement, and seilet with the Seilis of baith the
kingis, sulde pas to the posteritie following, frome age
til age perpetuallie throuch all generatiounis.

5

10

10

That this band, quhilke all the Scottis sa Willinglie
imbracet, mycht in France be confirmet, king Achai sent
his bruther Williame to ffrance, accu^wpaniet with vthir
four, to wit, ¹¹ Clement, Jhone, Raban, and Alcuin,
qua war of sa Noble and quick Jngine, that of all
thingis, thair knawlege Was nocht little, bot verie
noteable, meruellous, and mekle. And that king Achai
mycht schawe furth a cleir signe and takne of his Cour-
agious Courage and mynd toward the frenchmen, to
Charles the Magne, quha that tyme, had cruell and con-
tinuall Weiris w^t all christian ennemis, he sent to his
supplie, four thousand men of Weir.

15

20

20

Quhen Raban and Alcuin had endit thair legacie, to
Scotland thay returne. This quhen Jhone and Clement
schortlie intendet, the king, Charles the Magne, throuch
his prayer and ernist requeist stayis thame baith in
ffrance. Thir tua War sent to the Academis, to Jn-
structe and bring vp the 30uth in discipline and ver-
tuuous sciences: Jhone to Pauie, a citie in Lumbardie,
Clement to Paris. Charles the Magne nocht lang afor,
had baith thir colleges foundet.

25

30

Heirof may be seine, as be mony, in Monumentis of
Antiquitie, is furth sett, that the maist politik studies,
and maist solid doctrine, quhilkes flurische in Acadamies
or Colleges throuch France, this day, of the Scottis, as of
thair first fountanis to haue sprung.

William, alias, as^t
pleisus sum,
Guilhelm,
Achai his
bruther to
conferme the
band passis
in france.

In supplie
of Charles
ye Magne
four thou-
sand men of
Weir Scottis
with Guili-
elme ar
sent in
france.

The first
foudationis
of ye col-
leges Paris
and Pauie
war laid be
tua Scottis-
men Clem-
ent and

William, in the meane tyme (or, * evin, as now pleiseth the peple, in this age to say, Scotis Gulielme) With Charles the Magne Wrocht worthilie, and duchtilie did in the Weiris; quhair becaus he had subduet mony, 5 quha war blindet w^t the erroris of Mahomet; had restoret Pape Lion the thrid to his former honour and dignitie; Had put the Citie of Florens, than wracket and ouirthrawen, to the alde libertie; he wan a maist Magnifik and glorious name in the Weiris. ffor albeit 10 thir deidis of actiuitie appeiris to proeid of Chairles the Magne, vndir quhais chaire than was William: ȝit monie mekle referris cheiflie to William, becaus qⁿ charles the Magne was absent, William had ay the first place: ȝe the verie citizenis selfes of Florence, sett furth 15 a law of the Lionis, quhilkes the kingis of Scotis weiris in thair armes, that of the commounre gude of the citie, euir thay † sulde be fed; In perpetual & thankful remembrance of that benifite, quhen the Citie of florence Was put to libertie, be the king of Scotis sone Gulielme 20 foirsaid.

Quhen thir feildes War fochten, and thir Weiris worⁿe out, William returnes to ffrance: quhair, with Chairles the Magne, maist hartilie, and w^t al cheir & blythnes he was accepted: he mairatouer with a blyth and cheirfull 25 countenans, of Chairles the Magne, nocht only was receiuet, bot evin with gret giftis and magnifik, for sa thankful labour, sa faithfullie Wrochte baith in Peace and Weir. Within a few dayis, estir this, Wilȝeam passis in Germanie.

30 Quhen now he had na bairnes, bot mony landis, throuch the beneuolent fauour and grace of Chairles the

Jhone, of all' eruditione and science repleit.

The preclair and notable actes of Scotis Wilȝeam.

In Florence the lions in remeberans of the Scotis ar fed.

* Neither this parenthesis nor the similar remarks in the margin of p. 264 is in L. text.

† L. "legem de Leonibus publico civitatis sumptu alendis sciscentibus"—they decreed by law that lions should be kept at the public expense.

Wilȝeām in
Germanie
erectes
Monasteries.

Quha heir
ar Jnclosit
sulde haue
lettiris, or as
we speik
be lettireret.

Na man bot
Scotis, in
thir Clostiris
sulde be ad-
mitted in
Abbotis or
Mounkis.

The armes
of ffrance ar
conioynd to
the Scotis
armes.

Magne, and being in extremitie of ȝeiris, and in his alde age, this way he dedicatis him selfe to Christe, and al that he had, as to his Author and Saluour; baith in Germanie, and Jn Jtalie, he causes to erecte mony monasteries of S. Benedictes order, and prouydet thame abundantly how thay mycht lyue, and straytie commandes, that quha in thir Clostiris war to be professit, sulde studie to *lettres* and vertues with all possibilite. 5

That, farthermair, rememberance of him mycht neuir 10 cum in obliuion of forgetfulnes, he institute, that quha war nocth sprung of the Scotis natioun, in the numbir of thir Mounkis sulde nocthe be receauet; mekle les be admitted to the digrie of ane Abbat. Throuch his example, vthiris Princes of Germanie, mouet of deuotioune, 15 eftir him erected sindrie Monasteries, to Mounkis of our Natioune, as may be seine: and as may cleir anuich testifie the Monasteries, quhilkes commounlie euin this day beiris the name of Scot, called the Scotis Clostiris, in quhilkes, as We see, Scotis ȝe in this age haue beine 20 Abbatis, as in sum places thay ȝit ar, still in thair dignitie and kuir.

Chairles the Magne, that this band, confirmet betuein Scotis and French, he mycht ȝit firmlier confirme, be ane perpetual monument, and that sum way he mycht 25 make it knawen to the generatiounes to cum, and to the posteritie following, of quhat inclinatione and mynd he evir was to the Scotis Natioune, & toward thame how bent he was ay, the armes of ye Realme of ffrance, with the armes of the Realme of Scotland he coupled togither, 30 cunninly, craftilie, and workmanly, of this maner: The Lione he settis in the midis; than tua lynes, on the vttir syd, Wouen in threid of golde, to quhilkes Jngeni-ouslie ar coupled the Lillies * inwouen, inwounde, and

* L. "transversa et quasi trajecta"—placed counterwise, and as if drawn through the lines.

drawin through, as it war: quhilk in the Scotis Armes
this day may be seine with vs.

Bot that we may returne to him, quhomfra we cam, to
witt, Achai, With our historie: Hung king of Peichtis,
5 beseikis Achai to help him, quha is sair vexte and
vniustlie, be Athelstane king of Easte Saxone. Achai
heiring this, is present with speid, with ane armie of ten
thousand Scotis, meⁿ of weir, to the supplie of Hung,
and refutatioun of Athelstane: The Borderis of Nor-
10 thumbirland with sword and ffyre he ouirthrawis: and
finalie returnes With a fatt praii. As he returned,
Athelstane followet in haste, evin vnto Haddingtoun.
Hung stayis, intending the neist day, with Courage to
meit thame. bot sair feiring the power of the ennemie,
15 sa mony in multitude, thair armie sa grett, almaist thay
fell in despair, quhairfor Hung, the hail nycht, was
ardent in prayer to God and S. Andro, vpon quhais
protectioun, the Scotis Natioune dependis, quhair-
through he obteinis helpe. ffor the Croce, quhairvpon
20 S. Andro diet, vnto al thair present suddanlie appeirit, in
viue and bricht colouris, in a maner, sett in the Aire.
Hung, and al that tuik his parte, estir this thay had seine,
war of sa stout a spirit, that al the Scotis persuadet thame
selves this to be a fortakenizg, to thame, of Victorie, and
25 to the Ennimie of tinsell. The neist day thay meit. At
this 30king, the Saxounis war sa slane doun, that of al
thair armie, skairse chaipet fyve hunder. Athelstane
thair king thair being slane, the place quhair that feild
was strukne, was estir named Athelstane, and that fra
him.

Quhen Hung this worthie and glorious victorie had
obteynet, the kirk, than called S. Rule, he dedicate to
S. Andro: and the sam kirk he amplifiet, with mony
35 giftes, and riche rewardes liberallie: and that sa Noble
a victorie suld never be forȝett, quhen he was about to
Joyne w^t the Ennimie, S. Androis croce was ay borne

Achai cuⁿis
w^t supplie to
the Peichtis
constrare the
Saxonis.

S. Andro
patroun of
the Scotis
& peichtis.

The Sax-
ounis ar
wone be the
Scotis and
Peichtis.
yair king
slane at
Athelstane.

Befor ye
Scotis the
croce of S.
Andro in
battel is
borne.

King Achai
dies the 3eir
of his rigne
32. of our
Lourd 819.

Deuot men
in Scotland.

Scotis ye
first authors
of the
schuulis in
Paris.

The honest
conceitis of
John Scot
with ye
king & de-
lectable.

befor in the Ansignje, and armes of the cuntry. This the Scotis, evin vnto this day obserues maist religiouselie, in remembrance of y^t victorie wonⁿ through the helpe of S. Andro.

Quhen king Achai had the Realme honorablie 5
gouerned, now xxxii 3eiris, he departes this lyfe, the
3eir of our Lord dcccix, and is buriit in Kilmacolme.

At this tyme flurisched in Scotland mony deuote men
& of solid doctrine: amang quhom war Geruadie a
Notable preicher in Morayland, and Bischope; Glacian, 10
and he lykwyse Bischope; Modan, Medan, baith Religious
brethren and Mounkis. War now lykwyse ane
called Jhone,¹⁴⁸ Scott in surname and Natioune, *and*
Claudie Clement, quhome We said afor passed to ffrance;
and war mekle to the succour of S. Bed in * Philosophie,¹⁵
baith in Greke and Latine.

Quhen Clement and Jhone forsaidis, baith appeirandlie of a mirrie ingine, publiklie in Paris proponed thair
Eruditoun and doctrine, to be saulde to all man.
Quhilke Chairles the Magne, king of ffrance, putting to 20
profe, a Noble + propyne he offiret, (*and succeeded*) Jn
Paris to appne vp Schuilis of Sciences, Philosophie, and
Theologie. This Jhone, quha naturalie was iocund,
Jellie, and mowsum,¹⁴⁹ was sa familiar, and in fauour
with the king, that in his honest, wittie, mousum, and 25
mirrie conceitis, he delytet mekle, and had gret plesour,
and vset his cumpanie verie familiarie. quhairof this
was ane euident takne, that quhen the king in table
asket him in mirrines, for the king mowit verie oft with
him, quhat was betuene a Scott & a Sott (for a Sott in 30
ffrench commounlie thay cal a fule) Jhone ans^ris, the
burde: wittilie and wylelie tuecheng the king, betuene
quhome and Jhone was the table.

* L. "in Greecis, Latinis ac Philosophicis literis"—in Greck,
Latin, and philosophical literature.

† L. "proposita laute mercede"—with the offer of a rich reward.

The Roman Jmpire at this tyme, was diuidet into tua The Jmpire
diuidet.
partes : the * Easte parte of thir tua, in gouerne^{ng} fell
to Chairles the Magne, eftir mony wicht and worthie
actes. Was lykwyse, in thir dayes a counsel of thrie
5 hunder and fistie Bischopis haldne at Nice against the
sekte of Jmagebrekeris, thair name Jconoclastæ, from
Jcon, quhilke in greke is namet anc Jmage in Scotis :
This † Counsel is called the counsell of Nice ; quhair
manifestlie was prouen, and confirmet be rasounis maist
10 cleir, euident and sure, the vsse of Jmages to be cleine
of all *superstitione*. And that na man through scrupule
of conscience doubte heirof, the fathiris of this Counsel,
in thir few and notable wordes, comprehendet (*it*) as
followis in latin : and than in Scotis.

15 The decret
of the Coun-
sel of Nice
anent the
Jmages.
‡ Hanc videas, sed mente colas, quod cernis in ipsa,
Nam Deus est, quod imago docet, sed non Deus ipsa.

20 The Jmage teiches, quha is God,
 Quhilk man behaulde suld outwardlie,
 And ken thairby Rycht, Euin, and Odd ;
 Man, God sulde Worschipe inwardlie.

Jn thir dayes, that notable Historiographour deacone
Paul, Wrote the notable actes of king Desiderie &
thame of Lumbardie, to quhilke he eiket viii buikes of
Eutropius his historie, quhair, of the Scotis Natioune he
25 speikes mekle. Afor this tyme, the Jnglischis historie
wryteris makes mentione of mony kingis of Britannie.
Bot because, afoir the Romanis cam in Britannie, few
notable actes of thair kingis ar put in memorie, bot
qⁿ Britannie was gouerned be ye Romane Proconsules,
30 thairestir, in sevin Regimentis, deuydet be the Saxonis,
Jnsafar, that a certane and sure ordour of kingis coulde
no^t weil be collected, quhill quhen Egbert had dan-

* L. "occidentalis"—western.

† This sentence is not in L. It was the *second* Council of Nice.

‡ Look on this (image) but let your mind worship that which you
distinguish in it. For it points out that which is God, but it is not
God itself.

tounet al the rest, began to be king ouer al Jngland ; heir appeirandlie the Catalog of the kingis of Jngland began.

Papes—Lyon 3, Stephan 5, Paschal 1.

R. Emp.—Constant. 6, Chairl. the Magne, Ludouik 1.

f. Kingis—The sam Lud.

Jnglis Kingis—Egbert, first King of al Jngland.

LXVI. CONUAL.

A gude
prince he is
fund to be.

Eftir the deith of Achai, Conual, Fergus his thrid sone, began to Rule the Realme. This king esteimet sa mekle of Hung king of Peichtis, that in al his effayris, and actionis quahateuir, he Hungs counsel first Walde vse, w^t quhome, the bande of peace ance confirmet, he neuir brak in the leist iot, bot constantlie keipet. 5

He dies in
peace, the 5
ȝeir of his
rigne of o'
Lord 824.

Heireftir nocht lang, Hung resygnes his kingdome, jit alyue, into the handes of his sone Dostolarg, and 10 schortlie eftir he dies. ffollowis him within a few dayes Conual, the fyfte ȝeir of his rigne, throu dolour of his freind Hung deid.

Tanco a haly
Bischope.

Quhill this king ragne, Tanco, a Mounk of S. Benedictes ordour, succeedet baith to the Abbacie of Patto, 15 and to his Bischoprie, forsaid, of Verden in * Jngland : for he, Tanco, to wit, followed Patto to Saxonie, intendeng to illuminat that cuntrie with the verie true catholik lycht, albeit a peple of nature Wylde, and malitious, stout and stiff, in thair erroris. Bot Patto inflammet 20 with the feruent ȝeale of martyrdome, scharplie corrected thair vyses, quhairfor, the peple in thair wod furie and Jre, slew that haly Bischope, and sa with the glorious palme of martyrdome he was decored.

Papes—Paschal 1, Eugenie 2.

R. Emp.—Ludouik 1, Pius.

f. Kingis—Chair. the (Magne), Ludo 1, Pius.

Jngl. Kin.—Egbert.

* “ In Jngland ” is not in L., which reads—he succeeded Patto, both as Abbot in his Monastery of Amarbaric, and as Bishop in the Church of Verden (*Kaiserwerth*).

LXVII. DONGAL.

Quhen Dongal, Soluathie his sone, was maid king, ^{he is seuerir.} sum for * his dissolut maneris, and his gret seueritie to the Nobilitie, conspyret his deith. And that thay mycht find sum colour to cloke thair cryme, and defend thair honestie ; thay elected Alpin, Achai his sone, quhome thay mayd king : Alpin, mair for feir of daynger, nor defending † of the Realme, ay defendet thame, bot seiking out be al meanes how he mycht flie, at last he fled vnto Dongal ; the hail mater appnes vp, and him selfe purges. The king meruellung of sik fayth and truthe in a ȝoung man, began to commend him, accep(ȝ) his cumpanie maist familiarie, and eftir that his conspireris war knawen, to vse his diligence against thame.

Quhill in Scotland this was done, Egan, to obteyne ^{The fayth and truth of Alpin to Dongal.} 15 the kingdome of the Peichtis, murthiret his brother Dostolarg, and him selfe schameleslie polluted with licherous incest : for he mariet Brema his brotheris Wyfe, against her will : quhairfor sche, abhorring baith his cumpanie, and impietie, in his chambir sleiping, 20 him sticket.

Throuch this occasioune Alpin thinkes, that he Justlie may craue the kingdome of the Peichtis as rychtuous heire, because Fergusia was his lawfull mother, dauchtir to Hung king of Peichtis. The Peichtes be na meanes ^{Alpin requires to be successor as rychtuous heire to the kingdome of Peichtis.} 25 wil suffir to be vndir the Jmpire of a stranger ; quhairfor, thay † ffrederich elected for thair king, Dongal in the meane tyme defendeng Alpinis cause. Heir schortlie

* L. "qui fluxos & solutos suos mores, arcta Dongalli disciplina devinciri ægerrimè patiebantur"—some who could not brook that their dissolute ways should be restricted by the rigid discipline of the new king.

† L. "quam studio regni se agglutinarat"—who more out of fear of danger to himself, than from desire of being king, had joined himself to them.

‡ L. "Feredechum."

Dongal dies
the 6 of his
rygne.
of o' Lorde
830.

weiris ar begun betuene Scotis and Peichtis. Dongal, passing the riuers of Spey with an exceeding armie, drounis, the saxte ȝeir of his rygne.

Kortill, scotisman, Jnspyret w^t a deuote spirit, mekle bent in the Catholik fayth, paste into Saxonie: quhair, quhan lang he preichet had the christne faith, sinceirly and trulie, to * Verden, he succeidet bischope, estir the deith of Ceuelo: at last the fyrie furie of the peple put him doun.

5

Pates—Eugenie 2, Valentin, Gregorie 4.

R. Emp.—Ludouik Pius.

J. King—The sam, w^t his sone Lotharie.

Ing. King—Egbert.

LXVIII. ALPIN.

Alpin, Dongal now deid, the kingdome receyues, and 10 with ane armie moues vpon the Peichtis; for the Jniure of thame receiued, now thinkeng to reuenge. followes a cruell battel, to baith the Natiounis lamentable: bot the Peichtis tint this feild, through tinsell of thair king, & mae slane doun. farther the Peichtes estir this, war 15 na lesse trublet with Nyctbour feades than with externe Weiris, a lang tyme: for, first, Brudie, † ffrederiches sone, his father slane, was called to the kingdome, quhome thay schortlie lykwyse dispatchet, for his Imprudent and Jll gouerneng. To Brudie succeidet 20 his ȝounger brother Kennethie; quha evin sa, throw fraud of his awne, perissed. followet him another Brudie, a stout man and a baulde: quha in al possible haste, sent legatis and propynes to Edmie king of Britannie, quhairthrow he steireret him wp against the 25 Scotis. Brudie, throw hope of Edmies helpe, was sa proud, that with ane armie he cumis till a place, to

* L. “Vercensi.”

† L. “Feredechi.”

name, Horestia, quhair w^t ws he meitis and obteynes a noble Victorie. In this Battel is Alpin takne, at the command of Brudie, heidet: stukne on a stake and borne to Camelodun his heid. As now in thir dayes 5 will testifie the place, quhair Alpin was heidet, takeng the name fra him: the place is neir Dundie, and from Alpin now namet * Pasalpin. of his rigne the 4 *ȝeir*.

Agane is
fochten w^t
the Peichtis
Alpin takne,
is heidet, of
his Rygne
the 4 *ȝeir*:
of our Lord
834.

Harrukie, inspirit with the sam Spirit of God, quhilke inspirit thame, of quhome afor we made mentioune, to 10 Saxonie takis his iornay. Heir, eftir sair trauel and truble, cummer, kair, and mony meruellous vexatiounis, patientlie for the kirk of God susteineth, first he receiueth the Bischoprie of † Verden, neist the croun of martyrdome, with his societie forsaidis. Thir *cam* nocht heir 15 called be the Princes, nathir be the Nobilitie of this natioune, bot drawin be the God of luue, to instructe that barbarous peple in the preceptes of pietie, as Crantsie constantlie descriueth, how Patto and Tanco, at Rome, be the Pape, was canoniset.

S. Harruk
martyr.

Papes—Gregorie 4.
R. Emp.—Ludo I, with his sone Lotharie.
f. King—The sam.
Ing. King—Egbert.

LXIX. KENNETHIE.

20 Kennethie now succeidet, eftir his father Alpin, baith to the kingdome, and to the reuenge of his fatheris deith, quhen this king saw his peple sa sair ouirthrawin in the former feild, and brocht in sa deip dispair of gude luck to follow, in this, his hail intentioune he sett to confort 25 sa conforteles hertes, and bring thame in hope of bettir luck: and first his Nobilis, sair discourageth, he vpsteiris to take Weapouzis: than through the cuntrie spred this word, that the Peichtis war sa balde of the former

Kennethie
succeedis to
baith the
Realmes
lawful syre.

He steiris
thame vp to
straikis.

* Bas (Gaelic)=death.

† L. Vercens.

battel, that thay swore the grett aith, neuir to bind with the Scotis, bot w^t this conditioun, the scotis name neuir mair to be had in *remembrance. Amang the peple this worde ran sa ryffe, that thair calde courage turnet now in a hett furie contrare the Peychtis ; Kennethie in haste gathires his peple, balde, and bent to invade the ennimie, in defence of thayr rychts, and reuenge of that Jniure : Neir Striuling thay ȝok, quhair, estir the Peychtis oft had † won the victorie, amaist he slayes thame ilkie man, with thair king Dunster. Kennethie now sa couragious of sa cruell a Victorie, invades thair cheife citie Camelodun ; heir he ouirthrawis the hail Jnhabitouris, man and wyfe, butt ony acceptioune of persone ; than throu and throu passing all the Peychtis prouinces, and vniuersallie thair hale cuntries, 15 neirby the name of that Natioun he putis in obliuion, and out of memorie. quha chaiped his hand, fled outhir to Denmark or Norway, or than, helde thame verie quyett in Northumbirland.

*Kennethie destroys ye
Peychtes vniuersallie.
The citie
Camelodus
he makes
seual w^t
the ground.*

*Northumbir-
land and
Hirtha ar
the bordiris
of Kenne-
thies king-
dome.*

*He gauie
new names
to thir
landes, and
parted
thame
amang the
Scotis.*

Sua that peple of the Peychtis, cam til ane end, xi 20 hundir ȝeiris, estir thay cam into Albion. This king now boundet the Scotis kingdome frome Northumbirland to Hirtha. quhen this battell was strukne, he distributis the Peychtis cuȝtrie to his awne housband men to labour and tile, quhilke now lay waste, to ilk a 25 portioun. fra this tyme furth, mountenis, Riuieris, and regiounis in thir partes, war namet with new names. for exemple we cal now the regimentis Angus and Mernis, quhilkes afor tymes Horestia ; and quhilkes Kennethie gauie to tua brethir, fra quhome thay tuke thir names : 30 the name of the ane of thir brethir was Mernaz, the name of the vther Angus : sua sal ȝe find na place,

* L. "nisi Scoto nomine deleto"—unless the name of Scot were abolished, they would never make peace with them.

† L. "Post multas victorias ante relatas"—after the many victories previously gained.

excep Laudien and Anandale, that now thayr alde names ¹⁵⁰ reteynes.

Kennethie, quhen this was done, causet to trasport the Marmour chair frome Argyle to Skune. He Jnsti-
5 tute mairatouer, that the Scotis kingis fra that furth, in that chayre, in Skuin suld be crouned. Quhen he had pacifiet his cuntry, layd asyde his alde ennimies, sett out lawis to be ratifiet, quhilkes in the beginning of this historie we * breiuet, and gouernte the Realme had
10 prosperously, this lyfe happilie he departes, and is buriit in Jona, the 3eir of God 855.

his haly lawis.

He dies the
3eir of his
rygne 20, of
or Lord 855.

Papes—Gregorie 4, Sergius 2, Leo 4.

R. Emp.—Lud. pius, with his sone Lothar. Lothar alone,
Lud. II.

f. King—Carle 2, Caluus.

Ing. King—Egbert, Etheluolp, or Edelse.

LXX.—DONALD V.

Quhen Kennethie was deid, succeidet his german brother Donald: quhom nouther the luue of *vertue*, nor exemple of his brother, nor desyre of honour and
15 glore, evir culde move to ony pietie, bot throw licencious licherie, and voluptuous, wraket that flurishing kingdome, amplifiet with al kynd of felicitie. Throw this occasioun the Peychtis, quha in Northumbirland lay hidd, thinking gude to take \dagger tyme in tyme, with ane armie of Saxonis
20 and Britonis, Scotland invades, or thay war Warr, and suddanlie. Donalde with ane armie meites thame, neir Jedburgh: heir thay iune, the Peycht flies. the king with his cumpanie, proud and presumpteous of that Victorie, neglecteng thair awne saifgaird, kairles of thair
25 awne defence, lay the nyxt nycht skattired al out of ordour, ¹⁵¹ Wachting the wyne, but ony Watche, lyk

a Vitious
mas of lyfe.

The banist
Peychtis
Scotland
invades & ar
ouircum.

* L. “Epitomen fecimus.”

† L. “occasione arripientes”—seizing the opportunity.

The scots
ar ouircum.

He is redi-
met vndir
hard condi-
tions
castne is in
prisoun be
his awne.

putis hand
in him selfe,
the ȝeir of
his rygne 6,
of or Lord
860.

fuiles, but feir, in drunknes and harlatrie: the Peycht(s),
seing thair tyme, thocht weil not to neglecte it; quhair-
for, about midnycht thay brek in vpon the Scotis, as
thay lay all deid drukne in the Campe, slew to the
numbir of xx thousand, thayr king Donald, w^t mony of
his Nobles, thay captiues tak. Donald, to set him selfe
at Libertie, gauo ouer al betuein Striuling and the wattir
of Clyde to the Saxounis and Britonis, and farther bande
him self vndir a conditioun to pay thame a ȝeirlie
summ off money, in name of ane annual rent & tribute. 5
Quhen now he was maid frie, forȝhetting all distres,
nocht remembiring of the scourge of god, returnis till
his ald maner of lyfe, mair liberalie than asfor. At last,
all man obiectezg to him thair indigne seruitude, and
thraldome vnworthie, quhilk than thay war vndir, the 10
sair and cruell slauchtir foirsayd, throw this vnhappie
gydeng, thay cast him in prisoun, quhair, throw dis-
pleisour he putt hand in him selff, and as he leifet, sa he
endet, the ȝeir of his rygne 6. 15

The Jnglis Saxounis, in remembrance of this feild, 20
the Castell of Stiruiling erected agane: in this castell
thay cuinȝeit a certane kynd of money, quhilk we
commouȝlie call Sterling money, quhairfra, the opiniouȝe
of mony now is, the sure and ryȝt way of cuinȝeitg to
haue proceidet. al the vsse of that money, ȝitt in thir 25
dayis is vset throw all Jngland: thay lykwyse, casting
doun the trie brig, quhilk the Peychtis had sett ouer
the Wattir of fforthe, erected a fayre stane brig, now
called the brig of Stiruiling, in sygne of Victorie, in
midis quhairof the Croce of our Lord thay sett vp, as 30
thirr verses ingrauen wil * ȝitt testifie, heir following, in
Latin: than in Scotis.

* L. "insculpti sunt" — were engraved. Leslie does not say they existed in his time. The bridge here alluded to is not the now existing old Bridge of Stirling, which was built in the thirteenth century. The former was some distance to the west.

Anglos a Scottis separat crux ista remotis,
Arma hic stant Brutis, stant Scotti sub hac cruce tuti.

This croce vpset heir : is to schaw
How Scottis frome Jnglis, sall indure :
5 Heir Brut, his armie, men may knaw,
Wndir this croce, scotis men ar sure.

In the meine tyme, the Peychtis, authoris of this
horrible slauchtir, be the Saxounis ar chaist out of hail
Albion, and hunted lyk dogis.

10 ffluriset at this tyme a cuzning man and deuote, his
name Rabanⁿ : quha naturalie vertuous and weil in-
structed in sciences, maid mony ane the bettir of his
abundant benifites : Bot quhen he, in britannie, thocht
15 weil (*he*) was nocht able to performe his intentioun, sail-
ing in ffrance, he cumis to Paris, quhair in a schort tyme,
he bryngs that Acadamie, first foundet be the Scottis, to
gret perfectioun ; for he studiet mekle to bring vp the
30 yOUTH, publiklie and priuatlie, in Philosophie, Rethoric,
Astronomie, and Theologie, in quhilkes him selfe had
profited not lytle with Alcuin, Jnglisman ; quhilk quhen
he had done, to the ordour of S. Benedicte he dedicatis
his awne yOUTH. A graue man, now cum to ȝeiris,
w^t gude wil, and full consent of all his brethir, Abbot
20 of ffuld in Germanie he is chosen, thaireftir promouet to
25 the Archbischoprie of Mentis, with al deuote and gude
example, quhen x ȝeiris thair he had gouerned, this
lyfe deuotly he departes, with al honour. The cuzning
buikes replete of singular eruditioone, quhilkes he wrott,
and set furth, ar infinit, almaist innumerable. of him
30 wrot a certane man of a singular Judgement, thir Wordes ;
that nathir in Italie or Germanie his lyke or æqual Was
to be funde.

Raban of
excellent
virtue and
learning.

The Mon-
asterie of
ffuld in
Germanie.

Papes—Benedict 3, Nicolas 1.

R. Emp.—Ludouik 2.

f. King—Carl 2, Caluus.

Jngl. King—* Etheluop, Ethelbad, Ethelbert.

* L. “Etheluolpius, Ethelbaldus”—Ethelwolf, Ethelbald.

LXXI.—CONSTANTIN II.

A gud
prince and
godly.

The Danes
invade Scot-
land.

The Scottis
win the
first victorie.

Thay tyn
the neist.

Constantin
is slane the
3eir of his
rigne 13.
of our Lord
870.

Constantin, Kennethies sone, is crouned king. Eftir his crouning, in Skune he proclames a conuentioun, quhair mony lawis, gude and godlie for the weil and commoditie of his cuntrie, he institutes and settis furth. throw thir lawis he reformes the hail kingdome, *vicious* 5 afoir throw the vices of Dongall, and Wraikit. Enme a hiland man, vtterlie abhorring lawis, or strait discipline, raiset a tumult w^t his hielandis contrare the Jncuntrie, for quhilk he Was tane and hangte. Quhen Constantin his Realme now had put to rest, in dainger be the 10 Danes he fallis neist. for Cadan king of Denmark, steiret vp throw requeist of the Peychitis, that lay amang thame banist, sent thir tua brether Hungar and Hubb With ane gret armie against Scotland: quha landing in ffyfe, wrocht grett crueltie vpon the pure Jnhabitouris, 15 and left mony examples of mekle barbaritie.

Quhen Constantin knew of thair landing, in haist he entiris in Fiff with ane armie: and heiring the ennimies to ly in sindrie Campis, he settis vpon Hubb seperat fra his brother, and slays thame amaisit ilkie man, w^t thair 20 gouernour Hubb. Hungar not feiret, bot furious for his bruthiris slauchtir, invades the Scottis, within few dayes, or thay wist, and wrocht a cruel reuenge. x thousandis scotis heir war slane; Constantin thair king tane, and slane in Fiff (at the craig, euir thaireftir namet 25 the Deuilis denⁿ) at the command of thair gouernour Hungar: the 3eir of his rygne xiii, and in Jona was buriit.

Papes—Nicolas 1, Adrian 2.

R. Emp.—Lud. 2.

f. King—carl 2, Caluus.

Engl. King—Ethelbert, Ethelred.

LXXII. ETHUS.

Eth, Constantin his secund brother, for his meruellous suiftnes, he was namet * Alipes or Lychtfute, and succeidet to Constantin. of al, his name and fame Was gude, for his Justice and æquitie, afor he was promouet 5 king. bot eftir his promotioune to the croun, he tint that gude opinioun quhilk all man had of him. ffor he was a rank Wastour, and throw fulhardines Wraiked his hail Realme. Quhairfor his Nobles, deposeng him fra the croun, caist him in presoun, that throw his Vanitie 10 and ill gydeng, the cuntrie cam nocth vnto the danes, quha than a gret parte of Britannie had owrthrawne. In presoun, throw sturt and dule, he dies ; the secund ȝeir of his rygne. or as sum constantlie affirme, Dongall to haue smuired him in presoun. howeir it be, in Jona 15 honorablie he was decoret with the sepulchre of his predecessouris. Now Adrian and Stolbrand, twa Scotis Bischopis, with thair Archedeaconis Gai and † Monan, with sum vthiris faithfull marrowis, fled vnto the Maii, to chaip the daneger of the Danes, and barbarous crueltie, 20 quha being gentilis, spairet nouther ordour, kynd, or age : Jnto this Jle the Danes at last followis, quhair this haly bischope Adrian, with thir forsaids, obteynes the croun of martyrdome, lykwyse due honour of Pil- grimes passing throw, in gret number.

vnmeit to
gouerne.

He is put
from the
Kingdome

He dies in
presoun the
ȝeir of his
rygne 2 of
our Lord
872.

Bisshop
Adrian wt
his societie
be the Danes
Ethnikis, in
the Maii for
the fayth of
chryst ar
martyret.

Papes—Adrian 2.

R. Emp.—Ludo. 2.

F. King—Car. 2, Caluus.

Engl. King—Ethelred, Alured or Alfred.

* L. Alipes (Latin)=wing-footed. It was an epithet of Mercury.

† L. “Caio, Monano Archidiacono”—with Caius, Archdeacon Monan, and others. Adrian, otherwise Odran, an Irish missionary monk.

LXXXIII. GREGORIE.

deuote, just,
sobre and
chaist.

Gregorie sone to Congall 2. to Eth succeidet. he was a prince maist prudent and Wyse: and in prudencie nane iuster. farther he was mekle commendet for his temperat sobrietie, his feruour in religioun, maist feruent, and his elegant maneris maist cumlie, nane honester: followet thir preclair giftes of nature and Jngine, in him, this benifite: that his peple keipet gude ordour, mair throw his gude example, and integritie of lyfe, than throw seueritie of lawis of pane, or of ony punisment. Nather, becaus of thir hevinlie *vertues*, 10 was he the les victorious in battell: bot the first thing that he intendet, and set his hail mynd to, was to recouer the landes and tounes Wrangously occupiit be the Danes: quhairfor throw force of armes, the Danes and Peychtis he chaist out of Laudian, and fiff, and to his 15 awne impire thame adiunet: schortlie he subdewit Northumbirland with the sam gud luck. The nyxt summer, he with vehement weiris oppressis the Britonis, and throw force compelled thame to thir condicounis, that thay renunce and gyue ouer the boundis perteyneng 20 to the Scotis and Peychtis, and that faithfullie thay June thame selfes to the Scotis, in battell against the Danes. Quhen now the danes war dung out of Britan- 25 nie, the Britanis intendeng to brek band with the Scotis, thinkis be sum fraudfull way to dryue the Scotis from amang thame, quha had no^t bene * lang amang thame: Gregorie thairfor dryues thame baith furth of Cumbir- land and Westmuirland, quhiikis he eikis till his awne impire, and chaissis thame agane wnto Wales, quhair 30 thay remane. Quhen Gregorie had put the Britonis to rest, he saylis till yrland: quhair quhen scharplie he had

Quhat
Donald tint
he wan
agane.

The danes
chaist out of
hail Britan-
nie be his
diligens.

Cumbirland
and West-
muirland be
to Scotland
eikis.

* L. "e regionibus suis non ita pridem occupatis"—the Scots from their lately occupied territory.

reuengte the oft onsetis and diuerse inuasiounis of the inhabitouris vpon Brigantia, and fercely had fochtne thame, and dourlie dantount, he iustifies baith thair Captaines Cornelie and Brom; than in fauour he receiues

5 Dunkan king of yrland, in his protectioun and defence, a ȝoung man albeit, and berdles, his * nyghtbour notwithstanding he was.

he dan-
tounis the
yrlandmen.

Quhen yrland King Gregorie had pacifiët, to Scotland he returnis; setis out helthfull and gud lawis, endewis 10 the kirk with mony liberties, with singular giftes enriches Her; and finalie, quhen in his Realme Wounderfullie he had Wrocht, amplifiët his kingdome lyk a King, he maid a godlie and happie end in the Garioth, the ȝeir of his rigne xviii.

This notable
king dies in
Doundor the
ȝeir of our
Lord 893.
he rygnes
ȝeirrs 18.

15 About this tyme Charles III. king of ffrance, quha called was Crassus, or Grossus, perceieng how constant and true the scotis war in thair promise, how faythfullie to the frenche had keipet the band, now estir the confirmatione a hundir ȝeiris, quhilk nocht only thay neuir 20 brak, bot with al diligence obseruet, he first of ony, admitted to the custodie and keiping of his body xxiiii Scotis, of quhilkes, thair tyme about, sum wardeng be day, sum be nycht, stude ay neist the king, quha sen ¹⁵² syn haue seruet sa faythfullie that cure, and 25 bauldlie, that the ffrenche king, with the Scotis gaird, is ȝit still watchet and wardet conforme to the first institutione.†

Papes—Johne 8, Martin 2, Adrian 2, Stephan 6, Formose.

R. Emp.—Ludo. 2, Carl. 2, Balbus, Carl. 3.

f. King—Carl. 2, Caluus, Ludo, and Carloman, Carl. 3, Eud or Otto.

Ing. King—Aluered.

* L. “affinem suum”—his relative.

† The “Scots men-at-arms” were formed in the year 1418. See Forbes-Leith, ‘Scots Men-at-arms, from their Formation till their Dissolution.’

LXXXIV.—DONALD VI.

A god
prince.

his godlie
edict agauns
blasphem-
ers and
sueirers.

deuotlie this
lyfe be de-
partes the
zeir of our
Lord god.
He ringnes
xi zeiris.

Jhone Scot
cunning
baith in
greik &
latin, turnes
out of greik
the Hierar-
chie of S.
Dionise.

he is cason-
iet a haly
martyr.

Donald VI. Constantin his sone, succeidet to Gregorie : quohome (na doubtē) the Spirit of God from heiuē inflamet to amplifie the honour of God, quha sett out ane edict, that na man take the name of God in vane, sueirng ony athe : quha did vthirwise, thair lipis with ane hett yrne sulde be burnte. all his tyme, he was trublet nathir with strangeris nor w^t ciuil Weiris, excepte with a smal contentioune at hame, betuein the Moray men and Ross, quhilk stryff he sune stanchet, quhen the authoris war put doun. this lyfe he de- 10 partes with gret felicitie, the zeir of his rigne xii, and is burit in Jona. Johne Scot, a singular Theolog, Was an honorable ornament til his natioune, quha, quhen in Atheins he lang had studiet, be Emperour Ludouik he is sent for to ffrance, at quhais command, he turnet 15 into Latin the Hierarchie of S. Dionise; is now to be seine that notable Wark sett out with the commentaris of that illustre Theolog Hew of S. Victor. thairestir be Chairles III, he is sent Legat til Alured king of Jngland, to thank that noble prince, that, eftir the Danes 20 war ouirthrawne, with scotis and frenche he keipet peace ; for his gret cunning, of a Legat, he is maid * houshald man and maistir to the kings barnes. heirestir, in the Clostir of Malmesburie, quhair he professing publik Schuiles, in sciences diuine and humane, sum of his 25 awne auditouris, Wantount and Wicket ȝoung men, for scharplier snibbing thair vngodlie maniris, than thay culde suffir, with quhingers doupit him throw, quhome the king, with authoritie of the Pape, causet to be reknet amang the haly martyris, and in the selfe Clostir 30 to be decoret with ane honorable monument.

* L. "hospes"—guest.

Papes—Formose, Boniface 6, Stephan 7, Romanus, Theodor 2, Jhoz 9, Benedict 4, Leo 5.

R. Emp.—Carl. 3.

F. King—Odo or Otto, Carl 4, Simplex.

Jngl. King—Alured, Edward Senior 1.

LXXV.—CONSTANTIN III.

Constantin 3. Eth. lychtfute his sone, eftir Donald, succeedet to the croune. The Jnglismen, sair discontent, that beforc thay war schott owt of Cumbirland and Northumbirland, sa large possessiounis, prouokis him 5 to battell, except he randir the cuntries. Constantin had na will lychtlie to lat gang sa noble a pray, quhairfor quhat be the sworde was wonn, * afor the Jnglismen vniustlie it possest, be the law of armes with thame he walde stryue.

10 Heir followis scharp Weiris, betuein Jngland and Scotland, the ane persewis, the vther defendis. at last seing thame selfes, throw lang weiris sair consumet, in haste thay take peace, because thay feir thair nyctbouris the Danes in Northumbirland ; for this caus, thay 15 think, quhen thair power is waik, be the danes thay the esilier may be wraikit, bot haueng thayr freindschip and kyndnes, thebettir they my^t find out the way to brek thair forces. This band, how lang King Edward lyued, was neuir brokne, quhen he was deid, Constantin brak 20 this band, prouoket pairtie throw propynes, pairtie throw reueist of the king, his sone, of Northumbirland ; iuneng his armie with the Danes he Wraik's Jngland and Wastes. Athelstane king of Jngland, abhorring and dispyteng our infidelitie, inconstant and vntrew deil- 25 ing, humlie bescikis God for a reuenge, and with a cheisin armie of Wailet weirouris, meitis thame at Brom-

lang wt the
Jnglismen
he was at
weiris.

* L. “injuste ab Anglo vendicari contendit”—he maintained that what he had won by force of arms was unjustly reclaimed by the Angle.

The Scottis
& danes at
Bromfyld
ouircum.

fylde, quhair, throw the grace of God, na doubt, and special gift, vpon the Scottis and Danes, albeit mony ma in number, and starker than thay, he Wann a gret victorie. With ane ost stout and bauld, Constantin sendis Malcolm to this battell weil prouydet, quhorne, in hope to rigne, he maid gouernour of Cumbirland. Bot throw this vane hope, thair pryd sa now was dantoun, that not only thair *cumpanies* war vtterly slane doune, bot Malcolme selfe sair woundet, and skairse fled with his lyfe. 5

Constantin
resyngnes his
kingdome
and professis
him selfe
mounk.
He ragne
xiiij. xl.
the xvir of
our Lord
943.

The Jnglismen obteyneng the Victorie, brocht Northumbirland, Cumbirland, and Wuestmurland agane to thair awne Jmpire. Eftir this, Constantin fell in sik despair of al thingis, that his kingdome, quhither for Luue of Hevin, or inuie of the Warlde, he resignet and 15 gaued ouer, and professet him selfe Mounk in the Abbey of S. Andro, quhair happilie he endet this lyfe. 10

Papes—Christoph. 1, Sergius 3, Landus, Jhone 10, Leo 6, Stephan 8, Leo 7, Stephan 9, Martin 3.
R. Emp.—Arnulf, Ludo. 3, Berengar 2, Otho 1, Lothar. 2, Berengar 3.
F. King—Carl. 4, Simplex, Ludouik 4.
Jngl. King—Eduard 1, Adelstane, Edmund.

LXXVI.—MALCOLME I.

A defender
and mantein-
er of peace.

He takes
trues with
Jngland &
renewis the
band.

Malcolme Donaldes sone, was the first of that name king: the Realme he began to rule, quhen Constantin in the Clostir was consecrat religious. This king thinking him selfe noct able to resist the force of the enimie, his peple sa sair suppreste in the last battell had beine; legatis in haste he directes to king Adelstane, and with him concludes peace, on this condicione, that Northumbirland remane to the king of Jngland, Cumbirland and Westmurl(*land*) to the king of Scotland, and farther, quha posseste in thir cuntries ye parte that lay 20 25

neist Jngland, suld be vndir authoritie of the Jnglise king and his obedience.

This being concludet with the enzimie, Malcolm intendet with all diligence, to defende the Religioune, and 5 to reforme the cuntrie: quhair in a schort tyme he amplifieth his boundes largelie, and his bordiris stoutlie defendet. At last, ȝeir of his rigne xv, throw conspiracie of sum moraymen in Morayland, he is slane, and buriit in Jona. for administratioun of Justice mair seueirlie 10 than thay * walde.

with tray-
touris he
is slane.
Regnes
ȝeiris 15.
Buriit in
Jona ȝeir of
God 959.

Papes—Martin 3, Agapet 2, Jhone XII.

R. Emp.—Berengar 3.

f. King—Lud. 4, Lotharie 4.

Jngl. King—Edmund, Eldred, Eduin.

LXXVII. JNDUFF.

Jndulff kinesman to Constantin, is crouned. Analaff king of Danes, with all requeist and prayer, besochte him to brek with the Jnglismen, quhome quhen he sawe he culd nocht that way prouoke, throw force of armes he 15 intedes to compell. Bot king Jnduff thocht, as he thot ryght, that to his honour and Maiestie war a foul bleck of defame, and dishonour, to violat and crak the credence ance gyuen; fead thairfor nor fauour culd nevir him compell: quhairfor with Jngland he takes 20 parte against the Danes, brak thair forces, and brocht thair power to nocht. fyue ȝeiris heirestir Hagon and Henrie, danes, remembering how be the Scotis thair peple sa sair had beine plait, entiris into fforth to reuenge this Jniure. vpon the costes of Laudien and 25 Fiff, and mony vthiris places, thay intend to land, bot be the Jnhabitouris and cuntry peple sa oft forbidne, thay finzie thame selfes to gyue bakis, and returne: quhen al

He refuses
to brek wt
the Jngles-
men.

He takes
parte with
the Jngl.
against the
danes.

he is invadet
be the dan.

* L. “quorum parentes latrocinii nomine suppliciis affecerat”—conspirators, whose relatives he had punished for robbery.

a cruell feild
betweine the
Scotis &
Danis, in
the Beinzie
cost.

The Daves
first ouir-
cum.

The king
heir slane,
the ȝeir of
his rigne 9.
of God 968.

manⁿ tho^t na vthir, bot as he saw ; the fourth day thay land, by all manis expectatione, in the Boynzie cost, this cuntric is nerrest Buchanⁿ, and thairw^t mairches : the king in haist meitis thame, and dings thame back. quhen the Victorie was Wonⁿ, the king self renues the Carmische with sum ennimies lyeng in Wayte : quhair quhenⁿ the ennimies vttirlie war ouirthrawne, with ane arrow he is schott throw the heid, and dies, the ȝeir of his rigne 9. Jn Jona he is buriit. 5

Pates—Jhon 12, Leo 8, Jhon 13.

R. Emp.—Otho.

f. King—Lothar. 4.

Ingl. King—Edgar, S. Eduard martyr, Etheldred, or Egheldred.

A gud
prince.

Seueir con-
trare offend-
deris.

Suffiris na
man to ly
idle.

ffor his
justice tray-
touris con-
spire against
him.

of his seuer-
tie quhat
was thocht.

Duff, King Malcolmis sone, in the marmour chair in 10 Skune crouned is king. This king wald haue al things in his Realme sa conforme to Justice, that without respecte of persone, he regairdet nathir hiche nor law digrie, quhair iust Judgement was to be obseruet. This command he gyues to the Lordis of the Jles, that quha 15 amang thame lay ydle, sulde * muk closetis, and ather compell thame to wirke, or banise thame out of the cuntric. and certifies thame to incur scharpe punishment, gif this command thay put noct till executioun in thayr cuntric, in al poyntes. 20

This appeiret scharper to sum, than thay war able to fulfill, or lawfull to be done, as thay thocht ; cheifly becaus mony of *yar* kinsmen and freindis, this law walde ¹⁵³ fettir, ydle, ¹⁵⁴ sueir, and sleuthfull.

Quhairfor thay not only defame the king, discommending him for ouer gret seueritie in punisshing offenderis, but lykwyse w^t sum Witches thay consulte to put him 25

* L. "Sentinas exhaustire" —should clean out drains.

doune. Quahairfor, sum ald carlingis, sworne to Witchcraft, thay hyre with a gret soume of money, throw thayr craft to put doune the king. Thay Worke this way, that the king thay sal infecte with sik a seiknes, 5 quhais nature sal abhor frome all kynd of medicine, quahairthrow in haste he may * melt, and cum to noct: estir this, in the nycht seasone, he sueitis continuallie, throw sueit he dekayes, and weiris away, his body heirby is Wasted and consumet: heir perfytli may be seine 10 throw all his vanes, synnownis, banes, how thay naturalic had beine wrocht, his hyd al contracted and runklet. The king no'withstandeng, oft and dyuers tynes, calling vnto him the gouernours of the cuntrie, commandes and chairges, that thay, vigilant in the Republik, with al 15 diligence ¹⁵⁵ cearse out this kynd of peple, and with al seueretie Justifie thame.

A rumour about this tyme rais in the cuntrie, that the king through the arte of Magik, Witchcraft, and deuilrie was consumet, and no' throw ony natural seiknes, quhilk 20 excepte war schortly remeidet, appeirandlie he walde make ane ende. Donalde capitane of the castell of fforey, this hail mater diligentlie sochte out: and quhen he began to perceiue quahair the fraude lay, throw a certane suspicioune and suir opiniou, he commandis 25 his suddertis to breik vp the witches duris, in a certane stormie nycht, and throuw force entir vpon thame. ane Witch they fand, rosting at the fyre, vpon a spite of trie, ye kingis image artificiallie wrochte in wax, another witch sitting besyd singing, and cruning versis, and 30 flameing the Jmage with a certane kynde of liquor, drop estir drop, thay baith ar tane and castne in presoun, quahair thay confesse, of quhat ground all proceidet, and quha war the authoris. The Jimage is brokne, estir quhilk the king beginis to merde, and his sueit to dry 35 in. The authoris of this mischeife fled, in the flychte ar

The King
lyis seik in-
fected with
witchcraft.

The Kingis
Image of
Wax, be
Witches is
rosted at the
fyre.

The witches
ar tane.

The King
mendis of
his ill.

* L. "extabesceret"—waste away.

apprehendet, brocht vnto the castell of fforey, thair ar Justifiet. In this cumpanie war sum pleisand 30ung men and bewtifull, of Donaldes kinn, and freindis, to quhome quhen he culde obteyne na remissioune fra the king, he kendlet in sik a furie, that throw counsell of his wyf he inuested the kings slauchtre, and that be sum seruandis, quhais fauour he had wonⁿ throw propynes, quha slew him in the nyght in his chambre in the castell. The keiperis of the kings chambre, now in a sound sleip, all deid drokne; the kingis body is layd 10 on a horse, and twa myles frome the castell castne in a * scrogg buss. Eftir this, in Scotland, the son was not seine schyne be day, nor the mone be nyght, the space of sax monethis: quhairthrow the hail Realme was strukne with a gret feir: nather butt cause; quhen 15 nathing was seine bot stormie Windis, cludis and rane, thundir and ¹⁵⁶ fyrrflaucht; quhilk thay thocht was a takne outhier of a terrible deith, or a horrible lyfe.

Culenie, his sone, [†] called King Jndulf, be al meines possible, seikis to find out the authoris of this horrible 20 slauchtir; at last, eftir diligent inquisitioune, was [‡] tryet, that Donald, for syluer, sum had hyret to commit this murther: thir war at last takne, and Justifiet: bot first thay schew ye place, quhair his body was hidd, quhilk thay fund all through hail and sound, that nathir had 25 the Wirmes eitne his flesche, nor stormie tempest of the tyme had deformet it, nor the place quhair it lay bleknet the colour. This was the first day that brak the cloudis and cleiret the skye, and brocht sone and mone hame agane, (*quhilkes*) sa lang had bene absent. All wondiret 30 of this haistie change; quhen by all manis opinioune, it cam vthirwyse; for the cleir cloudis to the dulfull was

* L. "in Scrobem"—into a ditch. The translator has been deceived by the likeness of the L. word to scrub, a bush.

† L. "Indulphi regis filius"—Culen, the son of King Indulph.

‡ L. "assecutus est"—was proved; "tried" has the same meaning.

The King in
the ny^t is
murthiret
in the castel
of forrey.
the 3eir of
his rigne 4,
of God 972.

The meruel-
lous mist &
wethir in
Scotland.

The authoris
of this mis-
chief ar
punist.

pleasant, and to the trublesum happie. qⁿ this also was done, Worthie neuir to be forȝhett bot euirlastinglie to be celebrat, the mater hes beine sa rare, and seindle seine, or hard off, certane feildes neirby this place,
 5 sprang vp, albeit not in tyme of ȝeir, w^t diuersitie of all kynd of flouris. Quhairfor the dorpe besyd is named Kilmios, that is, the kirk of flouris: and vnto this day keipis the selfe name. Donald and his wyfe authoris of the murthir, the seruandes, committeris of the murth.
 10 all war takne and condemnet, and heidet with ane aix, thair bwelis apned, thair lychtes ar takne out and castne in the fyre, the rest of thair memberis ar sent to mair notable places in the Realme.

Kilmios now
namet the
monaster of
Killois.*

Papes—Jhon 13, Benedict 5.
R. Emp.—Berengar 3.
f. King—Lotharie 4.
Jngl. King—Egeldred.

LXXIX. CULENIE.

Quhen Duff was deid, the Realme succeedet to Culenie. All manⁿ hoipet weil of him, because with Justice, he beganⁿ his gouerneng, quhilke thay thocht was a takne he sulde be a gret defender of Justice al his lyfe. Bot he begylet al manⁿ of that opinioun thay had of him. ffor he held nocht in ordour, and vndir discipline, Noble
 20 menis sones bro^t vp with him, bot latting thame take thair plesure, louset a brydle to thame to vaig in quhat Lust or leicherie lyket thame best, conforme to that age. quhen sum Walde haue gyuen him a freindlie counsell, this anser he gyues, that barnes war no^t borne ald men:
 25 bot of Jndulf & Duff was another thing, quha to the peple, sayis he, war ouer †rigorous. Sum graue men

At Justice
he began
bot schort
quhyile
continuet.

* Kinlos, the monastery near Forres?

† L. “Indulphum Duffumque duriter nimium populo imperitasse”
—but that Indulf and Duff had ruled the people too harshly.

and Wyse, heiring this, and weil perceieng, quyetlie left the courte.

Culenie in the meine tyme, gaue him selfe to all filthines, nycht and day to banquet, Jug, and drink, with the foulest slutt * husies and seruandis, and was sa kendlet in lust, that amait was na honest Womaⁿ quhome he lusted nocht for, nather mett he with ony quhais honestie he seiget nocht and won, outhere be requeist, or sum propyne, or than throw force ; in sa far, that he absteinet not frome his awne sisteris, þe and his awne dauchtiris, Woemen quha had vowet chastitie. Gif he thocht ane mair constant nor another, quha walde not suffir to draw her to Venus with fair Wordes, nather fair promise of gold or siluer or vtheris giftes, be the þ hures, be force, to the commounue Bordall thay war 15 drawen. His strenth was now sa wakenit w^t Bachus and Venus, that with that foul seiknes, q^{lk} the Greikis Gonorrhæa call, he was strukne. In haist the Nobilitie proclames a conuentioune in Skune, to sett another in his place. Culenie, in lyke maner, prepares to that 20 Jornay, with a sobir and small court. bot or he was midgait, Cadhard, quhais dauchtir the king had forct, slew him at the castel of Meffen, the þeir of his rigne v. Eberger Archbischop of þ Colane, as in his Chronikles testifies Marianus, dedicate the monaster of S. Martine 25 in Colane to the Scotis, for euir. To quhome first, the name of the first Abbot was Mimborine scotismar, quha had the gouerneng xii þeiris, the þeir of our Lord dcccclxxv.

Papæ—Benedict 5, Bon. or Don. 2, Boniface 7, Bened. 6.

R. Emp.—Otho 2, Otho 3.

f. King—Lotharie 4.

Ing. King—Egeldred.

* L. “Vilissimis quibusque mancipiis.”

† L. “Lenonibus.” The use of the word in the text with a masculine sense is noteworthy, as bearing upon its etymology.

‡ Cologne.

LXXX. KENNETHIE.

The Nobilitie hes elected Kennethie, King Malcolme his sone, and sett him in the chair. Quhen this king saw his peple trampe al *vertue* vndir thair fute, thame selfes to be rowit in the clay puddil of al vice: and war 5 sa bent to thair folie, and stifnekit in thair awne mynd, that thay walde not *ken* thair *office, nor turne agane to the way of vertue, this was a sair greif to his harte, as ryght was. Quhen he had labouret mekle, in correcteng the maneris of wicket men, bot in vane; thinking to 10 prosper with seueritie bettir, he calles the Nobilitie to the toune of Lanrik, quhair the Justice of sum my^t be to thair example. Bot the king perceiueng the myndes of the Nobilitie be sum sure taknes, him selfe to be in gret danger, gif he punist ony princes heir, because they 15 war in sick fauour with the Nobilitie, quhairfor the *conuentioune* is ¹⁵⁷ skailet, and schot quhil the neist ȝeir. The neist ȝeir thay ar warnet al to Skone; cam ilk man, the neist morneng, the king sitting in his marmour chair, w^t a gret solemnnitie, thay entir al into the † Tolbuith, 20 and salutes the king in his chair. Jn haste at the sounde of a sygne gyuen, the men of weir in armes lap furth, and closet thame round about on ilk syd. The nobles heir beginis to tak a terrour, because thay war not wouȝt to sie, quhat now thay saw; the king with his 25 oratrie mitigatis thame, and cheiris thame vp: Thaireftir, be suir rasounis, and constant arguments, he schawis thame, that to thair nobilitie, vtilitie of the Realme, and menteining of *vertue*, nathing to perteine mair, than that all vicious persounis, quha deformet the Maiestie of the

Kennethie
correctes the
wicket man-
eris of the
Nobilitie.

That thay al
follow his
counsel.

* L. “*officii*”—duty.

† L. “*In Prætorio*”—the Palace? The Tolbooth was the *toll-house*, the custom-house, and then the prison for debtors, and later the criminal prison.

Republik, with thair *co*nsentis, throuch al *partes* sulde be punisseed. Thay al *consent*, athir for his gud rasounis or feir. The king schortlie skaylet this assemblie, and commandes the Nobilitie to remane with him in Perth, quhilk thay did, quhill fyue hundir, nocht of the maist obskuir and simple sorte, war castne in bandes, and throw force to Perth led to the king, quhair thay all war hangte. Heireftir was gret rest in Scotland and quytenes, ay and quhill the *danes* Jnvadet the king in Perth. quhair may be seine how vnconstant and slidrie was 10 the end of that battell quhen in ane hour the * Victor and Vanquist, tyner and Wizner war baith present. The Danes war first vanquist and fled. The Scotis sa blyth of that Victorie and proud, nocht sa mekle followet the flieris, as † heidet thair the deid lyeris. The Danes be- 15 cause thay sie vs kuil in persewing & following the chaisse, thay gather force to fecht, & returnes, and renewes the battell. Quhairfor that day, but doubte, had beine to the Scotis nocht only sair, bot black and deidle, gif Hai that housband *man* with his tua sones, 20 w^t thair helpe had no^t assisted in gret necessitie, and extreme desperatione. ffor the *danes* war cruellie gathered, of a gret courage, renewing the battell ferclie thay invadet: We halfe in despair, lychtet all *on* futt, and tuke thame to the flycht, nather could be stayet, for 25 ony constance in the king prouokeng thame to resist, or ony ‡ bosting to brek the force of the ennimie, nath- ing walde stay. This Haii of quhome we spak, was

* L. "Cum una hora eundem et victim et victorem vidisset"—in which battle may be seen how fickle is the fortune of war, since the same hour saw the same man both victor and vanquished.

† L. "Mortuis ac cæsis militibus capita contumeliose amputant"—out of contempt cut off the heads of the wounded and dead soldiers.

‡ L. "nec conviciis acerrimis in objurgando"—could not be induced to rally either by the king's example of bravery in his personal resistance, or by the disgracing reproaches with which he importuned them.

The Scotis
at Perth
putis the
danies to
flicht.

* behaldeng in the neist feild how the pluche teilet as his maner was, bot despytes the ¹⁵⁸ blaitnes of the men of weir and thair cowartnes, and wondiris of the kingis couragiousnes, stoutnes, & baldnes, in a furie he pwes 5 vp the ȝok of the pluche: and bidis his sones in al haste, that thay follow him: he occupies and standes in a way quhairby the men of weir fled: this was a lang Way, and dyket in on ilk syd, and at the end a verie narrow outpassing. heir all flieris quhither thay war enni- 10 mies or of his awne, he cruellie strykes doun. This was the cause, that the scotis gathireng agane reteiret to the king. The danes strukne with feir for this new supplie, ar miserablie slane doun. Hai and his sones, as appeiris, obteynet baith the honour and proffite of 15 this noble victorie. for king Kennethie gaue him the best parte of the hail spoylzie, and faryer the king gaue to him and his sones sa mekle land as ane falcon aff hand wil flie ouer at ane flicht, q^{lk}e maist liberalie and frilie he gaue. fra this monument, besyd Dundie standes a craig 20 stane, quhairon is put the name of ffalcon, as in our dayes may be seine. he farther commandes to Weir in his armes thrie rid buckleris in sygne and takne of noble and probable Victorie and fortitude. frome this man is vpsprung ane illustre and excellent familie amang vs, 25 quha tuik the beginning and +decore frome kingis sa mony ȝeiris by past, and that honorable dignitie, quhilke now thay cal Constable.

Quhen with strangeris all was pacifet, start vp sum at hame of his awne, quha baldlie buir armes against 30 him: quhais force he brack, and sindrie of thame, bot sindrie Wayis, punist, thame he heidet quha war authoris of this deid, the rest he put bot til a sobir pane for

* L. "rusticæ rei pro more, in proximo agro intentus"—busied in the usual way with his rustic concerns in a neighbouring field.

+ L. "Longa majorum serie a Regibus honestata"—ennobled by the kings through a long series of ancestors.

The battell
is repairet.
Hai ane
husband, is
cause of the
victorie
against the
danes.

Hai fra
hand re-
ceives ane
riche re-
ward.

Hai is nobil-
itat and
now a fam-
ous stock.

Civil Weiris
ar begun
and punist.

pities cause. Bot he causet to bring Crathlint to the Castel called * Domitiane, and thair to be heidet, this Crathlint was the principal gentle man of the Mernis, and cheif author of al this trublesum fyre. Amang the rest, quha war accuiset of trasoun to the kingis Maiestie, was noted the Prince of † Wales falslie, quhom the king, vthirwyse haueng a gret command of Justice, that his sone mycht succeid, allace, put doun.

About this tyme, Edward king of Jngland sent legatis to Kennethie, with him to treit tueching the *confirmeng* 10 of the band, and placeng a prince agane in ‡ Wales.

Ke[n]nethie was in sik fauour baith with the Nobilitie and the peple, that his sone Malcolme was prince of § Wales throuch electioun of the Nobilitie, and *consent*

*The law is
changen
concerneng
the success-
sione of
the kingis
barnes.*

of the peple, and the law was changet, throuch force of 15 quhilke, the kingis barnes was put frome all gouerneng in the Realme afor thay war of perfyte age. Gif this law had nocht bene changet, his sone thair culde haue obteynet nathing. Within a few dayes, the king was sair troublet in conscience, that ny^t or day he had na rest, 20 in the day tyme solicitude & kair, be nycht he culde no^t sleip, for that slauchter he sa was vext. To purge his conscience of sik a croce, and his mynd of sik vexatioun he vset the counsel of Bischope Mouean a famous man and of excellent vertue : At his reueist he intendes 25 to wesche away this blek of conscience ; with Dolour, teires, almes deides, pilgrimages, and sik sorte of haly workis. Nochtwithstandeng God, quha is iust in Juge-
ment, and seueir in punishment ; for that crime puniste him and his sone seueirlie estirwarde. ffor as he re- 30 turned frome ffordoun, heir he visited the Sepulchrie and Reliques of S. Palladie, and offired mony and

*The king
does pen-
nance for
the slauch-
ter commit-
ted.*

* L. “*Arx Domitiana*.” Boece (Metr. Chron.) calls it *Dunsenen*.

† L. “*Malcolmo Duffo Cumbriae principi*”—Malcolm Duff, Prince of Cumbria (Cumberland or Strathclyde).

‡ L. “*Cumbris*”—over the Cumbrians.

dyuerses giftes; he turned into Fenella, be the way, in the Castell of ffettirkairne. This fienella was mother to Crathlint, and of kinⁿ and bluid to Malcolm Duff, prince of Wales, quhilkes baith, the king vniustly had 5 iustifieth: and had castne in bandes * Constantin and Grim to defraud thame of all rycht to rigne. Sche, I say, for this cause despyted the king woundirfullie, feiring gif it had cumⁿ to lycht, or the king ony way had knawen the mater, it had suirlie beine her lyfe; quhairfor this 10 haitred sche coueret with a schaw of Luue, and the vale of her plesand countenance, verie prudentlie, that nathing appeireth to the king mair humane and gentle, nathing mair sinceir and true than sche. Bot because the haitred within her breist sa¹⁵⁹ hoow in her harte lay 15 hidd, and was sa grett, that the sam sche culde nocht satisfie, without her intentioun, and excepte sche had sum way gottne the kings † lyfe, quhilke to fulfill Sche now is hail occupiet to bring the mater about be sum slichte and quyet craft, this way sche beginis. She neir 20 the kingis chambre erectes a magnifk tour, the inner parte of this tour al of ‡ tabulet Wark curiosulie caruet, the vttir parte maid artificioslie, sa fynlie and cunninglie, that al manⁿ meruellit of her. The partes of his chambre, with tapestrie wondirfullie § (Wouen) Woifen 25 with golde, sche decoret. In the midis of the kingis chambre, sche sett vp a brasen Jmage, with a goldne aple in the hand. This aple sett was full of pretious gemis, and wrocht w^t sik ane Jngine, that quha twechet it sulde schortlie be schott, with darpes or arrowes maist

The Woundirfull Wylynes, fraud and deceit of fienella to put douse the king.

* L. "Constantino quoque et Grimo devincta"—related to Malcolm Duff, and also friendly to Constantine and Grim, whom the king had imprisoned.

† L. "sed cum odium tantum esset, ut non nisi morte Regis posset pvari"—but since her hatred was so great as not to be appeasable except by the king's death.

‡ L. "Tabulato"—woodwork.

§ Key-word at bottom of page so spelt.

scharpe, with al the force of that Jngine, quhilk sa curioslie sche had hid behinde the tapestrie. The king estir supper cumis to the tour, all thing diligentlie he perceiues, commendes and Wondiris. Notwithstandeng he inquyres Fenella of ilk thing ernistlie, that gif he my^t 5 perceiue or spy out ony desceit, prudently he mycht eschew and flie in tyme. ffenela, quhome nature had formet to deceiue, grapet the kingis mynd, and vndirstude evin as the mater was, sche smeiris baith his mynd and eires with thir wordes: maist illustre and bountifull 10 souerane, sayes sche, * send, and diligentlie inquire of al thingis; quhen heir is nathing, quhilk may nocht the verie selfe testifie my kair, my luue, and obseruance toward ȝour grace: ffor seing ȝe, my souerane, sa hard stickis in my breist, and bydes in the boddum of my 15 harte, that neuir Was ony thing to me mair cheirfull, or evir saw J ony thing to me deirlier belouet, J culde nocht refraine, to schawe sum sygne excellent and notable, of the bentnes of my mynd, and vehement luue to ȝour Serenitie: this goldne aple, sett with pretious Mar- 20 garites lyk lampes of lychte, quhilk alss mekle commendes the crafte of the craftesman that Wrochte it; J preparit and decoret vnto ȝow my Souerane: quhilk, gif ȝour Serenitie plesandlie accepte, doubtles, ȝe do accordeng to ȝour honour, and mekle to ȝour Maiestie, and 25 will be a perpetual monument of my Loue and feruent affectioun toward ȝour grace: Nather walde J, that ȝour serenitie, Weyet my mynd, my Loue, my obseruance, with the price of this gift, artificiousnes and brichtnes thairof; bot that ȝe walde mesour with my luue the 30 price of this gift, artificiousnes, and brychtnes, J say, with my luue, and obseruance, and vehement † affec-

* L. “Mitte de singulis inquirere”—desist from your close scrutiny.

† L. Nor do I wish you to measure my goodwill and reverence and love by the value or workmanship or beauty of this gift; but

tion. This gif ȝe do; strait sall J be bunde to ȝor Serenitie in perpetual; and sa sal do, that na bleck of ingratitude toward ȝour serenitie, in me sal be funde at ony tyme. Quhen this sche had sayd, knaweng that 5 the tyme of that fraude was nocht far aff, sche subtilie, to flie the schotis of that Jngine, slipis intil a nuik neir by, as gif sche had sum necessar thing ado. The king in the meane tyme steiris the apill frome syd to syd, to the gret skaith of the hail Realme, throuch quhilk ingine 10 he scharplie and schortlie throw the body is schott. ffenella flies at a back dur to the nerrest Wodd: Sche on vpon a swift horse, and sa chaipet. Kennethie dies the ȝeir of his rigne xxv: of God, M.

Through the
fraud of
fenella the
king is slane
the ȝeir of
Lord 1000.

Jn Scotland that age War mony haly and deuote men 15 as Vigian Mounk a man of gret cuzning and Godlines, and a notable preicher: also Mouean, Medan, Blaan, Englatie, Colmok, all Bisches, Ouan diacon, Congan Abbatt; and mony vthiris, of quhome, for thair meruel- 20 lous maneris, deuotioun, and eruditione, that age mer- uelet, and the posteritie following honouret.

Haly mes in
Scotland.

Papes—Benedict 6, Jhon 14, Jhon 15, Jhon 16, Gregorie 5,
Jhon 17, Syluester 2.

R. Emp.—Otho.

f. King—Lotharie 4, Hugo Capetus, Robertus.

Ing. king—Egeldred.

LXXXI.—CONSTANTIN IIII.

Constantin, culenie his sone, is crounet be the hail Nobilitie; sum thinkes, he was his brother, noȝt his sone. He * deprives the law laitlie sett furth be Kennethie of successioun to the Realme. Throw this, Scotland in 25 twa factiounis is diuydet. for quhen Malcolm Kennethies

abrogatis
Kennethies
lawis, he
vsurpes ye
kingdome.

rather that you estimate the value, workmanship, and beauty of the gift by my goodwill, reverence, and love.

* L. “ violavit.”

sone rychtuous heire of the Realme, knew of this, he prepares With a power to invade Constantin, first in Laudien. Bot thinkeng him selfe nocht able to resist the force of his ennemie, and thair multitude ; he skailis his armie and reteires. The Danes now gatheris against

The danes
invades Jng-
land.

5

Edward king of Jngland : to quhome Malcolme iunes his men of Weir in respecte of the band betuein thame.

Jn his absence, cumis Constantin with an armie of xx thousand Weil prouydet, to invade * Wales. Kennethie a bygottne brother to King Kennethie, meitis him at the 10 mouth of Azzand With a power of † fiet suddartis. Lang faucht thay, and ferclie, with a gret courage and bauld, the slachtir on baith handes sa fell was, that the victorie was evin to the Wizner dulfule and hauie. Quhill now the men of Weir in cruell battel, ar all skattirre throuch 15 and throuch, Constantine and Kennethie meitis, and entirg in singular combatt the ane with the vther, ilk of the tua slayis vthir, bot Kennethies men of Weir obteynes the victorie.

Quhen Constantin was king, a gret famine, and derth, 20 and hungre, and a terrible pest Was throuch hail Scotland ; at that tyme mony mekle commendet for thair haly lyfe, spred this Worde throuch the peple, the cuntrie to be opprest w^t sik plaigs, for the fraud, that ffenella committed against the king, quha Was sa far 25 in the fauour of God : this thay schaw furth and planelie preiue be mony examples of antiquitie out of the Histories, that for sum cruel crime committed be sum priuat persone, oft hes chancet that God seueirlie hes punisset the hail Realme ; cheiflie for y^t cause to moue 30 the peple, than calde in deuotioun, to murne and Lament thair sinis.

Constantin dies the thrid ȝeir of his rigne. About this tyme Was of Scotland a mounk in Germanie, his name

* L. Cumbria.

† "or Wales" not in L. text.

‡ for *feit*=hired.

Quhen Con-
stantin per-
sevis Cum-
briae or
† Wales.
Kennethie
slayes him
at the singu-
lar cowbat ;
the ȝeir of
his rigne 3.
of God 1002.

Helias: quha was with gude men in sik fauour, with Jll men in sik hatred and sa sair inquiet, that how farr the gude thocht to promoue him, the Jll intendet sa farr to deprive him. Quhairthrouch cam, that throw his *vertue*, 5 he *vancuist the malice of mony religious mounkis of Scotland, quha throw thair *vertue* and pietie War weil commendet of all, J say, throuch his *vertue* he was creatt Abbat of thir tua Scotis Monasteries in Colane, S. Martine, and S. Pantaleon. Sum invieris of his 10 *vertue* and honour accuiset him of mony blekis behind his back to Pelegrine Archibischope of Colane, and blasphemet him of sik a maner, that the Archibischope sa hated Helias, that he intendet be sum ingine and quyet craft to stell him doun, and expell all the Scotis 15 religious. Bot Helias Scotis Abbat, as Marianus Wrytes, quhen this he vndirstude, with the rest of the Scotis thir Wordes he pronounces: Gif Christe be in ws pilgrims: He neuir lat Pelegrine cum quick to Colane. and sa the Lord fulfiled: for schortlie thaireftir he diet a 20 suddan deid; and Helias was preseruet to the Weil and vtiltie of his Kirke. Jn Colane eftirward Helias departes this lyfe the 3eir of our Lord **XLIII.**

Helias
Abbat.

Papes—Syluester 2, Jhon 18, Jhon 19.

R. Emp.—Otho 3.

f. king—Robert I.

Ing. king—Egeldred.

LXXXII. GRIM.

Quhill Malcolm, lawfull heire and rychtuous of Scotland, remaines in Jngland langer than lang anuiche, 25 Grim, the first oye that king Duff had, greidie of

Grim con-
trare al-
rycht wil be
crowned
king.

* L. "ut, virtute superante malitiam, multorum monachorum scotorum assensione, Abbas crearetur"—so that virtue triumphed over malice, and with the approbation of many Scottish monks, he was made Abbot of the Scots monasteries in Cologne.

authoritie, cleimes rycht to the kingdome, and Wil be crouned. He with his sueit Wordes, and his ornat language, wan the hartes baith of the Nobilitie and the hail peple. Quhen Malcolme knew of this, Jn haiste out of Jngland he cumis to Scotland to brek the presumptioune of Grime. Grim meitis him. Jn the verie

5

Malcolme
innaides
Grime.

Bischope
Fothadie
makes con-
corde betu-
es Malcolme
and Grime.

selfe mamur quhen thay war to Joyne battell, Bischope ffothadie in the samyn habit as he proceidis to the haly alter cumis betueine thame verie venerable, and obteynet sik fauour of baith the pairties, that frome that furth 10 sulde be na mair discord betueine the tua pairties, with thir conditiouns, that Grim how lang he lyuet sulde be king, estir him Malcolm sulde succeid, and his posteritie sulde follow.

Grime
changes his
maneris and
tynes the
hartes of his
peple.
Malcolme
setis on him
agane.

Grime is
slane the
3eir of his
rigne q. of
our Lord
1010.

Nocht lang estir Grim gyuen to gluttonie and drusk- 15 nes, throuch ouer gret tyraunie he tint the hartes of his peple: quhairfor Malcolme at requeist of the peple, prepares ane hoste against Grime, stout and strang. At the village namet Achnabart, the day of the Ascensioun of our Lorde, thay mett. Grime is strukne doun the 3eir 20 of his rigne ix; and is burrit in Jona.

Papes—Jhon 19, Sergius 4, Benedict 7.
R. Emp.—Otho 3, Henrie 2.
f. King—Robert 1.
Jngl. king—Egeldred.

LXXXIII.—MALCOLME II.

Kennethies
lawis he
confirms of

Malcolme the secunde of that name, sone to Kennethie, quhen Grime is slane, succeides to the croune. quha, quhen he had pacifiet the cuntrie, neist he labouret, be al meines possible to obteyne the fauour of the peple: 25 and the hartes of the Nobilitie. and, because he thocht the nerrest way to the fundatione of his kingdome, was

to renew the lawis, quhilkes his father afor him had confirmet, ernistlie and prudentlie he Workes with the Nobilitie, to performe this his intentioun. At this tyme Sueno king of Denmark, quha had chaist Eldred 5 king of Jngland into Normandie, and occupiet the kingdome, bostes and braules that Scotland had furnist Jngland in all necessaries to the Weiris, quhilke iniure to reuenge, he commandes his tua capitans Olaue and Enet, that with ane armie in haste thay passe in Scot- 10 land, and spoylzie, ding doune, and slay quhome thay find. How sune thay land at the mouth of Spay, throuch force thay occupie thir thrie castelis, of Elgin, fforrey, and *Nardenz, Malcolme quiklie collectes ane armie, to breck the furie of the danes, throuch all that 15 cuntrie. schortlie estir thay ȝok: quhair Malcolme in a furie in the mid feild fercelie † boutes; heir he is woundet, and tynes the victorie. Nochtw*standeng Malcolme was naturalie sa couragious, of sa Wichte, and sa noble a spirit, that he walde haue a reuenge of 20 that skaith, quhairfor the neist summer he renewis the battell: quhair quhen Enet he had slane, his companioun Olau he dryues into Murray land. heireftir agane he meitis with the danes at Barrie in Angus, thaireftir at ‡ Gezmere, and last at § Crudan in Buch- 25 quhan. Jn sindrie battellis he slew Cam cheif captane of the Danes, and Canut thair kingis brother: The danes war sa Wraikit, that Scotland was called thair Sepulchre ouer all. Quhen now the danes out of Scotland war expellet, and Scotland was now restoret to 30 thair alde libertie, betueine Scotis and Danes, peace is confirmet dureng the lyftyme of baith the kingis. Quhen

the successione of kingis.

The Danes invades Scotland & occupies thrie castelis in Moray-land.

Malcolme in battell first vanquish, secundly obteynes the victorie.

How he ouircam the Danes.

Scotland your sepulchre called.

* Nairn. The metrical chronicle spells the name *normyn* and *nermyn*.

† L. "mediam aciem prærumpens"—fiercely breaking through the centre of the enemy's line, is wounded.

‡ *Gamrie*, near Banff. L. spells the name as in the text.

§ L. "Crojudan."

How liberal
was Mal-
colm to the
Nobilitie
eftir the
danes war
expellit.

The famous
and illustre
familie of
the Keithes.

Murthlye is
a Bisshopes
sait.

Malcolm sair vexet was in the Weiris, he * schortlie dies, al quha Wrocht had Worthilie in the feild stude about him, quhome he rychly rewardet, and payet thame With precious propynes. Amang thame was a certane ȝoung man, his surname Keith, the principal vasquisser of Cam, quhome the king, for his actiuitie had enduet with large landis in Laudien, frome quhilke surname thir landes hes the title, quhairfra that noble familie of the Keithis is estemet to haue the beginning: quhilk benifite mouet Keith sa meruellouslie, and steiret him vp to take 10 sa mozy stout and vertuous thingis in hand, sa wyse a counsel, and sa constant in performeng all his deidis, that the king thocht, only to him selfe and the Realme to applye his counsell, and that in perpetuall ane of that surname sal be Mareschall in the kingis hous. 15

Eftir thir Victories Malcolm dedicatis the Bischoprie of Murthlie to S. Moloch, agmenting it with mony fayre feildes: Bean heir he causet to be consecrat Bischope, a singular man baith in cuzzing and deuotioun, quha eftir was canonizet, and reckned amang the Sanctes, to 20 quhome quhen^z xxxii ȝeiris he had bene Bischope, succeidet Donortie, nocht butt opinione of haly lyfe, and satt xlii ȝeiris. Departet in the sam place with Bean, and burit was in Murthlye; quhair in grett Reuerence he is with the peple and Veneratioun. This king 25 diuydes the kingdome in Baronies, ouer quhilkes he settis Lordis and † Lardis, and agane Lardes and gentle men, quha to the king and his successouris commitis thair possessioun^s, with the ¹⁶⁰ tochir gude of thair

* L. “Malcolmus, bello jam defunctus, omnes qui in bello bellicosi perstiterunt magnis affecti muneribus”—having finished the war, Malcolm richly rewarded all those who had proved themselves sturdy warriors therein.

† L. “Barones et Principes constituit; et vicissim Barones et Proceres Wardas et Releifas suarum terrarum in eum in perpetuum conferunt”—the Barons and Nobles give up the Ward and Releif of their lands to the king for ever.

heires. Quhairfor this law is ȝit obseruet in Scotland, that quhatsaeuir possessiouȝe, eftir his deith quhomto it perteynet, the king sall haue with the man barne, quha with him sal be brocht vp, evin to the age of ȝeiris xxi, 5 a woman barne, quhill sche be xiii: Dureng that tyme quhat proffit sa euir cumis of that feild, and ane ȝeir thaireftir of that same feild cense, with the hail Toucher gude of that heire or heretrix, quhen sche is admitted to successioune, gif her father in her * lyfe haue not pro- 10 uydet, al, I say, sall cum in to the kingis Thesaur; nevir ane denyet bot all granted, att ance: He rulet the Realme ȝeiris nocht few happilie and with gude suc- cesse; and mony illustre and notable Workes left behind him. amang the rest, a law buke, quhilke our cuȝtrie 15 men hitherto haue keipet nathing changet, + perteyneng to the king, to the Magistrate, or the Judge, quhilk Volum thay bring ay with them to Judgement. Mair ouer al quha seruet in the kings hall Wanted nocte his ȝeirly stipand. He constitute mairouer, for the kingis 20 + letters quhat sulde be payet, and quhat till reidaris and Wrytaris, as in our dayis hes beine the maner.

This Malcolme, quhen he had lyuet the gret parte of

A Tirage in his age.

* L. "his life." The whole passage reads: "At the death of the owner of lands, his heir should remain, if a male, till his twenty-first year, if a female, till her fourteenth year, under the ward of the king; and whatever interest came of that property during that time (for this usufruct we call Ward), and for a year following (which is called Releif), along with the entire dower of the heiress, unless the living father had betrothed her for marriage, should fall to the king's treasury.

+ L. "Regiorum magistratum judicatumque, quos . . . vulgo Can-cellarium, Conestabilem Mariscallum, Camerarium, Justitiariumque vocitant"—the book of the municipal laws, and of the king's magistrates and judges, who are called Chancellor, Constable, Marshall, Chamberlain, and Justiciary.

‡ L. "pro regiis diplomatis ac ceteris literis, libellionibus, tabulariis, lectoribusque"—what should be paid to notaries, regis-trars, and readers, for the king's diplomas and other letters.

Heir is he
slane
and rignes
xxxi ȝeiris
of God 1040.

lyue in tyrannie, and to be avaritious, quhairfor sum
quhais freindis he had beine verie iniurious to, slew him
att the Tour of Glammis in Angus, throuch lyeng in
Wayt, xxxi of his rigne.

Papes—Benedict 7, Jhon 20, Benedict 8.

R. Emp.—Henrie 2, estir him Conrad 2, Henrie 3.

t. King—Robert 1, Henrie 1, his sone.

Jngl. king—Egeldred, Edmund surname * ferreum latns,
Canut of Denmark, Norway, and Jngland, King
161 Herald.

LXXXIV. DUNCAN.

Duncan, Malcolme, his oye, the croune hes receauet; 5
with al consentis: a man, suirlie, in quhome nature had
wrocht na crueltie, na vndecent maneris, insafar that he
his gret fau:
our bred
civil weir.
Walde reuenge na iniure done to him: Quhen the peple
lyke a cumpanie of Wylde beistes, hand + louse, sa farr
abuset this his wondirful lenitie and gentlenes, and that 10
he culde na Way lay this his clemencie asyde, he com-
mitted his cure till ane Machabie sum thing seueirer
than him self, as tuecheng the administratioun of the
Republik. He first, that the rest be thame my^t take
example, mett + sickerly with the Jnduellaris of Loch- 15
quhaber, becaus thay had baith Woundet and spoyleþ
§ of the Kingis sences (*Banquo*) passing throw thame.
Machabie mairattouer, chaist the Magdonald of the yles
into the castell of Lochquhaber, quha tuik in hand to
defend thir limmeris: and in this castell seiget him sa 20

* Ironside.

+ L. “omni vinculo soluti”—free from every restraint; the opposite of *hand-fast* = bound by pledge.

† L. “exquisitissimo supplicio afficit”—punished most severely.
mett sickerly=dealt smartly with?

§ L. “quod Banquonem regum in Locquhabria Thanum,
gravissimo inficto vulnere, regio censu, grandique pecunia spoli-
arent”—because they had grievously wounded Banquo the king’s
thane in Lochaber, and had robbed him of the king’s taxes and a
large sum of money besides.” *sences* should be *censes*.

strait, that na way he saw to flie: * quhairfor he thocht he was cum to that pane, quhilk he had fund, gif he had fallin in the handes of ane appne ennemie.

Now the King of Norway sayles in Scotland w^t ane 5 armie, vndir this pretext, to reuenge the blude of thair natioune sa cruellie sched sum tyme in Scotland, quhilk pretexte was maist vniust. Sa hard and scharpe thay seige the king in † Berth, that evin than doubtles, he had cum in thair will, gif he had nocht in tyme tane tyme 10 and in gude occasioune, haue brokne in vpon thame sairer seiget with wyne, nor the castell with men. Schortlie cumis Machabie with nue cumpaines to the kingis helpe: qⁿ Sueno the king of Norway saw that, him selfe ill hurte and mony of his folkes slane doun, 15 his campe in haist he skailis, and flies to thair schipis. Nochtwithstandeng king Duncaⁿ wald nocht suffir the scotis to take this occasioune of slayeng the danes althot thay † my^t: Bot Machabie persueng the victorie baith in Word, Warke, and Counsell, he gau^e the Danes 20 classe a chais. Thair zit will testifie the monumentis of the danes, at Kingorne, quhair it was done, thair signe and takne grauen vpon the stanes for ane perpetual monument, and euirlasting gloir. bot not lang estir Machabie inspiret with sum ill spirit, steiret vp 25 throuch instinctioun of his Wyfe, and hoip of gude success, slew that haly king Dun^can, quha to sik honour had promouet him, and slew him sa cruellie the saxt *ȝeir* of his rigne. His tua sones Malcolme Canmoir, and

The danes
agane Scot-
land in-
vades.

The danes
ar vanquist
at the toun
of Perth.

Heir the
Danes class
is wraket.

Machabie
slayes Dun-
can, of his
rigne ȝeir
the 6.
of God 1046.

* L. "Unde tantus illi metus injectus, ut ad pænas, quas se subitum opinione præceperat, si in hostium manus venisset, subterfugiendas, uxori sue, liberis, sibique, manus intulerit"—he was so frightened, that, in order to escape the punishment which he thought would be inflicted upon him if he fell into the enemy's hands, he laid hands upon himself and wife and children.

† L. "Bertha Castellum."

‡ L. "Quam sibi occasionem Danos extinguendi elabi non patitur rex"—which opportunity of destroying the Danes, the king would not allow to escape him,—but followed up the victory of Macbeth, and scattered the fleet.

Donald throuch this War gretlie feiret and prudentlie fled.

Anmichad a singular persoune of gret Nobilitie, eftir that he had studiet to al sciences, in Scotland for the maist parte, he began to consider diligentlie with him selfe, how schort is this Warld, and in how schorte a space ar all this Warldes effairis conteinet and comprehendet; and quhen it maist flurishes how bitter it is. Quhairfor he gaue ouer all, and past in strange cuntries, of that mynd and intentioun, that frie of Warldlie sollicitude and kair, haillie he mycht studie til heuinlie thingis. Quhen with gret trauell, he had past throuch mony cuntries, for religiouinis cause, his curse at last he stayet, at the cloistir of Fuld in Germanie, that the braid Way he my^t renunce, & trauel now the narrow 15 passage of our Lorde, and that being seperat frome al menis cumpanie, he with God allane mycht communicate his thochtes and al his cogitatiounis, closet him selfe betueine tua narrow Wallis; quhairfor the commoune speiking of al man^t Was, Anmichad † closet vp; 20 Jn the samyn place he dies. he floriste in the days of this king Duncan the ȝeir of our Lorde 1046.

*vpon his
grawe in
testimoniie
of his haly-
nes, war
seine iustum-
erable lytes;
and mickle
suct singing
hard. vpon
quhome, J
x ȝeir in-
closet, sais
Marianas,
said messe.

Papes—Benedict 8, Syluester 3, Greg. 6, Clement 2.

R. Emp.—Henrie 3.

f. King—Henrie 1.

Engl. king—Harald, Canut 2, S. Edward confessor.

LXXXV. 162 MACHABIE.

Machabie a
tyrannous
king.

Machabie, sone to Doada, the dauchter of Malcolme the secund of that name, throw force occupies the kingdome.

25

* This margent not in L. text.

† L. “Anmichadus inclusus dicebatur”—he was called Anmichad the recluse. An Michiatach or Michiat would mean in Gaelic *the unworthy one*—perhaps a name assumed to hide his identity.

Heir mycht be seine a noble man of Weir and ane
baulde, bot * crueller than he was naturallie of him
selfe, this way now he cumis to establishe the kingdome
throuch his counsel, quhilke he had ill wonn. He
5 labouris to Wynn the hartes of the Nobilitie throw
gystes; of the commoune peple, throw humanitie &
gentlenes, and all † Realme raikaris to put furth of the
land; and to sett out gude and helthfull lawis, and wt
fairnes to Wynn all man. Bot at last trublet in conscience,
10 for the deid he had done, that of his nerrest freindis he
tuik sik feir, that chaingeng the sueitnes of his nature,
his Nobles he athir slew appinlye, or secreitlie through
his counsell at a singular combat steiret thame vp against
vthiris. Bot quhen he thocht him selfe in dainger for
15 Banquo and Makduff, in haist he causes to remoue
‡ thame, and craftilie lay Wayte for thame: quhat sal
J mair say? Lyke a Tyran, was na man quhome he
feiret nocht; and al man feiret him. followet vpon this,
that the peple solicit and sair kairful for the state of the
20 cuntrie, and thinking thame selfes in danger nocht small,
sent Makduff into Jngland, to desyre Malcolme Can-
moir thair banist, to cum hame and releife his fathiris
heritage, quhilk to obteyne and defend against Macha-
bie, thay gyue him thair faith and promise; and trulie
25 that thay sall manteyne him. Malcolme heireng this
and weil vndirstandeng the mater, returnes to Scotland
be king EdWard weil furneist, and x thousand Jngles-
men, and meites Machabie first at Dounsinn, neist at
Lunfann, quhair cruellie thay ȝok. Heir § Makduff

strang &
strenthie but
cruell &
wylde.

He exerces
his tyraunie
against the
Nobilite.

Malcolme
banist in
Jngland,
was called
hame be the
Nobilis of
Scotland.

Machabie is
slane the
ȝeir of his
rigne 6. of
God 1061.

* L. "Belica laude florens, sed insita quadam naturae ferocitate
crudelior"—a man full of warlike spirit, but urged by his innate
ferocity to unnecessary cruelty.

† L. "Grassatores"—disorderly people.

‡ L. "Illum tollit; huic insidias struit"—the first he destroys;
he lays traps for the second.

§ L. text adds: "the thane of Fife, whose wife and children
he had shortly before ordered to be put to death."

strykes the heid frome him, and brings it vnto Malcolme, quha rychlie rewardes him thairfor.

This his slauchter fell the saxt *ȝeir* of his rigne, or rather of his tyraunie. Marianus declairis, that a certane Scotis king to Rome past in pilgrimage, and be the Way sa largelie to haue distributet to the pure, that siluer lyk seid he sew vpon the ground. quhom albeit Marianus obscurlie cal * Machetad, notwithstanding for mony causes, I am persuadet rathir to beleue the samyn to haue beine of quhome now we sall make 10 mentioune, to wit Malcolme: quha quhen Machabie sat in the king's sait, oppresset Scotland throuch tyrannie, he than obteynet baith the ornament and glorie of a Prince maist godlie and rychtuous, in visiting religious and haly places, as efter mair abundantlye we sall 15 expreime.

Monie at this tyme notable ȝoung men baith cunning and vertuous, to eschew the tyraunie and ȝok of Machabie, fled into Germanie. of thir was Paternus Mounk and martyr throuch inspiracioun of the spirit of God, 20 quhome Wicked personis inviet sa sair, that thay inuentet to burne vp tua clostiris and him with thame. At this

tyme Abbat of ffulde was Egebert, to quhome succeidet Sigebert scotsman, godlye and vertuous, quha thairfor is thot of all man to succeid Archbisshop to Menth. 25

Papes—Clement 2, Damasus 2, Leo 9, Victor 2, Stephan 10, Benedict 9, Nicolas 2.

R. Emp.—Henrie 3, Henrie 4.

f. King—Henrie 1, Philip 1.

Engl. king—Edward confessour.

* The passage referred to runs thus: “1050. Rex Scotie Macbethad Romæ argentum pauperibus seminando distribuit.” The same author makes Macbeth become king in 1040, and die in 1057.

King Malcolme visites Rome.

Paternus martyr.

Egebert and Sigebert Abbatis of Fulde.

The fyfte stock and kindred of kingis in Scotland heir beginis, quhais lyfe and notable actes ar descriuet in the vi buik of this Historie.

This king throuch example of his Wyfe S. Margaret, is mouet and steiret vp to gude, and he excelis all the kingis afor him in vertue and Justice.*

OF THE NOTABLE ACTES OF SCOTLAND.

THE 6 BUIK

LXXXVI.—MALCOLME III. CANMOIR.

MALCOLME sone to Duncan, frome a grett heid he is namet Canmoir,† quhen the tyran Machabie was past, conforme to the maner of his elderis, in Scone king is he crouned. How sune he was crouned, in Forfair, he 5 causet proclame a generall assemblie : quhair all, quha war authoris of his hamecalling, he rychie rewardet, and mony with nue and singular honouris he decoret. He decoret Patrik Dunbar, and Makduff, with Erlomes, Dunbar with the Erlome of Marche, because 10 he had beine true contrair the traytouris, quha trublet

Quhen
Malcolme
Casmor
had win in
Scotland he
is crounet.

He creatis
Magistratis
Erlies;
Knichtes &
barroussis.

* These lines are a translation of an inscription placed under the engraving of Malcolm Canmore, in the genealogical table referred to in the previous paragraph.

† Gaelic, *Cean mor*—literally, “big head.”

the Merce and Laudian, and Makduff with the Erdome of Fyfe, because he was the cheif cause and first author of the destructione of Machabie: to vthiris he gaue Menteith, Athol, Lennoe, Moray, Cathanese, Rosse, & Angus. Mony Jnglismeⁿ in lyke maner of hich kin and blude followet him into Scotland, quhome the king of his liberalitie promouet til Dignities, because stoutlie thay had stande with him in his defence against his enimies: of quhilkes war Calder, * Lokhart, Gordoun, Setoun, Lauder, Wawn, Meldroun, Schaw, Lermont, Libertoun, Straquhin, Rotray, Dundas, Cockburne, Myrtom, Jnglis, Leslye, Cargill, Cuirra, Mar, Meinzies, † Abbercrummie, the cheifest: of thir mony noble houses haue tane the beginzing. The name lykwyse mony haue receiuet frome thair fortitude, and 15 mony fra the land, quhair thay duell.

houses in
Scotland
sprung of
England.

The offspring
of the Stu-
arts is quhom-
fra.

Jngland is
occupiet be
Wiljeam of
Normandie
Duke.

Edgar
rychtyuous
heire of
Jngland
landis in
Scotland wt
his mother
and sisteris.

The sam tyme, was Waltir Fleanthie, his sone, decoret with the honour of cheife † Merchal, because in Galloway and in the § hilandes he dantouet had the rebellis; of quhome *cam* the familie of the Stuartis, 20 quhais offspring We sie this day illustre, and schine sa bricht in the || kings scepter.

In this meane tyme, Herald efter the deith of Edward, invadet the scepter of Jngland, excludeng Edgar rychtyuous heire, bot be William duke of Normandie 25 Herald is ouircum, and schott out of the Realme, and slane. Now Jngland is occupiet be Wiljeam of Normandie bastard, quha was crounet in December xxv. the zeir of God 1066.

Edgar, Edward his sone, and S. Edward, his oye, 30 was first ¶ neist Herald, thaireftir sair vexte and trublet

* L. spells this name *Lokeri*. † in L. text "Abbercrunnie."

‡ L. "Senescal." § L. "Hebridibus."

|| L. "Regio sceptro splendet"—is now adorned with the royal sceptre.

¶ L. "Primum ab Heraldo, deinde a Northmanno vexatus," &c.—troubled first by Harold and then by the Norman.

with Weiris be him of Normandie, quhairfor with his mother Agatha, and his tua sistiris, he quyetlie slipis till a schip, of that intentione, that quhen they culde na mair of the kingdome hope, thay mycht pas in Vngre.

5 3itt throw the grace of God sa befell, that throuch the force of Windes dryuenz heir and thair, at last thay landet in a heuen of fforthe. vnto this day remaynes in that place, quhair sche first landet, S. Margaretis porte, and the name sett onz, frome Edgar his
10 sister, quhome thaireftir Malcolme mariit, With Joy of
the hail Realme, and causet her to be crouned of a
solemne and Royall maner, quhome he receauet With
giftes rare, and singular in * tocher gude, singular J say,
and meruellous baith in body and mynd.

Margaret
Edgar his
sister mariis
King Mal-
colme.

15 Quhen Wilȝeam of Normandie knew this, he com-
mandet to pas out of Jngland all Edgar his freindes and
of his kin : of quhome † sprang vp Lindsay, Vaus, Ram-
say, Loual, Toures, Prestounz, Sandelandis, Bissatt,
ffoulis, Wardlaw, Maxwell, and mony vthiris of grett

all quha
perteynet to
Edgar ar
commandet
to pas out
of Jngland.

20 nobilitie, that tyme cam first in Scotland : quhilkes
houses all war decoret be king Malcolme with large
landes, as this day may be seine. With Agatha lyk-
wyse cam out of Wngre mony, as Crychtoun, ffodring-
hanne, Giffert, Manlis, ‡ Borthik, and vthiris : amang

Mony ar
sprung vp in
Scotland
houses of
Jngland &
Vngre.

25 quhom War Bartholmew Leslie, quha throuch nobilitie
and stout Courage was honorable amang the rest,
quhais quicknes of Jngine, ablenes of mynd, val-
ȝeantnes of body and fercenes of force, king Malcolme
meruelet sa mekle, that in seigeng the castell of Edin'

30 and in all battellis of ony affecte, he vset his Jngine. Of
this hous of the Leslies are sprung up, mony baith
virtuous bauld and Victorious : in quhome Was Waltir
Leslie erle of Rosse, quha efter he in mony battellis had

Waltir leslie
Earle of
Rosse, com-
mowlie is
callet a noble
knychte.

* L. "rarissimis animi corporisque dotibus excultam"—adorned
with the rarest endowments of body and of mind.

† L. "unde"—wherefore.

‡ L. "Brothik."

obteynet the prayse and command of Wisdome and Wichtnes, last he seruet Ludouik the secund, and Charles the fourt, Emperouris, sa Worthilie in the Weiris against the Saracenis, that from the *putt of a noble spirit, na doubt, quhairthrow he vset to ding 5 doun the douchtie, and bring thame in subiectioun, thay namet him a hartie horsman, or a noble † rydar, frome this stock is the Erle of † Rothose, and mony vthiris Baronis, and Cnychtis of the Leslies; quhome first Malcolme, thaireftir diuerses vthiris kingis decoret 10 with fayr feildis, and braid boundes in Fife, Angus, Gourie, and the Gareoch, and vthiris prouinces, quha this day ar of grett Nobilitie, and mekle commendet for thair *virtue* in Scotland. About this tyme lykwyse, cam out of ffrance ane innumerable multitude of Nobles 15 of quhome We haue Freser, Sanchir, § Montgomerie, Campbell, Brise, Betoun, Tailzefer, Bothuell and vthiris diueris. Wilȝeam of Normandie is now grettlie offendet that Edgar is defendet be his nyghtbour of sik a maner, quhairfor he prepairis to invade Malcolme: Bot quhen 20 he sies na prosperitie in his enterprise, he makes a bande of peace with Malcolme: on this conditione, that Edgar, freindes and fauourers, sulde returne to Jngland without iniure or harm.

Erle of
Rothose
Lord Leslie.

Houses in
Scotland
procedet of
franchmen.

Wilȝeam of
Normandie
prepares to
inuade Mal-
colme.

Peace maid
betuein
thame.

Cumbirland and Westmuirland is granted to Malcolme 25 on this conditione, that na Scott craue ony thing to hurt the authoritie of Normandie. The kingis agriet, in witnes of quhilk, to cutt al occasioun of contentioun betueine thame, the crose for a marche betueine the twa Realmes thay walde affix, quhilke place eftirward 30 thay namet Recrose; all truble than was pacifet and ciuile weiris ceiset; the molestatioun maid be thame of

* L. "impetus."

† L. "generosi Equitis cognomentum consecutus"—obtained the surname of the "noble Knight."

‡ L. "Rothesius"—Earl of Rothes.

§ L. adds "Monteth."

Galloway, and the hilandis, was with litle labour stayet
be Waltir Fleanthie his sone.

This battell nocth weil endet, beginis another mair
greiuous in Cathanese and the Rosse. The king in haist
5 commandes Makduff to gather and sett vpon the rebellis :
and that him selfe with ane armie, with speid sulde fol-
low. How sune thay cam to the Watter of Spey, on the
vther syd of the riuier appeiret the enimies in grett num-
ber ; The kingis capitane was sa hartles at the sycht of
10 sik a multitude, that he schrinket, and stude. Malcolme
sieng that, gripping couragiouslie the Ansinzie in his
awne hand, to beir gaue it to Alex^r Caron, a stout man
and a baulde, of quhorne descendet ar the * Skrimgeours :
This office because he sa hardilie tuik in hand, and sa
15 stoutlie steppit fordward, he to him selfe and his estir-
cumeris obteynet the name and honour of Capitane of
the kingis † Vangaird. Quhen the armie Was past ouer,
and nathing bot straikis was luiket for, the stryfe and
contentioune stayet was hail, throuch the intercessione
20 of certane Bisshopis, for throuch thair counsell and
pietie Was Wrocht that the enimies cam in the kingis
Will, and sa the king Wanⁿ the Victorie Without blude.

Thir newis now cam till his eiris, that sum of the
Nobilitez had coniuret his deith. The neist day to the
25 hunting he passis and cheises his companjoun a certan
noble of ane illustre Stock, author of this his ‡ slauchtir
as the opinione Was. Him in the feildes he seperatis
fra the rest ; as gif he had sum thing to talke only with
him, and in secreit. Hand for hand, he prouokis him

* L. "Skrimgeri inde dicti sunt"—his posterity are therefore called *Skrimshires*. The form of the Latin word would lead to the supposition that the name signifies in some way *Standard-bearer*. The spelling in the text, however, looks more like a form of our modern word *skirmisher*.

† L. "Regii Primipili."—This points to the meaning *skirmisher*. The *skrim* line was the first line of an army thrown off to *protect* those behind : comp. G. *schirm*, and E. *screen*. See note 114.

‡ L. "Conjurationis"—conspiracy.

Malcolme
pacifies al
ciuile weiris
and nycht-
bour feades.

The familie
of the
Skrimge-
ouris cap-
tanes of
the kings
Vanguard.

The stoutnes
of King
Malcolme
and clemencie
to thame
quha had
cowiurret his
deith.

to the singular combatt: and that verie scharprie with
thir wordes. "Now cum onz, thou traytour, thou hes
now a ryght tyme to compleit thy Wickednes, quhat thou
seikes, take it now. Heir hes thou a commodious and
meit place for the slauchtir, that thou foules for. Thy
counsell is *cum* to lycht, is now maid cleir quhat thou
intendet against me. Sik crueltie *caz* noct betuein
wallis lang be hidd. Jnvade now thy prouoker, sett *on*
quhill he knawes, sett *on* quhill J am radie. That is a
signe of a stout harte, a takne of manlines, a declara- 10
tionune of *verte*, of a true *man*, of a verie *man*: Bot to
put out a manis lyfe quhen he sleipis, or knawis nathing,
or occupiet in sum other thing, is a takne nocth only of
ane abiecte and spreitles harte, bot of a beistlie nature,
farther thou Will be accuiset of traysoun to the kingis 15
Maiestie, and last thou will vndirly the pane of thy
heid." The conscience of this noble man now accuses
him selfe, and sa sair abaset is throuch the kingis
authoritie, albeit vthirwyse was of a stout courage, that
he fell at the kingis feit; sinceirlie *confessit* the hail 20
mater as it was; and with al humilitie crauet mercie,
and cryet for grace. Quhen he humbles him self, the
king forgyues him, and receaues him in his fauour *on*
this conditioun, that thaireftir he be true to his king
and his cuntrie, and sinceir in all his doengs, and that 25
he haue nathing ado with traytouris or wicked persones.

The king in
pietie and
continencie
followis the
example of
his wylfe, S.
Margarett.

Lewis maist
filthie and
licherous he
deprives.

The king heireftir, throuch example of S. Margaret his
Wyfe, steiret vp throuch her counsel and pietie, conteinet
himselfe frome all kynd of impuritie and vncleinnes, and
led a lyfe deuote and sinceir, *immaculat* in the smallest 30
blek: Throuch this occasioun al Scotis following the
kingis example, florised in the commend and prayse of
Religioun and Deuotioune; and banissing Leicherie,
thay with all diligence studiet to Chastitie and to be
continent; for the statute *confirmet* be king Euen 3. 35
concernezg the Madinheid of Virginis, this king vttirlie

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

dischairget, as a statute maist filthie, and vnworthie of a christne man, quhairfor he cleine put it out of vsse.

Throuch authoritie of this king, than first, Moray and Cathnese had new Bischopis : the vthiris four, to wit, 5 Sanctandrois, Murthlie, Whithorne of S. Ninian, and Glasgo, he enduet with benifites mair lairge than thay had afor : and causet searce throuch hail Scotland for the maist deuote and best instructed, and *vertuous*, and consecrate Bischopis in thir places.

He institutes
nue Bischopries
and settis
ouer thame
cunning
men and
vertuous
Bischopis.

10 The Scotis now, throuch the riott and sumptuousnes of Jngland, defectes frome the auld skaircetie, and sobrietie of thair elderis. ffor afor thay war content with ane * only table in thair hous, and that verie sobre, and couiret bot ance in the day, thaireftir thay began to 15 haue tua tables, tuyse in the day, and diligat cheir.

The auld
sobrietie of
Scotland
now de-
fected.

15 Wilȝeam of Normandie king of Jngland, now dies, thrie fatt patrimonies he leiuies in Testament to his thrie sones : to Robert, the Dukrie of Normandie ; to Wilȝeam, the Kingdome of Jngland ; to Henrie Beauclerk his haill 20 Thesaur, quhilke was gret, and his houshald geir, quhilke was rich and illustre, out of mesour.

Wilȝeam of
Normandie
heir dies.

The kirk of † Coldinghame Was alde, for eilde than fell, quhilke Malcolme reparet, quhen Wilȝeam was Bischope, and Turgot Prior ; this Turgot was a man, 25 suirlie, quha may be callet *vertuous*, gif ony Was to be funde : quha thaireftir, quhen he Was creatt Bischope of S. Androis, sett furth till his posteritie in the Scotis language the lyfe, maniris, Wondirful Warkes, the godlie deidis and deuote of S. Margaret, and king Malcolme 30 her housband : throuch quhais requeist lykwyse, king Malcolme erected a fair and magnifik Kirke in the toune of Dunfermiling, with a clostir, of his awne expenses, and dedicat the samyn to the maist haly Trinitie :

The mon-
aster of
Dunfermiling
bigit be
Malcolme

* L. "una mensa, eaque modica, unoquoque die contenti"—they were content with one meal a-day, and that very frugal.

† L. "Dunelmense"—of Durham.

Thaireftir he maid this acte; that fra that furth, sulde be a commoun buriall to the kings of Scotland; and that the Mounkis of S. Benedictes ordour in that monaster perpetuallie sulde serue god, quhome he enduet with ample and ryche rentis.

5

Rufus king
of Jngland
Inuades
Scot:
Warneng na
Weiria.

Malcolme
selfe cuwis
to defend
the bordour.

In this meane tyme, the king of Jngland, his name Wil³eam Rufus invades Scotland, but ony signe of Warneng, gret or small, slayes the Wardenis ilk man and seiges the castell of Anwik, and takes it. Malcolme, how sune he heires thir tydengs, gatheris quicklie, and with his power beltis the castell about. qⁿ the winning agane of the Castel was now neir ane ende, Loo Malcolme, to the skaith of the hail Realme, is slane; slane, I say, throuch a traytorous trick. ffor a certane Jnglis knychte cumis rydeng with the keyes of the castel as thay war radie to gyue ouer, quhilkes quhen the king gladlie Walde receiue, this traytour fraudfullie schuities him; and throuch suiftnes of his hors chaipet all perrell. Rufus, for that, namet him Lord * Persie, that sa stoutlie, for his cuntrie, he had put him selfe in sik dainger; and gaue him fair feildes in Northumbirland for his rewarde: letting him to vndirstand, that neuir in Jngland was ane sa couragious, sa vertuous, or sa notable ane Jnterprise evir tuik in hand. That sam tyme was with anoyer greiuious Wound Scotland Woundet: ffor Edward, king 25 Malcolme his heire, was slane not far frome Anwik, at a simple meiting, w^t the Jnglismen, diet of a strayk.

Edward his
sone, now
no^t far fra
this lykwyse
is slayne.

Margaret
departes &
is canonizet
and reknet
with the
haly number.

Now Margaret lyes doune seik in the castell of Edinburghhe, and the fourt day estir her housband and her sone War slane, sche departes this lyfe, burriit in Dunfermiling, and for the haly and happie lyfe, q^{like} heir sche led, is canonizet and reckned in the number of the Sanctes and had in grett reuerence of al the peple.

* L. "Perseum." Leslie seems to insinuate that the name Percy is derived from that of the mythic hero Perseus. It is commonly said to be a corruption of Pierce-eye.

S. Margaret buir to King Malcolme Edward forsaid, Etheldred, quha lykwyse dies in his 30th, Edgar, Alexander and Dauid; quhilkes all conforme to thair ordour war kingis; and eftir thame another, Edmund 5 his name; quha gaue him selfe only to contemplatione in a clostir: Sche buir him als tua dauchtiris; the ane * Malda, quha mariit Henri Beauclerk King of Jngland: of quhome the kingis of Jngland to this day ordirly haue proceidet: The name of her systir Marie, sche 10 mariis Eustachie Erle of Bolonie, of quhome the Duikes of Bolonie and Aluernie haue proceidet: as may be seine ouer all cleirer than the sone at Nune day, how of thame Henrie the III. King of ffrance and Pole, had his beginning. for is maist true, that Queine Catrine 15 of the hous of the Medices, a Woman prudent & wyse, was King Henries mother, and cam of this stock, as Nestor makes mentioune in the Genealogie of the hous of Medices, and the alde histories of that hous abundantlie testifie.

20 Marie buir a dauchtir to this forsaid erle of Bolonie quha eftir in mariage was gyuen to the Erle Mairche in Jngland; quhome nocht lang eftir the Nobilitie crounet, King of Jngland.

Jn king Malcolme, his tyme, ane was, his name 25 † Luthlat, his father Machabie, as in the maist ancient Histories, and of maist Antiquitie, is maid mentioune; This man, J say, throuch ambitione, makes to invade the Realme, quhen Malcolme war slayne, to sit in the Kingis sait. Bot his gret audacitie and fuilhardines, 30 With all his partaikeris cost him his lyfe: quha althoch was nocht reknet in the number of the kingis, was nochtetheles decoiret w^t the kingis sepulchre in Jona.

¹⁶³ Marianus Mounk cam out of Scotland and in the Marianus
Mounk

King Malcolme & S.
Margaret
thair barwes
and eftir
cuweris.

Henrie last
king of
ffrance cam
of Malcolme.

Luthlat
Machabie
his sone, the
Realme
walde reiue,
and is slane.

* L. "seu Matildis"—Maud or Matilda.

† L. "Luthaltus cui fatuo cognomentum"—Lulach or Luglaigh, surnamed the fool. See note 162

Scotsman a
notable his-
toriograph-
er.

dayis of Machabie tyran, quhen and vnder quhome Was
nathing felt bot the heit of haitred and Jnvie, and
nathing sein bot ciuile weir, and deidlie fead, and in
his cuntrie he culde sie nathing bot blude, his cuntry
thoch kyndly, ȝit he left it. ffirst he cumis to Fulde : 5
and thair in a monaster he entiris, quhair Abbat Richart
a Scot was Abb. a notable man, vertuous and wyse,
vnder quhome, and with gret felicitie he harde al
sciences, to Mentis thaireftir he passis: and quhen he
had led a solitar and religious lyfe now threttie ȝeiris, 10
he obteynes in hevin the place preparat for him, quhairof
he is suir for his vertue, quhilke was nocht smal estir
al manis opinioune. Js writne of him that peirles panes
& meruellous vpon him selfe he tuik, to bring to lycht
quhat Was hid and in darknes, in maiteris of maist 15
Antiquitie, and correctet mony errorris in the Ecclesi-
astical Historie, quhilkes throuch meisis fault and thair
imperfectionis war croppin in, in place of quhilkes he
sett the trew truthe. Jn that age flurisset Cormache in
Scotland Bischope of Murthlie, quha worthilie soulde be 20
reknet w^t the maist cunning, ȝe and the maist haly
Bischopis.

Papes—Nicolas 2, Alexander 2, Gregor 7, Victor 3,
Vrbanc 2.

R. Emp.—Henrie 4.

F. king—Philip 1.

Ing. king—Edward confess., Harald 2, Gulielm, of Nor-
mandie Lord of ¹⁶⁴ requestis, Willjeam rufus.

LXXXVII.—DONALDE VI.

Quhen Worde cam to Donald, Malcolme his brother,
quha lurket in the Jles, that Malcolme was deid, he
requyres the king of Norway nocht to refuse to assist 25
him, in sik a hope of the kingdome. Thay aggie with
thir conditiounis, that gif he obteyne the kingdome, al

the Jles perteyneng to the kingdome thaireftrall be vnder the king of Norway: This esilie mycht be done, thay thocht, quhen all the barnes that Malcolme had, War bot ȝoung, and With little labour myt be persuadet

5 to consent.

Heir the king of Norway is alluired to his assisstance throuch hope of the Jles, quhairfor he prepares a stout armie of noble and valȝeant ȝouth: throuch quhais helpe, and force, Donald occupies the Realme, contrare all his

10 aduersaris.

Edgar, Queine Margaret, her brother perceieng in how grett danger, War now Malcolme his barnes, causes be his moyan to transporte thame intill Jngland: thair of the kingis liberalitie War thay fed, and royllie brocht

15 vp, and out of all perrell preseruet. Organ, Jnglisman, haueng Edgar at deidlie fead, accuses him of traysone to the king of Jngland, how sune this was done; alledgeng that Edgar affirmet him selfe and his oyes lawfull and ryctuous heires to the croune of Jngland. A

20 certane knyght, in the kings hall, of Jngland that tyme, heireng Edgar innocentlie ¹⁶⁵ fylte With sa foul ane blek, was verie discontent, quhairfor in Edgar his name, quhen he had prouoket him to the singular combatt, hand for hand, he slayes him.

25 Donalde in Scone is crounet king, a gret parte of the Nobilitie in his contrare. He insinuatis estir to his familiaris, that sum tyme, he sal suirlie reuenge that Wrang Wrocht against him be the Nobilitie. This

30 quhen thay vndirstand, quyetlie thay call to thame Duncan, King Malcolme his bastard sone, a man quhome thay knew vset in the Weiris, stout, bauld & pertlie, dar sett on in hope of the kingdome. This man lang had seruet, in the Jnglis and frenche Weiris, and

35 thairfor was perfyte in all sik exercise. Duncan now receaues ane armie frome the king of Jngland, and cumis against Donald in Scotland. Cumis, J say, and hardilie

King Malcolme his barnes in Jngland ar preseruet throuch industrie of Edgar yair mother brother.

he boates the nobilitie.

Duncan chaisis Donald to the hilandis.

invades Donald. Bot now radie to iune, Donald his
men of Weir, defectes frome him, thay forsaik Donald
and strykes With Duncan. Donald sieng this, flies, and
in al possible haist hydes him in the Jles, quhairfra he
caw, with * al his kinglie dignitie, the xviii moneth of 5
his rigne.

He rignes 18
monethis
and dies the
yeir of God
1093.

Pape—Urban 2.
R. Eng.—Henrie 4.
R. Eng.—Philip 1.
Eng. King—Willem Rufus.

LXXXVIII.—DUNCAN I.

Duncan
now occu-
pies the
Realme.

Quhen Donald Was ouircum, Duncan With all con-
sentis was elected king; Bot he sa Weil was expert in
the Weiris, and sa gret pleasure had to fecht, that he
delytet mair to steer vp ciuil Weiris through the hail 10
custrie, than to find the Way to sett the Realme at
peace: quhairthrough in all the partes of Scotland hett
seditione, nocht seindle mycht be sene.

Makpendir
Earl of
† Fife stayes
Duncan be-
mycht.

Donald now lyand vndir how in the Hilandis, heires
of this, and thinkes through experiens to preive, gif he 15
for money, cas cause Makpendir to put him doun.
Makpendir sueiris that he sal do it, and gyues him his
hand thairto, and performes his vow or it was lang.
ffor in a stormie and Windie nycht, quhen Duncan was
sound sleiping, he slayis him, and sa restores Donald 20
to his dignitie. The king of Norway now fortifies the
Jles with Keiperis conforme to the conditiounis betueine
thame, and With force defences thame: The actes &
the lawes lykwyse, quhilkes evin in our dayis thay vse,
War institut be him, and sett furth.

Donald is
restored to
the Realme.

That now Donald was returnet, that amang thame he

* L. “ *regia dignitate spoliatus* ”—deprived of the royal dignity.
† L. “ *Comes Mernice* ”—Earl of Mearns.

gouernet, that the Jles he had put frome the kingdome, offendet the Nobilitie verie sair; quhairfor thay intend to bring in Edgar king Malcolme his fourt sone, and to allure him with scharpe requeistis, Wyse counsell, and 5 fayr promises to receaue his kingdome. he with ane armie from the king of Jngland, cumis with speid; and throuch *vertue* of the ansinzie of S. Cuthbert borne befor him, he obteynet against Donalde; of quhilk ansinzie he Was instructed With a voce frome hevin. 10 Donald is now chaist to the Jles, thaireftir till Scotland brocht agane throuch force, and castne in prisoun; quhair he endis this lyfe the fourt *zeir* of his occupatioune.

The Nobilitie bringis out of Jngland Malcolme his sone.

Donald tane in battel is castne in prisoun and their dies the *zeir* of his occupa. 4. of God 1103.

Papes—Vrban 2, Paschal 2.

R. Emp.—Henrie 4.

F. king—Philip 2, Ludo. 4, Crassus.

Jngl. king—Gulielm Ruf., Henrie 1.

LXXXIX. EDGAR.

Edgar, Malcolme his fourt sone, of S. Margaret, With 15 clapping of hands and exceeding Joy of all, receauet the kingdome. This king in his coronatioune, of ony king that evir Was in Scotland, was first oynted with oyle, be Godrick Bischop of Sanctandrois. This maner of oynteng the kingis, S. Margaret obteynet of Pape Vrban 2.

The priu-
lege of oynt-
ing the
kingis of
Scotland
was be S.
Marg. ob-
teynet.

Jn the meane tyme, Wilȝeam Ruffus king of Jngland 20 was recleslie slane hunting the wilde Deir, w^t man & dog, in a place now namet the new forrest, that as he offendet, sa mycht he be punisset. His brother Henrie to him succeidet in the kingdome, quha mariit Malda 25 purtie, the halynes, the elegant and braue maneris of her mother Margaret; Jn al thingis, J say, quhilkes perteyne to *vertue*, and to that * rule, sche gaue sa

Malda
Queen of
Jngland fol-
lowis the
maneris of
her mother,
S. Margaret.

* L. “virtutem, virtutisque normam”—in everything that was virtue or dictated by virtue.

Marie
Malda her
sistir spous
to the Erle
of Bolonie.

gude example, that eftirward, With her awne, augmented
Was till her name a new surname; Gude. her sister
marie, Eustache Erle of * Bolonie mariit, no^t ane of
the leist.

Edgar eniunet him selfe sik a rule of *vertue* and
pietie, that quhen he was nocht in diuine *contemplatioun*, he Was hail occupiet in the matteris of the
Kirke, and his cuntrie. To the Mounkis of Couding-
hame, he gaue the landis, quhilkes now thay haue, and
he amplifieth the † Bischoprie largelie with the toune of Beruik; Bot because the Bischope was sa vngrate in sa
liberal ane prince, that he sett ‡ for the kingis lyfe, the
king thairfor baith tuik Beruik fra the Bischoprie, and
the Bischope fra his Dignitie.

This king led a peaceble lyfe, trublet With na Weiris. 1
Nocht ane of his subiectes, durst euir invent ony thing
to his vexatioun, or ony way to molest him, nocht sa
mekle for feir of punisment, as for luue of his Maiestie:
for quhilke cause thocht al man a deidlie sin, him ony
way to offend, quha was sa politik in maneris, sa sueit 2
in couersatioun, and in all vertues sa Weil instructet,
as na man can beleive. This lyfe he departes in the
toune now namet Dundie, but ony offspring, and is
buriit in Dunfermiling, of his rigne the ix yeir.

Edgar the 9
yeir of his
rigne dies
peaceable
of God 1109.

Papes—Paschal 2.

R. Emp.—Henrie 4, Henrie 5.

F. king—Ludo. 4, Crassus.

Angl. king—Henrie 1 Beauclerk.

* “ Boulogne.”

† L. “ Monachos Dunelmenses agris Coldinghamiæ, et Episcopatum Dunelmensem oppido Berwicko”—he enriched the monks of Durham with the lands of Coldingham, and the Bishopric of Durham with the town of Berwick.

‡ L. “ insidias capitales struere”—laid snares for the king’s life.

XC.—ALEXANDER I.

Quhen Edgar Was deid, his brother Alexander * Fers, that is, stark, obteinet the croune of Scotland. In the beginzng of his kingdome, quhen the Moray men and Rosse vndirstude, that the king followit the fustepis of his elderis, was diligent in prayer, and haillie delytet in haly warkes, thay began to rug and reiue, stryk and stick ilk vther: as gif na man war to defend the king his persone, or to take reuenge of thair deidis: but Alex^r Within few dayis passing in thae partes, dantounes theif, traytour and all, quha had bot ane step steppit by the way, with a seueir correctioune. Mony for this, hated him sa sair; that thay knew nocht how or quhat way thay my^t haue a reuenge; bot with his † chammirchilde thay conspyre, and win^zis him with money quyetlie to 15 putt doun the king. Now ‡ nycht drawis on^z: the conspiratouris all ar present: thay are cozuoyet in be a § conduit or secreit: thay find the king now Walknet, quhome thay thocht to haue fund sound sleiping, and sa to haue slane; the King With a draune sworde pertlie 20 and stranglie, and as his name was ffers, fercelie invades his faes, With sik a spirit, that first he stickis his chalm-mirchilde, neist the vthiris vi quhomwith he conspiret, and brocht in. The rest flies. bot schortlie eftir ar tane, and Justifiet all. Quhat the Historiographouris 25 haue Writne to thair posterietie, is nocht to be past ouer, With silentse, and to be forȝhet. Thay write, that a woman, with a lamentable countenance, symple in rayment, and a pitifull voce, caist her selfe at the Kingis feit, as he raid through the Mernis, complaining sair,

This king
hail gyues
to pietie.

He dan-
tounes theif
and tray-
tour.

Conspiracie
against the
king.

The conspir-
atouris all
ar Justifiet.

* *I.e.*, Fierce. L. has “*id est ‘Fortis.’*”

† L. “*Cubicularius*”—chamber-servant.

‡ L. “*Nox præfinitur*”—the night time is agreed upon.

§ L. “*per cloacam*”—a sewer.

a notable example of Justice.

that the erle his sone of that cuntrie, cruellie had slayne her housband, and her sone, because thay had called him afor the Judge, for debtis auchting be him. The king nocht sa mekle commouet through compassioune and pitie of the Woman, althoch his nature bent anuich thairto, as he Was angrie, heiring that Wrang Wrocht * innocentlie be sic persounis; With speid he bangs frome his horse, and constantlie affirmes that on his horse he sall nocht leip, afor he see w^t his eyne, that traytour miserablie hangte. 10

The fundatione of Scone, & of S. Columba, monasteries.

This King bigit ane Abbay magnifik and fair in Scone; another in the Jle of ¹⁶⁶ Euonia, q^{lk}e he dedicat to S. Columba, because that in a stormie Wethir, and tyme of a gret tempest, he descendet, and cam doun to that Jle, and thrie dayis remaynet w^t the Eremit of ¹⁵ the selfe Jle, quhill the storme was sa vehement: he mairouer helpet the rentis of the Abbay of S. Androis no^t lychtlie: quhairof he is namet fundatour, as † we speik; The Abbay of Dunfermiling, quhilk his father had begun, he † theiket, maid it ryche, and a grett ²⁰ benefice.

David the Kingis broyer maries the heretrix of Hundingtoun & Malda her daughter.

Quhill Alexander in Scotland sa singular was in the exercise of vertue, and deidis of pietie, his brother Dauid seruet his Sistir Malda in Jngland, and with her Was sa weil brocht vp, and sa frilie followit her counsell, ²⁵ that for his humanitie and gentlenes, Wisdome, Modestie and singular manires, the hæretrix of Hundingtoun and Northumbirland he obteinet in mariage, of quhome he conceiuet a sone, to wit, Henrie. through this contracte the erledomes of Hundingtoun and Northumbirland ³⁰ cam to the Kingis of Scotland.

* *I.e.*, undeservedly.

† L. “ut sic loquar”—if I may so say.

‡ L. “fastigio imposito.” He put the finishing stone to the Abbey which his father had commenced. The translator takes the phrase literally, to mean he roofed (*thatched*).

§ Not in L. text.

This Alex^r depairtis but bairnis the ȝeir of his rigne xvii. That same selfe tyme, a certane noble springhald his surname Cumeine, is be the king promouet til honour and dignitie, and large landis, because w^t his 5 Maiestie he stude stout and *vertuous*, and Was baith trew and faithful. Frome him the hous and clanz of the Cumeinis first vpsprang, quhilke throuch proces of tyme grew sa gret, that thair gretnes Was the cause of thair awne fall.

Alex^r dies
the ȝeir of
his rigne 17.
of God 1126.

10 Of the godly and Religious seid, quhilke king Malcolme diligentlie sewe, followed sa plentifull fructe, that quhen that seid had Scotland fillet abundantlie, nathir culde langer conteine the selfe w^tin sa narow boundes as scotland, throuch Germanie it spred abreid: ffor 15 quhen mony in Scotland war inflamet to employ thair hail studie to the promotioun and incresse of Virtue, steiret vp with the example of our cuntrie men, of quhomen asfor We maid mentioune, sum past till vthiris partes of Germanie, than quhair thay war, quha first 20 war thair, throuch that peple ouer all thay schynet, in sik sinceritie of lyfe, in sa solide doctrine, cunning and conuersatioun, that thay cam in fauour with mony of the Princes of Germanie, and mony hundir ȝeiris estir keipet that æstimatione firme, solid and sure, ay and 25 quhill Henrie Duke of Austrie, the ȝeir of or Lord 1121 erected a monaster in Vien, and a gret and large liueng layd till it, forbad als be ane edicte, that nathir Abbat, or Mounk, at ony tyme, be ony meines, or manir of way sulde in that Monasterie be admitted bot scottis. for 30 the Duke was steiret vp with this hope, that throuch the singular simplicitie, the incredible sinceritie of maneris, the woundirful example of lyfe, and the rest of the haly *vertues*, in quhilkes our Scottis Mounkis lang asfor florised in mony clostiris of Germanie quhair thay 35 seruet, sulde be putt doun and brocht to nocht quhat-euir Jgnorance, vice, or corruptione of maniris asfor had

The original
beginning of
the cum-
einis.

The monas-
ter of Vien
in Austria is
erected in
fauour of the
Scottis the
ȝeir of or
Lord 1121.

cropne in amang the peple: quhat heir we haue said abundantlie testifies the * *Chirographum* or obligatiounе of the fundatiounе of the Monasterie, ratifet, and confirmet through authoritie of Duke Henrie selfe, quhilke obligatiounе be chance we fande.

5

Papes—Gelas. 2, Calixt. 2, Honorie 2.

R. Emp.—Henrie 5.

F. king—Ludouik Crassus.

Jngl. king—Henrie 1.

XCI.—DAUID I.

Dauid the youngest sone that Malcolme Canmoir had, to the Croune of Scotland succidet lauchfullie neist Alexander his brother. He was sa prudent and Wyse, that through that singular *vertue* he nevir brack the band of peace ance confirmet w^t Henrie king of Jngland. To 10 the puir he was sa benigne and sa benevolent, that verie oft committing his awne materis, albeit maist Waichtie, till vthir menis kuir, him selfe Waytet vpon the puir, that he saw na Wrang war done to thame, bot iust Juge- 15 ment. farther; sa far he burnte with the ¹⁶⁷ low of the luue of God, that to amplifie the boundes of the Reli- 20 gioniounе, and to spred the glore of God, he erected Kelsoi, Jedburghe, Melros, Neubottle, Caldstreme, Dun- drannen, Haly Croce, nocht far frome Edinburghe, Campskenneth, Killosse, and Holme in Cumbria, all monasteries, and maid thame all large lyuengis, and 25 decoret thame with mony ornamentiis: He foundet lyk- wyse tua abbayes of Religious Nunis the ane in Carlell, the vther in Beruik: and vtheris twa nocht lang eftir; the ane in Nue Castell of the ordour called Præmonstra-

he rules
Weil, deuot-
lie, and
peacebilie.

He is a
mantainer
of pietie and
rictuous-
nes.

King Dauid
foundes xiii
monasteries
in Scotland.

* L. “*Chirographum foundationis*”—the Charter of foundation. Bishop Leslie was sent to Vienna by Queen Mary in the year 1578, with the object of strengthening this and other foreign Scottish monasteries.

tenses; and the vthir in the selfe place of S. Benedict his ordour.

Als he foundet four Bischopis saitis, Rosse, Dunkelde, Brechine, Dunblane, and the Bischoprie of Abir-
5 dine he transported fra Murthlie, and ilk of thir saitis he
enlairget With gret landis and lyuengis, and all thing
perteine[n]g to the dignitie of a Bischope, that na inlaik
war, he saw.

Dauid mairattouer stoutlie refusises to pay ony pen-
10 sioune, ony tribut, ony rent to Stephan king of Jngland,
qua violentlie occupiet the kingdome, for the erledomes
of Hundingtonne, Northumbirland, & Cumbirland, in
respecte that his syster Malda was rychtuous heyre of
Jngland: quhairfor betuene the tua Realmes vehement
15 and cruell Weiris ar begunn. at last, estir sair slauchtir
on baith handis, throuch the counsell and deuote industrie
of the Bischopis on baith sydes, all cause of dis-
kyndnes, or deidlie fead, Was outhir laid black *deid
or presentlie laid asleip, and the hertes of the tua
20 kingis straitlie knutt agane throuch benevolent and true
luue. With thir conditiounis of peace, that Henrie King
Dauid his sone, sulde succeid to Northumbirland and
Hundingtonne, as rychtuous heyre throuch his mother:
and Cumbirland sulde continue still With the King of
25 Scotland, for quhilkes all, Henrie sulde pay nathing to
the King of Jngland bot ane athe, quhilke commounlie
is now namet homage.

Nectan first Bischope of Abirdin, was cheife in this
Confederatioun and band of peace: betuene the
30 kingis. quhairthrow followit that for the commenda-
tioun of his solid doctrine, his gret cu[n]ning, and graue
maneris, he cam in sic fauour With King Dauid, that
quhat euir was ado in the Realme, priuat or publick,
Waichtie or lyc[t]h materis, all sulde be at his will and
35 pleisour, and depend vpon his counsel. Quhen this

The founda-
tiounis of
four Bis-
chopries.

David re-
fuses to pay
ony tribut to
Stephan
King of
Jngland.
Weiris be-
gus and
than peace.

Quhairfor,
sum tyne
Homage be
the Prince
of Scotland
to the King
of Jngland
is payet.

* L. "stirpitus evulsa"—plucked up by the roots.

was done, Henrie quha was mariit With the Erle of Warrinis dauchtir Adama, dies, his father ȝit alyue. Adama buir him thrie sones, Malcolme, Wilȝeme, and Dauid, With als mony dauchteris, Adama, Margaret, and Malda. Within a schorte quhyle eftir ; King Dauid 5

King David
his sone dies
afer his
father.

Henrie
Prince of
Jngland be
King David
is maid
knycht.

The pietie
and deuotioone
of
Dauid in his
deith.

happilie &
meiklie he
dies, the ȝeir
of his rigne
29. of christe
1151.

In his
fatheris
sepulchre he
is laid.

Dauid his
sone Walter
deuote and
religious.

gauie Henrie the title of a knycht, because he was the sone of the Emprise of Jngland, his oye, him selfe * Prince and heire. Dauid thaireftir fell in sair sicknes, quhilke schortlie Was his end : quha, quhen with a maist ardent desyre, prepairing him selfe to the deith, his 10 Viaticum he walde haue had, wissing with the haly commounioun, or blist sacrament and body of our Lord to be refreshed, quhen, I say, his Jnfirmitie was sa scharpe and sa fercelie with Vehemence gripit him, with all humilitie, no'theles, he gaid to the kirk, vphaldne be tua 15 preists : cryeng all the way him selfe to be vnworthie to quhome that blist body war † exhibited : how sune that was receauet, he was borne in till a chalmbur; thair throuch dolour of the seiknes, he coulde speik na mair, quhais happie saul depairtes in peace ; Jn Carleol dies, 20 and in Dunfermiling is burrit.

Sum wryte, that Dauid had ‡ eftir a boy w^t ane Vidue, the Wyfe of a certane § Knycht, his name Waltir, the name als of the boy Waltir : quhome thay say was of sik honest conditiounis, sa deuot and haly, that quhen the 25 haly ordouris he had receiued, against his wil he Was caused to accepte the chazounrie of S. Osualde fatt and fair ; and the Priorie of Kirkhann w^t it. heiraftir ry'lie with him selfe he Weyis, that na true vertue war able to

* L. "Equitis aurati titulo."—He gave the title of "gilded knight" to Henry, son of the Empress Matilda his niece, the Prince heir of England.

† L. "indignum ad quem sui Salvatoris corpus deferretur"—saying he was unworthy that his Saviour's body should be carried to him.

‡ Not in L.

§ L. "Equitis aurati."

hurt the body sa mekle as * ydleset or ryches, quhairfor refuiseng the Bischoprie of S. Androis, he closes him selfe in a Clostir ; quhair Wayteng certane houris vpon his contemplaytione, seperat frome all cummir and kair 5 of body and mynd, the rest of the day he exhibited to the Lord : ay and quhil throuch mony requeistes, and continuall vrgeng he was creatt Abb. of Melros. This man was author, quha gaue Malcolme, called Virgo, counsell to lay the fundatiounis of sum Clostiris. This 10 counsell, I say, he gaue, quhen to this dignitie he was promouet. he deuyset, and sett furth, mairattouer ane ecclesiastic Rule ; and finalie, quhen in mony mirackles he was illustre, was reknet amang the haly + number. Was als in King Dauid his tyme, Richard of S. Victor a Richard of S. Victor.

15 Scott of his natioune, the cheifest theolog of his tyme, in the ordour of S. Augustin, in Parise, solid in doctrin, quhair happilie he this lyfe departes, and thair is buriit, his monument lykwyse, quhair he lies, in this our age may be seine, in the Monasterie of S. Victor, decoret 20 with a singular Epitaph.

Papes—Honor. 2, Jnnoc. 2, Cælest. 2, Lucius 2, Eugen. 3.

R. Emp.—Henrie 5, Lotharie 2, Conrad 3.

F. king—Lud. Crassus, Lud. 3ounger.

Ing. king—Henr. 1, Stephan.

XCII.—MALCOLME IIII.

Malcolme, Henries sone, and Dauidis oy, is crounet king ; quha because all his dayes he chaste had lyuet was callet Virgine ; w^t extern battell no^t vexte bot with ciuile Weir and nyghtbour fead about the Duris, sair 25 oppressit.

Malcolme
King. 4
callit virgin.
opprest with
seditionis.

* L. “ nihil virtutis veræ nervos magis elidere quam otium,” &c.—that nothing more effectually destroyed the vigour of true virtue than idleness and riches.

† L. “ In Divorum societatem ascitus est ”—was admitted to the company of the Blessed.

A gret derth
and hungrye
in Scotland.

The first ȝeir of his rigne, Stephan king of Jngland, of
* dolour dies: Than Sumerled ane of the Lordes of
Argyle, sieng that ane terrible derthe and hungrye Scot-
land hail almaist had Wasted, thocht it verie conuenient
for him, to lay Scotland to his boundes; † quhairfor vpon
the Lennox, and the boundes nerrest him, he cumis
with ane armie, and makes a brek vpon Scotland, and
quhome he suspected noysum till his cuntrie, cruellie he
slew.

The rebellious
ous ourcum
be Gilchrist.

Malcolme
against
France con-
trarie his wil
is forset.

Malcolme commandes with speid Gillechrist a noble 10
man of Anguse, and of stout courage, to take a power
with him, and oppresse sik rebelis. Gilchrist obeyes,
Sumerled & he meitis, thay stryke battell, tua thousandis
men ar slane, the rest flies. Jn this meine tyme, Jng-
land prepares to Jnvade France: Malcolme is callit to 15
Londoune be ane Haralde of armes, He obeyis, feireng
that gif he refuset, Cumbirland and Hundingtoun war
throuch force reft frome him. Malcolme heir is com-
pelit to take parte with king Henrie of Jngland against
Ludouic 6, king of ffrance. Quhen the Weiris now war 20
endet, and Malcolme returnet into Scotland, he sendis
incontinent ane Ambassadour to Pape Eugenie the thrid,
to this end, that he till al man wald make knawen and
plane, of quhat mynd he war toward the Pape of Rome,
and the Catholik Kirk, and ay hes beine affected. 25

heiref stir
legatis vnto
Pape Eu-
genie the
thrid he
directes.

Agane Henrie King of Jngland the secund tyme pre-
pareng against firance, charges Malcolme to assist him:
Malcolme denyes: quhairfor of Hundington, Cumbir-
land, Northumbirland, King Henrie maid him bair.

Cumb.
Northumb.
and Hus-
dingt. fra
Malcolme
ar tane, be-
cause he re-
fuses to
gang against
ffrance.

Heir strang Weiris ar begun, with gret slaunchir on 30
baith sydes, disprofet and skaith: Peace and concord
with thirr conditiounis is bunde agane, that Cumb. and
Hundingt. returne to Malcolme, and Northumb. to Henrie

* L. "Dolore quodam intestino"—of some internal disease.

† L. "Regnandi desiderio flagrans"—burning with desire of
being king.

of Jngland : of q^{lk}e Scotland had na hope to recouer. Nue Weiris, rathir seditiouⁿ against Malcolme, be the Erle of Angus steiret vp, quha quhen be Gilchrist he was ouircum, gyueng ouir quhat euir in this warlde he had 5 plesour of, or ony kynde of delyt, the rest of his lyfe he led amang the regular channounis of the haly croce in Edinburghe with pietie and all deuotioune, him selfe with the rest a regular channoune.

Efir weiris
followis
peace.
new sedi-
tioune.

The author
of this sedi-
tious first
Erle of
Angus
thaireftir
mounk.

The Moray men, heireftir, assisting thair erle Gildie, 10 did na smal skaith to thair nyctbouris, and thair hail cuntrie ; quha contrare the command of God ref^t vthir menis gudes and geir : contrare the Maiestie and ordour of thair cuntrie ; vexit thair peple : in slaying the kingis ambassadouris, violat the kingis authoritie, Christian 15 ordour and Lawis. Quhen sik rebelis had greiuouslie beine punist, the king gaue a strait command, that quhen all war slane excepte alde men, wyfes, and barnes, the rest out of all partes of Moray suld be callit and exemmet.

Thrid sedi-
tious heir
begus.

The rebelis
heir greiu-
ouslie snib-
bit.

20 Sumerled agane prepareng to the fourth seditioune now thinkes to preiue the cast of the dyse against Malcolme, quhilke quhen he did, his * oste was slane and chaist, him selfe tane and hangte. Quhen with gude and happie successe thir battellis he endit had, and the 25 Monasterie of S. Androis honorablie had erected, zit nouther culde he with counsel of freind or familiar be alluiret, or be ony man be persuadet to renunce his vow of chastitie. The king evir vset the counsel of Edward Bischop of Abirdine, nocht only in mony special effairs 30 bot euin in chaistitie keipenz, quhilke the haly Bischop commendet ernistlie to the king, that he keip him selfe in all integritie sa sinceirlie as ane Virgin. Quhairfor the haly Bischop straue with the haly king, with al pietie and deuotioune, for the victorie, and sa lang thay con- 35 tendet, that throuch thair haly contentioune, baith at last

The 4 sedi-
tious.

The author
of this sedi-
tious
hangte.

Bischope
Edward
virgin.

* L. "exercitu"—his army.

brocht with thame to hevin the palme of thair Virginitie, quhen thair lyfe led maist halylie heir thay had. Bot now in Jedburghe he departes this lyfe, and in Dunfermiling, coforme to the maner of his elderis, is buriit, the tuelfet *ȝeir* of his rigne.

5

This king
dies a Vir-
gin; the
ȝeir of God
1160.

Papes—Eugenie, Anastas 4, Adrias 3, Alex. 4.
R. Emp.—Conrad 3, Friderick 1.
F. king—Lud. 9, ȝounger.
ȝngl. king—Stephan, Henrie 2.

XCIII. WILHELME.

Quhen Malcolme now was deid, with consent of the hail Realme, the gouernment is committet to Wilȝeam, quhais surname was lyon for his gret commend of Justice, that still he keipet.

Ambassadrie incontinent he sendis in Jngland, to 10
require Northumbirland fra king Henrie, with charitie
and all fairnes. Henrie grantis, and denyes not, with
this conditioune, that in Londoun he present him selfe,
and keip the promise maid be his forbearis for Cumbirl.
and Hundingtoun. Wilȝeam acceptes the conditione: 15
Nocht lang eftir, with Henrie he sailis in Normandie to
truble the Frenche bordouris. Bot because Henrie
tariet langre thair than ony man luiket for, Wilȝeam
ernistlie besocht to latt thame pas to Scotland, quhilke
with gret difficultie he obteynet.

with Henrie
to Norman-
die he sailis.

To Scotland
he returns.

20

Quhen in Scotland Wilȝeam returned had, he scharp-
lie meites with thame, quha in his absens had brokne
ordour: quhen the Realme he had put to rest, quhill
now the king of Jngland was absent he thocht gude
occasioune was than offiret to seik his awne in Jngland, 25
and gude comoditie. Alluret through this hope, and
mekle steirer vp and mouet with reueist of Ludouik
king of ffrance, he leidis ane armie till Northumbirland,

trubles and wastes all places nerrest that cuntrie ^{w^t} he invades. The Jnglismenⁿ cruellie meitis him, takes him, and with all possible haiste sendis him to Henrie, quha than was in Normandie: Thair for a tyme in prisoun 5 is he laid, quhill he was redeimet with a ransoun of ane hunder libs stirling, quhairof the ane halfe instantlie sulde be payet, and for the vthir halfe * cautionie quhill it war payet: als that the Scottis sulde gyue Cumbirland, Hundingtoun, ane parte of Northumbirland, and four 10 castellis, Beruik, Roxburgh, Stiruiling, and the castell of Edinburgh, in ¹⁶⁸ wedd of payment of the hail soume.

This being endet, Wilȝeam returnes to Scotland, and [†] sourlie snibbit Gilbert of Galloway, ambitiouslie desyring to be king, and brak his force. The neist ^ȝeir following, the Papes Legat, Hew Cardinal, was sent in Jngland: ffrome Jngland he sendis in Scotland, and warnes the Bischopis throuch all Scotland to compeir at sik a day in Northamptoune. The day thay compeir 15 20 appointed. The Cardinal prayes and exhortes thame, for the obseruance quhilke thay awe to the Pape, that thay will heir and be obedient to the Archibischop of ȝorke. Gilbert a ȝoung man of Morayland, weil instructed, of solid doctrine, of singular pietie, takes 25 thair cause to defend, and with argumentis maist constant, rassounis baith suir and sinceir, stoutlie stryues, and with all [‡] probabilitie pertlie he preiues, that the kirk of Scotland, quhilke euir afor had beine in libertie, sulde nocth be brocht in bondage, or vnder the subiectioun of vther menⁿ, as vnder seruitude. He for 30 his strang defence of the Clergie of Scotland, and his

he invades Northumbir-land.

In battel he is wins and tane.

his ransoun c libs striu-ling.

seditione a he stayis.

Hew the Papes legate Cardinal.

S. Gilbert defends the libertie of the Kirk of Scotland.

* L. "Cautio de reliqua adhibebatur"—bill of promise given for the remainder.

† "vires comminuit"—broke the power.

‡ not in L. The word is used in its older sense—"with every show of reason."

He is maid
Bischop of
Cathnes.

wichtnes contrare the aduersar was maid Bischop of Cathnes; and in takne of his rare and excellent haly-
nes, baith quick and deid he was miraculous, canoniȝet and reknet with the haly number, in gret solemnitie, and honoured of all.

5

Richard of
England
king makes
his voyage
to Juri-
land.

Richard king of Jngland prepares his Jornay *contrare* Jurieland; and requires of Wilȝeam king of Scotland only ten thousandis libs to the supplie of this voyage. And quhat asor was laid in wedd to Henrie

Cuntries &
Castells ar
all restoret
to Wilȝeam.

suld be restored, to wit, baith castelis and cuntries, and all vtheris thingis forgyuen. Wilȝeam * prouoket with sik humanitie and gentlenes, sent his brother Dauid with king Richard, accompanied w^t v hundir men of weir, to beir him cumpanie, bot first was maid Erle of Hundingtoun: Quhome quhen the king hard was cum^m hame safe and sound, chaipet sa mony deip daingeris, reioysed as becam him, and as his diewtie was, with ane vncredible ioy; and of sik ioy, and sa Just a Joy, to leive sum monument till all posterities following, perpetualie to remane, he foundet the Abacie of Lendoris, quhilke

David Erle
of Hunding-
ton accom-
panies Rich-
ard to Juri-
land.

he dedicat to God and the blist Virgin Marie; The Abacie of Aberbroth in honour of S. Thomas Archibischope of Cantirburie with quhome he was verie familiar in his barneheid; the Bischoprie of Argile, and the Abacie of Abermorunochtie he estirward foundet. He

Thrie Abac-
ies and a
Bischoprie
in a perpet-
ual monu-
ment he
fundes, for
David his
happie re-
turne.

25 banisset lykwyse Gilchrist, of quhome asor we maid mentioune, because he had hanget his wyfe suspect of adulterie, in his alde age. Bot the king estirward restoret Gilchrist till his former dignitie because w^t teiris he socht mercie. frome this man^m sindrie notable Houses in Angus had thair beginning. Now he dies leiueng behind him ane sone, his name Alexander, honorablie burit in Arbroth, the ȝeir of his rigne xlix.

frome Gil-
christ not-
able houses.
This King
rignes ȝeiris
49.
Dies in the
ȝeir of our
Lord 1214.

* L. "provocatus." The word is used in its Latin meaning = induced, touched.

* Except mony vertuous men, quhome heir we exvertue, singular knawledge and cunning, 5 halynes and deuotione: Gilbert, of quhome no^t lang afor we maid me^ttioune, and Duthak, baith Bischopis, Duthak of Rosse, Gilbert, of Cathnes; quha, albeit baith obteynet this honour, pairtlie throuch miraculous workeng, pairtlie throuch thair cunning and knawlege; 10 Nochtw^tstandeng appeiris weil that Duthak had the grettest dignitie, althoch thay baith war in the haly number, first, because quhateuir pietie or lerneng Gilbert had, he receiuet from Duthak: and agane, he was in sik perpetual honour amang Scotismen, that in al Scot- 15 land Was na pilgrimage sa solemne as that quhilke Was vowit to S. Duthak, with Kingis, Princes, and the commounpe, to the Rosse. That same age *con-*teinet another notable persone, † prudent and *wyse*, meruellous in sanctitude, first Abbot of Arbroth, neist 20 Bischop of Abirdine: quha all his dayes thairestir, keipet the way of baith Abbot, and Bischop, that suirlie \exists e walde doublet gif \exists e had seine, quhither he was a mair diligent Bischop or a straiter religious mounk. ffor althoch with sair trauell he keipet the diosie in ordour, 25 the clergie in thair office, and led the peple the way of lyfe, ‡ Nochtwithstandeng simpler cled Bischop than Abbot, scharper dyot ryche than pure, lyuet vnder a straiter rule magistrate than priuat, evir. Quhairfor with that haly king Alexander, he was in sik fauour,

Gilbert of Cathnes and Duthak of the Rosse tua haly Bis^tcopis and deuot.

frequent and oft pilgrimage to S. Duthak through al Scotland.

* L. "præter"—beside.

† L. supplies "Rodulphum quendam"—a certain Rodulph.

‡ L. "tamen tenuiori veste Episcopus quam Abbas, duriori parsimonia dives quam pauper, arctiori regula Magistratus quam privatus semper vixit"—yet he lived poorer clothed as Bishop than as Abbot, poorer fed when rich than when poor, and under a stricter rule of life when in authority than when in private life.

Rodulphus
Bisshop of
Abirdine.

that the King for his cause amplifiet the Bischoprie of Abirdine, with a fatt benifice, and mony gay giftes.

Papes—Alexander 3, *Lucius* 3, *Vrban* 3, *Gregor.* 8,
Clement 3, *Celestin* 3, *Innocent* 3.

R. Emp.—Frideric 1, Henrie 6, Otho 4.

F. king—Ludouic 9 *young*, Philip 2, * *Kinsman*
Augustus.

Engl. king—Henrie 2, Richard 1, Jhone 1.

XCIII.—ALEXANDER II.

Estir King Wilȝean, his sone alexr succeidet to the croune of Scotland. quhen now he was bettir strukne in ȝeiris, and had establischet his cuntrie throuch, and weil confirmet, accordeng till his Jugement and moderatione, and Henrie King of Jngland being deid: With ane armie he passis with speid to Londoun against Jhone king of Jngland, and al the way from Scotland to Loundon does skaith to na man: for strang contencounis war oft betuene that king Jhone and his nobilis, quhairfor thay with monie fair promises callis the king of ffirance his sone Ludouik to thair helpe against Jhone: How sune Ludouik landis in Jngland, Alexander Junes him selfe to his cumpانie in Londoun with a thousand men of weir of Scotland, that sum perpetual monument of his benignitie and kyndnes he leie mycht with him, and with this thousand with Ludouik saylis in France, to Bollonie, quhair with king Philip, Ludouik his father, freindlie he conueines, eftir glade meiting, mirrines, and Joy, he renewit the alte bande betuein thame. Bot thir conditiounis war eiket to the alte band: That nocht ane of the tua kingis sulde receive in his Realme, ane banist fra the vther, or ane of the vthiris faes, at ony tyme.

Alexander
marries the
king of
Jngland's
sister.

Quhen Alexander was returnet to Scotland, throuch

* I. “cogn.” for “cognomine”=surnamed.

5

10

15

20

25

force he takes Carlell: quhilke ester was * componet in 3ork in compositioun of peace, quhair king Henrie peace maid. and king Alexander conueinet afor the Pape his Legat Pandulph, with thir conditiounis, Alexander had † twa 5 sisteris, Isabella and Margaret: him selfe mariit the king of Jngland his sister; ‡ Joanna (*his sister* (L.)) in mariage was gyuen till a certane nobil of Jngland: Isabell to the Erle of Northfolk, and Margaret to him quha was cheife discusser in controuersies, quhom they 10 call grett Justice of Jngland.

In the meane tyme Cardinal Aegedie is sent frome Pape Honorie to Scotland, Legat, to require a gret soume of money nocth to thair § hurt, to helpe the veyage to Hierusalem; with quhilke quhen be traytouris 15 be the way he was spoylet, was sent agane for the selfe cause not lang eftir, quha with litle labour obteinet quhat he crauet, the ffrench men presentlie requeisiting for helpe, to the sam end; the king had sa ardent a desyre to helpe the Christian Jmpire, and sa diligent 20 was thairin, that to Ludouik king of France, quha eftir was canoniset, sayling to Jurie, to invade the Jnfidelis, he sent him cumpaines of men of weir, and w^t thame thrie Capitanis, Patrick erle of Merche, Dauid Lyndsay of Glenesk, and Walter Steuard of Dundonalde, prudent 25 men, noble in the weiris, and weil exerceid: quha all with him thaireftir descendet intill Aegipte, and perissted outhir with Pest or sworde, for the maist parte. to supplie of the Scottis armie, Alexander nochtw^tstandeng at the requeist of Ludouik, prepared new relief.

a band of
men of weir
ar sent from
Scotland in
Juriand
with Lud-
ouik King of
France.

* L. "reddidit"—which he afterwards gave back at the settlement of peace before the Papal Legate at York.

† This statement is not in the L. text, which moreover implies that Alexander had *three* sisters. The translator had apparently some difficulty over this passage, for he has erased the word "*thrie*" and written "*twa*" over it.

‡ This sentence is also erased, but the sense requires its insertion.

§ L. "non gravat^e"—not unreasonably.

The Cach-
names
secerdie ar
punischt for
the perte
and pernici-
ous pract
they playd
to their
Bischop.

Eftir this, king Alexander Justifiet sum of the In-
habitans or induelleris of Cathnes, quha cruellie had
slane *yeir* Bischop Adam. farthermair king Alex^r
causes that all thair bairnes be geldit quha war vndir
the age of *yeiris* xiii, that of sik pernicious persounis
war neuir ony oispring. This day the place may be
seine, in quhilke *yeir* stanes war castne, * declairing
how the mater was. The king, als, depriuet the Erie
Cathnes of his Erdome because he maid na helpe to
the Bischop quhen he my^t in his extremitie. he lyk-
wyse chaist out bastard (*son of*) Allan of Galloway quha
violentie through force walde haue occupiet that place.

Alexander
marries the
secund wyfe.

He dies the
yeir of his
rygne xxxv.
of God 1249.

Eftir this his Wyfe Joanna dies: bot because without
successioune, he maries the secund wyfe in Roxburgh, r
to wit, Marie the Erie of Gowrie his dauchter: quha r
bure him ane sone, Alex^r his name, eftir quhais birth
Alexander his father departes in Argile, the *yeir* of his
rygne xxxv and is buriit in Melrose.

Sum wryters mak mentioun, that quhill this king was
in France, he spak with S. Dominik, and ernistlie re- 20
quyret of him to send sum of his ordour to Scotland.
Sum agane Write that he callet ane Counsel to S.
Jhonestoun only for the cleنسeng his cuntrie of all vice
and corrupte maneris; and that he admitted sum lawis
sett out be ecclesiastical persounes, quhilkes our age hes 25
ȝit nather seine nor hard.

Papes—Innocent 3, Honorius 3, Gregor. 9, Cælestiin. 4, In-
nocent 4.

R. Emp.—Otho 4, Friderik 2, Rodulphe 1.

F. king—Philip 2, Ludouic 10, Iud. 11.

Ingl. king—Jhone 1, Henrie 3.

* L. “rem ipsam nomine referens”—its name indicating the
fact (Bawstane Craig).

XCV.—ALEXANDER III.

Quhen alexander the secund was deid; alex^t the thrid succeidis and rignes in his stedd, his sone, and the ix \mathfrak{z} ein of his age in Scone was declairet king: heireftir thay quha in his minoritie had the gouvernement of 5 the Realme, renewet the band w^t Henrie king of Jng-
land the first thing thay did; quhilk the straytlier to
confirme, Henrie gaue him his dauchter Margaret in
mariage; and with sumptuous expences and gret sol-
emnitie, causet the mariage to be celebrat in \mathfrak{Z} orke.
10 Alexander now takeng vpon him the state of a man and
cum till manis age, quhen him selfe began to gouerne
and gyde, conforme till his awne Jugement, his hail
kingdome, he declairis enimies to the Realme the
Erles of Montethe, Athol, Buchquhan, and Lord of
15 Strabogie, w^t all the offspring of the hous of Cumene,
and mony vthiris thair assistance outhir in Worke or
Worde, because thay had bene iniurious to his peple,
and quhen at the king his command thay war called
afor the Judge obeyet nocht, bot stiflie refuiset and
20 denyet. Thay for that cause invade the king be nycht,
quha had conuiiret and conspiret against him, and with
a band of men of weir takes him in Kinrosse, and vio-
lentlie leidis him to Stiruiling. At last Walter Cumene
Erle of Monteth, be his wyfe is poysoned, the king sett
25 at libertie, the rest of his conspiratouris this Jniure he
remitis, and forgyues thame all.

Heireftir he sailis to the Jle of Arran, and thair in
battel stoutlie stryues and ouercumis Achon king of
Norway. Quhen Achon was deid, to his sone Magne
30 he gaue his dauchtr Margaret in mariage, thair was
the peace maid, and with a smal soume redeimet the
hail Jles. quhen ouer all now was vniuersal peace, he

He renues
the peace
with Jng-
land.
Alex. mariis
the king of
Jngland his
dauchter.

Be sum of
his nobilis
he is tane
and led till
Stiruiling.

He remittis
the iniur
done against
him.

He vanquis-
ses the King
of Norway:
Redeimes
the Jles.

He supplies
king Henrie
of Englaud
against his
rebellis.
And Lud-
ouik of
ffrance con-
trare the
Jnfidelis.

supplies king Henrie his *gude father sair vext with
rebellis.

Heireftir Alexander heireing of S. Ludouik king of
France his secund Jornay contrare the Saracenis, he
sendis men of Weir till him in ffrance, of new, quha
sulde fecht vndir his Standart against the Saracenis,
with thir gouernouris the Erles of Athol and Carrik.
Quene Margaret of Alexander dies, he maries the secund
wyfe Jolett the Erle of Champanie his dauchter.

ffarthermair, Alexander incloset the Reliques of his 10
Grandames Grandame S. Margaret in a Capsell or siluir
buist, fynlie sett in precious stanes, with al decore,
quhilkes, quhen lychtie thay war doune sett, besyde
the monument of Malcolme Canmoir her housband, the
capsell sa fast tostack, all man meruelling out of mesore 15
a miracle.
to sie sik a mirakle, that the force of man culde neuir
sindir thame, quhill the Reliques of Malcolme w^t all
diligence war gathered, and with her Reliques war
Jncloset, and keipet in the selfe buist.

He dies the
3eir of his
rigne 34. of
or Lord 1283
but bairnes.

This king dies the xxxiiii 3eir of his rigne at King- 20
orne, through the vehement + snapper of a Wantount
horse, and is buriit in Dunfermiling without success-
sionue. Alexander had of his first Wyfe Margaret tua
sones, Alex^r and Dauid: and ane dauchter forsaid,
quhome to the king of Norway Magne he gauie in 25
mariage, Sche to Magne beiris another Margarett; bot
in processe of tyme all dies, and to succeid leiuies nocht
ane behind thame.

In Scotland
cunning
men Michael
Scoit and
Thomas
Lermount.

That same age war seine in Scotland tua meruellous
men, Michaell Scott, and Thomas Lermount: Michaell 30

* L. "Vitrico suo"—his stepfather—sc. gudfather has same
meaning.

+ L. "dum in equo exultaret, eumque motibus quibusdam agi-
taret vehementer dejectus in terram colliditur, cerviceque inde
communata"—whilst amusing himself on horseback, and urging
the beast to violent prancing, he was thrown to the ground and
his neck broken.

in Philosophie, Astronomie, and Medicine, singular, and in his magik meruellous. Thomas a man nocht of gret lerneng, prophesiet lyk another Apollo, thingis to cum, be quhat spirit J knawe nocht. Gret authoritie
 5 was gyuen to his sayngs, because he fortalde a certane day and suir quhen the king walde die. His forspeikings that he spak of the effaires of Scotland war in Ryme and sik obskuir verce, sa inuoluet and rowet vp in allegories & dark sentences, that quhat he forspak,
 10 the quickest ingine that lyuet culde neuer perceiue, quhill the tyme war cum and paste quhairof he spak.

Papes—Jnnocent 4, Alex. 4, Vrban 4, Clem. 4, Greg. 10,
 Jnnoc. 5, Adri. 5, Jhon 21, Nico. 3, Martin 4.

R. Emp.—Rodulphus 1.

F. king—S. Ludou, Philip 3, surnamed Audax.

Englis king—Henrie 3.

XCVI. JHONE BAILLIE.

The Bal-
 3eart.

Monie, for monie causes, war sair offendet of his
 deith, cheiflie y^t without successioun he diet, leste
 nocht ane behind him, quha my^t be his heire: nathir
 15 in testament leste ane to gouerne. Quhairof the
 Nobilitie began to consider, and rychtlie to wey the
 mater, the Realme to be in gret danger, nocht haueng
 a heid, nor ony principal and cheif gouernour, vndir
 quhais tutourie and defence it mycht be. Consulting
 20 amang thame, they cheis vi of the cheife Nobilitie, of
 quhilkes to gouerne the North parte, thay electe William
 Fresher, Bischope of Sanctandrois, Duncan Erle of fffife,
 and Jhone Cumein Erle of Buchquhan: To the south
 parte Robert, Bischope of Glasgwe, James Stuard
 25 Chanceller of Scotland, and my Lord Cumein: thir
 sax gouernet the cuntrie vi *ȝeiris* and ix monethis con-
 tinuallie: All this tyme betwein the Bruse and the

The king-
 dome be
 Gouvernours
 gouernet.

sax gouer-
 nours
 electet.

Jhone baillie
and Robert
Bruce con-
tend for the
rycht.

The kings
blud dekayed
not estir the
opinioun of
sum.

King Ed-
ward lang-
schank is
electet
arbiter in
this costro-
uersie cheif-
lie, wit xxiiii
Scotis &
Jngl.

The craft
of Lang-
schanks.

Bailie, quhom sum call the * Balzert ; was a strang contentioun for the superioritie. Bot quha wryte, that the kingis blude in Alex' vttirlie defectet, ar vttirlie deceiuet : as may be seine in the contentioune betueine thir tua, as followis. The stryfe betuein the Bruise and the 5 Ballie sa beginis, that althoch thay baith descendet of Dauid, Wilȝeam his brother, king of Scotland, the ane, to wit, † Jhone Bal. of Jsabel the ȝoungest dauchter, the other of Margaret the eldest, Robert contendes the rycht of the Realme to perteyne to him, because he was 10 borne of the ‡ eldest dauchter, quhais father Dauid doubtles had bene king, gif Wilȝeam his brother had diet without heires. for this cause Edward king of Jngland, frome his lang leggis called Langschanks, was chosen arbiter to grie this mater. xxiiii Scotis and 15 Jnglis vpoz this counsell ar appoyneted to meit in Beruik, quhair the king cumis to decerne this cause. efter lang conferring, on baith handis, quhen hame he returnes, he sendis to the men of law in ffrance, for thair counsel in this controuersie: bot § Langschanks 20 craftilie of diuerse laweris collecteng diuerse sentences, intenedes to concert and gyue him the authoritie, quha ony maner to him will submit him selfe. Quhairfor the

* Dalrymple inserts this clause. The same name at the head of the chapter in margin is also his insertion. Leslie always calls him "Baliolus."

† L. "Lis inter Robertum Bruseum et Joannem Baliolum . . . quod licet descenderint ex Davide, &c., ille per Isabellam minorem, hic per Margaritam majorem natu"—although the former (*i.e.*, Bruce) descended through the younger daughter; the latter (*i.e.*, Baliol) through the elder. The translator has transposed the names by mistake.

‡ L. "quod per eam ex primo mare progenitus esset, ad quem si Gulielmus Rex sine liberis decessisset, haereditas esset per ventura"—that he was born of the elder male, to whom, if King William had died childless, the crown would have descended. (Bruce was grandson and Baliol great-grandson of David of Huntingdon, brother of William.)

§ It is worth noting here that the L. text spells this name "longschanks."

king alluret with fair promises, and trett with the sueit wordes of the Bailie, decernes that the Realme be committet to him: for Jhone Balie vndir thoume had promisethat gif the king walde croune him, he soulde 5 be all meines possible, conforme to his power, make ryche the realme of Jngland, diminishe the libertie of Scotland, agment largelie the kingdome of Jngland, and of his fidelitie make ane athe, to knawe him for his superiour evir and ay.

10 Now eftir sa lang weiris, sa monie strukne feildes, sa gret contentioune, and mekle sair slauchtir, king Edward granting, the peple all consenting, Jhone Balie is proclamet king, and because King Edward to him had bene sa beneficiall, vpon S. Stephanes day at Newcastell he

15 walde sueir to the king of Jngland euir to be true: resisteng the hail Nobilitie and peple of Scotland. Throuch quhais temeritie and effeminatt raschnes, he iustlie was iuget to be castne frome all rycht of rygneng in that Realme, because he intendet to bring vnder 20 seruitude and bondage a peple maist frie. Eftir few 3eiris Edward requires him to keip his promise as he had suorne, and to assist him with his presense against the king of France. Balie denyes, repenting sair of sa hauie seruitude laid vpon his neck, and that sa raschlie, without

Jhone Balie makes ane
athe of fidelitie to the
King of
Jngl.

25 aduisment, he had consented. King Edward estemeng now ane apne Jniure committed against him, he inuentis all wayes that he can or may lay to the Watter, how to bring Scotland vndir his subiectioune. To this end, he feltiris with fair Wordes, promises, and propynes, the 30 harte of Bruse, quhais harte quhen he had wonn, Wissing lykwyse to be frie of all externe and outlandes Weiris, or gif he mycht drawe the king of ffrance to his parte, this way he preiues to allure him. The king of Frances dauchter he requires to his sone Edward in Mariage.

Balie re-
pentis his
athe.

35 Balie heireng of this interprise, to ffrance in possible speid directes ambassadouris, Wilȝeam Bischop of S.

The band be
Balie re-
newit wi
ffrance.

Androis, Jhone of Soulis, with a Knicht, to renew the band with ffrance. and for the bettir succes, and happier prosperitie he sendis w^t thame his Eldest sone Edward, ȝit within manis age, and gaue him housband to Charles Valese Erle of Angolme, and broyer to Philip 3, king of ffrance, his dauchter, I say; and quhilkes landis he had in ffrance lang and large, that selfe day thay war mariit, he gaue thame in gifte. ffor this Balie of Normandie was be birth, and throuch heritage was rychtuos Lord of Harcurie, Dampuil and Hornie. 10

Edward
invadis
Scotl. and
winis
Beruik.

Quhen Edward of Jngl. vndirstude that the Balie had stopet the way of freindschip betueine him and ffrance, his harte was hetlier inflamet to reuenge, than asor, and with a grett armie, in haist he invades Beruik, and takes it throuch a trayne. Jn quhilk Victorie thay war sa 15 cruell, ferce, Wod, and Wilde, that thair handes with the blude of all in that toune thay littid, spairing nather womenⁿ or babs. Of this happie succes thinking him selfe sa proud King Edward he wald cum^m farther benⁿ, as we speik, or farther in Scotland; marcheng fordward, 20 he meites with the Balie neir the castell of Dunbarr, quhair thay ȝock, chaces the Balie, and putis him to flichte, schortlie winis the Castell of Dunbarr, to quhilke war fled lxx knichtes, quhome Edward thair all slew. Heireftir haueng wonnⁿ the Castellis of Edinburghe and 25 Stiruiling, he takes the Balie with his sone, as thairfra thay fled, and sendis thame baith bund to Londoune: bot estir, the Balie for feir of his lyfe, gyueng him ouer the ry^t of the realme, was sett at libertie, and sent to his awne fauouers. Jn the meane tyme Balie remaines in 30 the citie Oxfurde, quhair for studentis he erectet a college verie magnifik, and with large rentis enryched, quhilke this day may be seine intitled with the name of * Balie.

The Balie wt
his sone ar
tane cap-
tives, the
Balie selfe
releiuet.

The Balie is
sent back to
his awne.

* The father of King Baliol is considered the founder of this college. It was erected at his request, by his widow Devorgilla.

Quhen certane ȝeiris in Jngland he had remaynet, till his awne in Scotland he returnes, bot perceieng be manifest and cleir signes and taknes all thair myndes to be alienat vttirlie and changet frome him, the adminis-

To Norman-die the Balie
passis renun-cing the
Empire.

5 tratioun of the realme he renunces to his sone Edward, and him selfe saylis to Normandie : Thair he dies in his alde age, in the castell to name Gailliard, quhilke of heritage perteynet to him rychtuouslie, the thrid ȝeir of his rigne, and saxt moneths.

He rignes 3
ȝeiris and
sax moneths.
Dies in the
ȝeir of God
1287.

10 Quhen Edward King of England walde sail to ffrance w^t ane armie against King Philip, to supplie his place in Scotland, he appoyned Hew of Cassingame. Sum of the principall nobilitie in Scotland takeng in ane ill parte thair wrangous subiectioun, sa foul and fraudfull

Edward
occupies
Scotland.

The nobilitie
of Scotland
resiste Ed-
ward.

15 seruitude, wrocht be the Jnglismen, thay can nocht abyd it, bot invades thame sindrie tymes, be Justing, and rizning the forray, and sik inuasiouns : thaireftir with ane oste, thay entir vpon the north parte of Jngl. with sworde and fyre ferclie Wasting all that boundes. Edward in a

20 furie sendis in Scotland a new power with speid ; w quhome the Scotis meitis at the * Falkirk, and fechtis, bot flies, partelie through the contentioun that fell amang thir thrie capitannis, the Stuard of Bute, Cumein, and Wallase for the Vangarde. Bot evin in the selfe

The scots
flies at the
falkirk.

25 chaise this Vantage obteynet the Scotis, that Robert Bruse standeng stoutlie with the Jnglismen aganste the Scotis, Wallase the cheife honour and Wirscep of the Weiris, drew him back to the Scotis partie, to stande in thair defence ; This Wallase did, pairtlie through scharpe

Wallase
moves Ro-
bert Br. to
follow his
counsell.

30 wordes, pairtlie through luue of his cuntrie ; quhill the Bruse cruellie persuet his awne blude, at the Water of Carroun, as Wallase talde him.

Bot eftir lang weiris and sair slauchtir on baith sydes,

* L. "apud varium (vulgo Falkirk) sacellum"—at the pied (party-coloured) church. Sc. *fal* or *faw*, of diverse colours (Jamieson).

Scotland began to dekay: and suirlie had vtirlie dekayet and cum to nocht, gif Wallase selfe, of quhome we now spak, * had nocht with a meruellous fortitude, a worthie Wichtnes and Woundirfull, restored the scotis to libertie, quhilke sa far was brocht vndir; and ouirthrawne with 5 grett force the Jnglise power, sa hich vprisen throuch our humilitie.

ffor this Wallase on^z quhais schuldiris was laid the moderatioune of the hail Realme, in strenth of body was sa strang, and sa stout of mynd, and couragious: 10 that quhat battell he began altho hindiret with hard difficulties, quhen the samyn battell he Wan^z nocht-withstandeng all dainger and aduersitie, † was reasont, doubtet, and talket with monie, nocht without cause, quhither mair was, or sulde be applyet to his body or 15 his mynd; nethir fell this questioune out amang thame sa oft without Just cause, or gude occasioune, quhen his harte was sa noble, that w^t al diligence all things he concludet and perfytet; his body was sa Valzeant that worthilie in the weiris evir he wrocht; that the fortitude of body and mynd war nevir seperat, bot the ane iunet with the vther, stoutlie stude in performeng sik douchtie deidis of actiuitie; ffor quhen Hew, Langschanks his vicar, was slane in the battell, and the Jnglis armie at the Brig of Stiruiling, parte slane, parte 20 drout; to Scotland he restores agane quhilkes tounes the Jnglismen war Maistiris ouer, Dundie, fforfar, Brecheine, and Montrose, and than Abirdin, and the Castell Dunnotir, with sik prosperous sukces, facilitie, and felicitie vncredible, that in the meane tyme J latt 30

* L. "imminutam Scotorum libertatem admiranda fortitudine erexisset"—had not through his wonderful bravery restored the curtailed liberty of the Scots. The translation in the text is a good instance of Dalrymple's diffusive style.

† L. "corporine magis an animo tribui debeat multi non injuria sepe dubitarunt"—many, with good reason, doubted whether his exploits should be attributed to the strength of his body or of his mind.

passee quhat he did in S. Jhones toun, Air, and in vthiris places, mony preclare and notable actes, the ennimies all chaist or slane. The duchtie deides, sa lukie succes, appeiris rathir to proceid of sum diuine grace and 5 special gifte of God, than to be done throuch ony strenth of body, or mychte of man. ffor quhair danger hes beine maist deip, quhair all hes beine in despere, thair with a meruellous spirit bauldlie hes he onsett, butt feir: nethir succeidet warr quhat he tuik on hand 10 nor the nobilitie of his spirit was seine to be.* ffor he drew till him na men of weir throc landis and rentis, as the maner vses to be with ws, because he was bot of the mid ranck of nobles, a knichtis secund sone; nethir throuch stipend, quhen his ryches was bot small; 15 Nethir throuch ony publick office, he being bot ane priuat persone; bot only throuch his vertue, his mychtie spirit, his zele, and hett feruour in him to defend his cuntrie, and throuch his meruellous maniris baith Noble and Notable, he Wanted na men of Weir, in a schorte 20 space. Quhairfor at last with all consentis he is chosen cheif capitane to defend his Natioune.

Bot sum of the special nobilitie inuyet Wallase because thay hard him commandet in defendeng his cuntrie, and that he stoutlie frome seritude had delyuerit it. 25 quhairfor this prouerb may be applyet specialie to him: a man verie Valzeant, Ryche, or Prudent can nocht weil defend him selfe amang sum peple. This quhen he vndirstandes be sum cleir and euident taknes, of quhat mynd he was to contemne honouris, quhilkes mony vthiris ambitiouslie imbraces, he estir schawes. That being elected only defender of the hail Realme, a persoune of publik authoritie, and with all pietie had gouernet; he, nochtwstandeng, to eschue the rancour of 30 sum, tuke on him prudentlie, a priuat persoune, passing

The noble
actes of
Wallase
causes the
nobil. to
invie him.

Wallase of
his awne frie

* L. "neque ea majore animo quam rerum successu"—nor did he undertake with greater courage than success.

will renun-
ces the
authoritie.

Wallase tane
in Londoun
slane.

Pape Boni-
face curses
Edward in
favour of
the Scottis.

Sr Jhone
Cumin
knyt gouer-
nour of
Scotland.

to ffrance, of his awne frie will, and renunceng that office of a Magistrate. Nochttheles that false knychte Monteith, culd nocht asswage the Jre, that his harte buir against Wallase, and the Rancour thairin that lay: bot heiring that Wallase frome ffrance was returnet, and 5 quhair in Scotland he remaynet, fraudfullie, throuch a false trayne layes Wait for him and takes him, neir Glasgwe, and lyk a traytour delyuiris him in Londoun to King Edward Langschanks, quhair, thaireftir drawin and quartert, he randiret that gude spirit, quhilk sa oft he 10 had put in danger for that vngrate Nobilitie, sa dour vnthankfull, and for his hail peple.

Because, of his Worthie actes, ar writne nocht small bot verie gret volumis, J had leuir say nathing, or J sayd *little. quhairfor to Edward J returne. 15

Ester mekle sair slauchtir maid in Scotland be this Edward, at last he be Pape Boniface is discharget, to be ony mair hurtfull till a frie natioun, quha neuer afor was subiecte to ony externe king, how sune Edward hard this, he began to mitigatt his Jre. 20

Bot quhen he hard Sr Jhone Cumin to gouerne the Realme prudentlie, he prepares to Scotland with a new armie, and Wastes all that parte vp and doun, quhilke dependet vpon him.

Quhen the Jnglismen war now returnet to thair awne, 25 the Cumin afflicted, quhat he culde or mycht estir his power, all the Jnglismen left behind thame in all Strenthis or Castelis. Quhairfor Edward in haist sendis Rodulph Confron in Scotland with ane armie of threttie thousand. Thir he diuides in thrie partes, a certane 30 space putting betuein ilk parte, the Cumin, w^t a stout capitane Simon Fraser, only with viii thousandis ar convoyet, and at Roslinn meitis with the first Jnglis

* L. "malo hic nulla quam pauca dicere"— I prefer to say nothing rather than a little.

cumpanie in quhilk war ten thousandis, quhair sa Valjeantlie he resisted, and efter the first the secund, and efter the secund the thrid, sa stoutlie straik and vanquist, that a noble Victorie he obteynet, gif evir ony 5 was afor, bot allace the Joy of that triumph was bot schort. ffor Edward heiring this, is steiret vp w^t a new furie, and gathiris baith of all framet Natiounis, and of his awne Jles, ane armie vndemous, throuch quhilk force, he Scotland be Sey and Land Jnvades, in sik a 10 maner that frilie, without ony stop or impediment, he raikis throuch the hail realme in lenth and breidh, quhair he Will; spoyles the realme of all monumentis and alde antiquities, changes the institutiounis and lawis of the cuntrie, burnes all buikes asweill haly as 15 prophane, the Scotis in the meane tyme amang the Wods, mountanis, and strenthier fortes lay hidd: Thay brocht vs now vnder sick seruitude, held vs vnder sick subiectioun, that Scotland behouet to leive efter the maner of Jngland in all things; At last returneng in 20 Jngland, he takes with him frome Scone the Marmor chyre, forsaid, quhairin the Scotis Kingis vset to be crounet; and in Londoun it places.

The monu-
mentis of
Scotland
destroyet.

The Bruse now willing to winⁿ Scotland agane frome the Jnglismen through force, consultes with the Cumin; 25 how sunē thay had be thair handwritt confirmet thair promise, thay sueir to be true ilk till vther, the Bruse thairester with speid passis in Jngland. Bot the Cumin thinkeng w^t him selfe, that gif the Bruse war put by the gate, him selfe war nerrest the Kingdome, sendis a quyet 30 messinger with Wrytingis to King Edward, in quhilkes war conteynet the hail maner of the conspiracie, betuein him and the Bruse, that the Bruse, thair be opne testimonie mycht be conuicted, and with all diligence put doun.

The mar-
mour chyre
to Londoun
is trans-
ported.

35 Be a freind and familiar this is reueilet to the Bruse,

The bruse
through
affection to
obtein the
Kingdome
makes a
band w^t the
Cumin.
The falset of
the Cumin.

for a certane Erle sendis him secreitlie a pair of spurris
 w^t tua * crounis of the sone, quhairby the Bruse vndir-
 stud, that in haist he soulde flie ; and schortlie callis a
 smith, quhome he causes to schue thrie suoste horses
 backward, that throuch this craft, the persewer and the 5
 ennemie follower mycht no^t find how to tred the horses
 fute rycht ; At midnycht he beginis to flie, and with
 possible speid cumis to the Castell of Lochmaben,
 quhair he entiris, and in a gude tyme findes his brother
 Dauid with Robert fleming : thir tua he makes partakers 10
 of his counsell and Jornay, altogither thay quicklie cum
 to Drumfris, quhair the Cumin remaynet : quhome for
 his traytourie with a sword he strykes throw the body,
 finding him in the grayfreir clostir : thaireftir throuch
 helpe of his freindis, he cumis to Scone, quhair he is 15
 crounet king.

Robert
 Bruse cumis
 to Scott.
 findes the
 Cumin, and
 slayes him
 the zeir of
 God 1305.

Papes—Martin 4, Honorie 4, Nicolas 4, Celestin 5, Boni-
 face 8, Benedicte 10, Clement 5.

R. Emp.—Rodulph 1, Andulph, Albert, Henrie 5.

F. king—Philip 4, his surname Pulcher.

Ing. king—Henr. 3, Edward 1.

* L. "duobus aureis"—two gold pieces. The metrical translation of Boece says " *tua grottis*." The crown of the sun, or " *Ecu d'or du soleil*," was a French coin, first struck by Louis XI. in 1475. By a proclamation, 25th May, 14 Henry VIII., crowns of the sun, ducats, and crowns of gold not of the sun, were ordered to be received in currency in England. In the year 1567, a proclamation made at Edinburgh for the apprehension of the Earl of Bothwell offers a reward to " *quha saeuer wil tak* " him, of " *ane thousand crounis of the sone*."

N O T E S



NOTE S.

(Unless otherwise stated, the Scottish forms are quoted from Jamieson, and the Anglo-Saxon from Bosworth's Dictionary.)

INTRODUCTION.

¹ *Quhen.* This is a translation of the Latin *cum*. The MS. is full of such imitations of Latin idiom, that would seem to be directly copied from the original work, and not mere habitual marks of Latin influence on style, such as begin to be observable at this period of literature.

² *Preclair.* This is another instance of a similar tendency. The original has the word *praclare*, and the translator has apparently simply copied it. As the MS. contains a very large number of words derived from Latin, many of which are not now in use, this remark will help to explain their presence, and warn the reader against supposing that all such words were in common use at the time.

³ *To sett doun.* The reader will notice the very frequent inversion of sentences such as this, where the verb follows the noun it governs. I am not competent to say whether this is only an imitation of Latin style, or whether it is a remnant of an older fashion of Scottish speech. In the present instance, as in many others, the order is *not* copied from the original Latin text. It must be noticed, moreover, that this inversion is not arbitrary. It seldom takes place in purely indicative or absolute assertions, but only when the statement is preceded by a particle,—conjunctive, adverbial, relative, &c.,—or, in other words, only in a subordinate clause. A similar usage prevails in modern German; and I am inclined to think that F. Dalrymple's long residence in Bavaria may have had something to do with this feature of his style.

⁴ *Sulde follow;* notice the omission of the modern *it* in such clauses throughout the text.

⁵ *Imprented*, used in what may be called its passive sense. It is here a reproduction of the Latin, which has *viam impressam*.

⁶ *Regiment* = the extent of territory ruled over. The Latin here has *ditione*.

⁷ *Escaped had*. The inversion here is still more strikingly after the German model—viz., placing the auxiliary after the participle, so as to bring the verb to the end. Although a few scattered inversions, in relative clauses, may be found in Shakespeare and other earlier writers, they may be generally accounted for by emphasis. Here there is no such reason. The clause here is adverbial, and it does not follow the order of the Latin text.

⁸ *But* = without. F. Dalrymple always distinguishes the preposition from the conjunction, which he spells *bot*, see, e.g., the next sentence. This is in conformity with best Scottish usage (Jamieson distinguishes the two words), and would seem to point to a distinct origin of the two forms. That such should be the case seems likely from the analogy of other languages, and also from the fact that there is a very marked contrast, and even contrariety, between the two meanings expressed by E. *but*. In one sense this word means *except, leaving out*, a meaning aptly illustrated by the etymology—*be-out*. A.S. *be-utan, butan*. In the other sense, however, the meaning is *moreover, in addition to, further*, a sense aptly expressed by the corresponding forms, Fr. *mais* (for *magis*); L. *autem* (comp. Gr. *ab, abris, again*); G. *aber*; and finally A.S. *bot*, meaning *assistance, remedy*, and actually used, in the phrase *to bote*, to mean *moreover, &c.* A.S. *ð* came to be pronounced like E. *oo*, hence the spelling *but* can be easily accounted for. Mr Skeat affirms that all uses of *but* are from the same source; the Scottish use would throw doubt upon the assertion.

⁹ The name seems to have been *Alba* or *Alban*, latinised into *Albania*. Ptolemy uses *Albion*. There is no certain proof of the meaning of this name. The names *Alps* and Mount *Lebanon* and *Albania* have all been pointed to as indications of a Gaelic, or at least Celtic, race, perhaps the same that afterwards occupied the hilly country of this island. The name occurs in the north of Spain as *alba, abula*, and *alva*, and this is probably Gaelic country. *Auvergne*, in the south of France, is said to be a corruption of *Alva regnum*, the kingdom of Alba; and we have *Alba Helvia* (now Viviers) in Narbonne; *Alba Pompeia* in Liguria; *Alba Fucenti* on Lake Fucino in Italy; the island of *Elba*; and, finally, *Alba longa*, the mother city of Rome, said to have been built by Ascanius, son of *Æneas*, on the rock between the *Alban* lake and Monte *Albano*. The old proverb says that clan *Alpin* is the oldest in Scotland. The name *Alba* or *Alban*, as applied to the country north of the Forth, would seem to have come from the name of the Fortress of *Alba*, since called St Andrews. *Alba* is still the Gaelic designation for

Scotland. There is no Gaelic word with any resemblance to *L. albus*, that means *white*; but *alp* is a recognised word for a height or eminence, and it also means a *lump* or *rugged heap*. In the Swiss dialects the word *alp* is still used in the singular form to mean a high mountain pasture-land.

¹⁰ *Loegria*. Fordun says: "The kingdom of Locrinus was Locria, and beginning from the southern shore of the island, that is, the Totonian shore, it was bounded on the north by the rivers Humber and Trent" (Bk. ii. c. 6). We are here reminded of the *Locrian* tribes of Greece, of the *Ligures* of Cisalpine Gaul, the modern Piedmont, and of the river *Liger*, now the Loire.

¹¹ *Taprohana*. Supposed to be Ceylon.

¹² Ptolemy mentions the *Curnavii* as inhabiting the most northerly part of Scotland.

¹³ *Thousand pace*=Latin *mille passus*—i.e., a *mile*.

¹⁴ *Mae*=Mod.E. *mo*, distinguished from *more* or *mair* as referring to number, while the latter refers to size or quantity. A.S. *md* and *mára*, with similar distinction.

¹⁶ *By*=besides. The meaning of modern English word *by* is expressed by *be*. A.S. *bi* has this latter meaning only.

¹⁶ *Ouer all*=A.S. *ofer eal*, altogether, commonly. Comp. Mod.G. *überall*.

¹⁷ *Plentifull*. The obsolete but etymological use of the word, to mean full of plenty.

¹⁸ *Ates*. A.S. *ata*. In this, as in so many other words, the Scottish dialect is more conservative than modern English. Anglo-Saxon long *a* generally answers to English *oa*, or long *o*, while it is almost invariably represented in Scottish by *a* or *ai*. Comp. ac, *oak*, *ake*; bar, *boar*, *bare*; (Barbour) *da*, *doe*, *dae*, &c., *passim* in the text.

¹⁹ *Houer brede*. Jamieson (Scottish Dictionary) gives *haver* as an old term for oats. *Haver-meal* is still used for oatmeal in the North of England and the Scotch Border counties. "*Haver-meal bannock*" occurs in the song "Bonnie Dundee." *Houer brede* is, therefore, simply oat-bread. Comp. D. *havre*, and G. *hafer*, oats, and the Mod.E. *haversack*, oat-sack.

²⁰ *Browne*=brewed, the old strong past participle. A.S. *gebrōwen* (Ælfred's 'Orosius') from *brebwan*.

²¹ *Garssie*=grassy. Both *gars* and *græs* occur in A.S. Comp. *carse*, in local names, *Carse o' Gowrie*, &c.

²² *Nout*=cattle. Mod.Sc. *nolt*, *nowt*; E. *ingnete* ('Havelok,' l. 781); Mod.E. *neat*; A.S. *néat*, from *neotan* and *nyten*, to use, employ. Comp. G. *geniessen*. Fick (quoted by Skeat) gives Teutonic root *nut*, meaning *useful*, *profitable*: whence Icel. *njota*; Goth. *niutan*, &c. Icel. *naut*, means cattle; and M.H.G. *noss* was equivalent. From this it is clear that the derivation from *ne-witan*, not to

know, given by Wedgwood, and found in *Ælfred's* translation of Boethius, is quite unfounded. We still speak in English of "neat's foot oil;" *neat*, meaning tidy, is from L. *nitidus*, through Fr. *net*.

²³ *Than*=then; two forms of the same word. Here, and in many places of the text, it bears the meaning *at all events, at least*. Latin here has *saltem*.

²⁴ *Lesoueis*=Mod.S. *lesuris* and *lasors*, pastures. *Leasow* is still a common name in provincial English dialects, principally used as a local name. A.S. *lesu*, a pasture; *lesian* and *leswian*, to feed.

²⁵ *Framet*=foreign. *Frem* and *framet* are still used in Scottish dialect. A.S. *fremed*. This word seems allied to the prep. *fram*=from or away from; there is another word *freme*, meaning profit, gain. Both are cognate with *faran*, to travel, to fare. Comp. G. *fremde*; Gr. *τέμπω*.

²⁶ *Peirles*=peerless, without *peer* or equal.

²⁷ *Sluthe-hundes*=sleuth - hounds, dogs who track by scent. To *sleuth* is to follow a track. A *slot* is the track of a deer.

²⁸ *Grewhundes*. *Grew* alone stands for greyhound in Scottish dialect. A.S. *grighund*. Both parts of the word seem to mean dog, or, perhaps more correctly, the first part is the specific name, and *hund* refers to the male sex. Prof. Skeat refers the word to the Icel. *greyhundr*.

²⁹ *Stank*, the original form of *tank*, from L. *stagnum*, a pool, through O.Fr. *estang*.

³⁰ *Nyctbours*. The appearance of the *t* in this word is anomalous among the Teutonic dialects. The first part of the compound represents the word *nigh*, and is perchance the remains of a pp. from the verb *to nich*. A.S. *neah* and *gebur*, a tiller.

³¹ *Myndes*. This is the regular Scottish spelling both of the noun and verb. It has been attempted to connect this word with a Celtic root which appears in W. *mynd* and *mynydd*, and Gael. *monaigh*. Neither of these words, however, means a mine, but merely a mountain. The presence of the *d* in the Scottish word is a difficulty. E. *mine* is from L. *minare*, to lead. Comp. *lode*, a vein of ore.

³² *Had*. Notice the inversion after the particle *that*.

³³ *Dorpes*. The *d* seems to point to Norse origin. A.S. has *thorp*, as in modern English. Comp. G. *dorf*; Gael. *treabhair*; W. *tres*. Dalrymple often softens initial consonants.

³⁴ *Wyne*=wynd, an alley or street. It is here used as a translation of the Latin *vicus*, which, however, means a hamlet as well as a street.

³⁵ *Leiret*=learned. The improper use of the word, which means to teach. Mod.E. *leren*; also found used in the reflexive sense=to teach one's self. Comp. G. *lehren* and *lernen*. A.S. *lærnan* and *leornian*.

³⁶ *Twoche*. Probably not the same word as *touch*, which is de-

rived immediately from the French. It rather represents the E. *tweak* and *twitch*. To handle very slightly.

³⁷ *To* means in the direction of, towards. Comp. Gr. *δε*. Most uses of *to*, except the mark of the gerundive, are expressed by the Norse *til*, as is usual in the northern dialect, especially where *aim* or *intention* is meant. Comp. G. *ziel*, aim, direction.

³⁸ *Merse*. Latin calls it *Marchia*. *Merse*, therefore, would mean the frontier or boundary.

³⁹ *Tifus*=the river Teviot. The name is allied to *Tiber*, *Tay* (for Tabh), *Teifi*.

⁴⁰ *Elding*=firing. A.S. *æled* and *æld*, fire, from *ælan*, to burn. Mod.Sc. *low*.

⁴¹ *Manure*=to labour upon. The word is from the Fr. *manœuvrer*, to work with the hand.

⁴² *To* here represents the Latin dative case of the text, *rebus politicis student*. So *passim* in text.

⁴³ *Stainchet*=restrained. Related to *stank* and *stagnant*. L. *stagnum*, from *sta* to stand; *stagnō*, to make to stand.

⁴⁴ John Duns Scotus, the famous Franciscan doctor of the thirteenth century. He belonged to Merton College, Oxford, and taught in the University of Paris. His birthplace is disputed, but is generally thought to be Dunce in Northumberland. The modern term "dunce" is an antiphrastic use of his name.

⁴⁵ *Wod*=furious, mad. A.S. *wód*, violent. Comp. *Woden*, *Odin*, the war-god; G. *wüth* and *wüthen*, rage; L. *vates*; Icel. *odr*; Mod.E. *wod*, Chaucer. Root *woda* (Fick).

⁴⁶ *Euos*. Presumably *Ewes*; but *Ewes* Water flows into the Esk on its eastern bank.

⁴⁷ *Vergivium*. The name given by Latin writers to the sea lying between south of Scotland and Ireland.

⁴⁸ *Dales, Portionis*. The meaning seems to be, that the word dale is taken to mean not only a valley but a district or division of territory. The Latin text reads: "Our people call a dale a valley, or, according to others, a *portion*;" and the Latin marginal reference, which is left out in the translation, reads, "Dales, called valleys or portions." This is interesting as pointing to a consciousness of the etymological meaning of the word dale. It is connected with the word *deal*, and is from some root meaning to divide or separate. Hence a dale is a portion divided off as well as a cleft. A.S. *dæl*, a portion, a share. Comp. G. *theilen*, to divide; and *thal*, a valley.

⁴⁹ *Strath*. The low-lying flat land on either side of a river. The Gael. word is *srath*, W. *ysrad*. Generally considered to be derived from L. *strata*; but it is difficult to think that a Latin word could have been so common as this in ancient place-names. No Gaelic word exists to which it could be traced, otherwise it might be considered as a cognate word from the same root, meaning to expand,

as L. *sterno*; E. *strew, stretch*. Gael. *sruth*, a stream, is a parallel word.

⁵⁰ *Galloway*. The Gaelic race of this district was called by the Irish *Gallgaidheal*—i.e., the foreign Gael, as being under the yoke of the Gall—the Norsemen. The same term was used for the people of the Western Isles for the same reason. The Welsh called them *Gallwyddel*, where the latter part of the word is equivalent to *gaidheal*. The country was called Gallowithia, Gallovidia, Galweia, all names pointing to the southern Celts. (Skene, 'Celtic Scotland,' i. 239.)

⁵¹ *Quhyt* bears the same relation to *quheit* as *white* to *wheat*. All are from the same root—*kwi*, to shine, glitter.

⁵² *The quhyt Case*. The white *casa* or house—*Candida Casa*. Whithern, now spelled Whithorn. The name arose from the stone church built there by St Ninian at the close of the fourth century. *Hern* is a translation of *Casa*, or perhaps *vice versa*. The name Whitherne is found in the Anglo-Saxon Chronicle, year 565. A.S. *arn*, house, hall.

⁵³ *Oy*. A grandson or nephew; also spelled *oe* and *o*. At first sight it looks like the Gael. *oig* and *og*, meaning young, which is used so commonly in the Highlands after names of persons to distinguish son from father—e.g., Donald *oig*=Donald the younger. It may, however, be a true Scottish word, cognate with the diminutive suffixes *oc*, *ock*, and *ken*, *eken*=*ek-en*, *kin*; and which appears in another form in the affectionate diminutive *y*, i.e. Comp. Johnny, housie; chicken, Watkin; Mannock, Mallock.

⁵⁴ *Schawne*. An older form than the English *shew*, but with the same sense. A.S. *scedwian* with long *a*=to look. Root *skaw*. Comp. G. *schauen*, to look; L. *cavere*, to look out.

⁵⁵ *Waris*. This form in Scottish expresses the meanings of English *war*, *worse*, *wary*, *were*, and it has the additional meaning, *to spend*, or *waste*, as if a verbal use of the noun *war*[s]. This is a confirmation of the supposition that all these words are derived ultimately from the same root *war*, to take heed, to defend (Skeat). From *war* comes (1) the Teutonic *wara*, cautious; (2) *wars*, to confuse, to twist, whence *worse*—i.e., twisted from the right—and also probably *war*, meaning the confusion incident upon fighting; (3) *were*, price or estimation=the power of defence—i.e., *worth*; and finally (4) *wares*, things kept in custody, valuables. *War*, in the sense of *fighting*, is A.S., but rare. It is found in the 'Anglo-Saxon Chronicle' (1119), and in the laws of Cnut (War-scot), where it may only mean *protection-tax*. Cognate forms are G. *wirren*, *währen*, *wehr*, *waaren*; Gr. *δραω*; L. *verro*, and perhaps *verto*.

⁵⁶ *Suit hartes*. The reason given for this name is not only an incorrect translation of the Latin but false in fact. Sweet Heart Abbey was founded in 1275 by Devorgilla, daughter of Alan de

Galloway, and took its name from the embalmed heart of her husband, John de Baliol, which she shrank in silver and ivory, and placed in an aumbry near the altar ('Ancient Church of Scotland,' p. 288). It was variously called *Douce Cœur*, *Dulcicorde*, *Douzguer*, *Duguer*, and *New Abbey*.

⁵⁷ *Hail*. The older form of *whole*. The *o* sound of the English word comes in the ordinary way from broad *a*, as *stone* from *stan*, *stane*; but the *w* is a much later English addition not peculiar to this word. A.S. *hal*; Mod.E. *hool*. Palsgrave (1530) *hole*.

⁵⁸ Here is an inversion of an assertive and principal clause: it seems partly imitated from the Latin text.

⁵⁹ *Killine*=cod. Still used. Also spelt *keeling* and *killing*; perhaps allied to *ling*.

⁶⁰ *Bosums*=bays. A translation of *L. sinus*, which means a bosom as well as a bay.

⁶¹ *Thir*=the regular form for *these*. This is peculiar to Scottish dialect. Perhaps it stands for the *ær*=A.S. *se æra*=the former, the preceding. Icel. has *þeir*=those, plural of *sá*, that.

⁶² Latin reads here—"The name of the other is *Loch*, nearly 30 miles long." This must be *Luce* Bay. The *bot* introduced here is for the *L. autem*—"Latitudine autem fere pari."

⁶³ *Quhen . . . than*. This is imitated from the Latin text, which has "cum nostra patria . . . tum maxime Gallovidia." The pair of words are commonly translated *both . . . and*.

⁶⁴ *Abone*, also *abowyne*, *abow*, *abufin*. The last is nearest the original form, of which the others are contractions. A.S. *abufan* (chronicle 1090)=*an*, on; *be*, by; *ufan*, upward. Cf. G. *oben*.

⁶⁵ *Cumirsum* (*cummer*, *cummar*)=vexation, trouble, hindrance. E. *cumber*, a verb only. The English word is supposed to be derived from the low-L. *cumbrus*; but it is as likely that the low-Latin or French is derived from the Frankish. The German dialects still retain the word *kümmern*, and *kümmern*, in the precise meaning of the Scottish.

⁶⁶ *Vuir*=*uvir*=over, or, as we now say, *upper*. It is the A.S. *ofer*, used as we find *ober* in the names of German places—e.g., *ober-Rhein*, *unter-Rhein*=upper and lower Rhine.

⁶⁷ *Ofspring*, the Latin has *seges*=crop.

⁶⁸ *Plesand*, keeps the northern ending of the participle, as though formed anew from the verb to please, and not a mere translation of the French participle.

⁶⁹ *Skepis* (*skeppe* and *scape*), a hive. It is the same word as E. *ship*, O.E. *skip*, and means anything hollowed out; root *skap*, to shave, comp. *scoop*. A.S. *scip*, *sciof*, a basket. Gr. *σκάπως*, from *σκάπτω*.

⁷⁰ *Croce Regal*, *Cross Reguel*, *Corseraguel*, *Croceragwoll*, an abbey near Maybole, founded by Duncan, first Earl of Carrick, in 1244.

The name is commonly taken to mean King's Cross, but the explanation is very doubtful. The oldest form of the word I can find is in a Bull of the year 1265, where it is spelled *Crosragmol*, and this alternates with *Crosraigmol*. If the *m* in the last form were also aspirated, the pronunciation would become very like *Crosragwoll*. It will be noticed that the name is still *Crosraguel*. The *m* is possibly a false reading for *u* or *w*. The "Crocce Regal" of the text is simply a translation of Leslie's "Crucis Regalis." The most favoured modern interpretation is the Cross Regulus or of S. Rule.

⁷¹ *Salmonete*. This is an imported word, but the *t* or *d* is an addition. The Teutonic name for the fish is A.S. *leax*, D. *lax*, *laachs*, &c.; the Gael. *bradan*. L. *salmo*—perhaps the *leaper*, from *salio*.

⁷² *Biging* (*big*), and *build*, seem to be both derivatives from a simpler form *bua*, *bo*, which means to dwell or to be. Scand. Icel. *bol*, a house, a place to be in. Comp. G. *bauen*, to build and to cultivate or settle. A.S. *bygian*.

⁷³ *Zardes*. This is the word *gard* or *garth*, which appears in the two English forms, *yard* and *garden*. The meaning is a place enclosed or protected; from root *garda*. The initial consonant of this word is equal to E. *y*, but represents A.S. soft *g* before a vowel. We still hear such pronunciation as *giarden*, *giate*, &c., for garden, gate. A.S. *geard*; L. *hortus*; Gr. *xōpros*.

⁷⁴ *Infrequent*, in the Latin sense of *not well attended*. The Latin text has *infrequens*.

⁷⁵ *Gairdine*, already distinguished from *zarde*, prob. an importation, like English garden. F. from Frankish *garto*, cognate with A.S. *geard*.

⁷⁶ *Bordour*. L. *finibus*=borders, but also *district*.

⁷⁷ *Schene*=fair, shining. Comp. E. noun *sheen*, G. *schön*, from same root as *shine*—viz., *ski* (Fick). *Ski* is also the root of L. *scio*, to know, or to *discern*.

⁷⁸ *Pure*=poor, also *puir*, from Fr. *pauvre*, *povere*, of which the Scottish is a closer imitation. L. *pauper*=*pauc-par*=little providing. E. *few-faring*.

⁷⁹ *Zewis*. In this word the *z* seems to be a mistaken orthography. No *g* or *y* appears in this word in any of the dialects.

⁸⁰ *Als*=as. Generally so spelt in the first of the pair, *als*=*as*. From *also*. Mod. *as* is a corruption of it, and confused with the relative pronoun. G. *als*. *Anes*—the original form of *once*. A.S. *ānes*. It is the genitive case of *ane*, used as an adverb. Comp. the provincial usage of *evenings*, *mornings* to mean in the evening, in the morning. G. *abends*, *morgens*, with same meaning.

⁸¹ *Sent*. This is the correct form of the word, for it is pretty certain that it comes from the L. *sentire*, through the French. Even if it were from the Teutonic *sinnen*, the *c* would be equally intrusive.

⁸² *Cuning*=cony, rabbit. The first is probably the older form.

Cony is for *conig*, but *cuning* gives the diminutive in full. The name *canin* or *conin* is common to several Teutonic dialects.

⁸³ *Finzie*=feign. In English the *g* is a late addition. This may be an independent formation from L. *ingere* or F. *feignant*. L. *ingo*, which may represent *big*, to set up, to build.

⁸⁴ *Ingne*, from L. *ingenium*=natural gift. A word now lost, except in its derivatives. Latin text here has *artem*. It is a favourite word with Dalrymple.

⁸⁵ *Laich*, *laigh*=low. All the old forms of this word have the guttural ending, *louh* (Ancren Riwle), *loogh*, from *lag*=lie, with the usual vowel-changes. E. *lie* is from same root. Icel. *lagr*, from *laga*, to lie.

⁸⁶ *Martrix*=martriks. The marten, a kind of weasel. The old term is marter, or martre. A.S. *mearth*. Martrik seems to be the diminutive in *ek*, *marterek*.

⁸⁷ *Brok*=the badger, probably a Celtic word, and meaning spotted, from *breac*, spotted. Gael. *broc*.

⁸⁸ *Messen*=Messina, in Sicily. Latin text has *Meliteorun*—that is, *Maltese*.

⁸⁹ *Laudiane*=Lothian. Latin text has *Laudonia*. It is also called *Lothene* (Saxon Chronicle), *Loidis*, and *Lodonea*. As a province it once extended from the Forth to the Tweed. It was a Saxon or rather Anglian colony, and the name Pentland records the existence of the Picts in it as a distinct people, either as conquerors or as conquered. The word recalls the Teutonic *Leute*. A.S. *Leod*; M.E. *Lede*, people.

⁹⁰ *Madne Castle*. Leslie writes *Castra puellarum*. The real meaning of the word which he assumes to be *maiden* is doubtful. It is sometimes conjectured to have been *magh dun*, whatever that may mean; also *medn* or *maidn*, a rock, of which form we have many examples in different parts of Britain; and thirdly, it is suggested that *maighdean* is the correct reading, meaning precisely *maiden*. There are one or two instances of a similar name in other parts of Europe. The city of Magdeburg on the Elbe is commonly thought to mean Maiden Castle, and what confirms the opinion is that the Slavonic name, which is supposed to be that given by its earlier inhabitants, is *Devina*, a name of precisely similar meaning. Monenna, who is considered to be the same as Medana or Edana, founded a church at Duneden towards the close of the fifth century. If Duneden is the "hill of Edana," "Maiden Castle" may be a record of the house of nuns which she probably founded in connection with her church. See text, Bk. II. chap. i. p. 133, line 5. The form Edinburgh first appears as *Edwinesburgh*, which exists in the foundation charter of Holyrood, by David I. But the British names *Mynyd*, *Agned*, and *Dineiddyn*, and the Gaelic *Dunedin*, appear long before this. There was a British town *Caeredin*, nine miles further west, on the Forth.

⁹¹ *Swomeng*, also spelt *sworum*, has a Danish sound, but it may be a form from the perfect stem of *swim*.

⁹² *Pig*=jar, or such vessel. Gael. *pige* and *pigean*; E. *piggis*. Beaker and pitcher will likely be derivatives through low-Latin, from same root. Comp. G. *becker*; Gr. *βάκος*.

⁹³ *Iles and Inches*. The latter word is clearly the Celtic *Innis*, found in place-names throughout Britain. The former seems to struggle between Gael. *eil*, *eilean*, and Fr. *isle*, with perhaps a memory of A.S. *ig* and *eg*, in the combination *igland* and later *iland*, &c. The *s* was long absent in the English word.

⁹⁴ *Fliedly*=timidly. *Fley* and *flee* still mean, in Scottish, to frighten and to put to flight. *Fliedly* would equal *fleedlie*, like a thing put to flight. *Flee* causal from *fly*.

⁹⁵ *Birdis*=young. The word is applied to the young of other animals; also spelt *brid*, *beird*, *burd*, that which is *beared*, or *bred*, or more directly from A.S. *bredan*, to brood.

⁹⁶ *Dowk*, to dive, to put under water. A *duck* is a diver. Comp. G. *tauchen*.

Connected with this word is *doup*, which has in Scottish the precise meaning of Dutch *duiken*, to stoop, to bend down; and of E. *duck*, to bob the head downwards. It is also used by our author in the active sense of E. *dip*, to plunge—e.g., “doupt him with whingeris.” *Dip* is in fact the weakened form of the Teutonic root *dup*, whence comes Goth. *daupjen*, Sc. *doup*, G. *taufen*.

⁹⁷ *Snell*=quick. A.S. *snell*, lost in Mod.E., except as a surname. Comp. G. *schnell*. The previous part of the sentence should read. “They delight so much in the labour, and are so swift in flight,” &c.

⁹⁸ *Wap*, to throw; especially to throw quickly. Jamieson connects this with Icel. *veipa*, L.Ger. *wippen*, E. *whip* and *quip*. If so, its root will be *wip*, to tremble, *vibrate*.

⁹⁹ *Neb*. The beak or snout, still used of the nose, anciently the face; A.S. *nebb*=face. The word has lost an *s*, whence *snap*. Comp. G. *schnabel*. *Nip*, v., and *nib* of a pen are from same.

¹⁰⁰ *Towis* = ropes. A.S. *togan*, L. *ducere*, G. *ziehen*, E. to tug. The word *tow*, meaning the matter of which ropes are sometimes made, has nothing to do with this root. It is a curious fact that Mod.G. has the very word *tau*, meaning rope, perhaps imported.

¹⁰¹ *Excepte*, here=besides. Latin has *præter*, of which *except* is an imitation.

¹⁰² *Mosse*, in its original sense of swampy ground. The word is still generally so used in Scotland. *Mire* is from the same root, Icel. *myrr*, a bog which Fick refers to Teutonic root *musa*, whence *moss*. Latin text, however, reads “that bituminous matter for fire, commonly called moss;” the word is here referred to the peats themselves.

¹⁰³ *Peit*. Professor Skeat considers this a corruption of *beat*, a word

from the v. to *beit*, meaning to replenish—a fire, *scil.*; so that peat would mean fire material or fuel. In Scotland, where the two words *beit* and *peat* coexist, it is strange that one should be changed without the other. Gaelic has *fad*, a peat, and *fadaidh*, to burn.

¹⁰⁴ *Smacke*=taste, to be distinguished from smack, a blow, which has more relation to *smash*. The two words are kept distinct in all the Teutonic dialects.

¹⁰⁵ *Wisse*=wish. A.S. *wyscan*, from an older *wunsc*, an inceptive or desiderative form of *wan+esc* (Fick). Comp. E. *win*, L. *venus*.

¹⁰⁶ *Sum tyme*. Note that this means *formerly*; but the plural or genitive *sum tymes*=E. sometimes.

¹⁰⁷ *Syde*=low-hanging. A.S. *sid*, long, wide, hence E. *side*, the edge or border.

¹⁰⁸ *Endet*=breathed upon. *Aynd, ainde, eand*, the breath, to breathe, to expire, to blow upon (as the wind does). This is another form of E. *wind*, used as a verb. A.S. has *windwian*, winnow, to blow upon. Root *aw* or *wa*, whence E. *air*, L. *ventus*, Gr. *aw* (pres. part. *æls*, *ævros*). Icel. *andi*; Dan. *aand*.

¹⁰⁹ *Clate* (*clat, claut, claut*)=rake, a hoe, to scratch. *Clauts* or *clatts* are a sort of combs for carding wool. A.S. *clate*, whence E. *clot* (Skeat) means a *bur*. To *clout*, in the sense of *strike*, is perhaps another form of the same; but *clout*, a *rag*, is Celtic; and compare *clatter*. *Cluif* is the divided half of a hoof=that which is *cloven*. A.S. *cleofan*.

¹¹⁰ *Kaithe*=*kyth, kyith*, to show, exhibit. A.S. *cyðan*, to tell, to make known.

¹¹¹ *Afortymes*. Another instance of genitive case used adverbially. Comp. Sc. *anes*=once, and E. mornings, evenings; also G. *vormals, abends*. See note ⁸⁰.

¹¹² *Seindle* (*sindle, seyndill*, also *senil, seenil*). This seems to be connected with *sunder* rather than with *seldom*, and would mean separated; hence unlike and rare. Root, *sund*=separately. The ending is probably a comparative form (Fick).

¹¹³ *Scoug* (*skug*, and *skoug*, n. and v.)=shade, shelter, from root *sku*, to cover, whence English *sky*.

¹¹⁴ *Argathelia, Earrgoidheal, Airergaidheal*, the coasts, or boundaries, or district of the Gael. The oldest form of the name is *oirir Alban*, the coast-lands of Alban. (Skene, 'Celtic Scotland,' iii. 49).

¹¹⁵ *Bowdin*, a softened form of *boldin, boulden*=swollen, from root of E. *bulge, belly, bowl, billow, a boil, &c.* *Bhalgh*, to swell (Fick).

¹¹⁶ *By*, that is *beyond*=contrary to the usual custom.

¹¹⁷ Latin, *pulchrum*. "Is it not charming that every trade has its own street apart?" See Scott's 'Fair Maid of Perth.'

¹¹⁸ *Loutha*. Latin has *Loucthea* and *Louthæa*. Both forms are interesting, as will be seen from the following quotation from Mr Skene's 'Celtic Scotland,' ii. 456. "Adamnan tells us of a peasant who

dwell in the district which borders the shores of the *Stagnum aporicum*, or aporic lake—i.e. Lochaber, . . . and in the river *qui Latine Nigra Dea dicitur* caught a salmon of extraordinary size. . . . The river *Lochy*, however, has no connection with the word *Loch*, translated by Adamnan *stagnum*, for the vowel *o* in the former is long, but in the latter short. But Cormac and O'Clery's glossaries (Irish) have *lock* with long *o*, meaning *black*. *Dea* also does not mean goddess, but is an Irish name for river. The name, therefore, was *Lochdea*. In his book i. c. 28, Adamnan has the same name as *Stagnum lochdie*.¹¹⁸ Whether *Spean* means Hispean or Spain, as our author says, is not so clear. As a river-name it reminds us of its neighbouring Spey. To a Gaelic ear *Spean* would sound like *little Spey*.

¹¹⁹ *Nocht* represents the Latin *ne* after *timore*, which would not be rendered in English.

¹²⁰ *Halkes*. The *l* is redundant; it does not occur in Scottish spellings of this word, so far as I can ascertain, nor in any of the other dialects. A.S. has *hafoc*; G. *habicht*. The labial is an essential part of the root, which is *hab*, meaning to seize hold. Comp. E. *have*; L. *capio*, &c. There is here probably some confusion with the name either of the *falcon* or of the *auk*, L. *alca*. The term *sparhawk* is quite regular. A.S. has *spearhafoc* for *spearwahafoc*.

¹²¹ *Bries* (*bre*, *bree*); also *bra*, *brae*, *bray*—the eyebrow and brow of a hill. Though these two words have become confused, they seem to be distinct in history. The first is identical with A.S. *breg* and *braw*, meaning either eye *lid* or *brow*. A.S. *bruwa* means the *hair* on the lids and brows. Though the E. *brow* applied to a hill-edge may be a metaphorised use of eyebrow, the Sc. *brae* seems to be related to the Gael. *bre*, *brigh*, and W. *bre*, *brynn*. These words mean a hill, or the slope of a hill; while E. *brow* refers to the *edge* of a hill only. The original meaning of the latter was *eyelid*, and it expressed the idea of quick motion or twitching. Root *bhur*, to move quickly (Fick). Comp. L. *fur*, a thief; Gr. *φίορ*; L. *furor*, fury.

¹²² *Fasiane*—a pheasant. The old spelling is *fasian*, from the French. The modern *t* is redundant. The bird was so called as coming from the river *Phasis* in Colchis.

¹²³ *Stuffe*—corn of any kind, pulse, or suchlike food. In the present place, and in several other portions of the text, it is used as a translation of Latin *frumentum*. The word has a further general use in Scottish to mean *supplies* of all sorts, even a reserve of soldiers. Mod. E. *stuff* has two meanings, in one at least of which it is derived from L. *stupa*, tow, stopping, anything used to fill up. In its other meaning, *material*, it corresponds to the Scottish word, and to Mod. G. *stoff*.

¹²⁴ *Cleck* (*clek*, *cleke*)—to hatch, also applied to other animals. Jamieson quotes Icel. *klek* with same meaning. The word is commonly used in provincial English (*click*) to mean coagulation—e.g.,

the stiffening of the fat that floats upon soup or gravy. The same meaning is expressed by Sc. *clag*, E. *clog*, to obstruct, to stiffen. Cf. also *clay*. A.S. *clingan*, to stiffen, is another form of the same root, from which comes L. *glacio*, to freeze—*gelo, gluo*.

¹²⁶ Latin, *Quod vero id quotannis usu non venit*—that this does not happen every year. *Quhair* seems intended for *quhairfor*.

¹²⁶ Latin, *Frumenti*. The meaning is, in places where the people have a scanty supply of corn or other food.

¹²⁷ *Foranent* (*fornence, fornens, fornentis*) (genitive forms), and *fornent*=opposite to, facing, with a view to. *Anent* is for A.S. *on-esen*, *on even*—that is, near. *Foreanent*, near, and in front. Comp. G. *neben=an, eben*, and *vornan=vorneben*. The *t* is redundant, unless it be the remains of a participial ending.

¹²⁸ *Cheip*, used in the old sense, not as an adjective, but as a substantive=price.

¹²⁹ *Forn Water*, now called the Beauly river; once called Farrar, and still so called in its higher reaches. The “fishings of Forne” are specified among the endowments given by John Byset to Beauly Priory, A.D. 1231. Ptolemy calls the Beauly Frith *Varuris*.

¹³⁰ *Kreilis, creil, and creel*=an ozier-basket. Here with much the same meaning as *skep*, but of very different origin. From Celtic *creathall* (*th* silent), meaning anything woven or reticulated. The L. *crates*, the word used in the Latin text, E. *hurdle*, all of which are from the same root, meaning to plait or weave. Comp. *cradle, crate*.

¹³¹ *Win* here must mean *wound*. *Wickeris*, a noun=weak, pliable twigs.

¹³² That Beauly is French and not Gaelic seems quite certain. The earliest authority for the name is the Bull of Pope Gregory IX. at the time of its foundation. It is there called *Bellus Locus*—i.e., Beaulieu or Beauly. The monks were a kind of Carthusians dependent upon the abbey of Val de Choux in France. To this day Beauly is never so called in Gaelic; it is named *Manachair*—i.e., the monastery.

¹³³ *Houbrun*=Holborn Head; *Dunesbe*=Duncansby Head, anciently Dungallsbae. *Hoy* must be Dunnet Head; but the name now belongs only to the nearest of the Orkney Islands. Sutherland must have been much smaller than it is now, probably a strip of sea-coast between Caithness and Ross.

¹³⁴ *Dubis, dub*, is a small pool, connected either with Gael. *dubh*, black dirty water, or E. *dab* and *dabble*.

¹³⁵ *Sairing, to sawer, sawr, saur, sare*=to savour, merely a corruption of that word. L. *sapor*.

¹³⁶ *Lout* (*lowt*; also *loutch*)=to bend the head or shoulders, to stoop. A.S. *lutan*, Icel. *lúta*—hence Mod.E. *lout* and *loutish*=awkward. *Little* is from same root—viz., *lut*, to bow down, whence to creep, to sneak, to deceive (Skeat). A.S. *lytel* and *lytig*=deceitful.

¹³⁷ *Clare* (*glar, glaur, glawr*)=mire, slippery and sticky. It is pretty certain that this is only the French word *glaire*=white egg, and hence anything gelatinous. If so, it is a curious instance of perversion of meaning; for *glaire* is from L. *clarus*=clear, bright. Spynie Loch has now almost disappeared, mainly through drainage. The palace is in ruins, about two miles north of Elgin.

¹³⁸ *Make* (*maik, mayock*)=a match, which is a corresponding word. *Make* is the old form of E. *mate*. A.S. *gemaca, maca*.

¹³⁹ *Marrow*=a match, generally in the sense of making a partner, a fit, &c., n. and v. It seems to be a corruption of *husband*.

¹⁴⁰ *Schokles* (*shoggle, skokkle, shoggle*)=loose pieces of ice floating on water; probably the same word as *shackles*=loose and things. To *schoggle* is to jog in Scottish. Jamieson puts the question whether it is the equivalent of *gicel* in A.S. *isgicel*=icicle? The quality of Loch Ness water is still observable.

¹⁴¹ *Hanche, hangh, hough*=the ham or thigh. The word is etymologically related to L. *coxa*, the hip or thigh. E. *hough* has a different meaning, though apparently the same word. Latin *he* *coxendix*, hip-bone. (Pliny.)

¹⁴² Enzie and Boyne, now in Banffshire.

¹⁴³ *Rattoune* (*ratton, rotton, rotten*)=a rat. Still provincial lish; a second derivation from the Teutonic word *rat*, through *raton*, which means a little rat, or, according to others, a large rat. Portuguese still has *ratinho*=little rat, for a mouse. To *rattles* do secret mischief as *rattons* do.

¹⁴⁴ *Coue*=a cave. The word does not mean the same as E. *Cave*. Here it is used as a translation of L. *antrum*. A.S. *cowa*=a cove, a room, a bed. E. *cave*, though it means the same thing as Sc. *coue*, is a different word, from L. *cavus*, hollow.

¹⁴⁵ *Halse, hawse*=the neck, the throat. A.S. *heals*, L. *collus*, *hals*. Hence *hauberk*=halsberg, protection for the throat, and *holes* in the bows or neck of a ship through which the *hawser* are pulled.

¹⁴⁶ *Littid, lit, litt*=to dye, tinge; perhaps from Gael. *li, lid*, or from L. *linire*, to smear, anoint.

¹⁴⁷ *Garnel* (*girnal, girnell, grainel*)=a granary. Fr. *gernier*, gr. from L. *granarium*. *Granum* and A.S. *corn* are cognate words.

¹⁴⁸ *Thrimmil* (*thrimble, thrimble, thrumble*), also *thrimp* and *throng*=to press, to squeeze, to handle, also to wrestle. A.S. *thrumma* means a crowd, and *to crowd* is a meaning of *to thrump*. The word is allied to A.S. *thringan*=to squeeze or press, to crowd, whence *throng*. There is another word, *thrum*, found in O.E., but in A.S., meaning edge, brim, end.

¹⁴⁹ *Store*=sheep or cattle. From L. (though Fr.) root, *stare* to set up, support. Comp. *restore*.

¹⁶⁰ *After*, for *ofter*=oftener. *Aft* or *oft* is the original form; *e* was the adverbial ending (Chaucer), and *n* was added before vowels. A.S. *oft*; Icel. *opt*. There is another Saxon word, *æft*, *eft*, which has the meaning of *again* (Gresia), and this or its equivalents may be the origin of the Scottish form.

¹⁶¹ *Rounis*=roe of a fish. *Rown*, or *roan*, is the old form. It was mistaken for a plural, and the singular *roe* fashioned out of it. *Rown* is still used in North Scotland. *Melt*=milt, a corruption of *milk*, which is still used in Teutonic dialects for the milt of fishes.

¹⁶² *Stay*, *stey*=steep, from the A.S. *stæg*, a stair, a ladder, or perhaps more directly from the root of *stigan*, to climb. Provincial E. *stee*, a ladder, G. *steg*, a mountain-path. Compare *stile*, *stirrup*=stey-rope, climbing-rope.

¹⁶³ *Tynes*. See note ¹⁰⁶, p. 386.

¹⁶⁴ *Maist*=very large; *ma*=great; *mair*=greater.

¹⁶⁵ *Grampie*. This passage is plainly copied from Hector Boece, who (says Mr Skene) is the first of our historians who brings this Highland barrier forward as a mountain-range. The older authorities allude to this range as the *Mounth*. *Mons Grampius* is merely the hill near which Agricola fought his famous battle, A.D. 86. Boece adds that its vernacular name, *Grainzebain*, means rough and uncultivated. Gael. *grainge*, scowling; *beinn*, mountains.

¹⁶⁶ *Arte* (*airt*, *art*, *arth*, *airth*), quarter, point of the compass. Referred to Gaelic *aird*, a height or promontory, and also a point or direction, in the precise sense of *arte*—e.g., *airdan ear*, the east. Comp. Icel. *vart*; G. *wart*; E. *towards*. All connected with root *war*, to look out and to defend.

¹⁶⁷ *Rachra*, or *Rechra*, the old name of Rathlin.

¹⁶⁸ *Ycolmkil*. *Y* means island (?), Colmkill or Columcille is the name of the saint. The “Church of St Columba” would be Cille-choilum or Kilcolum; *Columcille* means Columba of the Church. He was so surnamed “in consequence of the frequency of his attendance, when a child, at the Church of Tulach—Dubhglaise (Temple Douglas), near the place of his birth” (Skene, ‘Celtic Scotland,’ ii. 52). “Dr Reeves (Adamnan) has conclusively shown that the name of Iona has arisen from a misprint of the word *Ioua*, the adjective form used by Adamnan, the root of which was *Iou*. The oldest forms of the name are *Hii*, *Ia*, and *I*. The usual etymologies of *I thona*, the island of waves, or *I shona*, the sacred isle, are of course untenable.” Ib., p. 86. It is still called *Y* in Gaelic.

¹⁶⁹ *Cokilis* (*cockle*, *cokkil*)=a scallop-shell, a diminutive of Sc. *cog*, *coag*, *coig*, *cogue*, a cup—any hollow wooden vessel; also a boat (cockboat). The word represents the Gael. *cuach*, a bowl. Comp. couch, coach, cockswain, cockle-boat. “The M.E. form is *cokel*, obviously a diminutive of *cok*, the original sense of which is shell”

(Skeat). Cognate words are Lat. *cochlea*, *concha*; Gr. *κοχλίας* and *κόχυνη*.

A *buckie* is a spiral shell. This is connected with Gael. *bucaille*=E. *bucket*, and with A.S. *buc*. Comp. bulge and bow.

¹⁶⁰ *Eusta*=Uist; *Cambery*, perhaps Cairnburgh; *Lismon*=Lismore; *Terrey*=Tiree; *Corsay*, probably Coll—i.e., Collsay, or Coll's Island.

¹⁶¹ *Saylches* (*sealgh*, *selcht*, *selchie*), still called *selch* in Scotland. A.S. *seolh* and *selc*.

¹⁶² *Hirth*=St Kilda. Mr Seton, quoting the Society of Scottish Antiquaries, in his book on St Kilda, will have it that Hirta or Hirth is a contraction of the Gaelic *Iar tir*=west land. There are two difficulties against this: one is the complete loss of the final *r*, an important part of the word *tir*, and its change into *th*; secondly, the anomaly of the qualifying word preceding the qualified. *West land* should be something like *tir n-iar*. That the island should be called from the sheep is not at all unlikely. The greater number of the islands near have Norse names, and generally express some peculiarity of the spot. *Hirtha* would mean Hirth island, and Hirth or Hirt means a *horned* animal, a very apt name for St Kilda sheep. They are considered by experts to be a Norwegian breed. *St Kilda* seems to be more properly the name of the little village rather than of the island, though this too is very uncertain. As a name for the island it is, at all events, very modern. The most likely opinion is that the name Kilda consists of the ubiquitous *Kil*, and some personal name, perhaps of one of the many Irish wanderers after the "happy islands," who may have left his bones and his name as an earnest of his preaching there. It has been suggested that *Kilda* is only a corruption of *Hirta*.

¹⁶³ *Hebrides* seems to be a corruption of *Ebudeæ* mentioned by Ptolemy, or of the name which he so rendered. The name was first applied to the group between Scotland and the north-east of Ireland. They are also called *Eubonia*. Fordun calls the Isle of Man *Eubonia*. *Ebudeæ* recalls the *Epidii* who inhabited Lorn; while the alternative *Eubonia* is equally suggestive of Oban and the embouchure of the Linnhe Loch, to which the meaning of the latter name seems to point.

¹⁶⁴ This is the island of Soa.

¹⁶⁵ *Nouthir*, *nouther*, *nowthir*, *nolder*, for *na-whether*. E. *neither* has been modelled after *either*; contracted into *nor*.

¹⁶⁶ The *Quinck* is the golden-eye duck; *Skilling*, the sheldrake, sheldrake, skelgoose, skeeling; *Clairk*, the Barnacle or Bernicle goose; *Routhurrok*, probably the Brent goose, a kind of Barnacle, also called the *Roodgoose*, *routh* and *rout*; *Ridlaik*, the redleg or redshank, a sort of woodcock.

¹⁶⁷ *Preiue*, *preif*, *preve*, *pree*=to prove, in the sense of testing and

trying. This is the original use of the word both in Latin and the derivatives. E. *pry* is for *peer*, which is a distinct word, meaning to look closely or to blink.

¹⁶⁸ *Petslegie*=Pitsligo.

¹⁶⁹ Broughty Ferry.

¹⁷⁰ *Tangle*=sea-weed. The modern meaning of a *confusion* is derived from this. A Norse word, *tang*, Icel. *thang*=kelp, sea-wrack; also Icel. *thöngall*, sea-weed. *Tang* is also used in Scottish. The Latin here reads, "on the *stalk* of a sea-weed." *Tangle* is still commonly used for the small stems of *Laminaria digitata*.

¹⁷¹ *Hang*, the p. of *hing*.

¹⁷² Dr Allan, afterwards Cardinal Allan, famous as the founder of the English college at Douai, and also of the English colleges at Rome and Lisbon. He was born in 1532, two years before the English schism, took his M.A. degree at Oxford in 1554, the year in which Cardinal Pole absolved the kingdom and restored it to Catholic unity. He became principal of St Mary's Hall, but, after the accession of Elizabeth, he withdrew to the Netherlands. He was created Cardinal at Rome in 1587, and died in 1594. He was mixed up with nearly all the religio-political troubles between England, Scotland, Spain, and Rome during his lifetime, and would necessarily, therefore, be acquainted with Bishop Leslie. Several of his letters to and from Queen Mary Stuart are still preserved.

¹⁷³ *Barnacles*. The whole question as to the history of this word will be found in Max Müller's 'Lectures on Science of Language,' ed. 1880, ii. 583. The shell-fish found adhering to spars and loose floatage were called *Barnacles*, as diminutive of *Bernæ*, their Latin name. The *Bernacle* goose, it seems, is really the Irish goose,—i.e., *Hibernicula*, belonging to *Hibernia* or *Ireland*.

¹⁷⁴ *Pickle*, *puckle*=a grain of corn, any small particle, a few. It would seem to be related to the Celtic *pioc*, to pluck; but A.S. *pycar* is suggested. To *pickle*, like to *corn*, is to throw *grains* of salt over.

¹⁷⁵ *Cofte*, *coffe*=to buy. *Couþ* and *cwyr* have the analogous meaning to barter, to traffic, to sell. The fact of the coexistence of these two words seems to support the theory that the latter at least is not radically Anglo-Saxon, but derived, with the similar Teutonic forms, from the low-L. *caupo*. Comp. A.S. *ceapian*; G. *kaufen*.

¹⁷⁶ *Paddock*, *paddok*. The word in form is a diminutive of *pade*, a toad, which is also Scottish. Both words seem to be used indiscriminately for toad or frog. *Eddir* is for *neddir* or *naddir*. Gael. *nathair*, a snake. This is not the only word from which *n* has been taken, under the idea that it was part of the preceding article—e.g., umpire for *numpire*.

¹⁷⁷ *Daft*, pp. from v. to *daff*=to make or be foolish, delirious, stupid, gay, wanton, deranged; a wide range of meanings, but all connected

with A.S. *deaf*. Comp. G. *taub*; E. *deaf*; Sc. to *fon*, whence *fond* has parallel meaning to *daff*.

¹⁷⁸ *Plat, platt, plate*=flat, level. Not the same word as E. *flat*, which=*flac*, and is allied to L. *plaga*; G. *flache*, &c. *Plat*=E. *plate*, a dish, and comes from O.Fr. *plat*. Comp. E. *place*; L. *platea*.

¹⁷⁹ The names are in no order. *Soutrowassa*, Souther-westra—i.e., Westra; *Rosa, Rousa*; *Etha, Eda*; *Sandes, Sanda*; *Ronaldsa*, probably South Ronaldsa, since *Northronche* must be Norther inch, or Northernsa?—i.e., North Ronaldsa; *Grainsie*, Gremsa; *Birza, Birsa*; *Eglesey*, Egilsha ('the isle with the church'), it has a kirk; *Wyer, Weir*; *Gersoy, Gairsay*; *Gersol?* perhaps Rousholm or Garseholm, Greenholm; *Kobunza*, Copinsha (formerly Colbinsha); *Sounnas, Swona*, formerly *Swyna*; *Ouiskelle*, Auskerry. The Norse *a=ey*, island, appears in most of these names.

¹⁸⁰ *Hindmest*, more correct than *hindmost*, in which the *o* has been put for *e* through false analogy with the word *most*; *est* is the usual superlative ending. It is, however, still a double superlative. A.S. *hindema* is superlative of (not used) *hind*.

¹⁸¹ *Classe*, not Scottish, here merely imitated from the Latin text, which has *Romanam classem*, the Roman fleet.

¹⁸² *Thul*. "The name of Thule was familiar to the Romans as an island whose situation and inhabitants were entirely the creation of imagination. The geographers knew of it as an island in the Northern Sea, the type of whatever was most northern in the known western world, as the expression Hyperborean had been to the Greeks. The poets applied it as a poetical appellation for that part of Britain which remained inaccessible to the Roman arms, the seat of the recently known Caledonian Britons, and which, from the deep indentation into the country of the Firths of Forth and Clyde, and the narrow neck of land between them, presented the appearance, as it were, to use the words of Tacitus, of another island. The peculiar customs of the ruder Britons are attributed to these inhabitants of the poetic Thule" (A.D. 78). In the year 86, however, Agricola sent his fleet from the Firth of Forth to make the circuit of the British Island. "In the course of the voyage they passed and took possession of the 'Orcades' in the name of the Roman Empire, and they saw the peak of a distant island to the north, which they concluded might be the hitherto mysterious and unvisited Thule" ('Celtic Scotland,' i. 41, 57). It is to Ptolemy's account of the results of this voyage that the author here refers. *Thall* in Gaelic means yonder, opposite, over against, on the other side. It has been suggested that the Romans heard this word used by natives in answer to their inquiries, and Romanised it into Thule. *Tuaitheal* means northerly, northward; and has also the additional suggestion of unlucky, unpleasant, &c. (the *th* is not heard in this word). *Tuille* also

means further, further still, more and more. The guess may be taken for what it is worth.

¹⁸³ *Eik*=eke, to add, lost in English as a verb, but still used as a conjunction=also, and even as a sort of adjective in the compound, nickname=*an-eke-name*. A.S. *ecan*; L. *augere*.

BOOK I.

¹ *Magne*. Probably not a mere transfer of "Alexander Magnus." We still speak of Charlemagne, and not of Charles the Great. But E. *main* is only *magne* in another shape; through French from Latin.

² *Repeit*, imitated from the Latin text, which has *repetere*. It is used in its primary etymological meaning—viz., to go back for, to seek back, &c.

³ *Margent*. E. *margin*, the border, where headings were written, as in the text. These headings are the original *index*.

⁴ *Leisings*=lyings, falsehoods. Verbal noun not connected with *lie*, but A.S. *leasung*, from *leas*, empty, and then *false*. Comp. E. *loose* from same root, and L. *falsus* seems cognate.

⁵ *Dour, doure*=hard, through Fr. *dure*; from L. *durus*.

⁶ *Raue*, to rove. Seemingly direct from *reafian*, to plunder, to reave, rob; hence to wander. E. *rove*, though identical in meaning, is imported; and this may be the case also with *rave*, for Scottish still has *reif, reff*, to rob. Jamieson gives *rave*=to take by violence.

⁷ *Contrare*, used throughout the text in the sense of L. preposition *contra*, against, or merely *towards*.

⁸ *Gang, geng*=to go. In the text the word nearly equals *march*. The root meaning of *gang* is simply to move, generally in the way of *walking*, and it is still so used in Scottish as distinct from riding or driving. The history of the word beyond the Teutonic dialects is unknown. E. *go* is a contraction from A.S. *gangan*. G. *gehen* still means to walk. The distinction between *go* and *come* is comparatively modern, and indeed still unknown in many provincial dialects. A.S. *cuman* means both to come and to go, and is related to Sans. *ga* and *gam*.

⁹ *Trade*=manner and way of life. The original meaning, from *tread*, A.S. *tredan*. *Trade* is the trodden way, a path. *Trad* still means literally a track, or a course, in Scottish.

¹⁰ *Thol, thole, thoill*=to bear, suffer. A.S. *tholian*; L. *tolerare* and *tollo*; Gr. *ταλω*. Though this word cannot be identified with E. *toll*, yet the latter belongs to a series with, at least, parallel meaning. It is represented in G. by *soll*, and in Gr. by *δοῦλος* (slave). See footnote, p. 74.

¹¹ *Trues*=truce. The modern English is a corrupted spelling, and hides the plural form of this word. *Trues* are the mutual promises given and taken between two parties. A.S. *treowa, truwa*, a compact.

¹² *Propone*, direct from L. *proponere*. E. *propose* is from same root, but through French. Modern English equivalent is *propound*.

¹³ *Bredh* (*breid, breed*)=breadth. The latter is a modern form, copied from the analogy of *length*. The *h* in the text is probably an attempt in the same direction. See Murray, s.v. *brede*.

¹⁴ *Hiberia*. Gathelus, whether such an individual existed or not, may be taken to stand historically for the Gadhelic (Gaelic) race. On this assumption *Hiber* would stand for a people descending from the Gael. This, however, does not square with facts. The Iberians were not only a distinct race, but preceded the Gael, not in Spain only, but also in Britain and in Ireland. Sonship must here be taken to represent dependence and subjection. *Celtiberia*, a name compounded seemingly of Celt and Iberia, came to be the name of Spain, or of a large portion of it: compare *Ebro*, *Cantabria*, *Iberia*. Some persons have thought to discover the last name in the word *Britain*, as being composed of *itan*, a common word for *country*, as in *Lusitania*, *Mauritania*, &c., and *Br*, a shortened form of *Iber*. The Basques are the modern representatives of this Iberian race, who are also considered to be related to the Finns, Lapps, and Eskimo. They are the Dolichocephali or long-skulled race, whose remains are found throughout the British Islands as well as on the Continent, distinct from the broad and oval skulled peoples who succeeded them.

The sons of Gathel are given as Heremon, *Hiber*, and Ir. The last seems to stand for the tribe which gave the name to Ireland. Whether Heremon is the same as *Hemechus*, I cannot say. These same three are also made to be sons of Miledh. *Eamania* or *Eamhian* Macha was the name of the part of Ireland possessed by the descendants of Eremon. The second form of the name may be the same with the *Hemechus* of the text. The legends are confused and contradictory.

¹⁵ *Rippet, rippat*=uproar. Probably from O.Fr. *ribauld, ribaud*; E. *ribald*. Connected with *rip* and *rive*, to tear, scratch, &c.

¹⁶ *Geir* (*ger, gere*)=gear, accoutrements, goods, booty, tools, money. Latin text has "rerum et temporum." The word originally meant *preparations*, hence *stores*, property, and the rest. A.S. *gearwe* (Grein), preparation, dress. Comp. *garb* and O.E. *yare*=look out.

¹⁷ *Cheised, ches, chese*=to choose. A.S. *celasan*; L. *gustare*.

¹⁸ *Beseik*=to beseech, the older form; from *seek*, and the intensifying prefix *be*.

¹⁹ *Dantouned, danton, dant*=to subdue, to daunt—for *danten*, the inf. form. Through Fr. *danter*, *dompter*, from L. *domitare, domare*, cognate with E. *tame*.

²⁰ *Quhil*, here used in the sense of E. *while*, but usually used in the prevailing Scottish sense=until. *Quhile* and *quhiles*=at times. *Quhile* and *quhil*=sometime, and formerly like *sumtyme* in the text. *Qyhylum* and *quhilom* (sometimes *umquhile*)=some time ago, at

times. All these are forms of the A.S. *hwil*=a time, a rest, a pause. The forms are corruptions of the genitive, dative, and accusative cases. Comp. G. *weilen*, to dwell, and *wyl*, an abode, which also appears in English place-names as *well*—e.g., Stockwell—and sometimes in Norm. *ville*.

²¹ *Thanaus*. Probably not a proper but a general name—a Thane; and the fact here recorded may represent the establishment of the system of feudal (?) holding, which effected the pacification of the peoples in Ireland. (See page 80 and note ²⁶.)

²² Mr Skene ('Celtic Scotland,' i. 283) holds the not improbable opinion that the Stone of Destiny is nothing more than the "altar on which St Bonifacius first celebrated the Eucharist after he had brought over the King of the Picts and his people from the usages of the Columban Church to conformity with those of Rome." St Patrick's stone altar was used as the coronation-seat of the Kings of Munster at Cashel. The placing of a person or thing upon the consecrated altar-stone was always held as a form of consecration. Donations to the church were formerly laid upon the altar; and to this day, when a monk or nun is consecrated to God, the act is completed by laying upon the altar the written formula of the vows. The anointing and coronation of kings was held as a real consecration.

²³ *Taken, taikin, takin*=token, from A.S. *tacen*. A.S. *teah* from *tihan* (Grein), meant to indicate, to point out (generally, as *guilty*). E. *teach* is from same root; also G. *zeichen*, L. *indicare*, Gr. *δικρινεῖ*, &c.

²⁴ *Writne thairin*. It is uncertain whether these lines were written on the wooden chair supporting the stone, or on the stone itself. If the latter, it must have been on some metal, perhaps, let into the oblong chiselled indenture still visible on the stone's edge. No letters of any sort that could be interpreted into an inscription are now to be found.

²⁵ *Nocht rathir . . . than*. This is an imitation of the Latin, which reads: "Non magis successione, quam contribulum suffragiis," &c.

²⁶ *Thani*. The name Thane is Teutonic, and came to Scotland with the Anglo-Saxon rule. The literal sense of the word is "mature" or "grown up," and the etymology is from *thigen*, pp. of *thihan*, to grow up (Skeat). Icel. *thegn*; G. *degen*. The Thanes, therefore, would be the king's men of war, or his "men," much in the same way as the Frank Norman called his trusty warriors his *barons* or "men." The Thanes took the place of the Celtic Toseachs. It is possible, however, that the *Thanaus* of the text is nothing more than the *Tanaist*, or the representative of the law of Tanistry, which was one of the early attempts to confer stability upon the mode of government of the Celtic tribes in Ireland and Scotland.

²⁷ *Thoum*. A.S. *thuma*, G. *daumen*. The *b* in Mod.E. is a useless excrescence. The word is deduced from a root *thu*, common to all

the Teutonic dialects, which is cognate with another, *tuk*, both having much the same meaning—to be thick, strong, swelling. From the latter comes E. *thick* and *thigh*. The thumb is the thick finger.

²⁸ *Roumes, rowme*=space. English room, in the restricted sense, from A.S. *rum*, G. *raum*, Icel. *rumr*, spacious; connected with L. *rus*, open country. The word to *roam* is spelt in Scottish as *roume* and *rowme*. Roam and room are considered to be from different roots; but these are apparently very closely allied in meaning. Both *ram* and *rum* have the sense of stretching out.

²⁹ *Debtbunde*=bound by duty. *Debtbound* is quoted by Jamieson from the Acts of James VI., and may be regarded as a Scottish word. The Latin text has "tribuere me debere censere"—I think myself bound to attribute many things to them.

³⁰ The Pelagian heresy arose among the Britons about the year 405. Pelagius, a name supposed to be the Greek equivalent of Morgan (sea-born), was a monk at Bangor in North Wales. The Picts and Scots are here represented as Christians at the time of the arrival of the Saxons under Hengist. This date is variously stated at somewhere about the end of the fourth century. The earliest authentic record of the preaching of Christianity in what is now called Scotland is the history of St Ninian, who built his church at Whithorn in 397. Palladius—if indeed he were really an apostle of Scotland—was a contemporary of St Patrick: he was sent from Rome about 430. Fordun, whom Leslie follows, places the conversion of Scotland in the year 203, under King Donald I. Fordun also places the arrival of St Regulus about 360. It need not be said that at least the dates of these two facts are mythical. Probably both Pictish and Irish invaders were as heathen as the Saxons themselves.

³¹ I suppose this refers to the martyrs and confessors of the faith under Elizabeth,—many of them were Welsh, and eminent men. Leslie took the name of Morgan from one of his Welsh friends abroad when writing one of his English treatises on Queen Mary's rights to the throne. Wales was very slow in conforming to the Reformation. As long as priests could be obtained it remained faithful, and not till a century ago did it fall into the hands, not of the State Church, which has never obtained hold in Wales, but of the Calvinistic and other Dissenting sects that were then rising into power in England.

³² *Toungs.* A.S. *tunga*, G. *zunge*, Gael. *teanga*, L. *lingua*. The *ue* in Mod.E. spelling is presumed to be imitated by false analogy from Fr. *langue*.

³³ *Spred*=scattered, dispersed. This sense is now more or less obsolete, but it is nearer the original root-meaning. *Spred* is cognate with A.S. *spreotan*, to sprout, whence *sprit*. Comp. G. *spreiten*. The allusion is to the suppression of the Latin language in the churches by the Reformers—"bigers of Babel."

³⁴ *Throuch vther*=through other; *throu ither, throuther*=promiscuously, confusedly. Comp. G. *durcheinander*, one through the other.

³⁵ *Cleithing* (*claith, clayth*)=cloth; and in the plural *clais, claise, clae*=clothes. The prior meaning seems to be *woven material*. A.S. has *clath*, cognate with G. *kleid*, and similar Teutonic words; but its further history is not clear. L. *gluo* means to draw together; *gluto* seems to be another form of this, and may be cognate with the Teutonic forms. E. *clew*, a ball or mass of thread, seems to bear a similar relation to *clath*, as *gluo* to *gluten*.

³⁶ Bede does not say precisely that there were *five different languages* in Britain. His words are: "In the tongues of five peoples (*quinq̄ gentium linguis*) the same divine truth was confessed and studied," &c.—Eccles. Hist. i. 1. He is giving the list of the nations rather than their languages. That the language of the Cruithnigh or Picts was a Celtic dialect is beyond all question. It is still possible that the Picts and Scots could not easily understand each other. Cornish and Welsh were mutually unintelligible, yet they were dialects of the same Celtic speech. Indeed in our own days the north and south of Wales differ so much in their dialect, that natives have been known to use English for the sake of understanding each other. Let a Londoner attempt to converse with a Yorkshire labourer, and he will understand why St Columba needed an interpreter to speak with the Picts, although they and he spoke Gaelic. The reader will find the question of the Pictish language fully discussed in Mr Skene's 'Celtic Scotland,' i. 193.

³⁷ *Agathyrsi*. A Scythian people who inhabited the present Transylvania, and who used to paint their faces, hence called *Picti* by Roman writers. This fact is the probable reason of the opinion given in the text.

³⁸ *Lang*. It is an interesting fact that *long* is the Gaelic word for a *ship*; while in L. *longa navis* is a ship-of-war, W. *llong*. The original meaning of A.S. *lang* is to stride, skip, pass lightly over. Compare G. *langen* and *erlangen*, to reach after, or *long* after. If Gael. *long* is cognate, it will mean *swift, gliding*. Comp. Gr. *ελαχ̄ς*; and also E. *launch, lunge*, which, though coming through Fr. *lancer, allonger*, may claim ultimate relationship.

³⁹ *The Pentland Firth*. It is not easy to see how Pentland contains the name of the Picts. Mr Skene says the name is a corruption of Petland, which is for Pictland. He says, too, that the Angles named the border hills of Lothian *Pehtland* from the Picts. The Anglic form of the name Picts is variously spelt *Pehtas, Peahas, Pehtas, Pyhtas, Pihtas*. In all these the guttural is preserved, in Pentland it disappears. How old the form Pentland is I cannot determine. Camden uses it except when he is disputing the question of its origin, and then he uses the form *Pightland*. It seems,

at all events, certain that the word is Anglo-Saxon; and, if it means Pictland, we must suppose that the Angles learnt the name of the Cruithnigh from the Romans, for the Britons called it Ffichti. One suggestion as to how the corruption arose is that *Pent* is for *Pehtan*, an adjectival form. Another, that *Pent* is an attempt either of the Angles to translate the Latin *Picti*, or of more modern people to assimilate the form of the name with the word which now represents its meaning. Neither is very plausible. *Paint* is not Anglic, but derived through the French. It is found, however, in very early use.

⁴⁰ *Foraganes, foregane, foreagainst*=opposite to, compound of *fore* and *aganes*, the older form of modern against. *Aganes* is a genitive form=A.S. *ongegn* or *ongean*=on *gang*=on the way. Comp. G. *entgegen, vorentgegen*.

P. 88, line 12, for *wyuet* read *toynet*.

⁴¹ *Brauitie*=grandeur, showiness. Latin here has "species eleganteris vitæ," elegant externals of life. *Brauitie* is given by Jamieson. *Braverie* has the same meaning. The allied adjective *braw* is still very commonly used. Gael. *breagh*, handsome, beautiful, fine. *Brag* is allied to this last. The word is variously deduced from Teutonic, Celtic, and French—e.g., Swed. *braf, bra*; Bret. *brav, brao*; Fr. *brave*.

⁴² *Sturt*=vexation, trouble, disturbance, sorrow. It is used as a verb, to vex or trouble. It seems to be a parallel word with E. *startle*, which conveys the notion of being *upset* or *disturbed*. *Sturt* is even used in Scottish, with the neuter sense of startle. Its derivation is not clear. Compare G. *sturzen*, to upset, to turn upside down. There seems to be a connection with E. *start*, G. *sturz*, both meaning *tail*.

⁴³ *Inlaikit (inlake, inlack)*=to want, and to be wanting. These forms, together with *lake*, *laik*, and *lack*, are used promiscuously in transitive and neuter sense.

⁴⁴ *Scharpe* and *skairs*=severe and scant. Other forms of *skairs* are *skairth* and *scairch*, but they seem to have no etymological foundation. *Scarce* is from L. *exemptus, scarpsus, scarsus*, whence Fr. *eschars* and *escars*; and means *picked out*, rare, not plentiful. There is some confusion anent the Scottish word, because of the conformity of its spelling with two other words—one, the E. *scare*, to frighten; the other, E. *share, sheer*, and *scar*, a cut or division, &c.

⁴⁵ The *claidheamh-mor*, or great sword, E. *claymore*, which comes near enough to the Gaelic pronunciation.

⁴⁶ *Harnest* = armoured. The old meaning of *harness* is body-armour for soldiers, and that, too, generally, of *iron*, as in the present instance, where it refers to mail-coats. The word comes to us from the French, but it is originally the Celtic (or Teutonic also) *haiarn, iarunn* = iron. Bret. has *harnes* = iron and armour. *Jack* is the original form of which *jacket* is a diminutive. The word is found in Italian and Spanish as well as in the Teutonic dialects; said

to be of French origin, and from the name *Jacques*, but this is doubtful.

⁴⁷ *Habbirgeoun*, for *habergeon*. Fr. diminutive of *hauberk*; originally from O.G. *halsberg*, a protection for the neck or throat.

⁴⁸ *Hope*, *hop*=a slope or hollow between ridges. The word also means a *haven*. It is very common as a place-name in the Welsh border counties. Jamieson affirms it to be Celtic. Its primary meaning seems to be that of protection or cover, but there is also a suspicion of the idea of *hollowness* conveyed by *cup* and *coop*. *Hope* means a small bay in Orkney; and Icelandic still has *hop* with the same meaning.

⁴⁹ *Brasche* (*brash*, *bresche*, also *breese*, *bressil*, *breshil*)=to assault, attack, come on with a rush, connected with *bruise* and *burst* and *break*. Root, *brast*, allied with *brak*. Comp. *water-brash*, a kind of sickness, a rush of water to the mouth.

⁵⁰ *Werstling* (*warstle*, *wersil*, *wersell*, *warsell*)=to wrestle. The frequentative of *wrest*. A.S. *wræstan*, to twist, string tight, connected with *writhe*, or *wreathe*. A.S. *wrædan*, also=to twist. Comp. L. *vertere*.

⁵¹ *Fade*, *feid*=revenge, hatred, feud. A.S. *fæsth*, from *fah*, hostile, whence *feo*. The modern spelling seems to have arisen from a confusion of the word with *feud*=fief or *feu*. Comp. G. *fehde*.

⁵² *Forȝhet* (*foryȝet*, *foryȝet*)=forgotten. From A.S. *forgitan*, the *g* softened. Chaucer uses *forȝeten*, compounded of *for*, intensive (with sense of *far*), and *ȝet*. L. *hendere*, in *prehendere*; Gr. *χωδεῖν*, to seize. Comp. G. *vergessen*.

⁵³ *Losin*, past part. of *los*, to loosen, set free; A.S. *losian*; E. to *lose*; is expressed in Scottish by *to leis*, which represents A.S. *leasan*. Both are from same root. Comp. G. *lieren* (in *verlieren*); L. *luere*; Gr. *λέων*.

⁵⁴ *Brachæ*. The L. *braccæ* is generally understood to be equivalent to our *breeks*. There are, however, traces of the Latin word being used in a wider sense to mean a loose flowing garment. Bishop Leslie here applies it to the plaid or tartan, and, as it would seem, on the ground of the variegated colours expressed by the Gael. *breac*. This is felt even in the use of the Latin word. We find *braccæ* described as *pictæ* and *virgatae*, coloured and striped. Perhaps the original *braccæ*, which so took the attention of the Romans when they met the Gauls, were striped and party-coloured, and so give rise to the name. In Irish *breacan* still means a plaid. It would seem, then, that the Latin word is borrowed from Celtic. The modern word *breeks* or *breeches* is a double plural, and stands for *brec*, plural of A.S. *broc*. This last reminds us of Celtic *brog*, a shoe. *Broc* can hardly be derived from either *breac* or *brög*, for we find corresponding forms in all the Teutonic dialects. Neither can *broc* mean speckled, for we have *freckle*, *freckle*, to represent *breac*. The Teutonic words,

together with *brog*, may thus be cognate terms expressing the sense of *cover* or *protect*, perhaps allied to A.S. *beorgan*. Comp. *bark*, the covering of a tree. *Brock* in Mod.E. and Sc. means a badger, but this is clearly the Gael. *broc*. The animal was so named from its colour—pie or speckle.

⁶⁴ *Syd evin to the hanckleth*=hanging down even to the ankle. *Ancleth* and *hanckleth* are given by Jamieson, but I cannot account for the ending. A.S. has *ancleo* as well as *ancle*. *Ancle* is a diminutive from *ank*, meaning a *bend* or a corner. Gr. *ἄγκες*, *ἄγκελη*; L. *angulus*. Probably *eth* is a second diminutive, added when the meaning of the first was lost.

⁶⁵ *Groffe*=rough, coarse, in its literal sense. In English the sense has become restricted. It is apparently a contraction of the past participle of *reofan*, to break, or of some corresponding word, and would equal *ge-rof*, broken. Comp. Mod.G. *grob*; O.G. *gerob*. The Scottish word may be a cognate formation.

⁶⁶ *Meklewame*=the large wame or stomach, the larger of the two stomachs in ruminating animals. Still used. *Wame*=A.S. *wamb*, E. *womb*, G. *wampe*, *wamme*. *Painch* (E. *paunch*) is through Fr. from L. *pantex*, *panticem*, probably from *pando*, to expand, bend, bow out: compare E. *bowels*. What is described here is not exactly a haggis, but perhaps the original invention of which it is the savoury perfection. Latin text reads *omasum*, which in the Greek glossary of Philoxenes is stated to be a Gaulish word for *bullock's-tripe*.

⁶⁷ *Dicht, dycht*=to dress, prepare, &c. This word is often confused with *deck*, to adorn, and even with *disen*, partly on account of spelling, for *dight* is sometimes spelt *diȝt*; but more likely on account of the similarity in meaning. The third is the only form that can lay claim to being English. *Dies* or *disse* means a bundle, a bunch—especially the bunch of flax affixed to a staff for spinning—whence *dis-staff*. *Deck* is a borrowed Teutonic word, though we have its equivalent in *thatch*; it meant to cover, and then to adorn. *Dicht*, however, is of Latin origin, although found in A.S. *dihtan* and in G. *dichten*. It represents L. *dictare*, to dictate, to set in order, to make ready. *Bedight* is still used in English.

⁶⁸ *Sting*=a pole, a stake. This word is allied to E. *sting*, not in sound only; both come from a root meaning to prick, to pierce, to *stick*, whence *stock* and *stake*, of which *stang* is a nasalised form. Comp. G. *stange*, A.S. *steng*.

⁶⁹ *Signe*. Seemingly only a mistaken spelling for *singe*. The word is commonly spelt *sing* in Sc., from A.S. *sengan*. It is curious that this word is merely a causal form of *singan*. To *singe*, therefore, is to make to sing, in allusion to the singing noise made by burning articles. This wasteful mode of preparing grain among the Highlands has been remarked by writers so late as 1750. Burt's 'Letters from the North of Scotland' (vol. ii. p. 269) describes the very pro-

cess here recounted, as seen with his own eyes in the Western Highlands. The word *heipes*, a few lines above, should be translated *sheaves*. The corn was always so stored.

⁶¹ *Girdle*. The usual northern form for *griddle*, a flat metal plate for baking oat-cake. The word is Celtic. Gael. *greadal* (not now used, unless in Ireland); W. *gredyll*. The root is the still used, *gread* and *greidh*, to burn or roast, &c. We have Mr Skeat's authority for the opinion that E. *gridiron* is merely a phonetic corruption of this word. The *l* was first changed into *r*—a very common thing—and then by the usual way of forcing a meaningless form to suit a fancied etymology, *gredire* (the Mid.E. form) became *gridiron*. One difficulty against this is that a gridiron is not at all like a griddle, which might be more aptly described as a frying-pan. Another significant fact is that the word *gridiron*, in practice, seems to be significant of the crossbars of which it is made. In the south-west of England I have heard the bars spoken of as the *grids*. The modern Gaelic word for *gridiron* is *cliabh* (or *cliath*) *iaruinn*, which means exactly iron basket or iron-barred. *Cliath* is our E. *hurd* (in hurdle); L. *crates*, and alone, means precisely a hurdle, or anything so shaped. There is something to be said for the opinion that *gridiron* = *grate-iron*. Fr. *gril*, a gridiron, is for *craticula*, a little *crate*, hence *grille* = a grating.

⁶² Burt, quoted above, says: "The oats they reserve in sheaves for food, and, as they have occasion, set fire to some, not only to dry the oats, which for the most part are wet, but to burn off the husk. Then by winnowing they separate, as well as they can, the sooty part from the grain; but as this cannot be done effectually, the bannock or cake they make of it is very black. Thus they deprive themselves of the use of straw," &c. The reference in the text is to Genesis xviii. 6, where "cakes upon the hearth" is a translation of "sub-cinericii."

⁶³ *Asse* (as, *asse*, *ass*, *alse*); plural, *assis*, *ass*, *aiss* = ashes. Mid.E. *asse*, axe, *asche*; plural, in the south in *en*, in the north in *es*. A.S. *æsce*, axe; plural, *æscan*, *axan*. G. *asche*, Swab. *asca*.

⁶⁴ *Danger, dawnger*. "The great exertion made by a pursuer exposing another to imminent danger" (Jamieson). The Latin text here has *odia*, hatred. Danger is from O.Fr. *dangier*, which is for *dongier*, *donjier*, *domnjier*, *domnier*, from L. *dominiarium* = our Mod.E. dominion. To be *in one's danger* was to be in his power, and so exposed to danger in our modern sense of the word. From the power to harm it came to mean the wish to harm, as in the text, and lastly the likelihood of harm. *Dungeon* is from the same Latin word, *dominium*.

⁶⁵ *Hichtiness*. It is possible that this word is used confusedly for *haughtiness*. Height in its literal sense of tallness is expressed in Scotch by *hicht*. *Hichtie* is found meaning *lofty*, and also apparently *haughty*. *Hichtiness* would therefore be equal to haughtiness, though

a different word. It expresses, however, a feeling of the real meaning of *haughtiness*. The latter is a misspelling for *hautein-ness* or *hautenesse*, from O.Fr. *haultain*, L. *altus*, high. *Haughtiness* is indeed *heightness*. Dalrymple uses *hines* for *height*. See p. 382, note ⁵⁴.

⁵⁵ *Loifing* (*loif, loff*)=praise. A.S. *lof*. Comp. G. *lob*; L. *laus* (lauds); Slavonic, *slav*. *Tramped out* means "trodden out"—i.e., destroyed; but it is here an incorrect translation of *obterenda*.

⁵⁶ *Quhilkes*=those which are on the borders, &c.

⁵⁷ *Chaipe*=to escape. Fr. *échapper, eschapper*, whence the English word is also derived. It is still used in Scotland. "They rejoice that they always escape unpunished." The translator has misunderstood the word *qua*.

⁵⁸ *Beir* here means beer. Latin has *cerevisium*, otherwise one could not distinguish between the word for the drink and for the grain from which it is made. Barley and *beir*, or *bere*, are (nowadays at least) two different things. The first is the common barley known as *Hordeum vulgare*; the second, called also *bigg*, is the *Hordeum hexastichum* of botanists—i.e., six-rowed. *Bigg* is sometimes called *Chester-bere* in Scotland, to distinguish it from what is called *barley-bere*—i.e., English barley. A.S. *bere*, barley, and *beor*, beer. *Beorlic* is also found, where *lic* is for *leac, leac*, a plant (comp. *garlic*). *Bere* is probably connected with the root of *bear*, to produce, bear fruit. Comp. *beor* with *brew*. The first is cognate with L. *fru*, in *frumentum*=corn; the second with *fer* in *fermentum*, from *ferveo*, to boil; and the ultimate roots of both will be the same—meaning to swell up, become turgid, &c.

⁵⁹ *Pailles* (*pele, peyll, peill, peel*)="a fortification, properly of earth" (Jamieson, who quotes Leslie). The word seems identical with *Peel*, a town in the Isle of Man, and a local name elsewhere—e.g., *Peel Fell* on the Cheviots. In meaning it is connected with *pal, pale*, a stake, a defence, as in *palisade*, A.S. *pal*. Maybe it has some connection with Gael. *baile*, a town; but it is very obscure. Comp. the parallel L. *pagus*, a village; *pangere*, to fasten; and *palus* (for *paglus*), a stake.

⁶⁰ *Skry, screigh*=cry—here corresponding to "hue and cry." E. *shriek* and *screech*. "Lest the report get abroad." The spelling of this word seems to show that our E. *cry* is indigenous, but has lost an initial *s*. G. has *schreien*; Dutch, *skreien*, to cry, shout.

⁶¹ *Bogyles*—here used as a translation of *illudunt*. It is highly suggestive of the effect produced upon a man who has been led into *bogs* by the Will-o'-the wisp, and I suspect the word is not deduced from the term for a ghost, but, if anything, *vice versa*. A *bogie* or *bogil* may be the *bog* spirit. To *boggle* is here a transitive verb, meaning to "lead one into a mess." Skeat says: "There is a presumption that *boggle* is connected with Prov.E. *boggle*, a ghost; Sc.

bogle,—from the notion of scaring and terrifying, and then, passively, of being scared."

⁷³ *Mon* (*mun*, *mune*, *maun*)=E. must. The last form does not appear in Scottish, yet its derivative *mister*=necessity, is in use. Jamieson quotes Icel. *mun*. It reminds us of L. *moneo*, to advise, to urge, to admonish.

Page 100, l. 15. *Can*. *To* has been scratched out in the text, and *can* inserted above. It may be a mistake for *able to*, which the sense requires. Latin reads *capere posse*; but it is more probably the use of the infinitive after the word *see*. Comp. English similar use, I saw him go. *To can* is still Scottish=to know how.

⁷⁴ *Leivesum*=permissible. Sc. *liefsum* and *lessum*; A.S. *lēaf*, permission; E. leave. Comp. G. *laub*, *urlaub*, *verlaub*, whence E. *furlough* is borrowed.

⁷⁵ *Beides*=beads. It is a curious fact that beads are so called from the strings of small perforated balls of wood, stone, &c., used for counting prayers. A.S. *bed*, a prayer; hence E. *bid*, which meant to ask, entreat. Comp. G. *beten*; L. *fateor* (?). *Bede-roll* is still the list of persons to be *prayed for*; *beadsman* are those who *pray* for benefactors. Persons used to subscribe themselves at the end of letters—"your poor bedesman"—i.e., one who prays for you.

The custom of counting prayers on little stones is at least as old as the fourth century; the hermits of the desert used them. Lady Godiva of Coventry bequeathed her *beads*, made of gems, to the statue of our Lady in that town. The word *rosary* is of more modern origin. It became about the fifteenth century the name of a pious devotion, for which the beads were used. Hence they were called *rosary beads*, and now simply *rosaries*. The Latin text here has "calculos rosaria quæ vocamus"—the little pebbles (for counting) which we call *rosaries*.

⁷⁶ *Orisone*, a Scottish word, from Fr. *oraison*, used not in the sense of *prayer*, but in that of L. *oratio*, a speaking. Latin here has *oratio*.

⁷⁷ *Politick* is used consistently by the translator to mean *polished* or refined. *Politic* is from a quite different word—*politicus*=Gr. *πολιτικός*, belonging to the state, *πόλις*. *Politus* is from *polio*, to smooth.

⁷⁸ *Scandirous*, from *sclander*, *sklander*, a double of *scandal*=E. *slander*. The Fr. *scandale* was changed, through *scandle*, *scandre*, to *scandre*, from L. *scandalum*, a stumbling-block, a trap, &c.

⁷⁹ *Deid* or *slawe*=inactive and torpid. This use of the word *deid* agrees with that of A.S. *dēad*, which seems more of an adjective than a part of a verb. In English we still distinguish between *dead* and *died*. *Slawe* is also used in its original meaning, inactive, motionless, dull. Connected with v. *slug* and *slack*.

⁸⁰ *Unbrachte*, another form for *unbrash*=unattacked. See note ⁴⁹, p. 377.

⁸¹ *Anseinzie* (*enseinyie, ensenye, ansenye*)=badge, standard, company of soldiers, the *signal* word, from O.Fr. *ensigne*, L. *insignia*, E. *en-sign*. The word here means standards. Latin text has *vexilla*. The form explains the Mod.E. *auncient* = both standard and standard-bearer, used frequently by Shakespeare.

⁸² *That*=that which=Mod.E. *what*. Imitated from Latin text, which has, "neque omnino falsum est quod plærique scriptores nostris exprobrant."

⁸³ *Wichtnes* (*wight, wycht, wick*=lively, strong, powerful); hence *wichtnes*=strength. A.S. *wic*, L. *vigere*, and perhaps *virus*, E. *quick*, full of life and strength and motion. *Quake* is a causative from same root.

⁸⁴ *Hines*=highness. See note ⁸⁶, p. 379.

⁸⁵ *Steddings* = steading, stead, the ground on which a house stands, a farm-house and offices, the farm itself. The last is the meaning here intended. Latin has *prædia*. A.S. *sted*, a place, common in names of places, Brixted, Hampstead, Worsted, &c. Cognate with G. *stadt*, *statt*, a town, a place; L. *statio*, E. *staithe*, stand.

⁸⁶ *Walkeng*=to watch. In sense of L. *vigilare*, to deny one's self sleep. Latin text here has *vigiliis*. A good Scottish word, equivalent of A.S. *wacol*, to watch, from *wacan*, to wake, to rise to life, &c. Corresponds to L. *vigilare*, which is related to *vigere* and *vegetare*, just as *walk* is related to *wake*, and *wacol* to *wacan*. See note ⁸³ on *wichtnes*. E. *walk* is from a root which appears in L. *volvere*, to roll. A.S. *wealcan*; in G. *walken* still means to full cloth; and the English surname *Walker* means a fuller.

⁸⁷ *Patent*, in its literal sense of "lying open." Latin here has the same word, *patuerint*.

⁸⁸ *Buithes*. A most conscientious translation of *humanitatis officina*. The latter word means literally a "shop," and Scottish *bothie*, *booth*, *buith*, means much the same. It often means a cottage. It is a wide-spread word, found in all Celtic and Teutonic dialects, and comes from the root meaning *to be*, whence *to dwell*. Even Heb. *beth*, a house, seems to be cognate.

⁸⁹ *Sodore*=Sodor and Man—i.e., the bishopric of the Southern Isles and of Man. The Southern Isles were so named by the Norsemen, in distinction from the Orkneys and Shetlands, which were the Northern Isles. The *Sodor*, therefore, are the inner and outer Hebrides. They are now ruled over by the Bishop of Argyle and *the Isles*. Lismore is the see of Argyle.

⁹⁰ *Feckful* (*feekfou, feckful*)=wealthy, powerful; *feck*, adj., also means vigorous, stout; but as a substantive it corresponds to A.S. *fec*, a space, a quantity, a portion. *Feckless*=weak, worthless. In the phase of *feck*, *feck* means "value"; otherwise, the substantive from which *feckful* is formed is not found. Perhaps it is no more

than E. *effect* (from French) in the sense of *show, fine appearance*. The form *fectful* points to this.

The whole passage has been misunderstood by the translator, and there is no equivalent for the present phrase in the Latin text.

²¹ *Feltired, felter*=to entangle. Latin text has *implicatus*. The word must be a confusion of *fetter*, a shackle. A.S. *fetor, feter*, from *fot*, a foot.

²² *Knottis*. Latin text has simply *hortos*. *Knottis* and *gairdins* are synonyms: a *knott* is an enclosed place. Jamieson does not recognise the word.

There were two houses of religious women near Edinburgh, of which one was of the order of St Dominic, and dedicated to St Catherine of Sienna. This was at the fountain of St Catherine mentioned in the text. In the year 1496 a house of "gray sisters"—i.e., poor Clares—was built "at the end of the south lake, three hundred paces from Edinburgh, in the place called Chines (or Scheenes), by Margaret Knox, widow of Cuthbert Purveis, the owner of that land."—(Charter of foundation.) This was dedicated to St Clare, and at the time of the outbreak of Knox's riots was in great repute for the number and sanctity of its inmates. It is not clear to which of these two Leslie refers; he apparently confounds one with the other.

²³ *Boniface*. The Boniface who came to Scotland in 710 is not considered to be St Boniface, apostle of Germany. The latter was a Dorsetshire man and of Saxon descent; he died 755. The Latin text reads, "Bonifacius, Germanorum Apostolus, Kilianus," &c. The comma after Bonifacius leads us to suppose that "Germanorum apostolus" does not belong to it; but then the comma after equally disconnects it with "Kilianus." The latter, however, was an apostle of Germany along with the three that follow. Later on in the history Bishop Leslie still seems to claim the apostle of Germany as a Scotsman, and as the Saxon St Boniface was actually living at the date when the founder of Rosmarkie came to Scotland, it is just possible that it was really he that effected the conversion of Nectan, King of the Picts. But allowing even this fact does not prove him to have been a Scotsman.

Mr Skene, however, has shown that "Boniface" was the surname of an Irish Bishop Cuiritan, who, with the aid of a body of secular clergy, effected the reformation of the Pictish Church, and brought it into conformity with the usages and form of government of the Church of Rome.—('Celtic Scotland,' ii. 231.)

²⁴ *Gar, ger*. A common Scottish word, meaning to make or cause, in the sense of to force, or compel. It is cognate with E. *yare*, meaning ready, prepared, and connected with *gear, garb*. The Scottish use of the word points to a more direct derivation, perhaps through Icel. *gera*, from the assigned Aryan root of the above words—viz.,

ghar, to seize, which appears in Gr. *χειρ*, hand—*i.e.*, the seizer—L. *hærcō*, to cling to. Comp. A.S. *gearo*; Mod.G. *gar*.

⁹⁵ *Ydenly* (*iþandly*, *yþanly*, *iþinglie*)=busily, diligently; from adjective—*iþand*, *yþen*, *yþand*, *eident*, also = steady, constant. This word is a participial form of a verb, probably of Scandinavian origin, meaning to be restless, move about, repeat, &c. Icel. *ida*, Icel. *idun*, busy; *idja*, to be busy; and Gr. *ἴθω*, to be accustomed, are cognate. The frequentative ending form of Latin verbs, *ito*, may be connected, though this is doubtful. A.S. has a prefix *ed* which gives the force of a frequentative; it appears in the English word *eddy*. It is not quite clear whether all the forms of the word in question belong to the same root. *Iþand* may be only “in the hand,” that is “in hand,” “kept going.” Compare *frahand*=out of hand, at once. Dalrymple also uses *ydan*.

⁹⁶ *Gentilmen*. Cicero says: “Those are *gentiles* who have a common name, who are born of free parents, whose ancestors were never slaves, or suffered capital punishment” (‘Topics,’ vi. 29). Etymologically the Latin word means belonging to the same *gens* or tribe—in other words, *gentilis* was a *clansman*. The word came to mean one who could trace his descent to one or other of recognised tribes or families of the Roman people. The modern word has brought with it a parallel meaning. From signifying one born of a noble race, it has come to denote the qualities which such birth was expected to produce. There is no foundation for the etymology given in the text. The nearest approach is the use of *gentilis* to mean *foreign*—*i.e.*, belonging to a foreign *gens* or nation. But this is not the origin of the modern meaning conveyed by the word *gentlemen*.

⁹⁷ *Fine*=end. A Scottish word, and quoted by Jamieson. Here it equals *extremity*, *pass*. Latin has *eo adductum*. The meaning is: As a matter of fact the king has never been forced to raise foreign mercenaries at his own cost, because the people look upon invasion as a danger to themselves, and so fly to their own defence.

⁹⁸ *Slokning, slokin*=to slake, slack, or slacken—*i.e.*, to quench, to pour water, to loosen, reduce to fluid, &c. All meanings are derived from the original, A.S. *sleac*, loose, slack, slow; *lax* and *loose* are from the cognate Latin form of the same root, without the initial *s*.

⁹⁹ *Plie* (*pley, pleye*)=to plead, to debate at law. Jamieson quotes A.S. *pleoh*, danger, as the root of this word. But it seems to be a corruption, through the French, of low-L. *placitare*, the equivalent and parent of Mod.E. *plead*. *Placitum* meant that which was *pleasing* to the Court, hence an opinion, a decision of Court, thence the Court itself, and the law proceedings, the litigation; and so *placitare* came to mean to litigate. The ‘Actes of Parliament of Scotland’ (1597), “De Verborum Significatione,” says, “*Placitum*, from the French word *plaider*, pley, contention, strife, debate. *Placitare* significat litigare et causas agere.” Etymologically, *placitum* be-

came *plaitum* by the usual omission of the *c* sound in French, hence O.Fr. *plait* and *ple*, and Sc. *pley*. E. *ply* is not connected with this word: it is related to F. *plier*, L. *plicare*, to plait, fold, &c.

¹⁰⁰ *A syse, sise, syss*=assize; also a duty or tax. 'The Actes of Parliament' says, "Assisa, a French word, quihilk properlie signifies sitting or session, and hes divers vther significations in the lawes of this realme, for assisu is taken for ane constitution, ordinance, or law. . . . Assisa terra is taken for the law of the land. Item, assisa is called ane measure or certaine quantity . . . quhilke perteines to the King as ane pairt of his custumes. . . . In this realme is called ane assise, ane certaine number of men lauchfullie summond, sworne, and admitted to judg and decerne in sindrie civil causes . . . and criminal causes. For be the law of this realm al crimes suld be decided and tryed be an assise (Stat. Alex. c. 3). Quhairof their is twa kindes. Ane orderlie in vse, quhilke may be called ane litil assise, of the nummer of 13 or 15 persons. The vther called ane greate assise, quhilke consists of 25 persons. All the assisors suld sweare an solemne aith to judge and decerne richtly. For the quhilke cause thay ar called Juratores, and in sum buiks assisa is called jurata patriæ, and in English lawes an Jurie" ('Actes of Parliament,' "De Verborum Significatione"). The different meanings here alluded to all come from the same word—viz., L. *assidere*, to sit down. Mod.E. *sise*, meaning magnitude, is *assisa*, an allowance or ration, whence quantity of any sort; in Mid.E. *assise* meant provisions. A *sisar* at Cambridge was one entitled to certain rations or *sizes*, or whose duty was to give out the *sizings*, as they are still called in that university. Even *size*, glue, is from the same root, but through Italian. It meant that which painters used to make their colours *sit*. The word in the text is the translator's own note, and has no corresponding word in the Latin text.

¹⁰¹ *Raikers*=vagabonds. Latin has *grassatores*, rioters, revellers, footpads, &c. To *raik*, *rake*, *rayk* are Scottish words, meaning to range or wander, and a *raik* means an idler or vagabond; but, says Jamieson, without the meaning of E. *rake*. The latter word is a shortened form of *rakel*, from Swed. *rakel*, a vagabond, from *rakkla*, a frequentative form of *raka*, and is therefore cognate with the Scottish form. In provincial E. *rake* still means to wander. Comp. A.S. *racan*, L. *lego*, to gather.

¹⁰² *Herrieris*, Latin, *depopulatores*, devastators. *Herry*, *hery*, *hirrie*, *harrie*=to pillage, lay waste, to harry. A.S. *hergian*, to lay waste with an army, to ravage; from *herg*, *here*, an army, a devastating host. Mod.G. *heer*; L. *caro*, to card wool; and Gr. *κελπω*, to clip, to ravage, waste, are cognate words.

¹⁰³ *Scurrus*, here used as a translation of L. *scurrus*, which means a jester, a clown, &c. The Sc. *scurr*, however, bears a meaning similar to E. *scurrilous*.

¹⁰⁴ *That seikis the theiues. Toscheoderache*, the deputy of a *Mair of Fee* (Jamieson). "Ane office or jurisdictione not unlike to ane baillerie, speciallie in the Iles and Hielandes. Some alleagis to be ane office perteyning to execution of sumonds . . . sik as ane quha sumondis, attachis, or arrestis ane vther to compeir before ony judge. Vtheris vnderstandis the same to be ane Crowner. Last, summe vnderstandis it to be ane searchour and taker of theiues and limmers: for King Evenus did statute that in sindrie schireffedomes there suld be sindrie searchoures of theiues, rievers, and of them that lyis in waite in hie-streetes and commounue passages. Hector Boetius, lib. 2. *Aberrans pecus aut Domino furum indagatori (Tochederauch vulgus appellat) aut sacerdoti redditio: quod si triduum apud te retinueris, furti reus esto.* In the civil law they are called *Latrunculatores*" ("De Verborum Significatione"). The quotation from Boece is word for word the Latin text of Leslie, who has taken from the same source the whole of this list of laws. Mr Skene remarks upon the above extract from Sir John Skene: "It is obvious from his references that he confounds the two offices together. The *Toschachdoracht* was the office like a bailiary, and this office was mainly confined to the Highlands and Isles. The *Toschachdor* was considered the equivalent of the Coroner, and this office was mainly confined to the Highlands and Isles. The *Toschachdera* he rightly explains, in his notes to the old laws, as a name given by the original Scots and Irish to the serjeant or servitor of court who put the letters of citation in force, and that this office was commonly called *Mair of Fee*" ('Celtic Scotland,' iii. 279).

Toschach, or *Toiseach*, means prince, head, chief. *Dor* or *dior*, means belonging to the law. The *Tochachdor* is, therefore, the chief man of the law; perhaps the "Legisperitus" or "man of law" alluded to in the first of this list of laws of King Kenneth as "institute frome the beginning" (*vide sup.*) *Toschachdera* is explained in the 'Dictionary of the Highland Society' as a compound of *Toiseach* and *dreuchd*=office, dignity. The older form of the word seems to be *Toiseadhrach* or something equivalent, meaning highest dignity. *Toiseach* is an historical equivalent of *Thane*.

¹⁰⁵ *Tynte*, past tense of *tyn*, *tine*, to lose; also to kill or otherwise destroy; and even used in the passive or neuter sense, to waste away, be destroyed; also to vex, grieve. The latter would seem an earlier meaning, if the word is to be referred to A.S. *teohna*, to accuse, and hence to injure or annoy; cognate with Icel. *tyna*, to lose. Compare G. *zeihen*, to accuse; E. *teen*, vexation. The original root of all these forms is *dik*, as in L. *dico*, to point out, tell, whence accuse, mark out for punishment, &c. (Skeat.) Another root assignable to the word in question is that of the word *tine*, meaning a tooth or prong—*e.g.*, of a fork or rake. It is equivalent to L. *dens*, G. *zahn*, E. *tooth*. According to this view, *to tyne* would mean to rake or harrow, hence to separate, dissipate, scatter, and so to waste and

lose. Dalrymple uses *teine* for *tyne*=E. *tithe*. In the text that stands for *that which*.

¹⁰⁶ *Hommil, homyll, hummil, hummel, hummilt*=without horns. In the text it would rather mean deprived of a horn, or with broken horns. Latin has *incornuta*. The general meaning of *hummil* is mutilated, and Jamieson derives it from Icel. *hamla*, to mutilate; hence we have *hummel*-corn, grain without a beard; to *hummel* bear, to separate the grain from the beards. *Humlie* is a name given to a hornless cow. *Moyle* has a similar meaning, which is traced to the Gael. *maol*, bald. *Hummil* may be from the same.

¹⁰⁷ *Effeiring, affeiring, affer*=becoming, fitting, belonging to, proper, expedient, suitable. Fr. *afferir*, to appertain, from L. *affero*. Perhaps there is connection between this and the English word *affeered*, meaning assessed, settled; but the latter is traced to Fr. *afeurer*, to settle a price, to determine market standard, from Low-L. *forare*.

¹⁰⁸ *Flyteng, flyte, fite*=to scold, dispute, complain, &c. A.S. *fitan*, to strive, contend, quarrel.

BOOK II.

¹¹⁰ *A bent and straught out wande.* *Bent* is here the noun, meaning a *rush* or *stalk* of coarse grass. The translator has a way of amplifying his expressions,—as here, where he gives a double translation of the Latin *virga*. So that *bent*, and a *straught wande*, are meant to be equivalents. *Bent* is of uncertain derivation, and has nothing to do with the word *bend*. It already existed in A.S. under the form *beoult*, and G. has a cognate form, *binse*, which existed in the O.H.G. as *pinuz*. Another cognate would be L. *fenum*, meaning hay or bents. This word is derived from the obsolete *feo*, Gr. *φέω*, to grow, increase, &c., and is equivalent in meaning with A.S. *beon*, which meant to become or to be produced, as well as to be. *Wand*, on the contrary, is connected with *wind*, and means what can be *wound*—e.g., into a basket. *Straught* is an equivalent of *straight*, and still carries the recollection of the pp. of the verb to stretch.

¹¹¹ *Trenche.* This is a mistaken translation of *valli*, which Dalrymple has confused with *vallis*. *Vallum* means a palisading, and hence a wall of stone, &c. *Vallis* is a valley or ditch, and a *trench* is a hollow cut out in the ground, Fr. *trancher*. The Roman *corona vallaris*, which was given to the soldier who first scaled the enemy's ramparts, was made in the shape of a palisading, but does not resemble the royal crown of Scotland, even as Leslie represents it on the head of Fergus and his successors.

¹¹² *Zeir or air.* *Air* is an equivalent of E. *eyre*, in the legal expression *Justice in eyre*. It is from the O.Fr. *eire*, which is a corruption of L. *iter*, a journey. *Justices in eyre* are justices on a journey, or,

as we now say, *on circuit*. The word is spelt in Sc. *air*, *ayr*, *ayre*. Our translator has introduced the word *ȝeir* as an equivalent, probably with the intention of hinting at its derivation; and he would imply that the Latin text favoured his view by saying that what was now called the justiciary *air* was previously called the *yearly* judgment.

¹¹³ *Beregone*. Mr Skene says ('Celtic Scotland,' i. 72): "The first of our historians to make use of Ptolemy was Hector Boece, but he placed his names too far north. He puts the Brigantes in Galloway, and the Novantes in Kintyre, and hence their towns are placed in Argyll instead of Wigtown. The Ulm edition of 1486, which is very inaccurate, was apparently the edition used by Boece, and in it the name Rerigonum is misprinted Beregonium. Boece applied the name to the vitrified remains, the correct name of which was Dun-mhic-uiscneachan (the fort of the sons of Uiscneach), now corrupted into Dunmacsniochan; and thus arose one of the spurious traditions created by Boece's history." The same author says: "Rerigonum was on the eastern shore of Loch Ryan; the fortified moat of it is still to be seen on the farm of Innermessan, near Stranraer."—*Ibid.* Dunmacsniochan is a vitrified fort on the north side of Loch Etive, or rather of Connel Falls, where Loch Etive joins Loch Linnhe. It is opposite Dunstaffnage, which is about four miles north of Oban. Boece says: "The Castle of Berigonum is in Lochaber, in sight of the Hebrides (*the islands*), and near Dounstafage—that is, the fort of Stephen." The latter etymology is doubtful. Dunstaffnage has been identified with Dunmonaiddh, the capital of Dalriada: but it has been shown by Mr Skene that this was Dunadd, at the northern end of the modern Crinan Canal. It has been conjectured that the name of Loch *Ryan* represents that of *Rerigon*. Camden seems to have substituted Berigonum for what his commentator Lhwyd calls the "vulgar error" of Rerigonum, and identifies it with *Bargeny*, a little farther north on the same coast. His map of Britain, however, gives "Rerigon" and "Rerigonius sinus" for Loch Ryan. The Novantes were the people of Galloway, and Rerigon was their capital. The Brigantes lived south of the Solway.

¹¹⁴ *Carmische*, also spelt by our author *carmush*. This word is not given by Jamieson, but must be for *scarmische*, a derivative of O.Fr. *escarmouche*, and equivalent to E. *skirmish* and *skrimmage*. The ultimate root of these words is O.H.G. *skirmen*, a word connected with the root of *shoe*, meaning to cover, protect, defend. A *scirm* was a shield, as though it were a *sci-arm*, an arm coverer and protector; or a covering weapon. Hence *scermen* was to fight under shield or under cover.

¹¹⁵ *Hulie speid*. To *cum speid* is to have success. To *cum hulie speid* is to have slow success, to make slow progress. The Latin here has *parum proficeret*. The history of the word *hulie* is obscure;

but it seems connected with *halt*, either in its sense of *lame* or of *stopping*.

¹¹⁶ *Arthur's huse* or *howe* was destroyed by King Edward I. Boece says it was built by Vespasian at the mouth of Carron Water, and near the Forth. Leslie's opinion, that it was erected by or for Arthur, seems not unlikely. The name *howe* generally indicates a funeral-tumulus; and it seems pretty certain that the Arthur of history died at the battle of Camlan in the year 537, fighting against Medraud. Medraud was son of a King of Lothian; and Camlan is apparently Camelodunum, the old Pictish capital on the Carron. The frequent recurrence of the name of Arthur in place-names of the south of Scotland is borne out by the fact that the locality of most of his battles is to be found within the limits of the British kingdom of Strathclyde. One of the last, for instance, is at *Mynyd Agned*, the British name of Edinburgh. See Skene, 'Celtic Scotland,' i. 153.

¹¹⁷ *Prunzeandlie*. To *prunye* is cognate with the E. *prune*, meaning to deck and trim, whence to be very fine and particular in one's actions. Hence *prunzeandlie* *pricked* will be equivalent to *finely pricked*; in conscience—*scil*. It is an adverb formed from the participle.

¹¹⁸ *Warking, wark, werk*=to ache. This seems to be a variant of *wrak* or *rack* in the English phrase "racking pains," &c. A.S. has *wearh*, *wearg*, and *wreac*, meaning to cast out; and from this root comes the word *wreck*, meaning that which is cast away; but from the same comes *wretch*, meaning an outcast, and hence one suffering misery, and finally, to suffer or inflict pain.

¹¹⁹ *Epiak*. Epiacum is mentioned by Ptolemy as a capital of the Brigantes. Lhwyd, 'Glossary of British Names,' says the name should be *Pepiac*, and identifies it, on the authority of Camden, with Papcastle in the east of Cumberland. By others considered to be Hexham.

¹²⁰ *Stedis*=traces. This word is the A.S. *stede*, a place; and *stede* is still Scottish with the same meaning. It still survives in E. *instead*, in place of. Sc. *futsede* is a footprint, or the place where a foot has been, a word which E. *footstep* does not exactly represent. Comp. *stedding*, note ⁸⁶, p. 382.

¹²¹ *Cheitt off*=to escheat of. A law term from Fr. *eschoir*; L. *excadere*, to fall to. An *escheit* or *escheat* is the falling in of property to a feudal superior or heir, consequent upon forfeiture by the owner. It is the original of the E. *cheat*, and came to have its modern meaning from the unscrupulous way in which the power of escheating was exercised. O.Fr. *eschet*, rent, inheritance.

¹²² *Trane*=plot, snare, treason. This word is from Fr. *traine*, to draw, whence to allure and entrap, from L. *trahinare*, another form of *trahere*. *Treason*, which, as in the text, is an associated word, and freely interchanged with it, is from F. *trahison*, for L. *traditio*, from *tradere*, to yield up.

BOOK III.

¹²³ *Put by the gate*=put out of the way. *Gate* means the way to get, the means, and is a derivative of A.S. *gitan*, hence it more commonly meant a roadway than the obstruction across it. The old meaning is still largely retained in local names, names of streets, &c. A good instance will be found in the city of York, where, e.g., Micklegate is the name of the street, and Micklegate bar the *gate* at its termination in the city wall. Witness also Canongate and Cowgate in Edinburgh. A similar use prevails in Scandinavian and other Teutonic dialects. Swed. *gata* and G. *gasse* both mean a street or lane.

¹²⁴ *Founde, fonde*=to push on, to go, from A.S. *fundian*, meaning to tend, to push on, whence to strive, &c. It is perhaps a cognate word with L. *penes* and *penetro*.

¹²⁵ *Spraich*. An interesting word, as retaining the *r* lost in the modern *speak* and *speak*. Even A.S. has *specan* as well as *sprecan* and *spræc*. Comp. Icel. *spraka*, G. *sprechen*, &c. The original meaning of all these words was to make a noise.

¹²⁶ *Culdee*. The 'Encyclopædia Britannica' (1877), under the title Culdee, says: "It is of no consequence whether the word Culdee is of Latin or Celtic origin. The name is equally significant and of similar meaning in both languages. It was unknown to Bede and to the biographers of St Columba, but seems to have been established early in the tenth century as the title of an order of ecclesiastics, resembling the canons regular of St Augustine."

Mr Skene confirms this when he writes: "It is not till after the expulsion of the Columban monks from the kingdom of the Picts, in the beginning of the eighth century, that the name of Culdee appears. To Adamnan, to Eddi, and to Bede it was totally unknown. They knew no body of clergy who bore this name; and in the whole range of ecclesiastical history there is nothing more entirely destitute of authority than the application of this name to the Columban monks of the sixth and seventh centuries, or more utterly baseless than the fabric which has been raised upon that assumption" ('Celtic Scotland,' ii. 226). And he adds (*ib.*, 277): "The Culdees originally sprang from an ascetic order who adopted a solitary service of God in an isolated cell as the highest form of religious life, and who were termed *Deicola*; that they then became associated in communities of anchorites or hermits; that they were clerics, and might be called monks, but only in the sense in which anchorites were monks; that they made their appearance in the eastern districts of Scotland at the same time as the secular clergy were introduced, and succeeded the Columban monks who had been driven across the great mountain-range of Drumalban, the western frontier of the Pictish kingdom;

and that they were finally brought under the canonical rule along with the secular clergy, retaining, however, to some extent, the nomenclature of the monastery, until at length the name of *Keledeus*, or Culdee, became almost synonymous with that of secular canon."

Leslie follows Boece, who seems to make *Culdee* synonymous with *Monk*. It may serve to elucidate this matter if we notice that, in the very earliest period of the history of the Church, some of the faithful devoted themselves in a more strict way to the service of God than others. The Acts of the Apostles (iv. 32, &c.) record the fact of the renunciation of private property by many of the early Christians; and Eusebius, in his 'Ecclesiastical History' (book ii. c. 17), quotes the account given by Philo, in the first century, of the *Therapeuta* in Egypt—a Greek name, the exact equivalent of *Deicole*, or servants of God. These were men and women who, like the *ascetae* (ascetics or trainers), professed a higher mode of life, and stricter rules than were binding on all Christians, and were looked upon as in a special way devoted to the service of God.

We read continually in early Church history of the *devoti Deo*, the *consecrated to God*, the *servi Dei*, and it would appear that such persons lived not only in solitude, or in small companies in retired places, but also in cities, and in the midst of private families. When the fierce persecutions drove so many to seek safety beyond the reach of Roman authorities, there arose in Africa and in Syria, under Antony, Pachomius, and others, the system of grouping these into communities under a fixed rule and a fixed superior; and from that date there has existed in the Church the two systems of the religious or more perfect life, which came afterwards to be distinguished under the names of *monks* and *secular canons*, the first term denoting the essential abstraction from the world, the second implying, along with some kind of stricter *rule* (canon) of life, more or less connection with the world and secular persons. The distinction still subsists, and the monks or monastic orders are still distinct from the friars, clerks regular, and other congregations of religious.

In a recent number of the 'Scottish Review,' April 1888, the Rev. C. Grant has shown with much weight that Mr Skene is wrong in considering the Culdees as originally hermits. He further advances the theory that they were religious, who assisted monks and canons in the celebration of divine worship, and devoted themselves to the corporal works of mercy, and the service of the sick and poor.

To return to Leslie. It seems he is incorrect in implying that the name *Culdee* was applied to religious in Great Britain so early as the year 300; still, it is not so certain that the institute, under whatever name, was unknown in the early British Church. On the contrary, the presumption would be that it came along with the original introduction of Christianity. Witness the foundation of Glastonbury.

The monastic institute, as distinct from what may be called that of secular religious, descended from Pachomius and the Eastern Fathers through Cassian to the great St Martin of Tours, whose disciples, St Patrick, St David, and St Ninian, brought it to Ireland and Great Britain. Hence came the monachism of St Columba and the order of Iona.

¹²⁷ *Soueranse*=a safe-conduct, assurance. It is only another form of the latter term, without the initial preposition, from O.Fr. *sur*; *seur* for *secur*; L. *securus*, whence E. *secure*, *security*, &c. The word in the text is indistinctly written, and the *o* may be intended for an *e*, which would approach more nearly to the French form; but the former is the more usual Scottish spelling.

¹²⁸ 'The Chronicles of the Picts and Scots' state that the relics of St Andrew came to Scotland in the year 761. Mr Skene surmises, with strong probability, that these were brought from Hexham by Bishop Acca, who had brought them thither from Rome, and who, when driven from his see in the year 732, was believed to have founded a church among the Picts ('Celtic Scotland,' ii. 273). The only historic St Regulus or Rule was a certain Irish *Riagail* of Muicinnis in Loch Derg, who founded a monastery towards the close of the sixth century at *Muicross*, afterwards St Andrews. It has been suggested that the St Rule mentioned in connection with St Andrew's relics and St Acca may be simply the *Sancta Regula* of the Benedictine, St Wilfrid, or the *Rule* under which the newly introduced Culdees were subjected.

¹²⁹ *Suddartis*. This seems to combine the two forms *soldat* and *soldier*, both of which are found in Old French, and are generally considered to be derived from the Low-L. *soldum*=pay. With regard to the first of these forms, there seems no doubt that this derivation is correct; but there is something to be said about the second. *Soldatus* and *soldarius* have both the appearance of true Latin formations; but before either term had come into existence, we find a Celtic word which so much resembles the latter of the two forms as to lead to the conjecture that it is some way connected with it. Cæsar ('Bel. Gal.', iii. 22) speaks of a chief of Aquitaine who had "six hundred sworn men (*devotos*) whom they call *solduri*"; that is to say, men who share everything with those to whose friendly service they have given themselves; so that if anything happen to the former, they must undergo the same misfortune, or put themselves to death; and it has never been known that such a one refused to die when he to whom he had devoted himself chanced to be slain." Athenæus the grammarian (vi. 15), writing some two centuries after Cæsar, alludes to these same men, but says they are called in their own tongue *silodunes*. Nicolas of Damascus, quoting from Athenæus, spells the word *silodouri*, and he explains the word to mean *ενχωλιμαος*—i.e., one under a vow—or, to use the Latin word, *devotus*. It may be

presumed that the words here referred to are Celtic forms, and also, apparently, that *silodunes*, *soldunes*, *siloduri*, and *soliduri*, are variations of the same. The Gaelic dialect has *seil-duine*, meaning a follower, or rather a vassal, and this latter term has some connection with the Gael. *uasal*, *uasal-duine*, which again reminds one of *siloduni*. *Fear* and *duine* are nearly equivalent in meaning, and they may be represented by the two endings of *silodunes* and *siloduri*. If there is any value in this conjecture, a soldier would mean a retainer or a vassal. On the other hand, the Basque dialect of Aquitaine has a word *saldi*, a horse, and *salduna*, a horseman; and curiously enough, we find in Barbour's 'Bruce' *schavaldior*, a word which looks suspiciously like *chevalier*, used to mean soldier.

¹³⁰ *Waltest*=most select. Latin here has "delectus Picticæ juventutis," the pick of the Pictish youth. To *wale*, to choose, and *walet* or *waillit*, chosen. Jamieson has *wale* used substantively to mean "a person or thing that is excellent;" but the use of the past participle as an adjective is rare. *Wale* and *will* represent a pair of variants from a common base, *wal* or *war*, and are represented in A.S. by *wæla* and *will*, in G. by *wählen* and *wöllen*, in L. by *volvo* and *volo*. Gael. *salbh* and *sal*. The radical meaning is to *turn over*, whence to pick and choose, to select, and to will.

BOOK IV.

¹³¹ *Tocumis*=comes to. An interesting survival of a once numerous class of inseparably compounded verbs. Its counterpart *togang* still survives. Though lost in modern German speech, it is still used in the "Our Father"—"zukomme uns dein reich." Note also *tostack*, stuck to, p. 340, l. 15.

¹³² *Girth*=sanctuary. "Girtholl, *girth*, *sanctuarie*, in Latin *asylum*, derived from the Greek *α*, *particula privativa*, *et σιλος*, h.e. *traho*. Because it is not leasum to draw furth onie person furth of the *girth*. Quhairanent sindrie Actes of Parliament are maid, conforme to the law of God. Exod. xxi. 13; Joshua xxii. 1, &c."—(Mr John Skene, "De Verborum Significatione," 1597.) Asylum, however, is derived from *στολον*, refuge, sanctuary; neuter of adj. *στολος*, inviolable; from *α*, priv., and *στολη*, *στολον*, right of seizure (Murray). *Girtholl* is girdle, and *girth* is related to *gird* and *gard*=garden and yard. It is, therefore, a place enclosed, or protected from danger.

¹³³ *Smuiret*=smothered. The latter word was spelt *smorther*, and was a noun formed from the verb *smore* by the addition of the affix *ther*, signifying one who. *Smorther* was that which causes suffocation; hence a thick smoke, foul air, &c. Later, the noun was used with a verbal meaning, and the original verb became lost in modern English. Comp. its variant, *murther*, G. *mord*, L. *mors*, &c.

¹³⁴ *Tinsell*—loss. This word has no relation to *tinsel*, meaning showy ornament, which is derived through French from L. *scintilla*, a spark. *Tinsell* is from *tynan*, to lose. The affix reminds one of the similar part of the word *hansel*, to which it is probably allied. *Sel* represents E. *sell*, which means to give over; hence *tinsel* would mean a giving over in the sense of loss, a losing gift. The word is supposed to be a Norse importation along with *tyne*.

¹³⁵ Hartshorn is a popular name for ammonia, which was extracted from the horn of the stag. The Latin text reads: "Cornua cervi morsibus serpenti mederi soleant"—The horns of the stag are wont to cure the bites of the serpent. *Vses* in the text is a plural, and has a neuter sense.

¹³⁶ Winfrid was the name of the Apostle of Germany, who was afterwards called Boniface. Leslie has already (Part i., p. 110) apparently confused this Boniface with that one whose relics lie at Rosmarkie, and whom he mentions along with St Colman (as in the present instance) and Finnian. Finnian, or Findan, was a famous recluse of the monastery of Rheinau, where Leslie locates Winfrid. But who this St Winfrid is meant to be I cannot further determine.

¹³⁷ *Seiage*. This (unless meant for *siege*) is apparently a formative from the verb to *seyg*, otherwise *seg*, meaning to sink or fall down. The Latin text here has *excidium*, downfall. *Seg* is an equivalent of E. *sink*, and is remarkable as preserving the unnasalised form of the original root, *sag* or *sak*, which appears augmented by an *n* in all other Teutonic dialects, with exception of the Icelandic, from which the Scottish form may have been derived.

¹³⁸ St Benedict, the great monastic lawgiver of the West, was born in Nursia, of Umbria, in the year 480. As a boy of fourteen years old, he fled from Rome to the solitude of Subiaco, where he lived several years as a hermit, and afterwards founded twelve monasteries. Later on he went to Monte Cassino, near Naples, where he founded the famous still existing abbey, wrote his far-famed 'Rule,' and died in the year 543. In Scotland, the great abbeys of Iona, Dunfermline, Paisley, Coldingham, Jedburgh, Dryburgh, Melrose, all followed the rule of St Benedict, which was also observed at most of the monasteries founded by Scottish missionaries on the Continent, such as Luxeuil, Cologne, Bobbio, St Gall, Wurzburg, Erfurth, Augsburg, Prague, Vienna, and St James of Ratisbon.

¹³⁹ *Snapper*—to stumble, has acquired this meaning from the *snatching* which generally accompanies a sudden trip. Along with the verb *snib*, used above, which is the older form of E. *snub*, it is derived from the widespread Teutonic root *snap*, to snatch or to snip, to break or cut off quickly and sharply.

¹⁴⁰ That St Columbanus was neither a heretic nor schismatic is plain from the letter he wrote towards the close of his life to Pope Boniface IV. He says: "I speak to you not as a stranger, but as a

disciple, as a friend, as a servant. I speak freely to our masters, to the pilots of the vessel of the Church, and I say to them, Watch, and despise not the humble advice of a stranger. We Irish, who inhabit the extremities of the world, are the disciples of St Peter and St Paul, and of the other apostles who have written under the dictation of the Holy Spirit. We receive nothing but the apostolic and evangelic doctrine. There has never been either a heretic, a Jew, or a schismatic among us. . . . We are bound to the chair of St Peter; for however great and glorious Rome may be, it is this chair which makes her great and glorious for us."

¹⁴¹ *Mishantlie*, for *mishanterlie*=unfortunately. *Misadventure* was formerly written *misaventur* and *misauntr*, whence the Sc. *mishanter*.

¹⁴² *Wirriet*, to *wirrie*, is used in the old sense of E. to worry—viz., to seize by the throat, to strangle. A.S. *wyrgan*. It represents a widely spread Teutonic root which may be traced back to the simpler form *war*, meaning to twist, or to turn, and which appears in L. *vertō* as well as in E. *wring*, *wrench*, *wrangle*. The Latin text here has *gulam fregit*, broke or crushed his throat—i.e., strangled.

¹⁴³ *Duigis*, for *tugis* or *teugis*=ropes, halters. *Tug* is a name for the untanned strips of hide sometimes used as halters or traces. It is a derivative of the A.S. verb *teohan*, to draw, whence E. *tug* and *tow*. The meaning in the text is parallel to what is conveyed by the English phrase "torn to *ribbons*." The latter word is derived from the Celtic *ribe*, diminutive *ribean*, which means a rag, a tatter, something torn from a piece. Comp. E. *rip*, Sc. *reive*, L. *rapio*. *Ribbons* still mean driving-reins.

¹⁴⁴ *Boniface*. It is worth noting that Venerable Bede, in company with all early writers, spells St Winfrid's name with a *t*—*Bonifatius*. In this form it is an adjectival, meaning *of good omen* (*Bonum fatum*). The A.S. *Winfrid* has a similar meaning, *Win, fride*—bringing peace or good fortune.

BOOK V.

¹⁴⁵ *Stendirrie*, for *stanerie* or *stannery*=gravelly, full of *staners* or *stanirs*, loose stones, gravel, or boulders. Perhaps *staner* is for *stane-ore*. A.S. *stan-or*, lumps of stone. A.S. *dr* means brass or iron, metal, in short; but *or*, which is apparently another form of the same word, seems rather to connote the *lumpish form* in which *ores* of metal were commonly found.

¹⁴⁶ *But*, for *put*. There are several instances in the text of similar softening of mutes—e.g., (note ¹⁴³) *duigis* for *tuigis*. It seems an additional argument to show that Dalrymple's speech had been affected by his residence in Germany.

¹⁴⁷ That Charlemagne was on friendly terms with the Kingdom of

Northumbria is what might be expected from the affinities of race between the Franks and Anglo-Saxons, and his connection with the Baltic tribes. This is borne out by his friendship with Alcuin and the other Northumbrians whom he invited to his own country. It is also recorded that he interfered in a question of disputed succession to the throne of that same kingdom (see Cressy, Bk. 26). About this time, or a little earlier, Northumbria wielded an imperial power over a great part of what is now called Scotland, and, indeed, the later kingdom of Scotland may be considered as a successor to this Anglo-Saxon kingdom. Understanding Scotland in this sense, it is conceivable that some kind of alliance may have taken place between its rulers and Charlemagne. Anything further must be regarded as legendary, if not purely fictitious. The William here mentioned, judging by his name and connection with Charlemagne, must also have been an Anglo-Saxon, if not a Frank. The lion is a Frankish, or at least a Teutonic, emblem.

¹⁴ John Scotus, surnamed also *Erigena* on account of his Irish extraction—*Terne, gena*. Gale, however, claims him for England, saying that *Erigena* means of *Ergene*, in Herefordshire; and Mackenzie interprets *Erigena* to mean *born at Aire*. The word *Scotus* would denote his extraction. He flourished during the ninth century, and principally at the court of Charles the Bold, where he taught in the royal school. The story in the text is from William of Malmesbury ('Gesta pontificum,' lib. v. 240). He was the author of several philosophical writings, interesting for their date as well as their subjects.

¹⁵ *Mowsum*, full of *mows*—i.e., jests or jokes. *Mow* is for Fr. *moue*, a mouth, or rather a contortion of the mouth made out of contempt or buffoonery, a grimace. A *jest* was originally a *geste*, a tale or story, in part acted, hence the transition of meaning. *Mow* is related to *mock*, a widespread Teutonic word which appears in Low-G. *mukken*, Ital. *mocca* (another form of *bocca*, a mouth). All express the same idea—viz., a moving of the lips by way of mumbling, displeasure, or grimace. Comp. Gael. *mag*, to deride.

¹⁶ The Latin text here adds that Fife was now named after a certain *Fifus*, and Dunbar from another *Barus*. It is hardly needful to remark that this is but part of the fiction by which it was taught that the Pictish nation was a people whose origin and language were radically different from that of the Scots, and that they have now, with their language, completely disappeared. As a matter of fact, the larger portion of local names in the present Scotland are of Pictish origin.

¹⁷ *Wacht*=to quaff. Both words are corruptions of the same Gaelic term, *cuach*, a cup. The English has substituted an *f* for the final guttural (comp. *cough*), while the initial guttural has been softened in the Scottish. The more correct Scottish form is *wauch*.

Wacht was the p. participle, and became a noun, from which it was re-formed as a verb. See Burns and Ramsay.

¹⁶² *Sen synē*=since a long time. This is often written as one word, but more correctly as in the text. *Sen* is a preposition, the equivalent of E. *since*; of which forms each is a contraction of A.S. *sīthēn* or *sīthhēn*. *Syne* is for *synde*, a form still used, and represents A.S. *sīth*, a journey and a space of time, a word cognate with Icel. *sīnþi*, Goth. *sīnþ*, and E. *send* (a causal form). *Eftersyne* occurs in the 'Metrical Chronicle' and elsewhere.

¹⁶³ *Feltir*=to catch, to entangle. The original meaning of the French word is to strain through felt (E. *filter*), hence to catch something and retain it, while letting other things pass. It is an apt rendering of the Latin text, which here has "legis laqueo irretinentur." O.Fr. *filter* is from *filtre* or *feltre*=E. *felt*, a matted cloth. Comp. G. *filz*, Gr. *πίλος*, and L. *pileus*.

¹⁶⁴ *Sueir*=lazy, idle, inactive. This is referred by Jamieson to A.S. *swær*, which means heavy, and then slothful, and is cognate with G. *schwer*. But it seems likely that *sueir* or *swere* is connected with *swag*, to hang loose and heavy, and so would represent Norweg. *svaga*. The meaning of lazy would be deducible from either source, and indeed *swær* may be *swagr* with loss of guttural. *Swag* appears nasalised in E. *swing* and G. *schwanken*.

¹⁶⁵ *Cearse*=to search—a more correct spelling than the English form—from Fr. *chercher*; O.Fr. *cercher*; from L. *circare*, to go round in a circle, whence to explore, &c.

¹⁶⁶ *Fyrslaucht*=lightning. *Flaucht* is equivalent to E. *flash* or *flare*, from a root *flak*. Gr. *πλήσσω, πλήγω*; L. *plago*; and also in E. *flag*, from Mid.E. *flack*, to flutter, quiver, flicker. To flick still means to strike. Another form of this word is *fyrslaucht*, where *slaucht* seems connected with E. *sleek* and *stick*, and expresses the notion of swift smooth gliding.

¹⁶⁷ *Skailet*=dispersed. To *skale* is apparently a direct derivative from the Teutonic root *skala*, to separate, whence come the A.S. *sceale*, E. *scale* and *shell*, meaning that which is separated or peeled off. *Skara*, another form of the same root, appears in A.S. *scearan*, to divide, E. *shear* and *scar*, and also in L. *cerno*, Gr. *κρίνω*, to separate, to discern.

¹⁶⁸ *Blaitnes*=imbecility. *Blait* is allied to E. *bloat*, and both represent Icel. *blantr*, soft, yielding. *Bloater*, e.g., is a soaked fish. Comp. L. *fluidus*.

¹⁶⁹ *Hoow*, for *hoove* or *hove*. The latter is usually a verb, meaning to abide, remain constant, to dwell, whence *hove*, a house, G. *hof*, E. *hovel*, and also E. *hover*, which is a frequentative form. In the text, however, the word is apparently used with an adjectival meaning=constant. Latin here has *tantum*, so great.

¹⁷⁰ *Tochir*=dowry. 'Tocher-good, the dower brought by a wife,'

says Jamieson. Skene ("De Verborum Significatione") says: "Dos hes twa significationes. First, it signifies that quhilk is given to the husband with the wife, be reason, and in contemplation of mariage. In the civil law is called *Dos*, in our municipall law, *maritagium*, tocher-gud. Secondly, *Dos* is taken for that gift and disposition of lands and tenements, quhilk ane man givis to his wife quhen he maries her at the kirk dure, or in the face of the halie kirk. . . . And is given in recompensation of the tocher payed be her, or in her name, to her husband. . . . In France it is called *dotalitium* or *doarium*." The word *tocher* at first sight looks so much like *dower* that one might be tempted to think it the origin of the latter form. It is not so, however. *Dower* is from the Fr. *doarium*, which is L. *dotarium*, from root *da*, to give, as seen in L. *dos*. Still the two words are probably related. *Tocher* comes directly from Gael. *tochradh*, of same meaning, and this may be derived from Gael. *thoir (toir)*, to give, cognate with Gr. *δῶρον* and L. *dare*: and *car* (*caraidh*) or *gradh*, love, friendship—a gift of love, or the pairing gift.

In the text the word *tochir* translates the Latin "Wardas et Releifas" but somewhat incorrectly. "Releif," says Skene ("De Verborum Significatione"), "ane French word from Latin *relevare*, quhilk is to relieve or take up that quhilk is fallen; for it is given be the tenant or vassal, being of perfite aige, after the expiring of the warde, to his over Lorde, of quhorne he haldes his landes be knicht service, that is, *be warde and relieve*, and be payment thereof he *relievis*, and as it were raisis vp agane his landes, after that they were fallen downe in his superioure's hands, be reason of the warde." "Warda," says the same writer, "ane French word *garde*, custodie or keiping. For we vse the letter W quhair the French men vsis the letter G. And the warde custodie, and keiping of the aire, haldand his landes be service of ward and relieve, perteinis to his immediate superiour, quhilk is conforme to the lawes of Normandie." The system is correctly described by Leslie in the text.

¹⁰¹ *Herald*. This form, used to mean an officer that makes proclamations, is identical with the form *Harold*, more commonly used as the surname. *Harold* or *Hariold* is for *Hariwald*, the army-strength or army-ruler. *Here* is the Anglo-Saxon and German form corresponding to *Hari*, whence was formed the G. *Herold*; Fr. *herault* and *heralt*; E. *herald*. Comp. other compounds of *Here*—*Hereward*, *Herman*, &c., &c., as surnames.

¹⁰² *Machabie*. The metrical version of Boece spells this name *Mackobey*, *MacKobey*, and once *Makcobene*. This is the name immortalised by Shakespeare, who has apparently changed the hero's name. The change, however, is more apparent than real. *Macbeatha* would be pronounced much like *Macbey* or *Mackobey*. Marianus Scotus spells the name *Macbeathad*, and the 'Duan Albanach,' *Macbeathadh*. The pronunciation of the latter forms would be something

ranging between *Macbey* and *Macbeth*. The metrical edition of Boece, above quoted, gives the salient points of the tragedy much as they are found in the play. For instance, Macbeth and Banquo meet the witches near Forres :—

“ The first of thame that Mackobey came to,
 ‘ The Thane of Glames, gude morn to him,’ said scho.
 The secund said withoutin ony scorne,
 ‘ The Thane of Calder, schir, God ȝow gude morne.’
 The hyndmest, with plesand voce benyng,
 ‘ God sauȝ ȝow, schir, of Scotland salbe King.’ ”
 —‘ Buik of the Croniclis,’ line 39714 (lib. 12).

Again, his wife urges on Macbeth to the murder, in these words—

“ Now tarie nocht thairfor ; speid hand, haif done,
 And to the purpois se thow speid the sone.” &c.
 —‘ Buik of the Croniclis,’ line 39806.

Shakespeare must have read Boece, or the sources from which the latter drew.

BOOK VI.

¹⁶³ “ Lulach, son of Macbeth,” is mentioned in the ‘Annals of Tigernach,’ where his death is recorded in the same year as that of his father, 1057, and he is called “ rig Alban.” The ‘Duan Albanach,’ giving the list of kings, says, “ 17 years the son of Fionnlaoich, after Macbeathadh the renowned, seven months in the lordship Luglaigh.” This was written in the year 1070. Marianus Scotus says expressly, “ Macfinlaeg occiditur in Augusto, Lulag successit, et occiditur in Martio.” This was written before the year 1077, when Marianus died. The Continuation of the Synchronisms of Flann Mainistreach gives among the kings of Alban, “ Macbeath, son of Finlaech,” and next, “ Lulach, son of Macbeth.” Lastly, ‘The Chronicle of the Picts’ gives “ Macbeth, son of Findleg, 17 years,” and then, “ Lulac, grandson (*nepos*) of the son of Boide, 4 months and a half.” The same facts are repeated in later chronicles, but it may be interesting to inquire why, in this latter, Lulach is named *great-grandson of Boide*. The Chartulary of St Andrews states that Gruoch, wife of Macbeth, was *filia Boede*, and the ‘Annals of Ulster’ mention a *Boede, son of Kenneth*, and add that the grandson of this Boede was killed by *Malcolm MacKenneth ri albain* in the year 1033. This cannot be Lulach, who was killed by Malcolm Mac-Duncan in 1058, according to the same Annals; but it may have been a brother of Gruoch; and as Malcolm II., the murderer, was grandfather of Duncan, we may have here some additional reason for “ Lady Macbeth’s” fury in urging on the king’s murder. Leslie

says that the mother of Macbeth was Doada, daughter of this same Malcolm II. This would give him some show of title to the crown, but it is more likely that Macbeth made his claim through his wife's descent from the Boede, son of Kenneth, the only representative of a line of kings which otherwise came to an end in Grim or Grig, who had also been killed by Malcolm II. May it be possible that Macbeth, who was son of Finleach, assumed the patronymic by which he is known, by way of asserting his descent from or pretensions to the rights of this *Boede*?

¹⁶⁴ *Marianus*. There was another *Marianus*, contemporary of this one, and also famous for his writings, which were, however, not historical, but ascetic. He was founder of the Monastery of St James of the Scots at Ratisbon, and died probably in the year 1088. In the library of the Abbey of Fort Augustus there is preserved a parchment MS. in his handwriting, signed with his name, and bearing the date 1080.

¹⁶⁵ *Fylte*. The more correct form of E. *defile*, from A.S. *fylan*, to make foul, from A.S. *ful*; L. *puteo*; Gr. *πύω*. *Defile* is a hybrid, which has arisen from confusion with *defoul*, from Fr. *desouler*, from *de-fullare*, to full cloth, and hence to trample on.

¹⁶⁶ *Euonia*, otherwise *Emonia*, now *Inchcolm*, in the Firth of Forth. Leslie adds, "unde insula Divi Columbae nuncupatur," which Dalrymple has omitted. The island was previously inhabited by a hermit who "served St Columba." But Mr Skene says the same legend was told him in the island of Iona as having happened there. *Euonia* might easily be transformed into *Iona*, or *vice versa*; and the latter is also known as the island of St Columba, Ycolmkill.

¹⁶⁷ *Low*=flame, light. A Scandinavian word, Icel. *log*, derived directly from base *luk* or *luh*, to shine, whence A.S. *leoh*, E. light, G. *licht*, L. *lux*, Gr. *λευκός*. E. *glow* is from a distinct source, and seems originally to refer to warmth rather than to brightness.

¹⁶⁸ *Wedd*=pledge, from A.S. *wed*. Allied to L. *vadis*, G. *wette*. E. *wedding* is a pledging, or perhaps the carrying home, since *wed* has also the meaning of a prize. *Wages* is a derivative with this later meaning; *wage* in its older meaning is simply a pledge. Sc. *wad*=both pledge or security and wager. A *wadset* is property set to *wad* or pledge, or as security for money payment. E. *wadman*, now a surname.

The Scottish Text Society

LESLIE'S HISTORIE OF SCOTLAND.

DIRECTIONS TO BINDER.

The Title and Contents attached to Part I. to be withdrawn,
and the Titles, Contents, and Introduction issued with Part II.,
and applying to Vol. I., to be substituted.

says that the mother of Macbeth was Doda, daughter of this same Malcolm II. This would give him some show of title to the crown, but it is more likely that Macbeth made his claim through his wife's descent from the Boede, son of Kenneth, the only representative of a line of kings which otherwise came to an end in Grim or Grig, who had also been killed by Malcolm II. May it be possible that Macbeth, who was son of Finleach, assumed the patronymic by which he is known, by way of asserting his descent from or pretensions to the rights of this *Boede*?

¹⁶⁴ *Marianus*. There was another Marianus, contemporary of this one, and also famous for his writings, which were, however, not historical, but ascetic. He was founder of the Monastery of St James of the Scots at Ratisbon, and died probably in the year 1088. In the library of the Abbey of Fort Augustus there is preserved a parchment MS. in his handwriting, signed with his name, and bearing the date 1080.

...., *o. wette.*
... *wedding*, or perhaps the carrying home, since *wed* has also the meaning of a prize. *Wages* is a derivative with this later meaning; *wage* in its older meaning is simply a pledge. Sc. *wad*=both pledge or security and wager. A *wadset* is property set to *wad* or pledge, or as security for money payment. E. *wadman*, now a surname.

The Scottish Text Society

**LESLIE'S
HISTORIE OF SCOTLAND**



THE
HISTORIE OF SCOTLAND

118268

WRYTTEN FIRST IN LATIN BY THE MOST REUEREND AND WORTHY

JHONE LESLIE

BISHOP OF ROSSE

AND TRANSLATED IN SCOTTISH BY
FATHER JAMES DALRYMPLE

RELIGIOUS IN THE SCOTTIS CLOISTER OF REGENSBURG,
THE 3EAR OF GOD, 1596

EDITED BY THE
REV. FATHER E. G. CODY, O.S.B.

The feare of the Lord is the beginning of all Wisdome

FINIS CORONAT OPUS

Published for the Society by
WILLIAM BLACKWOOD AND SONS
EDINBURGH AND LONDON
MDCCCLXXXV

All Rights reserved

The handwriting of the title-page is different from, and probably a little later than that of the rest of the MS. The same date, however, is given in Dalrymple's own hand in another part of the text.

CONTENTS.

	<small>PAGE</small>
The Descriptione of the Regiones and Iles of Scotland,	1
Of the Name, Situatione, and Partes, of the Ile of Britannie,	2
Of the Aire, Lenth of the Day: and Fertilite of the Ground, in Britannie,	5
The Boundes of Scotland and Divisione, with the Descriptione,	9
The South Countreyis of the Realme,	10
The Prouinces of the Northe Parte of the Realme,	37

OF THE ILES OF SCOTLAND,

And first of the West Isles called Hebrides or Eubonie,	54
Of the Iles of Orkney,	63

OF THE BEGINNING, THE MANERIS, THE ACTES, AND DEIDIS DONE OF THE SCOTIS MEN.

The First Buik,	67
Of the Ancient Antiquitie and Alde Ofspring of the Scottis Natione. And how thay came frome Ægypte and came to Spane,	70
How first the Scottis <i>cam</i> to Irland,	75
Of Simon Brechus the First King of Scottis in Irland or Hibernia, . .	76
How the Scottis first <i>cam</i> in Albion,	80
Of the Natiounis, Kindomes, and Languages quhilkes now, or sen the beginning, haue flurished in Scotland,	82

How the Peychtis first in Albion descendet,	86
Of the Scottis Maneris,	89
The Ald Scottis Maneris and Present lykwyse, cheifie of thame quha occupies the Mountainis called Hebrides,	89
Thair Maneris quha inhabites the Borderis of Scotland foranent Ingland,	97
The Maneris of the reste of the Peple of the Lande heir follow,	103
How many Ordouris of the Realme and Commounre Weil,	105
The Ecclesiastical Estate,	106
Of the Estait of the Nobilitie,	111
The Ordour and Estait of the Commounre People,	115
The Lawes of Scotland,	118
Of the Magistratis,	124
How Fergus First King of Scottis cam in Albion,	128

Scottish Text Society

**LESLIE'S
HISTORY OF SCOTLAND**

TRANSLATED BY

FATHER JAMES DALRYMPLE

RELIGIOUS IN THE SCOTTISH CLOISTER OF REGENSBURG, 1596

EDITED BY THE

REV. FATHER E. G. CODY, O.S.B.

PART I.

1884-85

Published for the Society by

**WILLIAM BLACKWOOD AND SONS
EDINBURGH AND LONDON**

The Scottish Text Society.

THE SCOTTISH TEXT SOCIETY is established for editing and publishing the more important texts in **Early Scottish Literature** down to the time when the written language began to lose its distinctive characteristics. The aims of the Society will embrace the re-editing and reprinting of those works which, from their rarity and price, are beyond the reach of ordinary buyers, as well as the publication of hitherto unprinted MSS.

The efforts of the Society are being directed in the first place to the works of—

JAMES I.	BARBOUR'S 'LIVES OF THE SAINTS,' hitherto unpublished.
DUNBAR.	POPULAR POETRY OF SCOTLAND.
BARBOUR.	ANCIENT SCOTTISH PROPHECIES.
GAVIN DOUGLAS.	ANCIENT METRICAL ROMANCES.
LINDSAY.	FOLK-LORE.
HENRYSON.	CHRONICLES.
DRUMMOND.	EARLY CATECHISMS.
MURE OF ROWALLAN.	
&c.	&c.

Miscellanies of CHARTERS, ACTS OF PARLIAMENT, PROCLAMATIONS, and PUBLIC DOCUMENTS, will, from time to time, be published.

The subscription is £1, 1s. per annum, payable in advance. The publications of the Society are issued in a uniform series, handsomely printed on good paper. Each work is sold to the public at a price to be fixed by the Society.

(For List of Office-Bearers, see page 3 of cover.)

THE SCOTTISH TEXT SOCIETY.

Patrons.

THE DUKE OF ARGYLL, K.T.
THE MARQUIS OF LOTHIAN, K.T.
THE MARQUIS OF BUTE, K.T.
THE EARL OF ABERDEEN.
THE EARL OF ROSEBERY.
LORD BALFOUR OF BURLEIGH.
THE RIGHT HON. JOHN INGLIS of Glencorse.

President.

THE RIGHT HON. JOHN INGLIS of Glencorse.

Vice-Presidents.

THE MARQUIS OF LOTHIAN, K.T.
THE MARQUIS OF BUTE, K.T.
THE EARL OF ROSEBERY.
PROFESSOR MASSON, Edinburgh University.
LIEUT.-COLONEL A. FERGUSSON.

Council.

R. W. COCHRAN-PATRICK, Esq.
ÆNEAS J. G. MACKAY, Esq., LL.D., Advocate.
ARTHUR MITCHELL, Esq., M.D., LL.D.
A. F. MITCHELL, D.D., Professor of Ecclesiastical History,
St Andrews.
WILLIAM MINTO, Esq., M.A., Professor of English Literature
and Logic, Aberdeen.
THOMAS MARTIN LINDSAY, D.D., Professor of Divinity
and Church History, Glasgow.
JOHN SKELTON, Esq., LL.D., Advocate.
JAMES T. CLARK, Esq., Librarian, Advocate's Library.
THOMAS G. LAW, Esq., Librarian, Signet Library.
JOHN SMALL, Esq., Librarian, University Library.
THOMAS DICKSON, Esq., Register House.
JAMES A. H. MURRAY, Esq., LL.D., President, Philological
Society, Oxford.

Honorary Secretary.

REV. WALTER GREGOR, LL.D. | WILLIAM BLACKWOOD, Esq.

Honorary Treasurer.

Scottish Text Society.

Volumes issued for the year 1883-84 :—

I.

THE KINGIS QUAIR, TOGETHER WITH A BALLAD OF GOOD COUNSEL: by KING JAMES I. of Scotland. Edited by the Rev. WALTER W. SKEAT, M.A., Elrington and Bosworth Professor of Anglo-Saxon, Fellow of Christ's College, Cambridge. Price 10s. 6d.

II.

THE POEMS OF WILLIAM DUNBAR. Edited by JOHN SMALL, M.A., F.S.A. Scot. Part I. Price 12s. 6d.

III.

ANE TREATISE CALLIT THE COURT OF VENUS, Deuidit into Four Buikis. Newlie Compylit be IOHNE ROLLAND in Dalkeith, 1575. Edited by the Rev. WALTER GREGOR, M.A. Price 12s. 6d.

Volumes issued for the year 1884-85 :—

I.

THE POEMS OF WILLIAM DUNBAR. Edited by JOHN SMALL, M.A., F.S.A. Scot. Part II. Price 12s. 6d.

II.

THE HISTORIE OF SCOTLAND, Wrytten first in Latin by the Most Reverend and Worthy JOHN LESLIE, Bishop of Ross; and Translated in Scottish by Father JAMES DALRYMPLE, Religious in the Scottis Cloister of Regensburg, the Year of God 1596. Edited from the Fort-Augustus MS. by the Rev. Father E. G. CODY, O.S.B. PART I.

III.

BLIND HARRY'S WALLACE. Edited by JAMES MOIR, M.A., Rector, Grammar School, Aberdeen. PART I.

Scottish Text Society

**LESLIE'S
HISTORY OF SCOTLAND**

TRANSLATED BY

FATHER JAMES DALRYMPLE

RELIGIOUS IN THE SCOTTISH CLOISTER OF REGENSBURG, 1596

EDITED BY THE

REV. FATHER E. G. CODY, O.S.B.

P A R T II.

•

1887-88

Printed for the Society by

**WILLIAM BLACKWOOD AND SONS
EDINBURGH AND LONDON**

Scottish Text Society.

Volumes issued for the year 1883-84:—

- I. THE KINGIS QUAIR, TOGETHER WITH A BALLAD OF GOOD COUNSEL: by KING JAMES I. of Scotland. Edited by the Rev. WALTER W. SKEAT, M.A., Elrington and Bosworth Professor of Anglo-Saxon, Fellow of Christ's College, Cambridge.
- II. THE POEMS OF WILLIAM DUNBAR. Edited by JOHN SMALL, M.A., F.S.A. Scot. Part I.
- III. ANE TREATISE CALLIT THE COURT OF VENUS, Deuidit into Four Buikis. Newlie Compyleit be IOHNE ROLLAND in Dalkeith, 1575. Edited by the Rev. WALTER GREGOR, M.A.

Volumes issued for the year 1884-85:—

- I. THE POEMS OF WILLIAM DUNBAR. Edited by JOHN SMALL, M.A., F.S.A. Scot. Part II.
- II. THE HISTORIE OF SCOTLAND, Wrytten first in Latin by the Most Reverend and Worthy JOHN LESLIE, Bishop of Ross; and Translated in Scottish by Father JAMES DALRYMPLE, Religious in the Scottis Cloister of Regensburg, the Year of God 1596. Edited from the Fort-Augustus MS. by the Rev. Father E. G. CODY, O.S.B. Part I.
- III. BLIND HARRY'S WALLACE. Edited by JAMES MOIR, M.A., Rector, Grammar School, Aberdeen. Part I.

Volumes for 1885-86:—

- I. BLIND HARRY'S WALLACE. Edited by JAMES MOIR, M.A., Rector, Grammar School, Aberdeen. Part II.
- II. SIR TRISTREM. With INTRODUCTION, NOTES, and GLOSSARY. By G. P. McNEILLI, Advocate.
- III. THE POEMS OF ALEXANDER MONTGOMERIE. Edited by JAMES CRANSTOUN, Esq., LL.D. Part I.

Volumes for 1886-87:—

- I. THE POEMS OF ALEXANDER MONTGOMERIE. By JAMES CRANSTOUN, Esq., LL.D. Part II.
- II. THE POEMS OF ALEXANDER MONTGOMERIE. By JAMES CRANSTOUN, Esq., LL.D. Part III.
- III. GAU'S THE RICHT VAY TO THE KINGDOME OF HEUINE. By the Rev. Professor MITCHELL, D.D., St Andrews.

Volumes for 1887-88:—

LEGENDS OF THE SAINTS. By the Rev. W. M. METCALFE, Paisley. Part I.
THE HISTORIE OF SCOTLAND. Edited by the Rev. Father E. G. CODY, O.S.B. Part II.
WINZET'S WORKS. Vol. I. By the Rev. J. KING HEWISON, Rothesay.

In preparation.

BLIND HARRY'S WALLACE. INTRODUCTION, NOTES, and GLOSSARY. By JAMES MOIR, M.A., Rector, Grammar School, Aberdeen. Part III. [*In the press.*]
LEGENDS OF THE SAINTS. By Rev. W. M. METCALFE. Part II. [*In the press.*]
THE POEMS OF WILLIAM DUNBAR. PREFACE, NOTES, and GLOSSARY. By J. G. MACKAY, Esq., LL.D., and Rev. W. GREGOR, LL.D. Part III.
GOLOGRAS AND GAWEN. By F. J. AMOURS, Glasgow.
SATIRICAL POEMS OF THE TIME OF THE REFORMATION. By JAMES CRANSTOUN, Esq., LL.D.
THE HISTORIE OF SCOTLAND. Edited by the Rev. Father E. G. CODY, O.S.B. Part III.
WINZET'S WORKS. Vol. II. NOTES AND GLOSSARY. By Rev. J. KING HEWISON.

